



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

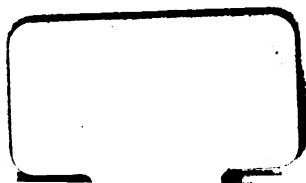
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT1000.333.926

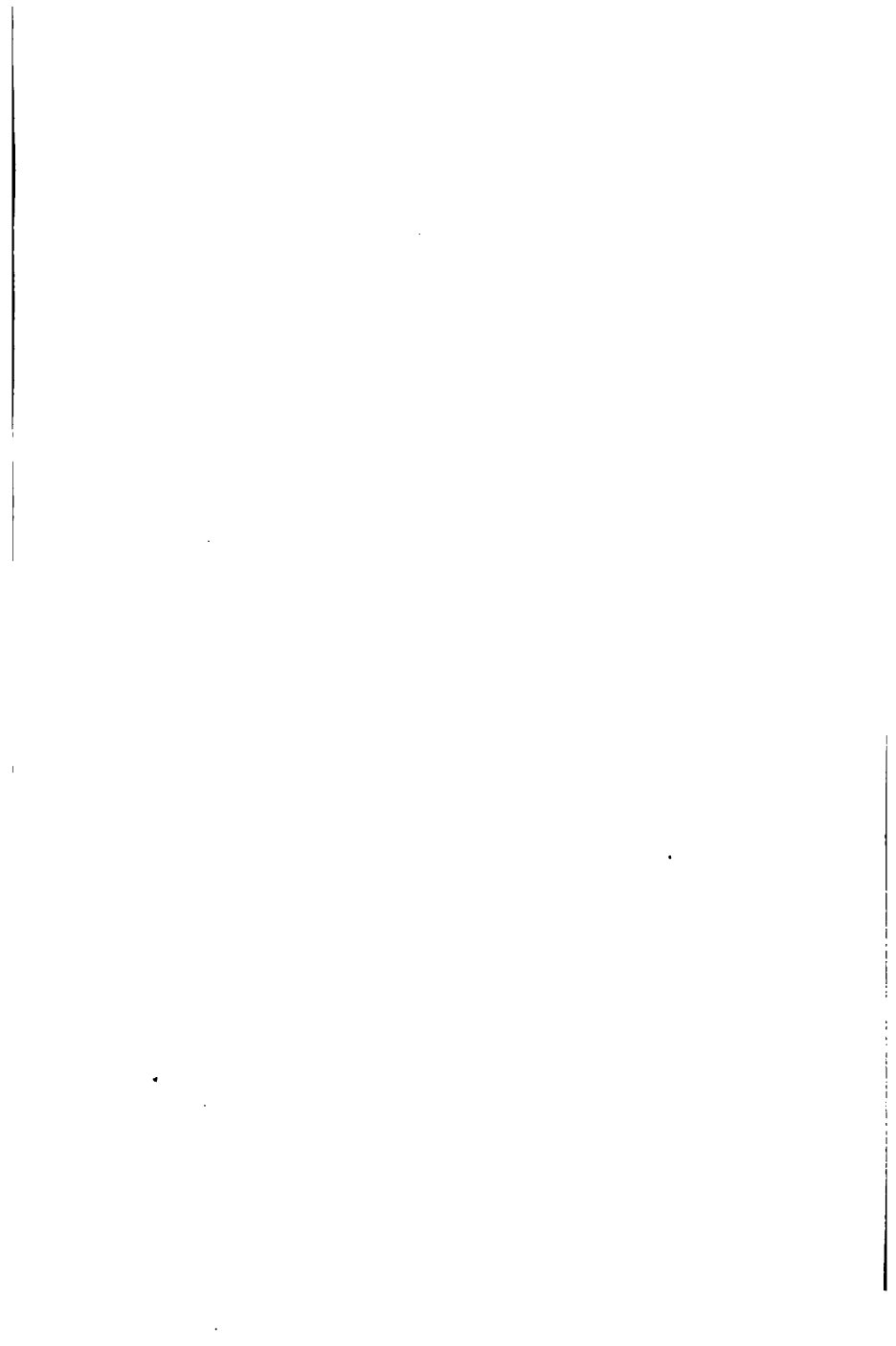
Harvard College Library
THE GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY





3 2044 097 078 984







© Braun Clement and Company

From the painting by Lionel Royer

SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CAESAR

(See page 166)

CÆSAR IN GAUL

WITH INTRODUCTION, REVIEW OF FIRST-YEAR
SYNTAX, NOTES, GRAMMAR, PROSE COM-
POSITION, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

AND

FREDERICK C. EASTMAN

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

EducT 1000.333.926
✓

COPYRIGHT, 1917, 1918, BY BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE AND
FREDERICK C. EASTMAN
ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

626.12

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

GIFT OF

GINN & CO.

DEC 5 1940

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

PREFACE

THE modern demand for economy and efficiency, which pervades the educational world as well as the world of business, has led to the preparation of this new edition of Cæsar. It comprises in a single volume all of the material needed for the second year of Latin, and, by the elimination of all matter not directly serviceable, aims to promote efficiency in its presentation.

After a brief introduction devoted to historical matters and the Roman art of war, a thorough review of the first year's work in syntax is presented by means of Ritchie's "The Argonauts," Nepos's "Hannibal," and a simple biography of Cæsar.

The text, which is Meusel's with a few minor changes, comprises the first four books of the "Gallic War" and interesting episodes from the remaining books, with notes written from the standpoint of the pupil rather than from that of the teacher, and fully adequate to his needs. To remove a real obstacle to progress, the long passages of indirect discourse occurring in the first two books are given in the direct form. The same passages are given later in their unchanged form, for purposes of comparison and for the use of such teachers as prefer a more strenuous course. The text closes with Cæsar's account of the battle of Pharsalia, the climax of the "Civil War," and events that immediately follow. These will be found particularly valuable for sight work; they are provided with footnotes and special vocabularies of the words not used in the preceding text of the "Gallic War."

In the Grammar the attempt has been made to present the syntax of Cæsar in the most direct and simple form, and the Latin Composition discusses the fundamental constructions. While the authors have not been at all radical in the matter of nomenclature, such of the new names have been used as seem likely to gain general adoption.

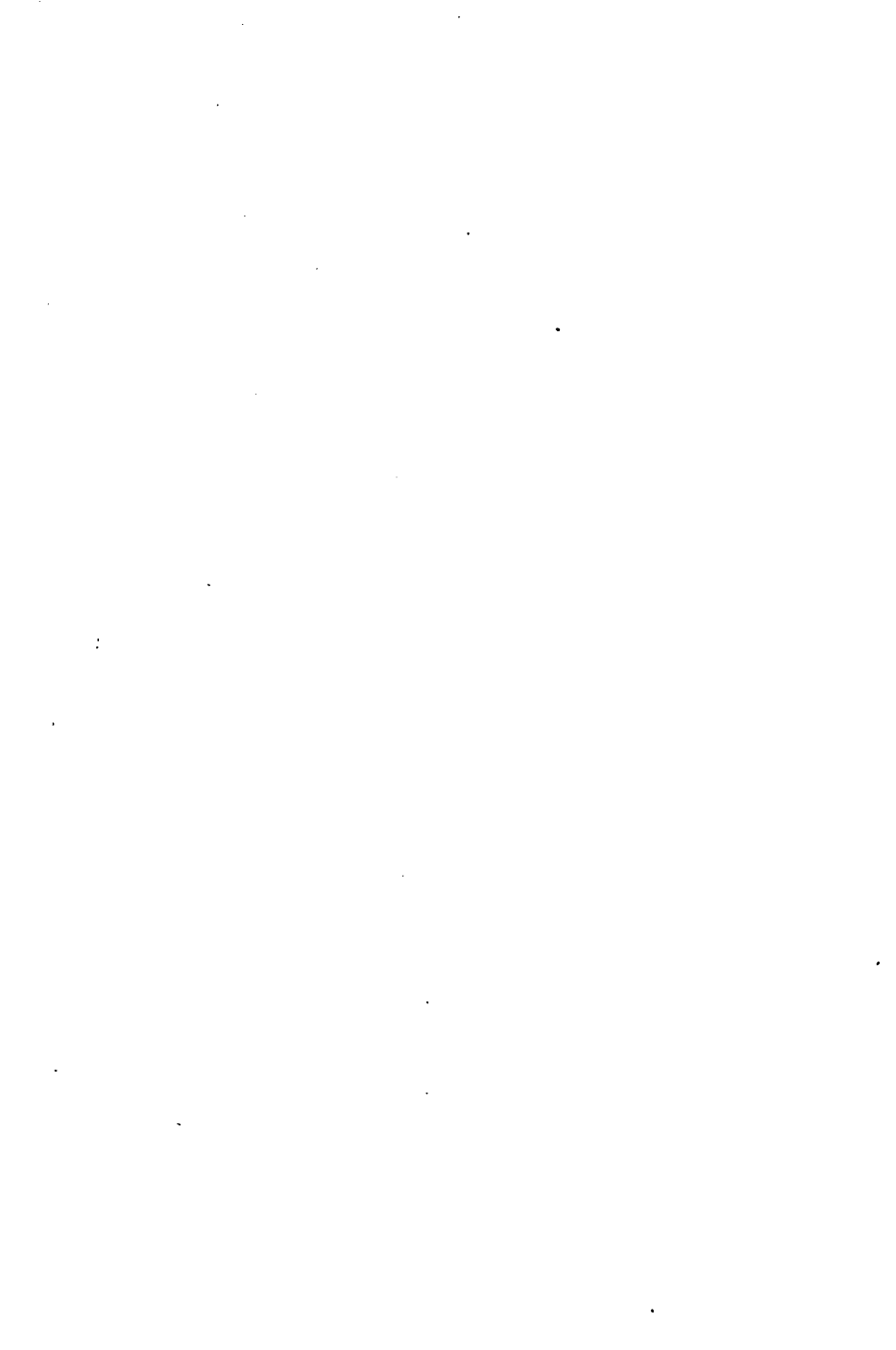
The vocabulary gives the essentials of etymology and contains only such idioms and definitions as are fundamental to the text.

Battle plans, maps, and illustrations of every sort have been inserted with a lavish hand, and it is hoped that these will tend to make the great story more real to the pupil's imagination. Special attention is called to the four colored plates made from paintings.

This book covers the requirements of the New York Syllabus. The special vocabularies of one thousand words prescribed by the Syllabus for the first and second years are reprinted in a form valuable for drill. Provision is made, also, for the study of the formation and derivation of words, as suggested in the New York course.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

FREDERICK C. EASTMAN



NOTE. The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns.

GALLIA ANTICA

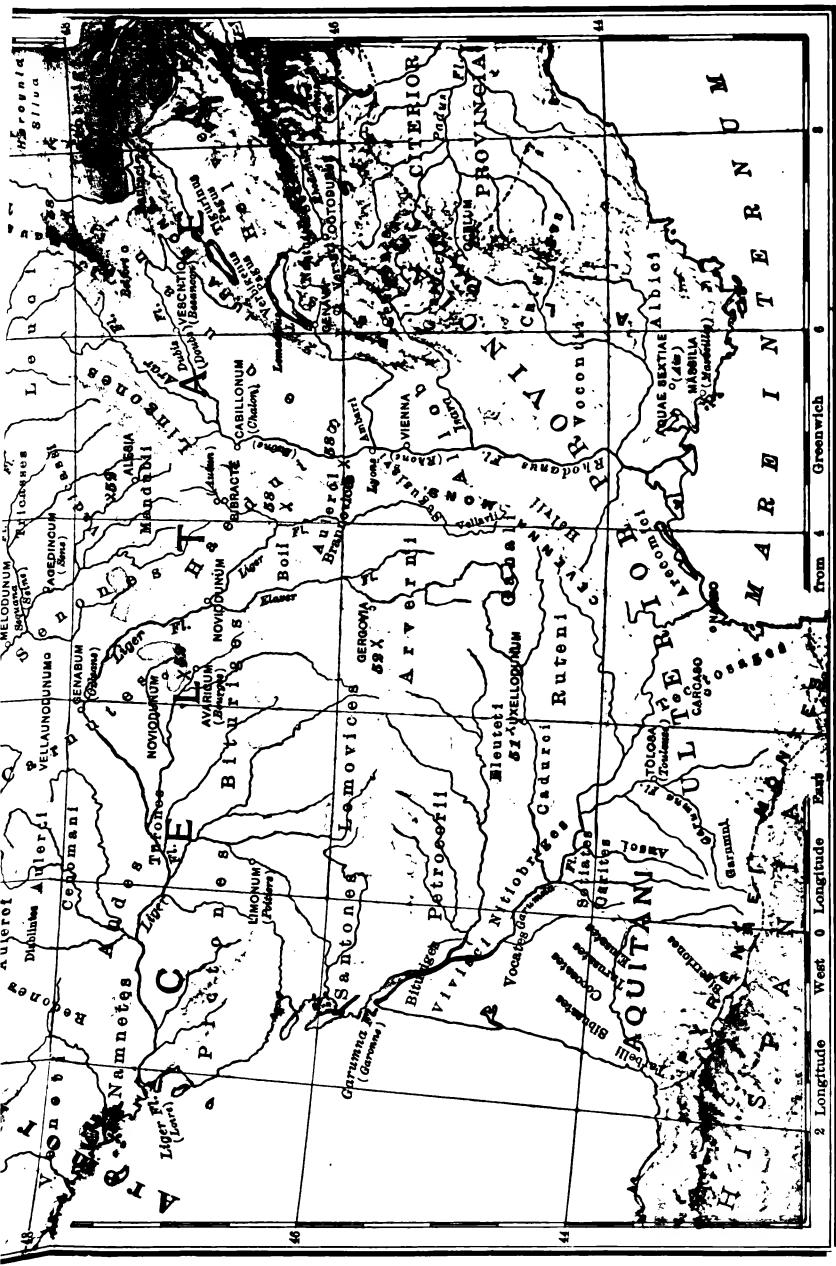
ROMAN MILES: 0 20 40 60 80 100 120
 ENGLISH MILES: 0 20 40 60 80 100 120

Key locations and features on the map include:
 - **Provinces:** BELGICA, FLANDRIA, CANTUA, EBOURACENSIS, etc.
 - **Cities:** LONDINIUM, EBOURAC, CANTUA, etc.
 - **Battles/Campaigns:** 54 (near Londinium), 55 (near Cantua), 56 (near Eborac), etc.
 - **Geographical Features:** The English Channel, the Rhine, and various rivers.

NOTE. The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns

ROMAN MILES

0 20 40 60 80 100 120



2 Longitude West 0 Longitude East from 4 Greenwich

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	PAGE
I. THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR	ix
II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY	xxi
III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS	xxv
RITCHIE, THE ARGONAUTS	xli
NEPOS, THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL	lvii
CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR	I
THE GALLIC WAR	
BOOK I	11
BOOK II	57
BOOK III	83
BOOK IV	103
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK V	130
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI	138
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VII	150
THE CIVIL WAR	
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK III	167
INDIRECT DISCOURSE FROM BOOKS I AND II OF THE GALLIC WAR	199
NOTES	213
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR	
A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS	305
B. SYNTAX	342

	PAGE
LATIN COMPOSITION	405
LATIN WORD LIST	447
ENGLISH WORD LIST	448
WORD FORMATION	469
ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES	477
VOCABULARIES	
ENGLISH-LATIN	3
LATIN-ENGLISH	15
GRAMMATICAL INDEX	121

FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
Surrender of Vercingetorix to Cæsar (In colors)	Frontispiece
A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus	xii
Gallic Remains	xxii
A Roman Legionary Soldier	xxiv
Castra Romana	xxxv
General View of Siege Operations	xxxvii
Hannibal	lvi
Caius Julius Cæsar	i
The Assassination of Cæsar, 44 B. C. (In colors)	8
Caius Julius Cæsar Imperator	11
"Ita acipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est"	31
Besançon (Vesontio)	41
Conference between Cæsar and Ariovistus, King of the Germans	48
Iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnatum est	86
"Reliquos sub corona vendidit"	94
"Milites nostri in castra inruperunt"	110
Landing of the Romans on the Coast of Britain (In colors)	120
A Druid Sacrifice	144
Early Germans	148
Alise-Sainte-Reine (Alesia)	163
Caius Julius Cæsar Consul	170
Gnæus Pompeius Magnus	188
The Ides of March (In colors)	305

MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

	PAGE
Gallia Antiqua	iv
The Route of Hannibal	lix
Campaign Map for 58 B.C.	12
The Rhone from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse	14
The Defeat of the Helvetii	29
The Campaign against Ariovistus	39
The Battle with Ariovistus	55
Campaign Map for 57 B.C.	57
The Battle on the Aisne (Axona)	63
The Defeat of the Nervii	71
Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci	79
Octodurus and the Surrounding Territory	84
The Veneti and Neighboring Coast Region	88
Campaign Map for 55 B.C.	103
The Second Invasion of Britain, 54 B.C.	130
Campaign Map for 52 B.C.	152
Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne	161
Campaign Map for 48 B.C.	167
The Battle of Pharsalia, 48 B.C.	175

INTRODUCTION

I. CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

THIS is a book of exploration, adventure, and conquest. It tells the story of some of the most thrilling events in the life of one of the greatest men in history — Caius Julius Cæsar, the Roman. It is his own account of his explorations and conquests; his own description of his fierce battles with the half-civilized Gauls who occupied what we now know as France, Switzerland, and Belgium, with the barbarous Britons of England, and with the savage tribes then inhabiting Germany. The curtain of centuries is drawn aside and we see as in a moving picture the dawn of civilization in Europe two thousand years ago. We learn of the strange customs of its inhabitants and of the methods by which they were subdued, reduced to order, and brought under the government of Rome by the extraordinary energy and generalship of one man. The time of this drama is the interval between the years 58 and 49 B.C.

I. ROME, THE RULER OF THE WORLD

Rome in its early history was a monarchy; but four hundred years before Cæsar's birth the last of the kings, Tarquinius Superbus, had been expelled, and a republican form of government had taken the place of the kingly rule. In Cæsar's time Rome was a great commonwealth. To it belonged, as tributary provinces, all the countries surrounding the Mediterranean

Sea, and this meant, practically, all the civilized world. The central power was at Rome, and the provinces were governed by officials sent out from the capital city.

2. POLITICAL CONDITIONS AND PARTIES

At the time of Cæsar's birth, 100 B.C., or, according to some authorities, 102 B.C., there were two great political parties at Rome:



LUCIUS CORNELIUS SULLA

the nobility, or aristocracy (*optimātēs*), and the democratic, or popular, party (*populārēs*). Between these parties there had long been a bitter strife. The *optimātēs*, for the most part, had the upper hand, exercising their authority through a senate of six hundred men, all *optimātēs*. The two great political leaders during Cæsar's early years were Sulla for the *optimātēs*, and Marius for the *populārēs*. The rivalry between these men and these parties resulted in something far more grave than a mere political contest. They kept Rome in a turmoil of strife and bloodshed.

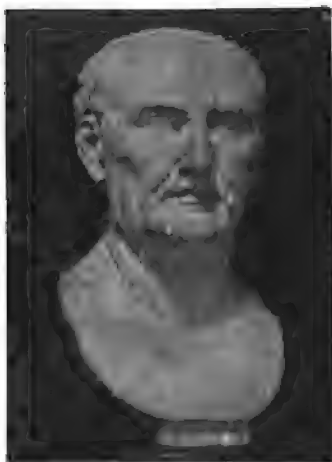
Both leaders sought the command of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. Sulla prevailed. During his absence in the east, hundreds of his adherents at Rome, including many leading senators, were put to death by the order of Marius. Sulla, returning, retaliated with similar carnage, the friends of Marius now being the victims. It was the custom of the Romans, in times of peril, to elect a temporary dictator, who had absolute power. Sulla, now in control of the political situation, caused himself to be proclaimed dictator

for an unlimited period, and reorganized the government wholly in the interests of the *optimātēs*. These events occurred between 88 and 81 B.C., while the boy Cæsar was passing from his twelfth to his nineteenth year.

3. CÆSAR'S POLITICAL AFFILIATIONS

These circumstances attending Cæsar's youth must have had much to do with the shaping of his ideals and career. Cæsar's family belonged distinctly to the nobility, for the Julii traced their ancestry back to the Trojan Æneas, who was reputed to be the son of the goddess Venus. But something of the independence and self-reliance that told for so much in his later military and civic victories is shown by the fact that, in spite of his political inheritance which marked him an aristocrat, he chose, even in his youth, to attach himself to the side of the *populārēs*.

In his seventeenth year he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the most prominent leaders of the party of Marius. Sulla, in the height of his power, ordered him to divorce her. Cæsar, a mere youth, defied the great dictator of Rome, and refused. On this account he was obliged to leave Rome. Sulla at last, through the influence of Cæsar's friends, although against his own judgment, consented to his return. "Let him come back, if so you will," was his remark, "but this same young man will some day overthrow the nobility; for I see in him many a Marius."



CAIUS MARIUS

4. CÆSAR'S EDUCATION AND TRAINING

Cæsar's early life was, no doubt, like that of the average Roman boy of noble birth. His education probably did not differ materially from that of hundreds of others. Cæsar aspired, as did other Roman boys, to a distinguished career. The two chief avenues that were open to advancement were the political and the military. He must be well educated in a general way. Then he must be versed in the law, in statesmanship, and in oratory, or else in the art of war. If he were trained in both disciplines, so much the better. The youthful Cæsar devoted himself to the study of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory, studying for several months at Rhodes under Apollonius, the most famous teacher of the time. He also gained some valuable military experience in Asia Minor, and distinguished himself by his valor in saving a comrade's life. His education for the highest offices was ample.



ROMAN BOY

5. ROMAN POLITICAL OFFICES

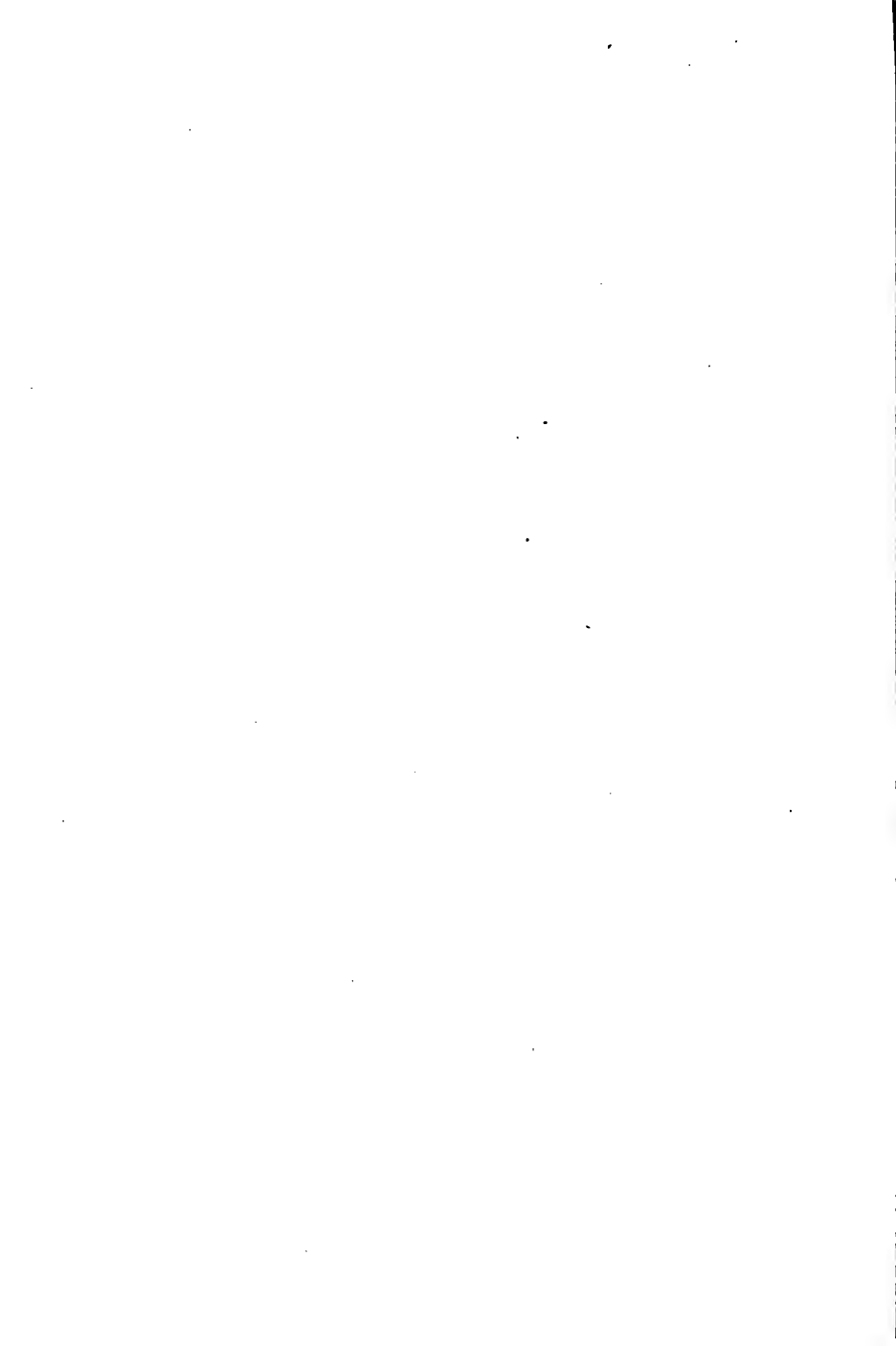
The highest office in a political career was the consulship; but there were three successive offices that were usually held as preliminary to this, those of quæstor, ædile, and prætor.

The quæstor had to do with the public treasury, the collection of revenues, disbursements, and the like. Under Sulla there were twenty quæstors, ten being assigned to duties at Rome, and ten attached to the armies of the provincial governors.

The ædile was concerned with the care of streets and public buildings, the superintendence of commerce, and the administration of the great public festivals. The Romans were very



A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS



fond of spectacular games, and to gain the favor of the people for future elections the ædiles often incurred enormous personal expense in their presentation. The number of ædiles was four.

The prætor was concerned with the administration of justice, and represented the consul in his absence. Under Sulla the number of prætors was eight.

But it was to the office of consul that the young Roman looked forward as the consummation of his political efforts. There were two of these officers, elected each year, and the guidance of the republic was largely in their hands.

After either the prætorship or the consulship it was customary to appoint the ex-prætor or ex-consul to the governorship of one of the Roman provinces. Such officers were called pro-prætors or proconsuls according to the office which they had held. Such appointments afforded great opportunities to amass wealth, and for this reason were eagerly sought. For the sake of gain unscrupulous methods were often employed in the administration of these offices. The provincials were imposed on in various ways, and extortion was common. Many of the provincial governors returned to Rome with enormous riches. But aside from all unfair means it was quite possible to make this office an unusually profitable one.

6. CÆSAR'S POLITICAL CAREER

Cæsar doubtless looked forward to a political rather than to a military career. His military training had been only incidental, but he had made careful preparation for the field of politics and he entered upon it with his customary earnestness.

He was elected quæstor for 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two years old. Three years later, in 65 B.C., he was ædile. In this capacity he played with the highest stakes for securing the favor of the people. As he had little means of his own, he borrowed enormous sums on the strength of his office and his prospects,

and presented the most magnificent games that Rome had ever known. He left the ædileship, as he remarked in jest, with more than a million dollars less than nothing.

In 63 B.C. he was elected pontifex maximus, an office that carried great prestige and dignity, though it was not in the regular course of civil honors. This office he held all his life.

In 62 B.C. he was prætor, and during the following year served as proprætor of Spain. But he was now staggering under the load of debt that he had contracted during his ædileship, and was in danger of being detained at Rome by his creditors. To meet these obligations he borrowed a large sum from Crassus, the richest man in Rome.

While engaged in his duties in Spain he gained a military experience that was of great value to him in his future campaigns, and likewise made money enough to pay all his debts. In the year 60 B.C. he returned to Rome and now fixed his attention on the consulship. Pompey had just returned victorious from the Mithridatic War. He had been identified with the *optimātēs*, but, because of their jealous efforts to curtail his power, he was becoming estranged. Cæsar took advantage of this attitude to form an alliance with him. With them they associated Crassus, who represented the moneyed interests, and thus was formed a most powerful political alliance, commonly called the First Triumvirate. This was one of the shrewdest of Cæsar's moves, for his individual influence at this time was far less than that of the other two. It is easy to see how unwelcome this alliance was to the *optimātēs*. Backed by the triumvirate Cæsar gained the consulship without difficulty for 59 B.C. During his year of office he made many valuable and humane reforms, chiefly in the interest of the lower classes, and in general distinguished himself by his wise and good government.

7. CÆSAR IN GAUL

Cæsar's restless energy and ambition could not, of course, rest satisfied with the consulship. He looked forward eagerly to larger fields of action in which to display his ability. Such an opportunity was now presented to him. The triumvirate, in making up the political "slate," agreed that Cæsar should have the governorship of Gaul for five years. This district consisted of what were known as Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and the office presupposed the protection of the northern frontier of Italy. The relative position of these territories may be seen from the map at the beginning of the book. Cæsar's term of office as governor of Gaul, beginning in 58 B.C., was afterwards extended to ten years, and it is of the stirring events of these years that Cæsar tells us in this book.



CONSUL AND LICTORS

8. THE CIVIL WAR

The agreement of the triumvirate by which Cæsar became governor of Gaul assigned to Crassus the province of Syria, and to Pompey that of Spain. However, not only the harmony but even the existence of the triumvirate came to a speedy close. Crassus was killed in battle in his province. Pompey,

made sole consul in 52 B.C., began to be intensely jealous of Cæsar's reputation and influence, and finally laid plans to destroy him. To this end he made an alliance with the senate, with which his former friendly relations had been reëstablished by their common hatred of Cæsar.

Cæsar had laid plans to run for the consulship a second time for the year 48 B.C. He could easily do this, for his term as governor would expire in 49 B.C. The senate, wishing to prevent this, ordered him to disband his army before the regular close of his official term. They knew that if they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they could crush him.

This was the most critical time in Cæsar's career, and one that clearly shows his decision and courage. Instead of complying with the senate's demand he promptly gathered his devoted men and descended on Rome.

Pompey and the senatorial forces were panic-stricken and fled to Brundisium, whence they sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. In sixty days Cæsar made himself master of Italy, and, before autumn, had put down all opposition in Spain, where Pompey had numerous adherents and an armed force. Soon thereafter he followed Pompey across the sea, and completely crushed him in a battle near Pharsalia, in Thessaly, on August 9, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, and there lost his life by assassination. The remnants of the Pompeian forces were conquered in two battles, one at Thapsus, in Africa, and the other at Munda, in Spain.

9. CÆSAR, THE DICTATOR

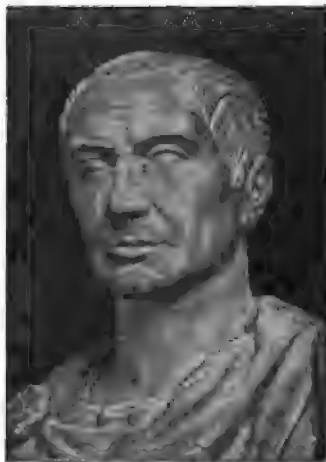
On his return to Rome Cæsar was master of the world. He was made imperator, which conferred on him complete military authority, and dictator for life, which gave him all political power. This vesting of dominion in one man was the beginning

of the abolition of the republican form of government, and led to the establishment of the empire under Cæsar's grandnephew and adopted son, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus.

Cæsar continued the beneficent constructive work that he had begun in his consulship. He made many reforms in the interest of good government, and began the construction of many remarkable public works.

10. THE CONSPIRACY AND ASSASSINATION

In spite of all political disturbances the Romans had always been proud of their republican institutions, and from the time that the Tarquins had been expelled they had repudiated the idea of royalty. Now Cæsar's unlimited power and his readiness in using it began to breed apprehension and suspicion. There were rumors that he wanted to be king in name, as he already was in fact. This resulted in a conspiracy to assassinate him, the leaders of which were Brutus and Cassius. These men and their accomplices, in the name of the republic and liberty, calling themselves in fact *liberātōrēs*, attacked Cæsar during a session of the senate on the Ides (the fifteenth) of March, 44 B.C., and stabbed him to death with their daggers.



CÆSAR, THE DICTATOR

11. CÆSAR'S PERSONAL APPEARANCE

No one can be interested in the life and writings of Julius Cæsar without the desire of knowing how this great man looked. Suetonius, the historian, who wrote about one hundred and fifty

years later, gives us this graphic picture. He says that Cæsar was tall, slender, and handsome, with sharp, dark eyes, a sallow complexion, a large nose, refined features, and a thick, sinewy neck. He adds that he was partially bald, and, being sensitive to this deformity, used to draw the hair forward to the crown of his head; and that, on account of this baldness, he greatly appreciated the privilege granted him by the senate of wearing a laurel wreath.

But perhaps our most satisfactory knowledge of his form and features is gained from coins and the portrait busts and statues that have come down to us. Some of the best of these are shown at pages I, II, and 170.

12. CÆSAR'S ACCOMPLISHMENTS AND CHARACTER

Cæsar's accomplishments were many and diverse. He was a thorough scholar, well versed in language and literature. He wrote a grammar while in the midst of a campaign; as an orator he might have rivaled even Cicero; his generalship has never been surpassed; in addition, he was without doubt the greatest politician and statesman of Rome. There is no question that he was ambitious, but he exercised his ambition for the good of the state as well as for his own advancement. Strange as it may seem from his life of conflict, he was inclined to peace, and engaged in war only when he deemed it unavoidable.

Cæsar has been accused of cruelty and various vices. Judged by our moral standards he was doubtless far from perfect, but it is certain that he was a man of remarkable self-control. His cruelty must be judged in the light of Roman standards. The Romans, as a people, held human life cheap, and gave little regard to suffering. Further, the thousands who were slain by Cæsar's orders were barbarians—Gauls and Germans—for whom the Romans entertained no respect whatever. He

certainly exhibited a care and anxious solicitude for the welfare of his own soldiers, and a forbearance with their mistakes that is remarkable. Their love for him and their devotion were touching and complete. His readiness to pardon his former enemies when he was master of the world was more than mere diplomacy; it rather shows a large magnanimity and a fine quality of mercy.

He was fond of athletics, a splendid horseman, and in danger without fear. A peerless leader of men, he is considered by many the foremost character in history.

13. CÆSAR AS A WRITER

Cæsar wrote many books, but only two have survived: the "Commentaries on the Gallic War" and the "Civil War." The former consists of eight books, the latter of three. The last book of the "Commentaries" was not written by Cæsar, but by Hirtius, one of his officers.

The narration in both works is direct, vigorous, and clear; successive events are presented with dramatic and graphic power. His high literary quality is the more remarkable when we remember that he wrote the "Commentaries" hastily as a sort of journal in the midst of his most strenuous campaigns.

14. CONCLUSION

In the following pages are presented such parts of Cæsar's works as are most entertaining and inspiring to the general reader. The story will speak for itself. The "Gallic War" has a peculiar interest for us because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of

their present political and social peculiarities. The selections from the "Civil War" relate the climax of the long struggle for supremacy between Cæsar and Pompey, which culminated in the battle of Pharsalia, Pompey's flight to Egypt, Cæsar's pursuit, and the stirring events that followed his arrival there.

15. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CÆSAR'S LIFE

- 100 B.C. Born, July 12th.
- 83 B.C. Marries Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna.
- 80-78 B.C. Serves with the army in Asia.
- 76-75 B.C. Studies oratory at Rhodes.
- 68 B.C. Quæstor.
- 65 B.C. Ædile.
- 63 B.C. Pontifex Maximus.
- 62 B.C. Prætor.
- 61 B.C. Proprætor in Spain.
- 60 B.C. Forms the First Triumvirate.
- 59 B.C. Consul.
- 58-49 B.C. Proconsul in Gaul.
- 50 B.C. The trouble with Pompey begins.
- 49 B.C. Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begins.
- 48 B.C. The battle of Pharsalia.
- 46 B.C. The battle of Thapsus. Declared dictator for ten years.
- 45 B.C. The battle of Munda. Appointed imperator for life.
- 44 B.C. The conspiracy. Assassinated in the senate house on the Ides of March.

II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY

I. GAUL

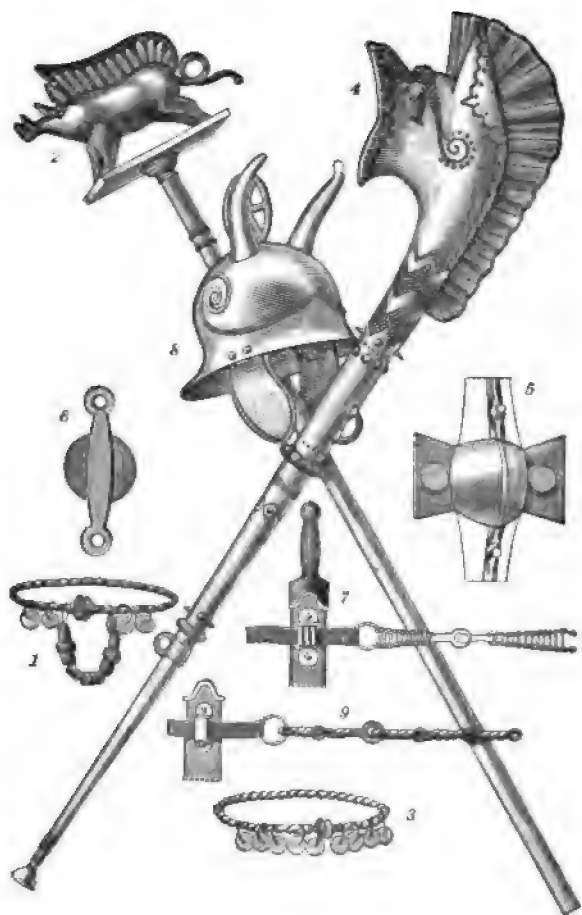
The province to which Cæsar was assigned as proconsul in 58 B.C. by the agreement of the triumvirate, comprised Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum (see map at the beginning of the book).

Cisalpine Gaul, or *Citerior Prōvincia*, had been subdued and reduced to order by the Romans long before Cæsar's time. The inhabitants were fully in accord with the Roman government, and upon them the governor relied largely for his troops and supplies.

Transalpine Gaul, in its narrower sense called also *Uterior Prōvincia* or Narbonnese Gaul, had more recently come under Roman dominion. Its inhabitants, while subservient to Rome, still retained in great part their own customs.

Illyricum had been added to Rome in 168 B.C. It was a fertile country and a considerable source of supplies, but required little of Cæsar's attention.

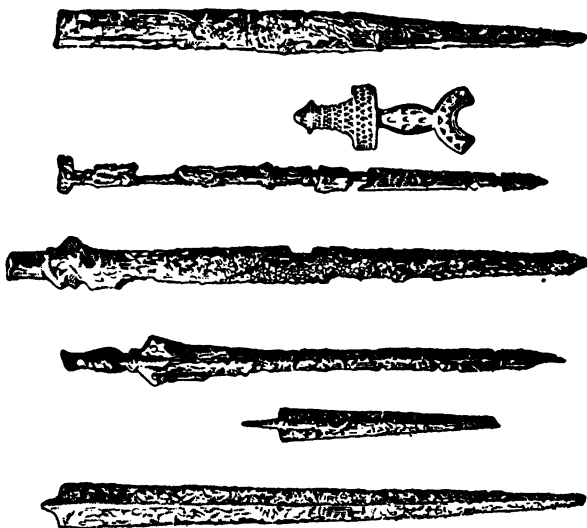
The unsubdued territory north of Cæsar's province, between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, was known as Free Gaul (*Libera Gallia*). It was inhabited by various tribes, wild, warlike, and turbulent, agreeing only in their defiance of Roman rule. Their numbers were great, and the country was savage, dangerous, and unexplored. Although this great territory was not under his authority and was outside of his province, Cæsar undertook its subjugation, a task of formidable proportions.



GALLIC REMAINS

1 and 3, necklaces with amber and coral pendants ; 2, military standard ; 4, bronze trumpet ; 5, iron boss of shield ; 6, iron fastening ; 7, sword-hilt and belt ; 8, iron helmet ; 9, iron belt-chain

The Gauls were not all on the same plane of civilization. Those that were nearest to the Province had become somewhat civilized through contact with the traders, but those in the north were still barbarous. Their houses were huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. They raised the coarser grains, but knew little about the cultivation of fruits. They kept large herds, and lived to a great extent upon meat.



GALLIC SWORDS

They understood the art of weaving, and their chief garments were trousers and bright-colored tunics. The coast tribes were skillful sailors and familiar with the building of ships. The Aquitani and some other tribes worked mines. The Gauls in general used a rough sort of coinage.

Their weapons were pikes and lances, bows and slings, and long, two-edged swords hanging from a metal chain. The chief warriors wore a kind of chain armor. They also

used helmets and shields. On the helmets they often wore great horns and grotesque images of beasts.

2. BRITAIN

Our acquaintance with Britain begins with Cæsar, though Phœnician traders had visited the island centuries before. The people that he found there differed but little from those of northern Gaul. Cæsar gained some victories, but made no lasting conquests in the short time that he remained there. Britain was not invaded again by the Romans for almost a hundred years.

3. GERMANY

Germany was for the Romans a country wild, unknown, and full of mystery. They found it necessary constantly to protect their boundaries against the German tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar met them in several battles, but his chief object was to drive German invaders from Gallic territory, to defend the Gallic frontier, and to inspire the Germans with a dread of Roman might.

As in the case of the Gauls and the Britons, Cæsar is the first writer to give an account of Germany and the Germans. His description of this country and its inhabitants, in Books IV and VI of the "Commentaries," is full of interest.



A ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER

III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS

Cæsar, for all his genius, could not have performed his great work of conquest without a well-trained army. His foes were unnumbered ; the country was strange, vast, and difficult, with miles of forests and swamps ; the perils were great, and the hardships innumerable. Against such odds he had a force of only a few thousand men. To understand the marvelous efficiency of his army we must know how it was organized, the Roman methods of warfare, and the meaning of the frequent military terms that Cæsar employs. •

I. THE LEGION

The smallest division of the Roman army was the *century*, which, as its name indicates, was made up of 100 men ; two centuries made a *maniple* of 200 men ; three maniples made a *cohort* of 600 men ; and ten cohorts made a *legion* of 6000 men. This number, however, is only theoretical, for, as the size of the legion was constantly diminished by disease and battle without being replenished, the actual number of soldiers was much smaller than this. Each of Cæsar's legions contained, on an average, about 3600 men, and its divisions were as follows :

1 century (<i>centuria</i>)	60 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple (<i>manipulus</i>)	120 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort (<i>cohors</i>)	360 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion (<i>legiō</i>)	3600 men

The legion (of about 3600 men) was the regular unit of the infantry force of the army.

2. THE CAVALRY

Cæsar's cavalry (*equitatus*, *equitēs*) was made up chiefly of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. It was engaged, for the most part, in skirmishing and scouting, and he relied little upon it in battle. It was divided into *ālæ* of about 330 horsemen each; these were divided into 10 squadrons (*turmae*) of 33 horsemen each, and these again into 3 squads (*decuriae*) of 11 each. The officers of the cavalry were called decurions (*decuriōnēs*).



ROMAN CAVALRYMAN

3. THE AUXILIARIES

By the word *auxilia* Cæsar means the infantry forces that were enlisted from allied and subject states. A number of these *auxilia* were enrolled with his regular army. They were the so-called light-armed soldiers (*militēs levis armātūrae*); some of them were bowmen and slingers, others wore light armor and carried light, round shields (see pp. 61, 64, 65). As they lacked both the training and the trustworthiness of the legions, Cæsar did not greatly depend on them in emergencies.

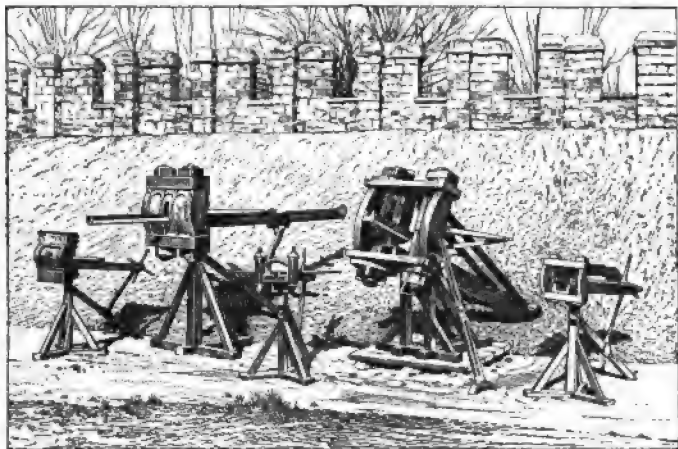
4. THE ARTILLERY

The Romans had no knowledge of gunpowder, siege cannon, or field guns; but the place of modern artillery was supplied by what in general were called *tormenta*. These were powerful engines for hurling missiles, the propelling force being furnished by the twisting (*torqueō*, *tortus*) of rope, sinews, or hair.

They were used in siege operations rather than in ordinary battle. Three kinds are mentioned by Cæsar :

a. The *catapulta* (see pp. 104, 120), which shot great arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction, like a cannon.

b. The *ballista* (see p. xxviii), which hurled huge stones through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells.



TORMENTA WITHIN A FORTIFIED CAMP

c. The *scorpiō* (see p. xxix), which may be described as a mounted crossbow or a small *catapulta*, with the same kind of propelling force. All these *tormenta* were accurate and deadly weapons. The range of the first two was from 1000 to 1500 feet.

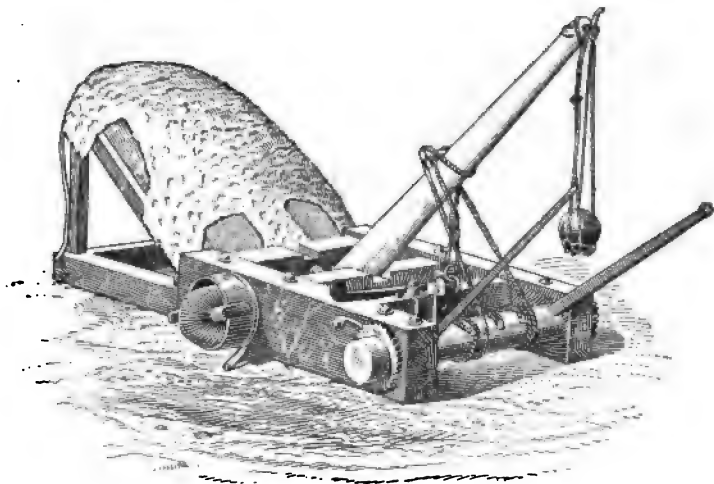
5. THE BAGGAGE TRAIN

Impedimenta is the name given to all the baggage of the army except that which was carried by the individual soldiers. It was borne on the backs of horses and mules, or, at times, in wagons (*carri*). Those in charge of this baggage were called *cālōnēs*.

6. THE OFFICERS

a. Imperātor. The chief officer was the *dux bellī*, who after his first victory was called *imperātor*.

b. Lēgātī. The *lēgātī* were a body of men of senatorial rank who acted as a board of advisers to the commander. Cæsar had ten of these officers. They were sometimes put in charge



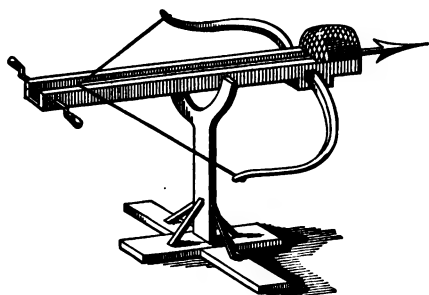
BALLISTA

of legions, and sometimes sent as ambassadors, according to the orders of the general. This will account for the twofold use of the word in the "Commentaries."

c. Quaestōrēs. The *quaestōrēs* were officers elected annually by the people. A *quaestor* attended each *imperātor* in his province and looked after the pay, clothing, equipment, and the like of the soldiers.

d. Tribūnī. In each legion were six *tribūnī militum*. Each of them in turn had command of the legion. They were usually young men without experience, some of them from the

nobility, and owed their appointment to family influence. Their inefficiency was such that Cæsar transferred their military duties to the *lĕgātī*, and employed them in an administrative capacity.



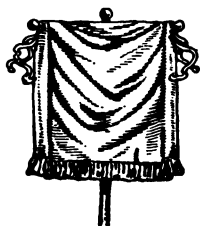
SCORPIO

e. Centuriōnēs. The *centuriō*, as the name indicates, was the commander of the century. Thus there were two centurions in each maniple, six in each cohort,

and sixty in each legion. These were the real leaders of the men and were promoted from the ranks for their fighting qualities. The first centurion of the first cohort was called *prīmus*, or *prīmipīlus*, and was always an officer of unusual ability and prowess.

7. THE STANDARDS

Signa (see p. 73) is the general word used for all the standards of the army. That of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle, *aquila* (see pp. 121, 129). Each cohort had its own standard. That of the light-armed troops was called the *vēxillum*, which was



VEXILLUM



CENTURION

• also the name given to the flag of the general at headquarters.

The latter was a large white banner, with the name of the general and of the army in red.



AQUILA

8. THE MUSIC

The *būcina*, or bugle, the shape of which is uncertain, sounded the changes of the night watch and the morning reveille. The *tuba*, or trumpet, was a straight, deep-toned horn of brass, more than three feet long, which gave the signal for attack or retreat. The same signal was repeated by the

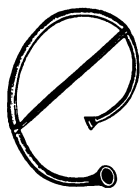
cornū, or horn, a circular instrument with a sharp tone. The *lituus*, a brass trumpet about four feet long with a curved joint at the end, was used by the cavalry.



TUBA

9. EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIERS

The legion was made up of picked Roman soldiers, and was Cæsar's main reliance in battle. Romans between the ages of seventeen and forty-six might be drafted for the legion. Its discipline was almost perfect. The period of service of a legionary was twenty years.



CORNU

a. The Clothing. The uniform of the legionary soldiers consisted of a sleeveless or partly sleeved woolen tunic, reaching nearly to the knee. Over this was a coat of leather, reënforced by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders. This was the *lōrica*. In cold weather a heavy cloak was worn, fastened over the right shoulder with a clasp. About the waist was a leather belt, bound with metal, and with strips



LITUUS

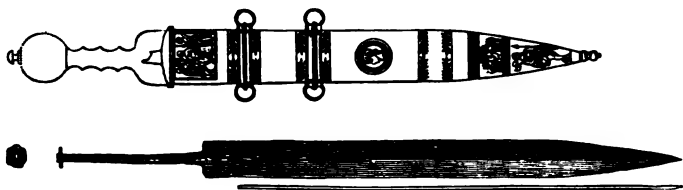
of protecting metal hanging in front. The covering for the feet was a low boot (see p. 102).

b. The Armor. The defensive armor, besides the *lōrica*, consisted of a helmet and shield. The helmet was made of iron or leather strengthened with brass, open in front, and adorned with a white crest (see p. 74). Adornments of this character were what Cæsar calls *īnsignia*. The shield was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide. It was made of wood, was slightly curved, with metal around the rim and also in the middle. In the center was a metal knob, the *umbō*, used both for diverting weapons and for striking blows. The regular name for the shield is *scūtum* (see p. 128).



SCUTUM

c. The Weapons. The weapons of offense were the sword and spear. The sword, *gladius*, was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was hung from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip. The spear, *pīlum*, used for hurling rather than for thrusting, was six or seven feet

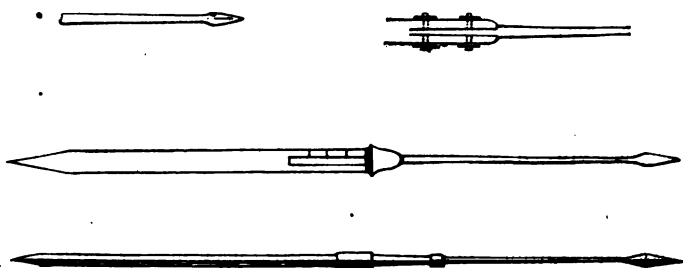
ROMAN SWORDS (*GLADIJ*)

long. It consisted of a strong iron shank fitted into a wooden shaft about four feet long. The *pīlum* took the place of the rifle in modern warfare. Its weight was about three pounds, and it could be hurled with deadly effect.

NOTE. For all matters discussed in section 9, see the illustration of the legionary soldier facing page xxiv.

d. Other Equipment. Besides his arms and armor each soldier carried tools for digging, cooking utensils, including a small handmill for grinding his allowance of grain, a supply of grain for two weeks, *cibāria*, and two stakes, *vāllī*, for fortifying the camp. Most of this equipment was carried in a bundle on a forked stick over the shoulder. This personal baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina* (see p. 69).

e. Food; Pay; Discipline. The food was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley, for which the general word *frumentum* was used. Corn was unknown. The allowance of



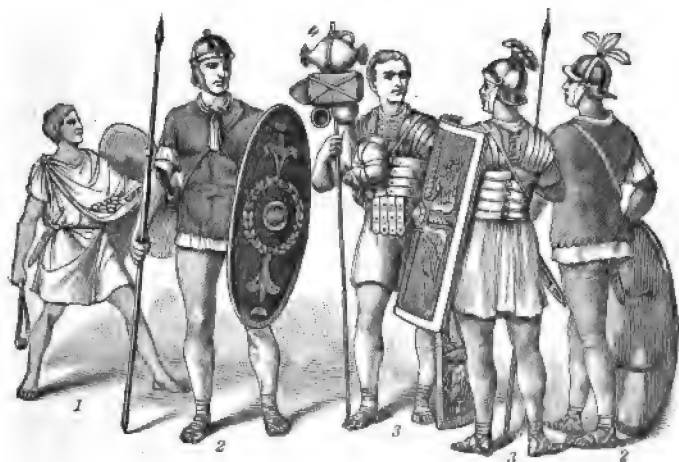
PILA

grain for a day was about two pounds. An allotment of about two pecks was made every fifteen days. This regular diet might be varied by foraging or by purchase from the traders who followed the army.

The soldier was paid at the rate of twelve and a half cents a day, about the usual daily wage of laborers at Rome. Deduction was made from this for food and equipment furnished by the state. The discipline was strict. Punishments for insubordination or neglect of duty consisted in degradation from rank, dismissal from service, withholding of pay, extra assignments of labor, reduction of rations, flogging, or even death. There were also various rewards of merit.

IO. THE CAMP

No matter where the army halted for the night or how little was the likelihood of attack, a camp, *castra*, was always made with the utmost care. The site chosen was, if possible, on high ground and near to wood and water. If the nature of the location permitted, the camp was made in the form of a



ROMAN SOLDIERS AND EQUIPMENT

1, funditor; 2, 2, *militēs levis armātūrae*; 3, 3, *legiōnārii*; 4, *sarcina*

square. A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select a site for the camp and to stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the position of the four gates: the *porta prætōria* facing the enemy, the *porta decumāna* in the rear, the *porta prīncipālis dextra* on the right side, and the *porta prīncipālis sinistra* on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street called the *via prīncipālis*. The forward part of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear part to the officers and their

attendants. A vacant space about one hundred feet wide was left all about the inside of the encampment. In an open square near the middle was the tent of the commander (*prætōrium*).

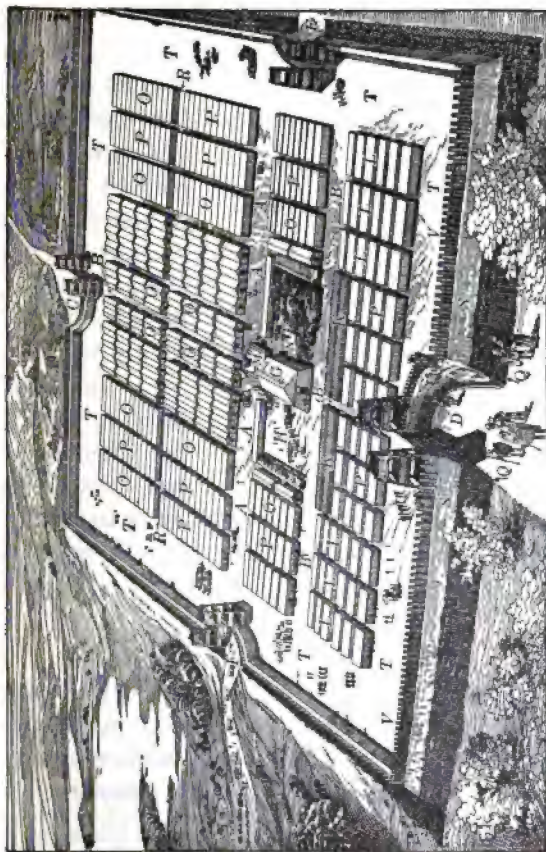
As soon as the legions arrived on the spot selected, the soldiers began the construction of the camp (see p. 52). A ditch, *fossa*, usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep was dug all around the square, and the earth therefrom, thrown on the inside, was built into an embankment, *agger*, from six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top for standing room. On this wall was erected a breastwork, *vāllum*, made with the stakes that the soldiers carried. After the camp was fortified, the quarters of the soldiers were put up, which were leather tents in summer and huts in the winter. Guards were kept constantly at the gates.

II. THE MARCH

An ordinary day's march was about fifteen miles. Cæsar, however, made many forced marches, *magna itinera*, of as many as twenty-five miles a day. When an enemy was near, a vanguard, *agmen primum*, of cavalry and light-armed infantry and scouts preceded. The rear was also protected by a guard, *agmen novissimum*. The legions regularly marched one behind another, each followed by its own *impedimenta*; but if an enemy was near, most of the legions in fighting trim, that is, without packs, went ahead in an unbroken line, followed by the combined baggage train (*impedimenta*), and one or two legions guarded the rear. When the legions were without encumbrance and hence ready for fighting, they were said to be *expeditæ*. See page 45.

12. THE BATTLE

The usual order of battle was what was called the *aciēs triplex*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the



CASTRA ROMANA

[A, via principalis
B, via decumana
C, porta praetoria
D, porta decumana
E, porta principalis dextra

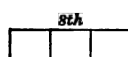
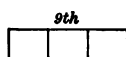
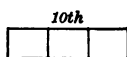
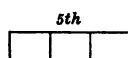
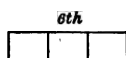
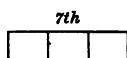
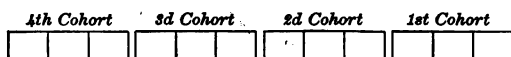
F, porta principalis sinistra
G, praetorium
H, forum
K, K, tribunū
L, auxilia

M, āra
N, tribunā
O, equitēs
P, peditēs
Q, fossa

R, via quintana
S, agger
T, intervallum
V, vallum

three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other. The legions occupied the center of the battle line, *media aciēs*, and the auxiliaries and cavalry the wings, *cornua*.

When the hostile army was within range (not more than one hundred feet), the soldiers hurled their javelins and then charged with drawn swords. When the first line was weary or



ACIES TRIPLEX

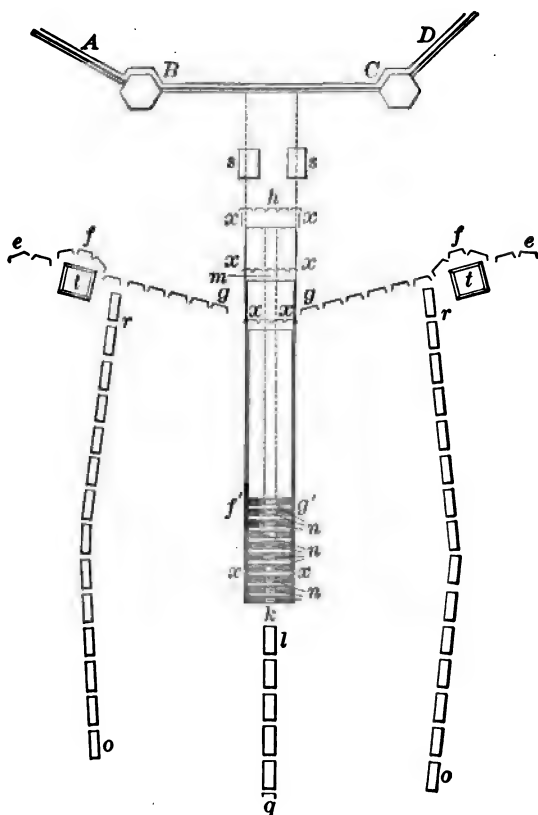
in disorder, it was relieved by the second while it recovered for another charge. The third line was constantly held in reserve and only brought into action when the first two were hard

pressed, or when it was necessary to repel an attack in the rear or on the flanks. This general method was varied, of course, according to circumstances (see p. 31).

13. THE SIEGE

Cæsar often found the towns in Gaul protected by massive stone walls surrounded by a great moat. The taking of these towns usually called for a particular mode of warfare in which the Romans had attained great skill. There were three methods of taking a town :

a. Oppugnātiō Repentīna. If there seemed to be a chance of success, the town was stormed at once, without siege preparations. This was the *oppugnātiō repentīna*. The *tormenta* were brought up and trained on the defenders upon the walls. When these were driven off, the moat was filled with brush

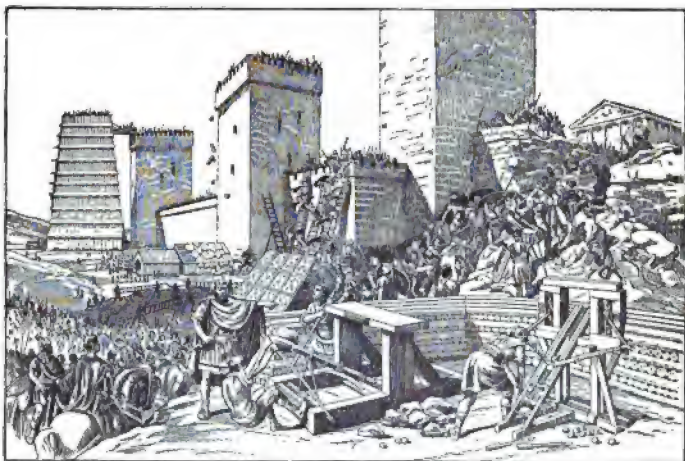


GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS

ABCD, hostile wall; *ss*, *testudinēs aggestitiæ*, protecting those leveling the ground; *hk*, *agger*; *xx*, *phutei*, protecting those working on the *agger*; *efg*, line of *phutei*, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, *turrei*, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with *tormenta*; *ro*, *vineæ* approach to archers and slingers; *lq*, covered way of *vineæ* approaching the point of beginning the *agger*; *f'g'*, position of *phutei* covering the beginning of the *agger*; *mn*, covered gallery through the *agger*; *nnn*, steps and platforms of the several stories

and earth, and the Romans, locking their shields in a *testūdō* (see the picture below and at page 110), attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

b. Oppugnātiō. If this mode seemed impracticable, a regular siege, *oppugnātiō*, was begun. A mound of earth and timber, *agger*, was begun at a distance from the wall nearly out of reach of the missiles of the defenders. This mound was

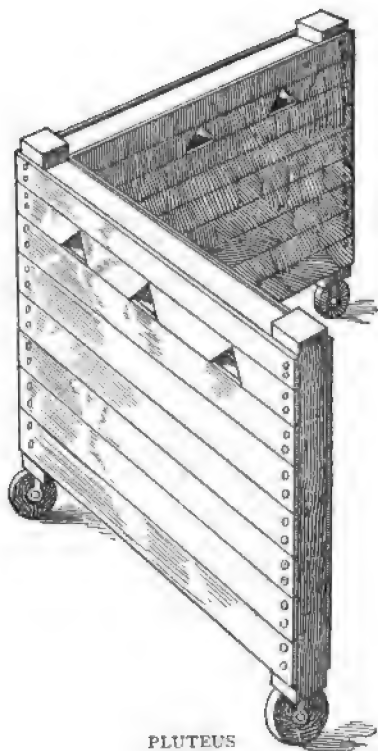


OPPUGNATIO

gradually extended in the direction of the wall, its height being constantly increased until it was even with the top of the wall. Connecting galleries ran through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover. Those working on the outside of the *agger* were protected by lines of large standing shields, *plutei*, which were moved forward as the work advanced. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of arbor-like sheds called *vīneae*, extending the length of the *agger*. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers (see pp. 61, 64) and by *tormenta* standing

behind *plutei*. As a further protection light-armed soldiers were stationed in large movable towers, *turrēs*, which stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, being increased in height, story by story, as it advanced. When close to the wall, the besiegers were protected by strong sheds of wood called *testudinēs* or *mūsculī*, instead of by the *plutei*. When the *agger* reached the moat, this was quickly filled up with brush and wood. The walls of the town were sometimes undermined, or pulled down from the top by means of huge iron hooks called *falcēs mūrālēs*. But the surest engine of destruction was the battering-ram, *ariēs*, a huge swinging beam from sixty to one hundred feet long, with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This, swung under a *vīnea*, or in the lowest story of a *turris*, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. Sometimes the top of the wall was gained by means of the *turris* without the *agger*.

c. *Obsidiō*. When all other means were unavailing, the town was invested on every side (*obsidiō*) and the inhabitants were starved into submission.

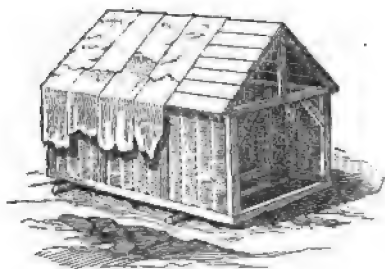


PLUTEUS

14. THE SHIPS

Two kinds of ships were used by Cæsar :

a. The war galleys, *nāvēs longæ* (see pp. 92, 94, 117). These were the vessels used in naval battles, and were made



VINEA

long, low, and narrow. They were armed at the prow with a sharp beak (*rōstrum*) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships, and were propelled by both sails and oars. The sails were one or two in number, and the oars were arranged in two or three rows, or banks. When these vessels were under full sail and

oarage, they could nearly equal a modern steamship in speed.

b. The freight and transport vessels, *nāvēs onerariæ* (see p. 117). These were made shorter, broader, and deeper than the war galleys, and could thus carry heavier burdens and more successfully weather a heavy sea.

RITCHIE

THE ARGONAUTS

The voyage of the Argonauts is one of the most famous of Greek stories. Pelias had expelled his brother Æson from his kingdom in Thessaly, and had attempted to take the life of Jason, the son of Æson. Jason, however, escaped, and grew up to manhood in another country. At last he returned to Thessaly; and Pelias, fearing that he might attempt to recover the kingdom, sent him to fetch the Golden Fleece from Colchis, supposing this to be an impossible feat.

Jason, with a band of heroes, started in the ship Argo (called after Argus, its builder), and after many adventures reached Colchis. Here Æetes, king of Colchis, who was unwilling to give up the Fleece, set Jason to perform what seemed an impossible task, namely, to plow a field with certain fire-breathing oxen, and then to sow it with dragon's teeth. Medea, the daughter of the king, however, assisted Jason by her skill in magic, first to perform the task appointed, and then to procure the Fleece. Medea then fled with Jason, and to delay the pursuit of her father, sacrificed her brother Absyrtus.

After reaching Thessaly, Medea caused the death of Pelias, and was, with her husband, expelled from the country. They removed to Corinth; and here Medea, becoming jealous of Glauce, daughter of Creon, caused her death by means of a poisoned robe. After this Medea was carried off in a chariot sent by the sun god, and Jason was soon afterwards accidentally killed.

The wicked uncle

ERANT ōlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Ex hīs Aesōn rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditatē adductus, nōn modo frātre suū expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesonis filium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amicis Aesonis, ubi sententiam

Pelīae intellēxērunt, puerum ē tantō periculō ēripere cōnstituērunt. Noctū igitur Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, cum haec audivisset, etsi rē
 5 vērā magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris prae-buit, et quae causa esset mortis quaesivit. Illi tamen, cum intellexerent dolōrem eius falsum esse, nesciō quam fābulam dē morte puerī finxērunt.

A careless shoestring

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā
 10 vī et fraude occupātum āmitteret, amicum quendam Delphōs misit, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs sē contulit, et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in praesentiā periculum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, si quis veniret calceum
 15 ūnum gerēs, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset: nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimiserat, et certam diem conveniendī dixerat. Diē cōstitutā magnus numerus hominum undique ex agris cōvēnit; inter quōs autem Iāsōn fuit, quī ā puerō apud cen-
 20 taurum quendam habitāverat. Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trānseundō nesciō quō flūmine āmisit.

The Golden Fleece

Iāsōn igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit: quem cum vidisset Peliās, subitō timōre adfectus est; intellēxit enim
 25 hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quidam nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum, quod Phrixus ōlim ibi reliquerat.

Cōstituit igitur Peliās Iāsoni negōtium dare ut hōc vellere poterētur : cum enim rēs esset magni periculi, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse : Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessivit, et quid fieri vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Iāsōn autem, etsi bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscepit. 5

The building of the good ship Argo

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficisci ; dīmisit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent et diem certam conveniendi dicerent.

Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs comportārī iussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In his rēbus circiter decem diēs cōsumpti



THE BUILDING OF THE ARGO

sunt ; Argus enim, quī operī praeerat, tantam diligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitudinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbre facta est. 25

The anchor is weighed

Intereā ea diēs adpetēbat quam Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdixerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multi, quōs aut rei novitās aut spēs glōriæ movēbat, undique conveniēbant. In

hōc numerō Herculem ferunt fuisse et Orpheum, citharoe-
dum praeclārissimum, et Thēseum et Castorem et multōs
aliōs, quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex his Iāsōn, quōs
arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda pericula parātissimōs esse,
5 eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adiūnxit;
tum paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia
comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum
idōneam nactus magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

A fatal mistake

Nōn multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellāti sunt quī
10 in istā nāvi vehēbantur) insulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum
attigērunt, et ē nāvi ēgressi ā rēge illius regiōnis hospitio
excepti sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorāti ad sōlis occāsum
rūrsus solvērunt; at, postquam pauca milia passuum prōgressi
sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut cursum tenēre nōn
15 possent, et in eandem partem insulae unde nūper profecti
erant magnō cum periculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cū
nox esset obscura, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem
inimicam vēnisse arbitrāti arma rapuērunt, et eōs ēgredi
prohibēbant. Ācriter in litore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse,
20 quī cum aliis dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautis occīsus est. Mox
tamen, cum iam dilūcēsceret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre, et
arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem
occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

The loss of Hylas

Postridiē eius diēi Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam
25 esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōnsecūta
erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca milia passuum prōgressus
ante noctem Mysiā attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in anco-
ris exspectāvit; ā nautis enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam

quam sēcum habērent iam dēficere: quam ob causam quidam ex Argonautis in terram ēgressi aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quidam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem, quae fontem colēbant, cum iuvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs eius, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre adfecti diū frūstrā quaerēbant; Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vēstigia puerī longius secūti erant, ubi tandem ad litus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

Dining made difficult

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad oppidum Salmydēssum nāvem adpulērunt, in terram ēgressi sunt. Ibi cum ab incolis quaesissent quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs facti sunt Phineum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiā hunc caecum esse et quōdam suppliciō adfici, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in filiōs suōs prae buisset. Cuius supplici hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam, speciē horribili, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpŷiae appellābantur, Phineō summam molestiam adferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum adpositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, haud multum āfuit quīn Phineus famē morerētur.

25

The Harpies beaten

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant cum Argonautae nāvem adpulērunt. Phineus autem, simul atque audivit eōs in suōs finēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvisus est. Sciēbat

enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quin sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem misit, qui Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiā vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phineus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in periculō suae
 5 rēs essent, et prōmisit sē magna praemia datūrum esse si illi remedium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libenter sūscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna adposita est, Harpȳiae cēnāculūm intrāvērunt, et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae primum gladiis volu-
 10 crēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, qui ālis instrūcti sunt, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpȳiae, rei novitāte perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque postea umquam rediērunt.

The Symplegades

15 Hōc factō, Phineus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritās grātiās referret, Iāsoni dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vitāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitudine, quae ā Iove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida perveniret. Hae parvō intervāllō in mari natābant,
 20 et si quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibili celeritāte concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phineō doctus est quid faciendum esset, Iāsōn sublātis ancoris nāvem solvit, et lēni ventō prōvectus mox ad Symplēgadēs adpropinquāvit: tum in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat ēmisit. Illa
 25 rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit, et priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūsus concurrerent, Argonautae, intellegentēs omnem spem salutis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vi rēmīs contendērunt, et
 30 nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dis grātiās

libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō periculō ērepti essent; sciēbant enim nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem tam fēliciter ēvēnisse.

A heavy task

Brevi intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Eō cum nāvem 5 adpulissent et in terram ēgressi essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētē sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille cum audivisset quam ob causam Argonautae vērissent, irā commōtus est, et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem 10 nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sentiā prōmisit sē vellus trāditūrum, si Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dixisset sē ad omnia pericula subeunda parātum esse, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Primum iungendī erant duo tauri speciē horribili, 15 quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, his iūctis, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. His auditis, Iāsōn, etsi rem esse summī periculi intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem rei bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

The magic ointment

At Mēdēa, rēgis filia, Iāsonem adamāvit, et ubi audivit 20 eum tantum periculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōsiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam scientiam medicinae habēbat) hōc cōsiliū iniit. Mediā nocte clam ex ūrbe ēvāsit; et post- 25 quam in montēs finitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum sūcō expressō unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōfirmāret. Hōc factō Iāsōni unguentum dedit: praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō isti labōrēs cōficiendī

essent corpus suum et arma m̄ane oblineret. Iāsōn, etsi
 paene omnibus magnitudinē et viribus corporis antecellēbat
 (vīta enim omnis in v̄nātiōnibus atque in studiis rei mili-
 t̄aris cōstiterat), cēnsēbat tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn negle-
 5 gendum esse.

Sowing the dragon's teeth

Ubi ea diēs v̄nit quam r̄x ad arandum agrum ēdixerat,
 Iāsōn ortā lūce cum sociis ad locum cōstitūtum sē contulit.
 Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit in quō tauri inclūsī erant: tum
 portis apertis taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficul-
 10 tāte iugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil
 contrā Iāsonem valēre, magnopere mirātus est; nesciēbat
 enim filiam suam auxilium ei dedisse. Tum Iāsōn, omnibus
 adspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam diligen-
 tiam prae-buit ut ante meridiem tōtum opus cōnfēcerit. Hōc
 15 factō, ad locum ubi r̄x sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis
 postulāvit: quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā
 cum diligentīā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat
 tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī essent viri armātī mirō quōdam
 modō gignerentur.

A strange crop

Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat: imperā-
 verat enim ei Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gige-
 nerentur sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs
 in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn lassitudīne exanimātus quiētī sē trā-
 didit, dum virī istī gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat;
 25 sub vesp̄rum tamen ē somnō subitō excitātus rem ita ēvē-
 nisse ut praedictum esset cognōvit: nam in omnibus agri
 partibus virī ingentī magnitudīne corporis, gladiis galeisque
 armātī, mirum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō,
 Iāsōn cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse
 30 putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa)

in mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illi undique ad locum concurrerunt, et cum quisque sibi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habere vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictis gladiis, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī occisi essent, reliquī volneribus cōfectī ā Iāsonē nullō negōtiō 5 interfectī sunt.

Flight of Medea

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, irā graviter commōtus est: intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quā Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellexeret sē in magnō fore 10 periculō sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōstituit. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad fugam parātis, mediā nocte, insciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit, et multis cum lacrimis obsecrāvit 15 eum nē in tantō discrimine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per eius auxilium ē magnō periculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendi audivit, hortātus est nē patris iram timēret. Prōmisit autem sē quam primum eam in nāve 20 suā āvectūrum.

The seizure of the Fleece

Postridiē eius diēi Iāsōn cum sociis suis ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem idōneam nacti ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et 25 sociis ad mare relictis, quī praesidiō nāvi essent, ipse cum Mēdēa in silvās contendit. Pauca milia passuum per silvam prōgressus vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēsum vidit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis: nōn modo

enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnitus erat, sed etiam dracō quidam speciē terribili arborem custodiēbat. At Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rānum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat
 5 venēnō infēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum adpropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertis adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit : deinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam celerimē pedem rettulit.

Back to the Argo

10 Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, animō anxiō reditum Iāsōnis exspectābant : intellegēbant enim id negōtium summī esse periculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāvērunt, dē eius salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus acci-
 15 disset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium ducī ferrent : et dum proficisci parant, lūmen quoddam subitō cōspiciunt mīrum in modum inter silvās refulgēs : et magnopere mirāti quae causa esset eius rei, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum vēnissent, Iāsōnī et Mēdēae
 20 advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis eius causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dis grātiās libenter rettulērunt quod rēs tam fēliciter ēvēnisset.

Pursued by the angry father

His rēbus gestis, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōn-
 25 scendērunt, et sublātis ancoris primā vigiliā solvērunt : neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrāti sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante inimicō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit filiam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse,

sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūci iussit, et militibus impositis fugientēs insecūtus est. Argonautae, quī sciēbant rem in discrimine esse, omnibus vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingenti esset 5 magnitudīne, nōn eādē celeritatē quā Colchī prōgredi poterant. Quae cum ita essent, minimum āfuit quīn ā Colchis sequentibus caperentur, neque enim longius intererat quam quō tēlum adici posset. At Mēdēa, cum vidisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omni spē dēpositā infandum hoc 10 cōnsilium cēpit.

A fearful expedient

Erat in nāve Argonautārum filius quidam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa ex urbe fugiēns sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōstituit interficere, eō cōnsiliō, ut membrīs eius in mare 15 coniectis cursum Colchōrum impediret; sciēbat enim Aeētēn, cum membra fili vidisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse. Neque opiniō eam fefellit; omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi primum membra vidit, ad ea conligenda nāvem dētīnērī iussit; dum tamen ea geruntur, Argo- 20 nautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ex cōspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ēridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus sī longius prōgressus esset, animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut fili corpus ad sepul- 25 tūram daret.

The bargain with Pelias

Tandem post multa pericula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus ad rēgem Peliam (quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat) statim sē contulit, et vellere aureō mōnstrātō ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum 30

sibi trāderētur : Peliās enim pollicitus erat, si Iāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum ei trāditūrum. Postquam Iāsōn quid fieri vellet ostendit, Peliās primum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem tristitiā tacitus permānsit ; deinde ita locūtus est :
5 "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōfectum, neque dubium est quīn suprēmus meus diēs adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vivam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre ; tum, cum ego ē vitā disces-serō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāsset.

Boiled mutton

10 His rēbus cognitis, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit, et rēgnī cupiditāte adducta cōstituit mortem rēgī per dolum inferre. Hōc cōstitūtō, ad filiās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est : "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte iam esse cōfectum, neque ad labōrem rēgnandi perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūsus
15 iuvenem fieri ?" Tum filiae rēgis, his auditis, ita respondērunt : "Num hoc fieri potest ? Quis enim umquam ē sene iuvenis factus est ?" At Mēdēa respondit : "Scitis mē medicīnae summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vōbis dēmōn-strābō quō modō haec rēs fieri possit." His dictis, cum
20 arietem aetāte iam cōfectum interfēcisset, membra eius in vāse aēneō posuit, et igne suppositō in aquam herbās quāsdam infūdīt. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret, carmen magicum cantābat. Post breve tempus ariēs ē vāse exsiluit et viribus refectis per agrōs currēbat.

A dangerous experiment

25 Dum filiae rēgis hoc mirāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est : "Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vōs igitur, si vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās

conicite; ego herbās magicās praebebō.” His auditīs, filiae
rēgis cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum putā-
vērunt: patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt et membra eius
in vās aëneum coniēcērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quān hoc
maximē ei prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omninō aliter ēvēnit ac 5
spērāverant: Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit quibus
ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt,
patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. His rēbus
gestis, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniuge suō rēgnum accep-
tūram esse: at civēs, cum intellexerent quō modō Peliās 10
periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt: itaque Iāsonē et
Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsis, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

A fatal gift

Post haec Iāsōn et Mēdēa ē Thessaliā expulsi ad urbem
Corinthum vēnērunt, cuius urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum
obtinēbat. Erat autem Creonti filia ūna, nōmine Glaucē; 15
quam cum vidisset, Iāsōn cōstituit Mēdēam uxōrem ab sē
dimittere, eō cōnsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātirimōnium dūceret.
At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, irā gra-
viter commōta iūre iūrandō cōfirmāvit sē tantam iniūriam
ultūram. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā 20
arte contextam et variis colōribus tinctam: hanc quōdam
infēcit venēnō, cuius vīs tālis erat ut, si quis eam vestem
induisset, corpus eius quasi igni ūrerētur. Hōc factō, vestem
ad Glaucēn misit: illa autem nihil malī suspicāns dōnum
libenter accēpit, et vestem novam (mōre fēminārum) statim 25
induit.

Flight of Medea, and the death of Jason

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per
omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum summō cruciātū ad-
fecta ē vitā excessit. His rēbus gestis, Mēdēa furōre atque

āmentiā impulsa filiōs suōs necāvit : tum magnum sibi fore
periculum arbitrāta sī diūtius ibi manēret, ex eā regiōne
fugere cōstituit. Hōc cōstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō
periculō auxilium sibi ferret. Sōl autem hīs precibus com-
5 mōtus currum quendam misit, cui dracōnēs ālis instrūcti
iūcti erant. Mēdēa nōn omittendam tantam occāsiōnem
arbitrāta currum cōscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis
ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus
mīrō modō occisus est. Ille enim (sive cāsū sive cōsiliō
10 deōrum) sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in litus subducta erat,
ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in
eam partem ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subitō dēlāpsa virum infēli-
cem oppressit.





HANNIBAL

CORNELIUS NEPOS

THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

Hannibal as a general

HANNIBAL, Hamilcaris filius, Karthāginiēnsis. Sī
vērū est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus
omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum
Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentiā
quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitudīne cūctās 5
nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque cum eō congressus est in
Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domi civium
suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre
potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvicit ūnius virtutem.

His hatred of the Romans

Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium paternum ergā 10
Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit ut prius animam quam id dēposu-
erit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārū opum
indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem
reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx 15
Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī ut
ūsque ā rubrō mari arma cōnātus sit inferre Italiae. Ad
quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntāte
explōrārent darentque operam cōnsiliis clandestinīs ut Han-
nibalem in suspiciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsis 20
corruptus alia atque antea sentiret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent,

idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōsiliis
sēgregārī vīdisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eique cum
multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hoc
adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē,
5 utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam impe-
rātor proficiscēns Karthāgine, Iovī optimō maximō hostiās
immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quaesivit ā
mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter
accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere,
10 tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulō
dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre
īstituerat, eamque cēteris remōtis tenentem iūrāre iussit
numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūs
iūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī
15 ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquō tempore eādem
mente sim futūrus. Quā rē, sī quid amicē dē Rōmānīs
cōgitābis, nōn imprūdentē fēceris sī mē cēlāris; cum qui-
dem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in eō
prīncipem posueris."

He takes Saguntum, and marches to Italy

20 3. Hāc igitur quā diximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam
profectus est; cuius post obitū, Hasdrubale imperātōre
suffectō, equitātui omni praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō
exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Karthāginem
delātum publicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal minor
25 quīnque et viginti annis nātus imperātor factus proximō tri-
enniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum,
foederātam civitātem, vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs
comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricā mīsīt, alterum cum
Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Italiam
30 sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pŷrēnaeum trāsiit. Quācumque iter

fēcit, cum omnibus incolis cōnfixit; nēminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quae Italiam ab Galliā sēiungunt, quas nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē sal-
 5 tus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concidit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā elephantus ōrnātus ire posset quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans, and advances into Apulia

4. Cōnfixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scipiōne
 10 cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidi apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō idem Scipiō cum conlēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum iis manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōfligāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Apenninum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam.
 15 Hōc itinere adeō gravi morbō adficitur oculōrum ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamtum premerētur lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōsulem apud Trasimēnum cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multō post C. Centēnium praetōrem cum
 20 dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam ei vēnērunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōsulārēs, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat
 25 cōsul.

He outwits Quintus Fabius Maximus, and wins other battles

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā Rōmam profectus est nullō resistente. In propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur,

Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō ei sē obiēcit. Hic clausus locōrum angustii noctū sine ūllō detrīmentō exercitūs sē expedit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōri, dedit verba. Namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuencōrum dēligāta incendit eiusque generis 5 multitūdinem magnam dispālātā immisit. Quō repentinō obiectō visū tantum terrōrem iniēcit exercitui Rōmānōrum ut ēgredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rūfū, magistrum equitum parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōsulem, in Lūcānis absēns in 15 insidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quinquēs cōsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quā rē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegi possit quantus ille fuerit: quam diū in Italiā fuit, nēmō ei in aciē restit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēensem pugnam in campō castra posuit.



A COIN OF THE FABIAN FAMILY

Hannibal is recalled to Africa, and is defeated by Scipio

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēsum revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium eius Scīpiōnis quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam 25 fugārat. Cum hōc exhaustis iam patriae facultātibus cupivit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea congredērētur. In conloquium convēnit: condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et 30

duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiāti sunt ei; quōs



PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS

nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī
5 reliquōs ē fugā conlēgit; novīs dilēctibus paucīs diēbus
multōs contrāxit.

Peace between Rome and Carthage; Hannibal flees to Syria

7. Cum in adparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Karthā-
giniēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō
sētius exercitui postea praefuit rēque in Āfricā gessit usque
10 ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium cōsulēs. His enim magis-
trātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērunt quī senātui
populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent quod cum iis pācem
fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simul-
que peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis essent captivique

redderentur. His ex senātūs cōsultō respōsum est :
'Mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse ; obsidēs quō locō
rogārent futūrōs ; captivōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hanniba-
lem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum
nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum 5
habērent itemque frātre eīus Māgōnem.' Hōc respōnsō
Karthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem
revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperā-
tor fuerat annō secundō et vicēsīmō : ut enim Rōmae cōn-
sulēs, sic Karthāgine quotannis annui binī rēgēs creābantur. 10
In eō magistrātū parī diligentīā sē Hannibal prae-buit ac
fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectigālībus nōn
solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānis ex foedere penderētur,
sed etiam superesset quae in aerārīō repōnerētur. Deinde,
M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Karthāginem 15
vērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendi grātiā missōs,
priusquam iis senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in
Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī
nāvēs duās quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequi,
misērunt ; bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentis 20
disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

Hannibal aids Antiochus

8. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat,
L. Corneliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quinque nāvibus
Āfricam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeorum, sī forte Karthā-
giniēnsēs ad bellum indūcere posset Antiochī spē fidūciāque, 25
cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficis-
cerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātre excivit. Id ubi Poenī
rescivērunt, Māgōnem eādem quā frātre absentem adfē-
cērunt poenā. Illi dēspērātis rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac
vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē 30

Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est : namque alii naufragiō, alii ā servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendō bellō cōn-



A COIN OF ANTIOCHUS THE GREAT

siliis eius pārere voluisset quam in suscipiendō instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis dē summā imperi dimicāssset. Quem etsi multa stultē

cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nullā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iisque
15 adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīō mari cōnflixit. In quō cum multitudīne adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

Hannibal goes to Crete

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset si suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortyniōs
20 vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōferret cōsiderāret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium ; magnam enim sēcum pecūniā portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complū-
25 rēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus principibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortunās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis, statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omni suā pecūniā complet easque in prōpatulō domi abicit.

Gortynii templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus iis tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

Hannibal in Pontus

10. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, inlūsīs Crētēnsibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem 5 animō fuit ergā Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amīcissimus, bellum- 10 que inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā. Sed utrobique Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī; quem sī remōvisset, faciōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucis diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. 15 Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vivās conligi eāsque in vāsa fictilia conici. Hārum cum effēcisset magnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium classiāriōs convocat iisque praecipit 20 omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut scirent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iis pollicētur praemiō fore. 25

He helps Prusias to defeat Eumenes

11. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrisque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōstitutā, priusquam signum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quō

locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulam-que ostendēs sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quin aliquid
5 dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā suis, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistulā nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad inrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cuius rei etsī causam mirābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit.
10 Hōrum in concursū Bithynī Hannibalis praeceptō ūiversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit, quam cōsecūtus nōn esset nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō litore erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversā-
15 riōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō risum pugnantibus concitārunt neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās cōnspexērunt serpentibus, nōvā rē perterriti, cum quid potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua
20 castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiis parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

Hannibal is demanded by the Romans; he takes poison

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī
25 Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāmininum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminius senātui dētulit. Patrēs cōnscripti, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in

Bithŷniam misērunt, in iis Flāmininum, quī ab rēge pete-
rent nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet.
His Prūsias negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā
sē fieri postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitī esset; ipsi, si
possent, comprehenderent: locum ubi esset facile inventū- 5
rōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod ei
ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibus
partibus aedifici exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū venīret
quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmāhōrum vēnissent ac
multitūdine domum eius circumdedit, puer ab iānuā 10
prōspiciēns Hannibali dixit plūrēs praeter cōnsuetūdinem
armātōs adpārere. Quī imperāvit ei ut omnēs forēs aedifici
circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō un-
dique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūn-
tiāssset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn 15
fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītā esse
retinendam. Quā nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor
pristinārum virtūtum venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre
cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

The date of Hannibal's death. His writings

13. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus labōri- 20
bus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsīmō. Quibus cōsulibus in-
terierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Mārcellō
Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mortuum in annālī suō scrip-
tum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō
Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. 25
Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hic tantus vir tantisque bellis
districtus nōn nihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot
eius libri sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfectī, in iis ad Rhodiōs
dē Cn. Mānlī Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Huius bellī

gesta multi memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex hīs duo qui cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vixērunt quam diū fortuna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

- 5 Sed nōs tempus est huius librī facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius, conlātis utrōrumque factis, qui viri praeferendī sint possit iūdicārī.



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

CÆSAR IN GAUL

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

I. HIS EARLY YEARS

GAIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR nōbilissimā Iūliōrum familiā nātus est. Annō sextō decimō patrem āmisit. Cornēliam, Cinnae filiam, in mātirimōnium dūxit. Cinna, Cornēliae pater, erat inimicus Sullae. Hāc rē Caesar bonis ā Sullā spoliātus est. Nē necārētur, Rōmā excessit et in occultō sē continēbat. Postrēmō veniam impetrāvit et Rōmam revertit.

In bellō primum in Asiā versābātur. Post expugnātiōnem urbis magnae, corōna, honōris causā, ei dōnāta est. Post mortem Sullae ex Asiā Rhodum dēcessit ut in hāc insulā arti ōrātōriae operam daret. Hūc dum prōgreditur, ā praedōnibus captus est. Apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs mānsit. Postrēmō comitēs eius per pecūniās magnās eum praedōnum manibus liberāvērunt.

Deinde Caesar in urbem Milētum properāvit classemque contrāxit. Hāc classe praedōnēs persecūtus est et superāvit.

NOTE. The syntax used in this biographical sketch is confined to the constructions presented during the first year of the study of Latin. The constructions named below each section are illustrated in the accompanying text, and should be reviewed by a study of the references to the grammar (see pp. 342 ff.).

The special vocabularies contain the words not found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

Agreement of Appositives, § 58	Ablative of Cause, § 109
Dative of Indirect Object, § 82	Ablative of Place Where or in Which, § 120
Dative with Adjectives, § 90	Ablative of Place from Which, § 101. <i>a</i>
Accusative of Direct Object, § 91	Ablative of Time When, § 119
Accusative of Place Whither, § 97	
Ablative of Agent, § 104	
expugnātiō, -ōnis, f. a storming	praedō, -ōnis, m., robber, pirate
Mīlētus, -ī, f. Mīlē'tus	Rhodus, -ī, f., Rhodes
ōrātōrius, -a, -um, adj., of oratory	sextus, -a, -um, adj., sixth

II. HIS POLITICAL CAREER

Caesar creātus quaestor Hispāniam ulteriōrem obtinuit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsiret, parvus quīdam vīcus cōspectus est. Tum comitēs inter sē disputābant et rogābant, "Num etiam illic est locus glōriæ?" "Mālō,"
 5 respondit Caesar, "ibi primus esse quam Rōmae secundus."

Aedilis creātus Forum et Capitōlium porticibus ōrnāvit. Etiam multōs et amplōs lūdōs fēcīt. His rēbus in grātiam populi vēnit, sed in aes aliēnum magnum incidit.

Cōsul deinde cum Bibulō creātus, societātem cum Pom-
 10 pēiō et Crassō iūnixit. Lēgem quandam cum tulisset et huic lēgī senātus repugnāret, rem ad populum rettulit. Bibulus in Forum profectus ut lēgī resisteret, ā populō armis expulsus est, et ex eō tempore Caesar ūnus erat cōsul.

Agreement of Adjectives, § 59	Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113
Agreement of Finite Verbs, § 65	Ablative of Place Where; Locative, § 120. <i>a</i>
Dative with Intransitive Verbs, § 83	Clauses of Purpose, § 174
Ablative of Means, § 106	
aedilis, -is, m., aedile, commissioner of public works	Forum, -ī, n., the Roman Forum
Capitōlium, Capitōlī, n., the Capitol (chief temple of Jupiter at Rome)	lūdus, -ī, m., game, sport
	porticus, -ūs, f., covered walk between columns, colonnade

III. THE CONQUEST OF GAUL

Post cōsulātum Caesar Galliam prōvinciam obtinuit. Haec prōvincia multa milia passuum aberat. Illic novem annis, quibus in imperiō erat, Gallōs superāvit et Galliam in fōrmam prōvinciae redēgit. Cum Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, primus Rōmānōrum contendit et eōs magnis calamitatibus oppressit.

Dē rēbus gestis militum Rōmānōrum et Caesaris ipsius hae et multae aliae fābulae narrantur. Ōlim Caesar, exercitū perturbātō, scūtum ē militis manū ēripuit, et in primam aciem prōgrediēns proelium restituit. Idem aliō proeliō 10 legiōnis aquiliferum in fugam conversum comprehendit et in contrāriam partem retrāxit. Tum dextram manum ad hostem tendēns, "Quō tū," inquit, "abis? Illic sunt hostēs quibuscum dīmicāmus." Hāc cohortātiōne timōrem minuit et legiōnēs vincī parātās vincere docuit. 15

Agreement of Relative Pronouns,
§ 64. *a*

Prepositions, §§ 148, 149, 150. *a*
Partitive Genitive, § 76

Accusative of Extent of Space, § 96

Ablative of Time within Which,

§ 119

Pronouns *īdem*, *ipse*, §§ 25, 136

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, go away
fābula, -ae, *f.* story

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, relate
ōlim, *adv.* once upon a time, once

IV. CÆSAR CROSSES THE RUBICON

Intereā Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus erat. Post mortem Iūliae, Caesaris filiae quae Pompēiō nūpta erat, aemulātiō inter socerum et generum ērūpit; nam nec Pompēius parem nec Caesar superiōrem ferre poterat. Caesar adhūc in Galliā dētīnēbātur, neque Rōmam redire volēbat 20 ut cōsulātum alterum peteret. Itaque ad senātum scripsit

sē petere absentem velle. Id senātus, ab amicis Pompēi permōtus, negāvit. Hanc iniūriam ut vindicāret, Caesar in Italiam rediit.

Caesar ad bellum gerendum parātus, cum exercitū Rubi-
5 cōnem flūmen, prōvinciae suae finem, trānsiit. Hoc ad
flūmen paulum cōstitit, et cōgitāns quantam rem inciperet,
“Etiam nunc,” inquit, “reverti possumus; quod sī hoc



CÆSAR CROSSING THE RUBICON

parvum flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armis agi necesse erit.”
Postrēmō autem cum verbis “Iacta est ālea” exercitum
10 trādūcī iussit. Plūrimis urbibus occupātis, Brundisium con-
tendit, quō Pompēius cōsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Possessive Genitive, § 73

Accusative as Subject of Infinitive, § 92

Ablative Absolute, § 117

Demonstrative Pronouns *hic, ille*, § 134. *a*

Clauses of Purpose, § 174

Indirect Discourse, §§ 202–204, 92, 204. *a*

Tenses of the Infinitive, Present; Perfect, § 166. *a, b*

Indirect Questions, § 201

amulātio, -ōnis, *f.* rivalry**ālea**, -ae, *f.* a die (used in playing a game of dice)**Brundisium**, **Brundisī**, *n.* Brundisium (a port of southern Italy)**gener**, -erī, *m.* son-in-law**Parthī**, -ōrum, *m.* the Parthians (a people living near the Caspian Sea)**Rubicō**, -ōnis, *m.* the Rubicon (a river in northern Italy)**vindicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *v.* avenge

V. THE WARS IN THESSALY, PONTUS, AND AFRICA

Eōs, cum in Ēpīrum fūgissent, Brundisiō Caesar secūtus est. Dyrrachī complūrēs diēs morātus est, dum cōpiæ quās subsequi iusserat pervenirent. Dum hic morātur, summae audāciæ facinus magnum fēcit; nam castris noctū ēgreditur et clam nāviculam cōnscendit. Quamquam turbida tempestās coōrta est, in mare prōtinus dērigī nāvigium iubet. Gubernātōrī trepidantī, "Cūr timēs?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis"; neque prius ventō et fluctibus cessit quam paene obrutus est.

Deinde Caesar per Ēpīrum prōgressus Pompēium Pharsā-
licō proeliō obruit. Fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūtus,
rēgī Aegypti bellum intulit. Eō victō in Pontum trānsiit
et Pontī rēgem quīque diēbus prōfligāvit. Hoc proelium
mōre fulminis fēcit, quod prope eōdem tempore vēnit, cōn-
fēcit, discessit. "Prius victus hostis est quam vīsus est,"
erat Caesaris praedicātiō. Postea hunc triumphum tribus
verbis nūntiāvit, "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Tum Iubam, Numidia
rēgem, hostibus suis auxilium dantem, superāvit.

Agreement of Appositives, § 58

Genitive of Description, § 77

Dative with Compounds, § 84

Accusative of Duration of Time,

§§ 89, 96

Ablative of Manner, § 110

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.* Egypt**Dyrrachium**, **Dyrrachī**, *n.* Dyrrachium (in Epirus)**Ēpīrus**, -ī, *f.* Epi'rus (in Greece)**fulmen**, -inis, *n.* thunderbolt
quamquam, *conj.* although

Iuba, -ae, *m.*, JubaNumidia, -ae, *f.*, Numidia (in northern Africa)

obruō, -ere, obrui, obrutus, overwhelm

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pharsalus (scene of Pompey's defeat)Pontus, -i, *m.*, Pontus (in Asia Minor)praedicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, announcementtriumphus, -i, *m.*, triumphturbidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, violent

vehō, vehere, vexi, vectus, bear, carry

VI. CÆSAR IN SPAIN. TRIUMPHANT RETURN
TO ROME

Deinde Caesar gravius Āfricō bellum in Hispāniā suscēpit. Huius bellī, ingentis atque horribilis, Cn. Pompēius, Magni filius, adulēscēns fortissimus, dux causaque erat. Undique ad eum auxilia propter patris nōmen conveniēbant. Nullum
 5 bellum illō periculōsius umquam ā Caesare initum est. Proeliō quōdam dubiō dēscendit equō cōstititque ante cēdentem aciem suōrum, increpitāns Fortūnam quod sē ad eam calamitātem servāsset. Namque sine dubiō crēdidit calamitāti sibi id bellum futūrum esse. Etiam dēnūntiāvit
 10 militibus suis sē nōn cessūrum. "Vidēte," inquit, "quō in locō imperātōrem vestrum dēserātis." Pudor magis quam virtūs aciem restituit. Cn. Pompēius victus est et Caesar, omnium victor, Rōmam rediit. Omnibus quī contrā eum arma tulerant ignōvit et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

Agreement of Predicate Noun, § 58

Ablative of Comparison, § 105

Interrogative Pronoun, § 27

Possessive Adjectives, § 131

Tenses of the Infinitive, § 166

Dative of Purpose or End, § 89

Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa, AfricanFortūna, -ae, *f.*, Fortune (the goddess of fortune)Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spainquīnquiēns, *adv.*, five times

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, celebrate a triumph

VII. THE REFORMS OF CÆSAR. HIS AMBITIONS

Deinde Caesar effecit ut status rei publicae instrueretur. Fastos corripuit annumque ad cursum solis accommodavit. Repetundarum convictos ordine senatorio movit. Portoria peregrinis mercibus imposuit. Leges quae praecipue luxuriam minuerent exercuit. De ornanda instruendaque urbe consilia plura ac maiora in dies iniit.

Haec et alia agentem et cogitantem mors oppressit. Dictator enim in perpetuum creatus agere insolentius coepit. Senatui ad se venientem sedens excipit, et quendam monentem ut adsurgeret inimico vultu respexit. Cum Antonius, Caesaris in omnibus bellis comes et tum consul alter, capiti eius diadema, insigne regium, imposuisset, id ita ab eo repulsum est ut non offensus videretur. His rebus commoti unus et alter rogabant, "Rexne esse cupit Caesar?" Quam rem non nulli, quorum Cassius et Brutus erant duces, contra eum coniuraverunt constitueruntque eum Idibus Martiis in senatu interficere.

Ablative of Separation, § 101

Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160-162

Clauses of Result introduced by *ut* or *ut non*, § 179

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I

adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēcturus, rise*corrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus*, correct*diadēma, -atis, n.*, royal crown*dictātor, -ōris, m.*, dictator (Roman magistrate, appointed for six months in emergencies)*fāstī, -ōrum, m. pl.*, the calendar*Mārtius, -a, -um, adj.*, of March*merx, mercis, f.*, merchandise*peregrīnus, -a, -um, adj.*, foreign*repetundae, -arum, f. pl.*, extortion*sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessurus*, sit*senātorius, -a, -um, adj.*, senatorial

VIII. THE IDES OF MARCH

Futūrī periculi plūrima indicia obtulerant dī immortalēs. Calpurnia, uxor Caesaris, territa nocturnō visū timēbat nē quid ei accideret, orābatque ut Īdibus Mārtiis domi manēret. Spurinna, haruspex, monuerat ut proximōs diēs trīgintā
 5 cavēret nē fātālēs essent. Eōrum diērum ultimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Itaque hōc diē Caesar Spurinnae "Nōne scīs," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās vēnisse?" Spurinna respondit, "Nōn Īdūs praeteriērunt." Eō diē cum Caesar in senātum vēnis-
 10 accessit, et Caesarem, cum recūsāret, utrōque umerō com-
 prehendit. Deinde Caesarem clāmitantem, "Ista quidem vis est!" Casca, qui erat in numerō coniūrātōrum, volnerat. Caesar cōnātus prōsilire, aliō volnere tardātus est, neque, cum undique coniūrāti pugiōnibus eum peterent, ab eis sē
 15 dēfendere potuit. Tum vērō dictātor togā caput tēxit et ita tribus et vīginti volneribus cōnfectus concidit.

Personal Pronouns, §§ 129, 130
 Substantive Clauses of Purpose,
 § 183
 Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*,
 § 189

Substantive Clauses after Verbs of
 Fearing, § 184
 Temporal Clauses introduced by
cum, § 194. 2
 Indefinite Pronouns, § 144

coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, conspira-
 tors
 fātālis, -e, *adj.*, fated, hence dan-
 gerous
 haruspex, -icis, *m.* a soothsayer
 iste, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.*
 this, that (referring to the person
 addressed)

prōsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, leap forward
 pugiō, -ōnis, *m.*, short dagger, pon-
 iard
 toga, -ae, *f.*, toga (the outer gar-
 ment of the Romans)
 umerus, -ī, *m.* the upper arm, the
 shoulder
 visus, -ūs, *m.* an apparition, vision



From the painting by C. Rochegrosse
THE ASSASSINATION OF CÆSAR, 44 B. C.

IX. THE CHARACTER OF CÆSAR

Caesar, si potestās dēligendi sibi data esset, tālem mortem optāvisset; nam pridīe quam occisus est, in sermōne cum quibusdam amicis conlātō, dixit repentīnam mortem esse suā quidem sententiā commodissimam.

Temperantia, quō rārior in principibus est, hōc magis laudāri dēbet. Caesar, quamquam studiis bellī erat asperrimus, tamen in victoriā erat clēmentissimus. Cum enim dēprehendisset quāsdam litterās ad Pompēium missās ab eis quī sibi restiterant, tamen legere nōluit, sed combussit; nam praeterita condōnāre, nōn novās offēnsiōnis causās reperire voluit. Haec laudātiō est Cicerōnis: "Nihil oblivīscī solet Caesar nisi iniūriās." Eōs quī inimicī sibi fuerant nōn solum amicōs fēcit, sed etiam honōribus auxit. C. Memmīum cōsulem efficere cōnātus est, etsi asperrimae fuerant eius in ipsum ōrātiōnēs.

Predicate Genitive, § 73. *a*

Two Accusatives, Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative, with Verbs of Making, Choosing, etc., § 94

Ablative of Measure of Difference, § 114

Ablative of Respect, § 115

Concessive Clauses with *cum*, § 192

asper, -era, -erum, adj., harsh, savage, cruel, fierce

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero (the great orator)

clēmēns, -entis, adj., mild, merciful

dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, seize, discover

laudātiō, -ōnis, f., praise, eulogy

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, desire, pray for

X. PERSONAL APPEARANCE OF CÆSAR

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, ōre plēnō, nigris oculis, capite calvō. Quam calviti dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe inimicīs iocō erat, molestē ferēbat. Quā rē iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae, quod ei senātus dēcrēverat, libenter recēpit

atque ūsŭrpāvit. Tam temperātus erat in omnibus vitæ partibus ut Catō diceret ūnum Caesarem ēvertendae rei pŭblicae cōsiliū cēpisse sōbriū. Rei militāris et equitandī perītissimū, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns erat. In
 5 agmine nōn numquam equō, saepius pedibus antecēdebat, capite nūdō, seu sōl seu imber erat. Longissima itinera incrēdibili celeritāte cōficiēbat, ut persaepe ante nūntiōs perveniret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae nandō trāiciēbat. Nihil, ut visum est, eum potuit prohibēre cō-
 10 nāta sua perficere. Omnīnō Caesar erat vir quem hostēs timērent, amīcī amārent, omnēs admirārentur.

Ablative of Description or Quality,

§ 116

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, love

calvitium, calvitī, *n.*, baldnesscalvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, balddēfōrmitās, -ātis, *f.*, disfigurement

equitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ride (on horseback)

ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, upset, overthrow

excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tall, high

gestō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wear

Gerund (an active verbal noun),

§ 223. 1-4

Gerundive (a passive verbal adjective), § 224. *a-d*iocus, -ī, *m.*, jestlaurea, -ae, *f.*, laurel wreathniger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black, dark

nō, nāre, nāvi, —, swim

persaepe, *adv.*, very oftensōbrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, sober, in one's senses

ūsŭrpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make use of





CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR IMPERATOR



THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

CÆSAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Gaul, its divisions and nations

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quārum
 ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam qui
 ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur.
 Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt.
 Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et 5
 Sēquana dividit.

The characters of the nations

Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā
 cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt, mini-
 mēque ad eōs mercatōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae
 ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique 10
 sunt Germānis qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum con-
 tinenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētii quoque
 reliquōs. Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis
 proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs
 prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 15

The boundaries of each

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae
 5 ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

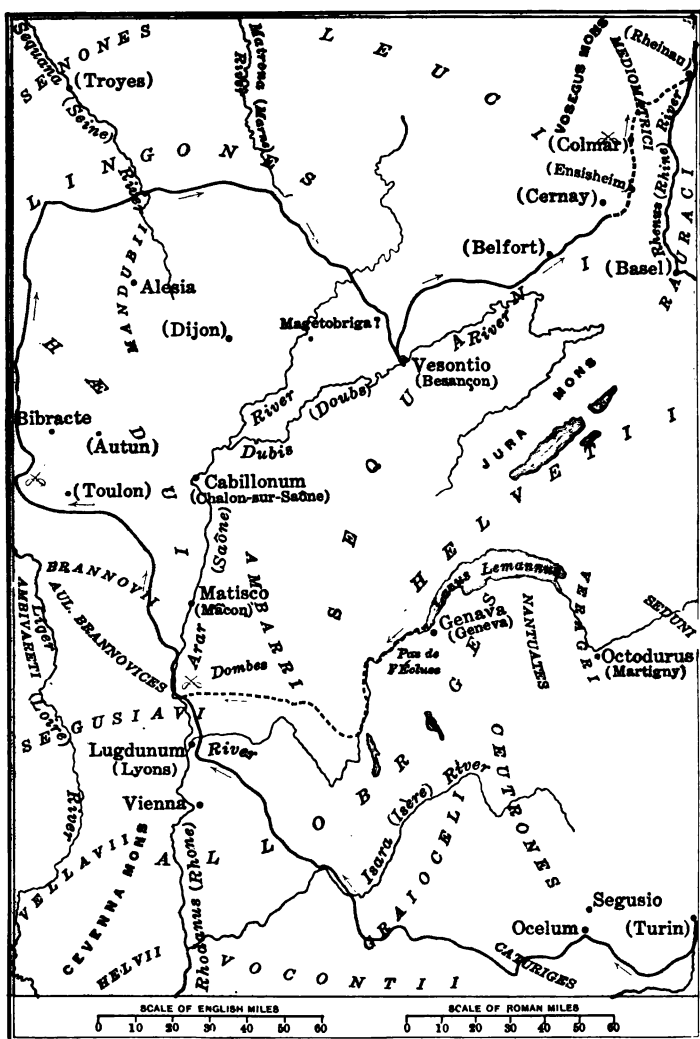
Orgetorix, the Helvetian, plans to invade Gaul

10 2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt, et civitātī persuāsīt ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae
 15 imperiō potiri.

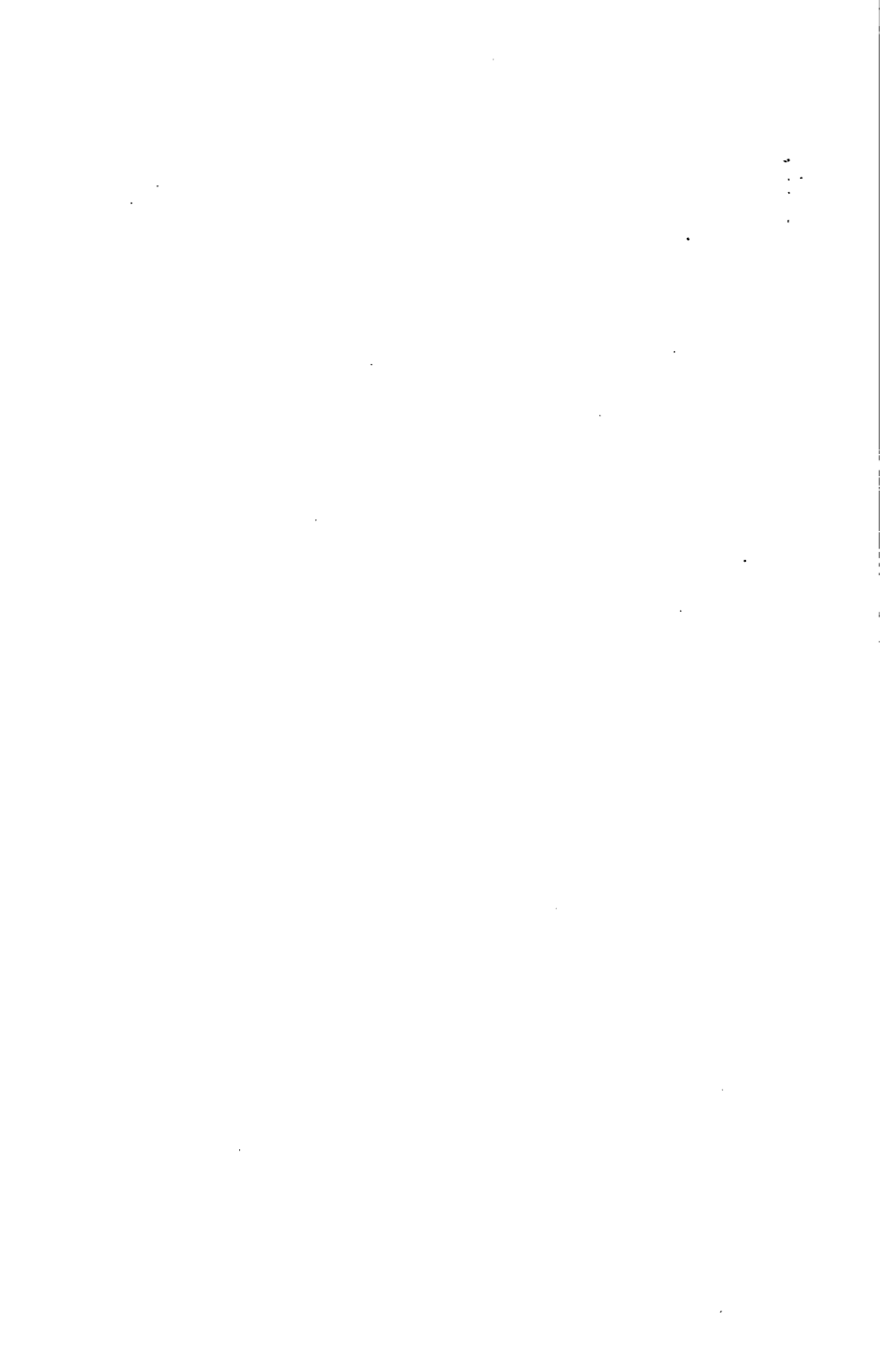
The Helvetii are persuaded because they need more territory

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsīt, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs
 20 et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit.

His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidi magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne
 25 autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 58 B.C.



They decide on the preparations that must be made

3. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre : iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōn- 5 firmāre. Ad eas rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt ; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Orgetorix is placed in charge, but conspires with neighboring chiefs to seize the sovereignty

Ad eas rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in 10 Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat ; itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, qui eō tempore principātum in civitatē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, 15 eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset : nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent ; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōn- 20 firmat. Hāc ōratiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

Orgetorix is brought to trial, but escapes

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Dam- 25 nātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur.

Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numērū habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam
5 diceret sē ēripuit.

His death

Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quī ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

The Helvetii burn their towns and begin their journey

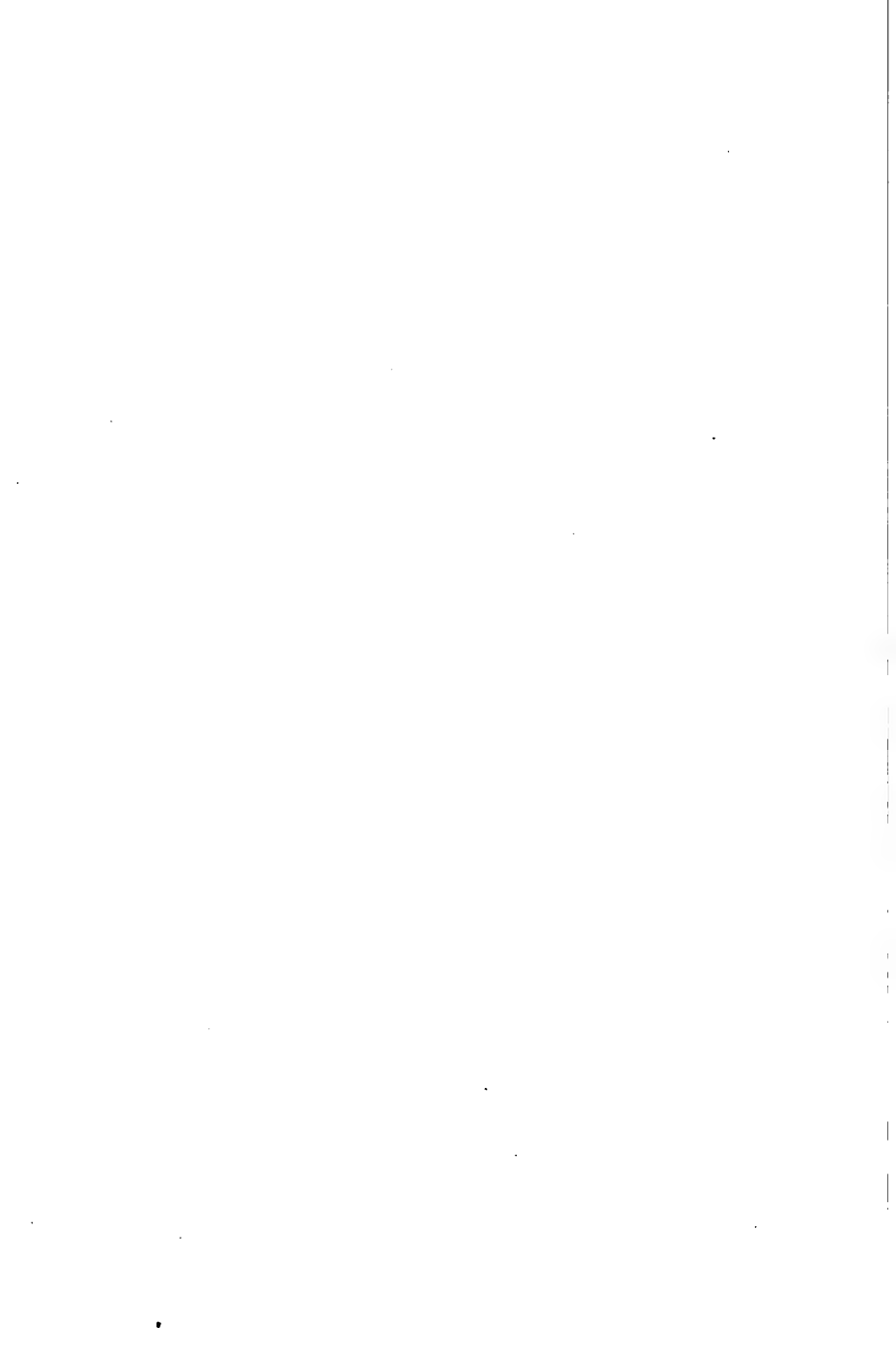
10 5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod
15 sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

They are joined by other tribes

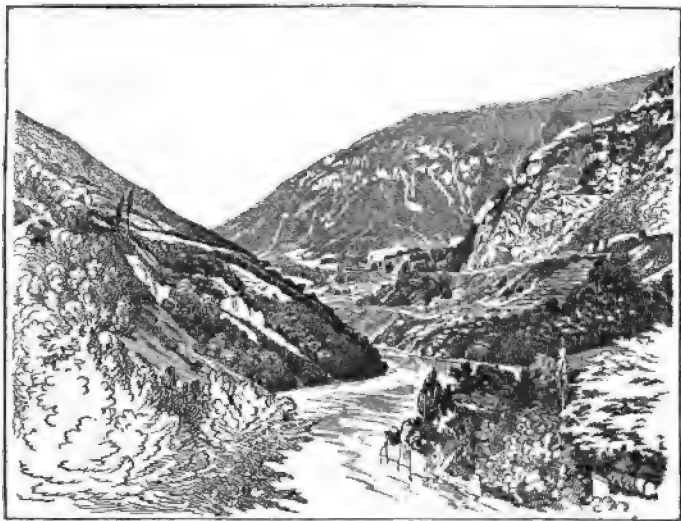
Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti eōdem ūsī cōsiliō, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, ūnā cum
20 eis profiscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

The two possible routes are described

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,
25 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut



facile perpauci prohibere possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod



THE JURA PASS (*PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE*)

inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllis locis vadō trānsitur.

They decide to go through the Province

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvē- 5
tiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs
pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum
bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) existimābant,
vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Om-
nibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dicunt quā diē 10
ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v.
Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Cæsar takes measures to stop them

7. Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōti quam maximum potest
5 militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindi.

They send an embassy to Cæsar to ask his permission

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cuius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, qui
10 dicerent 'sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter haberent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

Cæsar puts them off to gain time

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum
15 missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum
20 sūmptūrum: si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

Meanwhile he fortifies the bank of the Rhone to prevent their crossing

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui finēs Sēquanōrum

ab Helyētiis dividit, milia passuum ūndēvigintī mūrum, in altitudinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perducit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii attempt to cross, but are driven back

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī 5 ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō flūminis erat, nōn numquam 10 interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Persuaded by Dumnorix, a Haeduan chief, the Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their territory

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītis propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte 15 persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs 20 rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant. 25

Cæsar deems this movement also a danger to the Province

10. Caesari renūntiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum pe-
5 riculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret.

He adds to his forces and marches against the Helvetii

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit ; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit
10 duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernis ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulterīorem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit.

He meets with resistance, but crosses the Rhone with his army

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus
15 occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontīōrum ulterīōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit ; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam
20 trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Helvetii ravage the country of the Haedui

11. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Hæduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haedui, cum sē suaque ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt

rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.'

The Haedui and their neighbors ask Caesar for help

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguinei 5
Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis
agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item
Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque ha-
bēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi
praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adduc- 10
tus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus for-
tūnis sociōrum cōsumptis, in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenirent.

Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Saône

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sē-
quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte ita ut ocu-
lis, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi 15
ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs
Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārū Helvētiōs
id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen
Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus
ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum 20
flūmen trānsierat.

Caesar attacks and destroys the Tigurini, who had not yet crossed

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs adgressus magnam partem
eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in pro-
ximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus;
nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. 25

And thus avenges a former disgraceful defeat

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiaē insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est; quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurini eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Caesar crosses the Saône and receives a Helvetian embassy

10 13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōti, cum id quod ipsi diēbus viginti aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgatiōnis Divicō
15 princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico begs and threatens

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: * "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū, Caesar, cōstitueris atque esse volueris;
20 sīn bellō persequī persevērābis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populī Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ei qui flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūti tribuere, aut nōs dēspicere; nōs

* Passages marked with a star have been changed from indirect to direct discourse. For the indirect form, see pp. 199 ff.

ita ā patribus maiōribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nitāmur. Quā rē nōli committere ut is locus ubi cōstitimus ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.”

5

Cæsar offers conditions of peace which Divico declines

14. His Caesar ita respondit : * “ Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāvērunt memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni accidērunt; quī sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus 10 est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliæ oblivisci volō, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāstis, 15 memoriam dēponere possum?

“ Quod vestrā victoriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinet. Cōsuērunt enim di immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum 20 ulcisci volunt, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniorem impūnitatem concēdere.

“ Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicēmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduis dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulistis, item sī 25 Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.”

Divico respondit : * “ Ita Helvētīi ā maiōribus suis institūti sunt uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; eius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.” Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Cæsar's cavalry meets with a slight reverse

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Cæsar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.
- 5 Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proeliū committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt.

The Helvetii march north and Cæsar follows

- Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīi, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs
- 10 lacerare coepērunt. Cæsar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius
- 15 quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum interesset.

The Hædui fail to furnish the grain which they promised

16. Interim cotidiē Cæsar Hæduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō
- 20 quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā minus utī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Hæduī: cōferri, comportāri, adesse dicere.

Cæsar is embarrassed and upbraids the Hæduan chiefs

- Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē
- 25 frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, — in

his Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn 5 sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

Liscus lays the blame on a faction opposed to the Romans

17. Tum dēmum Liscus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: * "Sunt nōn nullī quōrum auctōri- 10 tās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hī sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbent: 'Praestāre, si iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque 15 dubitāre quin, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī.' Ab eisdem vestra cōnsilia quaeque in castris geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur: hī ā mē coērcērī nōn possunt. Quin etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus tibi ēnūntiāvī, intellegō quantō id cum 20 periculō fēcerim, et ob eam causam, quam diū potui, tacui."

In private he discloses the power and ambition of Dumnorix, the leader of this faction

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. 25 Dicit liberius atque audācius.

Others support the charges of Liscus

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vērā : * " Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audaciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberalitatem grātiā, cupidus rerum novarum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālīa parvō
5 pretiō redēpta habet, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audet nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet, neque solum domī sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs
10 largiter potest; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāvit, ipse ex Helvētiis uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāvit.

They declare that Dumnorix favors the Helvetii

" Favet et cupit Helvētiis propter eam adfinitatem, ōdit
15 etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātie atque honoris est restitūtus. Sī quid accidit Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendi venit; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed
20 etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat."

Cæsar discovers that Dumnorix caused the defeat of the Roman cavalry

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus, — nam equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix
25 praeerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Other proofs of the treachery of Dumnorix. Cæsar thinks he should be punished, but does not wish to offend Diviciacus

19. Quibus rēbus cognitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimæ rēs accēderent, — quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum 5 accūsārētur, — satis esse causæ arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iuberet.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat : nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur.

He summons Diviciacus, who pleads for his brother's pardon

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem 15 suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur ; simul commonefacit quæ ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta ; et ostendit quæ sēparatim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit ; petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē eō, causā 20 cognitā, statuatur vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret. * "Sciō," inquit, "haec esse vērā, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego doloris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domi 25 atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam

posset, per mē crēvit ; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur ; ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōe volgī commoveor. Quod si quid ei abs tē gravius acciderit, cum ego
 5 hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum ; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā mē āvertentur."

Dumnorix is spared, but is closely watched

Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit ; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandi faciat ;
 10 tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit uti et rei pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet ; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit ; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit ; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs
 15 suspiciōnēs vitet ; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorigi custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

Caesar prepares for battle

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis
 20 esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cognōscerent misit. Renūtiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet ; quid suī cōsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā
 25 vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The error of Considius prevents the action

22. Primā luce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō 5 occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra 10 visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstīnēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset prō visō 15 sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

Caesar marches toward Bibracte. The Helvetii follow

23. Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat cum exercitui frūmentum mētiri oporteret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, 20 nōn amplius milibus passuum duodēviginti aberat, rei frūmentariae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gal-lōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētii, seu quod timōre per- 25 territōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod pridīē, superiōribus locis occupātis, proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentariā interclūdi posse

cōnfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

Both sides prepare for battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque qui sustinēret
5 hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscripterat, et omnia auxilia conlocāri, sarcinās in unum locum cōferri et eum ab his qui in superioriē acie
10 cōstitērant mūniri iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōnfertissimā acie, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

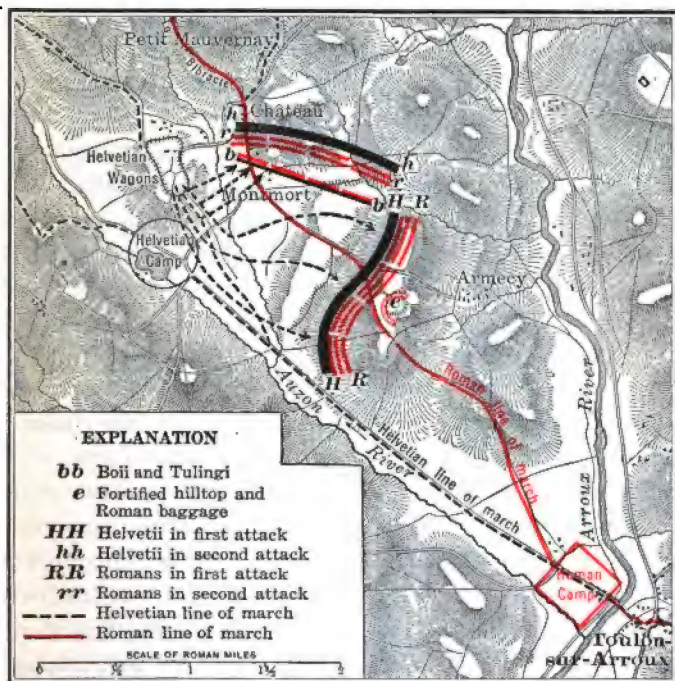
The battle begins

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū
15 remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs, ē locō superioriē pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō, quod, plūribus eōrum
20 scūtis unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut, diū iactātō bracciō, praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

The Helvetii retreat, but rally

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre, et, quod
25 mōns aberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingī, qui

hominum milibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressi circumvenire; et id cōspicātī Helvētīi,



THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

As the battle plan shows, only the third line of the Roman army faced about (*conversa signa*, l. 5) to meet the advancing Boii and Tulingi. The other two lines continued to face the Helvetii as before. The verb *intulērunt* (l. 6) refers to the whole Roman force, which made the attack in two divisions as described

quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartitō 5 intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

After a desperate conflict the Helvetii are defeated

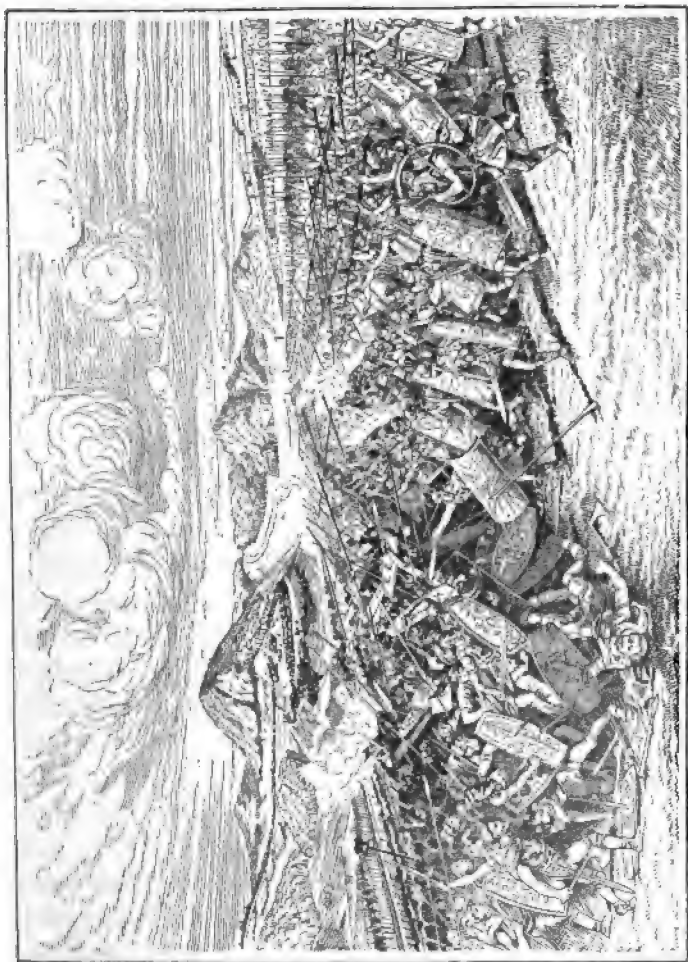
26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācrit̄er pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō
 5 proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēc̄erant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūlli inter carrōs raedāsque
 10 matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

The survivors retreat into the territory of the Lingones

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis
 15 itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs literās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.
 20 Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetii negotiate for surrender

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēc̄issent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum es-
 25 sent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūerunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.



"ITA ANCIPI TI PROELIO DIU ATQUE ACRI TER PUGNATUM EST "

(See page 39, line 1)

Six thousand of them try to escape, but are captured

Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur, circiter hominum milia sex eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti, nē armis trāditis suppliciō adficerentur, sive spē salutis inducti, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam
5 fugam aut occultāri aut omninō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsq̄e Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his uti cōquirerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgāti esse vellent,
10 imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditis, in dēditionem accēpit.

The Helvetii and their allies return home

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis
15 domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, quī trāns Rhēnum
20 incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent, et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

The Boii are allowed to settle among the Haedui

Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris liber-
25 tatisque condiciōnem, atque ipsi erant, recēpērunt.

The number of the Helvetii and their allies

29. In castris Helvĕtiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat 5 capitum Helvĕtiōrum milium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est 10 numerus milium c et x.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The Gallic chiefs come to congratulate Caesar

30. Bellō Helvĕtiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lĕgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: * "Intellegimus," inquit, "tametsi prō veteribus Helvĕtiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisti, 15 tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidis; proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvĕtīi reliquērunt, utī tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportunissi- 20 mum ac fructuosissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent."

A day is set for a future council

Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: 'Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere 25

vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrاندō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Certain chiefs have a private interview with Caesar

31. Eō conciliō dimissō, idem principēs civitātum quī ante
5 fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō
dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. Eā rē im-
petratā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt:
* "Nōn minus," inquiunt, "nōs id contendimus et labōrāmus,
nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur, quam utī ea quae velimus
10 impetrēmus; proptereā quod, si ēnūntiātum erit, summum
in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus."

*Diviciacus describes the factions in Gaul and the bringing in
of the Germans*

Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus: * "Galliae tōtius
factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterius principātum tenent Hae-
duī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter
15 sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est utī ab Arvernīs
Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō
circiter milia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam
agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī
adamārunt, trāducti sunt plūrēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad
20 centum et vigintī milium numerum.

The subjection of the Haedui

"Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum
armis contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpē-
runt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitā-
tum āmisērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, quī
25 et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitia

plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coācti sunt Sēquanis obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrاندō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. 5
Ūnus ego sum ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum quī addūci nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex civitāte profūgi et Rōmam ad senātum vēni auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrاندō neque obsidibus tenēbar. 10

The wretched lot of the Sequani

"Sed peius victōribus Sēquanis quam Haeduis victis accidit, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī est optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, proptereā quod paucis mēnsibus 15 ante Harūdum milia hominum vīginti quattuor ad eum vērē-runt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parentur. Paucis annis omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsibunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō victūs cum illā 20 comparanda.

The tyranny and cruelty of Ariovistus

"Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn 25 ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

All Gaul looks to Cæsar for deliverance

"Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcērunt, ut domō emigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānis petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec
 5 sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitō quin dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere potes nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab
 10 Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere."

The silence of the Sequani

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesār ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō ter-
 15 ram intuēri. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus, ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondere, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanere.

Diviciacus explains their desperate plight

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haedus respondit:
 20 * "Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem queri neque auxilium implōrāre audent; absentisque Ariovisti crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, proptereā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanis vērō, quī intrā finēs
 25 suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendi."

Caesar promises his assistance and dismisses the chiefs

33. His rēbus cognitis Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte ad- ductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dimisit.

5

His reasons for deciding to expel Ariovistus

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: in primis quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepenumērō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenēri, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum 10 ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venīre, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs 15 ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat quī, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutōnique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam 20 sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Caesar asks Ariovistus for an interview, but he declines

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summis utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātīōnī Ario- 25 vistus respondit: * "Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego

ad eum venirem ; sī quid ille mē volt, illum ad mē venire oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contra-
 5 here possum. Mihi autem mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vicī, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī sit.”

Cæsar commands Ariovistus to restore the liberties of the Hædui

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātis mittit : * “ Quoniam tantō
 10 meō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus sit, hanc mihi populōque Rōmānō grātiam refert, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eō postulō : prīmum,
 15 nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat ; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Hæduīs reddat, Sēquanisque permittat ut quōs illi habent voluntāte eius reddere illis liceat ; nēve Hæduōs iniuriā lacessat, nēve hīs sociisque eōrum bellum inferat.
 20 “ Sī id ita fēcerit, mihi populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amicitia cum eō erit ; sī nōn impetrābō, ego — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuit utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Hæduōs cēterōsque amicōs populi
 25 Rōmānī dēfenderet — Hæduōrum iniuriās nōn neglegam.”

Ariovistus sends back an insolent reply

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit : * “ Iūs est bellī ut quī vicerint, eis quōs vicerint, quem ad modum velint, imperent ; item populus Rōmānus victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum,

sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre consuēvit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō quem ad modum suō iūre ūtātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri.



THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

"Haeduī mihi, quoniam belli fortūnam temptāverunt et armis congressī ac superātī sunt, stipendiārīi sunt factī. 5 Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciat. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque

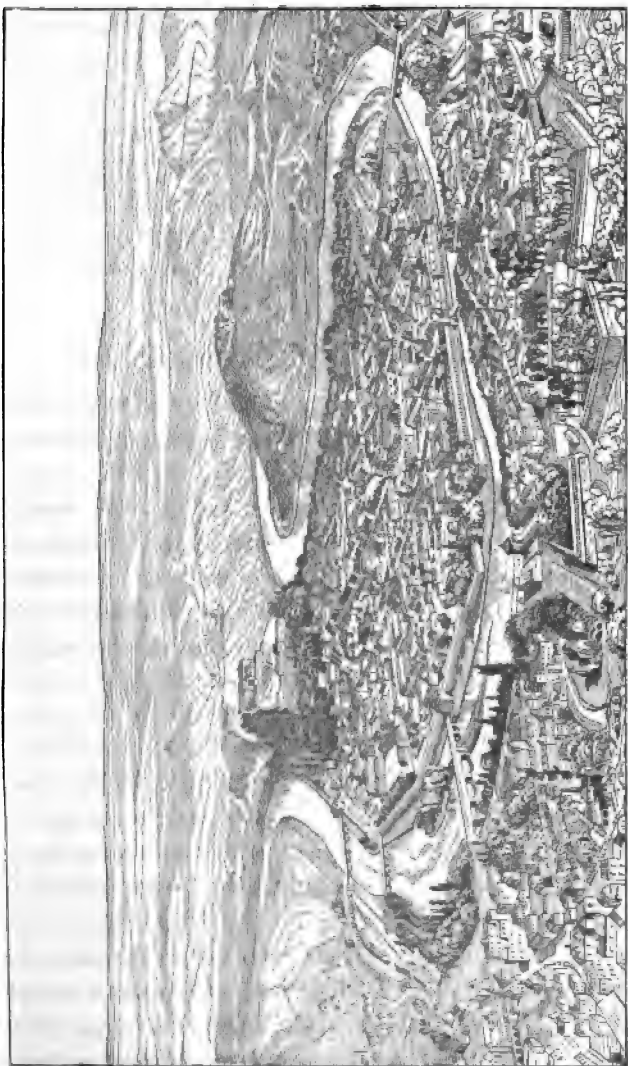
his neque eorum sociis iniuriā bellum inferam, si in eō manebunt quod convēnit stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nōn fecerint, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmāni aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniuriās
 5 nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congregiātur; intellet quid invicti Germāni, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint.”

*New encroachments of the Germans are reported to Caesar,
 who hastens against Ariovistus*

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,
 10 et lēgātī ab Haeduis et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportāti essent, finēs eorum populārentur: ‘Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī
 15 Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimmerium frātrēs.’ Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit
 20 comparātā, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both strive to reach Vesontio. Caesar arrives there first

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret,
 25 magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur ut



BESANÇON (VESONTIO)

magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet
 5 magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Reports about the Germans frighten Caesar's men

10 39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingenti magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicābant, — saepenumērō sēsē cum
 15 hīs congressōs nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

The inexperienced are panic-stricken

Hic primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefectīs reli-
 20 quisque, quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nullī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, rema-
 25 nēbant. Hī neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur.

Even the veterans are affected and prophesy a mutiny

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam ei qui magnum in castris ūsum habēbant, milites centuriōnēsque quique equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Qui sē ex his minus timidōs existimāri volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs 5 atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūlli etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs milites neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar makes light of their fears and recalls the victories of Marius

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitis centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit : primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. * "Ariovistus," inquit, "mē cōnsule cupidissimē 15 populi Rōmānī amicitiam adpetiit. Cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet? Mihi quidem persuādētur, cognitis meis postulātis atque aequitate condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populi Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentia impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāminī? aut cūr dē vestrā 20 virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā dēspērētis? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum est etiam nūper in Italiā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid 25 ūsus ac disciplina quam ā nobis accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē boni cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuistis, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis.

*Even the Helvetians and other Gauls have often defeated
the Germans*

"Dēnique hī sunt idem Germānī quibuscum saepenumērō
Helvētīi congressī, nōn solum in suis sed etiam in illōrum
finibus, plērumque superāvērunt; quī tamen parēs esse
nostrō exercitui nōn potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelium
5 et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, si quaerent, reperire pote-
runt, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum
multōs mēnsēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque suī
potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pugnā et dispersōs
subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse.
10 Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus
fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

He deprecates their lack of confidence in him

"Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem
angustiāsque itineris cōferunt, faciunt adroganter, cum aut
dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere videantur.
15 Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lin-
gonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agrīs frūmenta mātūra;
dē itinere vōs ipsī brevī tempore iudicābitis.

"Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dicun-
tur militēs, nihil eā rē commoveor; sciō enim, quibuscumque
20 exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam
dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convic-
tam; mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, felicitās Helvētiōrum bellō
est perspecta.

He proposes an immediate advance

"Itaque quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fui, reprae-
25 sentābō, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra movēbō,
ut quam primum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor
atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod si praetereā nēmō

sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihiq̄ue ea praetōria cohors erit." Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtutem cōfidēbat maximē.

Remarkable effect of Caesar's speech

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt 5
omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi



ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH

innāta est; princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum
eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque
esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde
reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum 10
centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesari satisfacerent: 'Sē neque
umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā belli
suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse.'

He advances near to the forces of Ariovistus

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Di-
 viciācum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habēbat, ut
 milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis apertis exercitum
 dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō
 5 diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior fac-
 tus est Ariovisti cōpiās ā nostris milia passuum quattuor et
 viginti abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum
 mittit: 'Quod antea dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fieri
 10 licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō
 facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar,
 iamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbitrābatur, cum id quod
 antea petenti dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in
 spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmāni in eum bene-
 15 ficiis, cognitīs suis postulātis, fore uti pertināciā dēsisteret.

A conference is agreed upon; each party to bring only cavalry

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim
 saepe cum lēgāti ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ario-
 vistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar
 addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenirētur;
 20 uterque cum equitātū veniret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse
 ventūrum.'

Caesar takes precaution against treachery

Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tolli
 volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātui committere
 audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis
 25 equitibus detrāctis, eō legiōnāriōs milites legiōnis decimae,

cui quam maximē cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit : ' Plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere ; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitū- 5 rum ; ad equum rescribere.'

Caesar's speech. He pleads for peace, but renews his demands

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumultus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equis dēvexerat passibus ducentis ab eō tumultō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovisti parī intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōratiōnis sua senātūque 15 in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa ; quam rem et paucis contigisse et prō magnis hominum officiis cōsuēsse tribui docēbat ; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate 20 suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Haeduis intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiens quamque honorifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haedui tenuissent, 25 prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. ' Populi Rōmāni hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo sui nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse ; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmāni adtulissent, id eis ēripī quis pati posset ? '

Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat : nē aut Haeduis aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret ; obsidēs redderet ; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

Ariovistus makes an arrogant reply

5 44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit ; dē
suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit : * " Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn
meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis ; nōn sine
magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque reli-
quī ; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs
10 ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stipendium capiō iūre belli quod
victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis, sed
Galli mihi bellum intulērunt ; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad
mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt ;
eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superatae
15 sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, ego iterum parātus sum
dēcrtāre ; sī pāce ūti volunt, iniquum est dē stipendiō
recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pendērunt.

" Amicitiam populi Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō,
nōn dētrimentō esse oportet ; atque hāc spē petiī. Si per
20 populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditici sub-
trahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populi Rōmānī
amicitiam quam adpetiī.

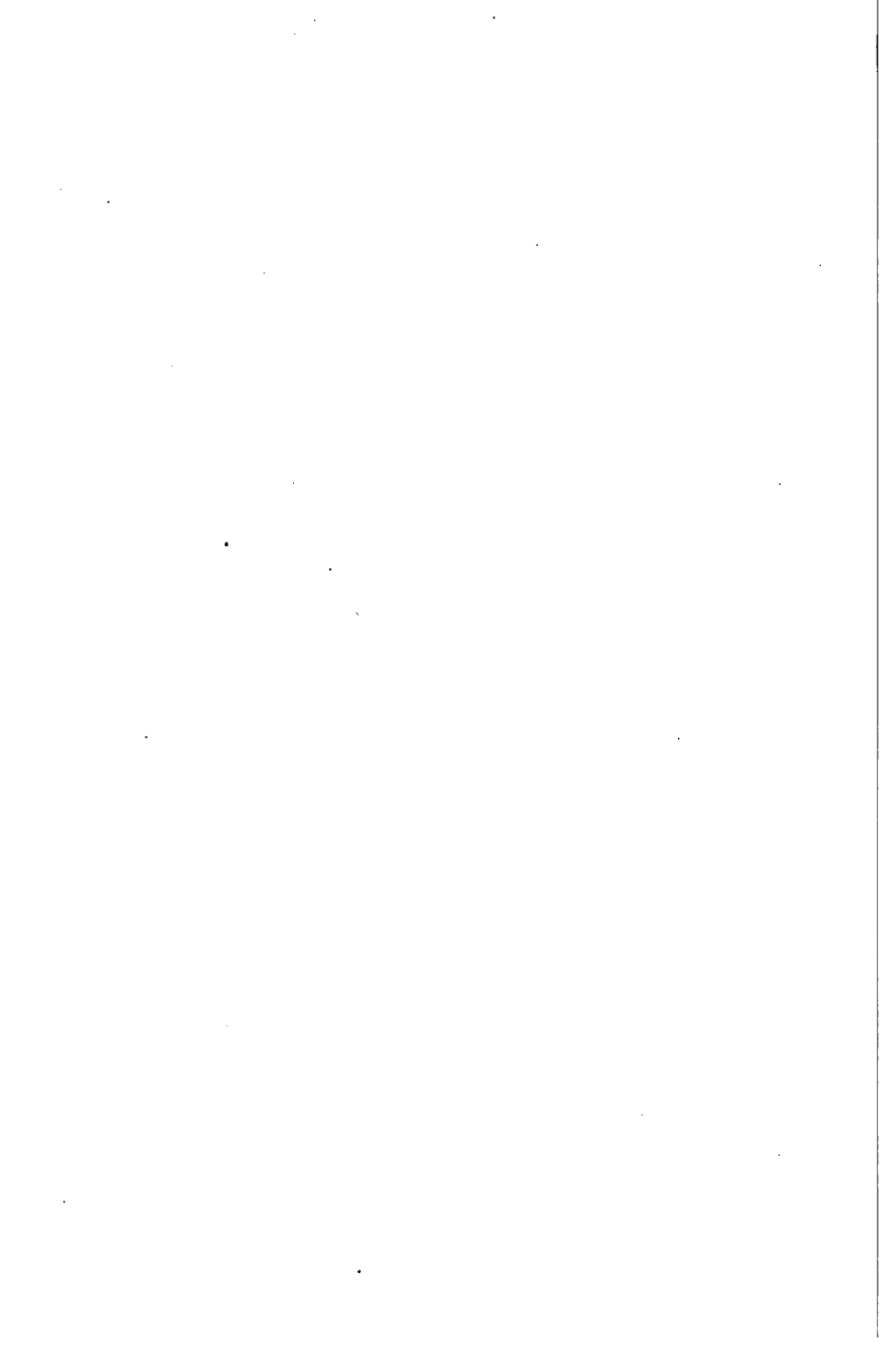
" Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō,
id mei mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā faciō ;
25 eius rei testimoniū est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī, et
quod bellum nōn intulī, sed dēfendi. Ego prius in Galliam
vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus
exercitus populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressus
est. Quid tibi vis ? Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venis ? Prō-
30 vincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra. Ut mihi concēdi



CONFERENCE BETWEEN CÆSAR AND ARIOVISTUS, KING OF THE GERMANS

"*Prōvincia mea hæc est Gallia, sicut illa vestra*"

(See page 48, line 29)



nōn oporteat, si in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis iniqui quod in meō iūre mē interpellātis.

"Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxili- 5
lium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt, auxiliō populi Rōmāni ūsōs esse.

"Dēbeō suspicārī simulātā tē amicitīā, quem exercitum in Galliā habēs, mei opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs 10
atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex his regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod si tē interfēcērō, multis nō-
bilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum faciam (id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēō), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam tuā morte redimere poterō. Quod 15
si discesseris et liberam possessiōnem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemiō remūnērābor, et quaecumque bella geri volēs, sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam."

*Caesar restates his position and disputes the claim of
Ariovistus to Gaul*

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā
rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: * "Neque mea neque 20
populi Rōmāni cōnsuetūdō patitur uti optimē meritōs sociōs
dēseram, neque iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam po-
puli Rōmāni. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēni ab
Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque
in prōvinciam redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si 25
antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populi Rō-
māni iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senā-
tūs observārī oportet, libera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō
victam suis lēgibus ūti voluerit."

A treacherous attack of the Germans puts an end to the conference

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere, et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperā-
 5 vit nē quod omninō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Postēāquam in volgus militum ēlātum est quā
 10 adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercitūi iniectum est.

Caesar declines a renewal of the conference

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit:
 15 'Velle sē dē his rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, ē suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est; et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēi Germānī retinēri nōn poterant quā tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum
 20 sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus feris obiectūrum existimābat.

Two of Caesar's envoys are seized by Ariovistus

Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem,
 25 — cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam

Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn esset, — ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium quī hospitio Ariovisti ūtēbātur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō 5 praesente conclāmāvit: * “Quid ad mē vēnistis? an speculandī causā?” Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Ariovistus moves his camp. Cavalry skirmishes

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi 10 praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsilio uti frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanis et Haeduis supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam 15 habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestas nōn deēsset. Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit.

The German method of fighting

Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Gērmāni exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vėlōcissimī 20 ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singuli singulōs suae salutis causā delēgerant; cum his in proeliis versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiebant; hī, si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; si quī graviōre volnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius 25 recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubis sublevāti equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Caesar fortifies another camp and divides his forces

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commēatū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germani cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum



FORTIFYING THE CAMP

5 locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, uti dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibē-
 10 rent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitīs castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quatuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

Ariovistus attacks the smaller camp with part of his forces

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter meridiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cō- 5 piārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret misit. Ācritr utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātis et acceptis volneribus in castra redūxit.

A German superstition delays a general engagement

Cum ex captivīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus 10 proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committi ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō conten- 15 dissent.'

Caesar forces a decisive battle

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, 20 ut ad speciem ālāriis ūteretur; ipse triplici instrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castris ēdūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque 25 aciem suam raedis et carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentēs, passis manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

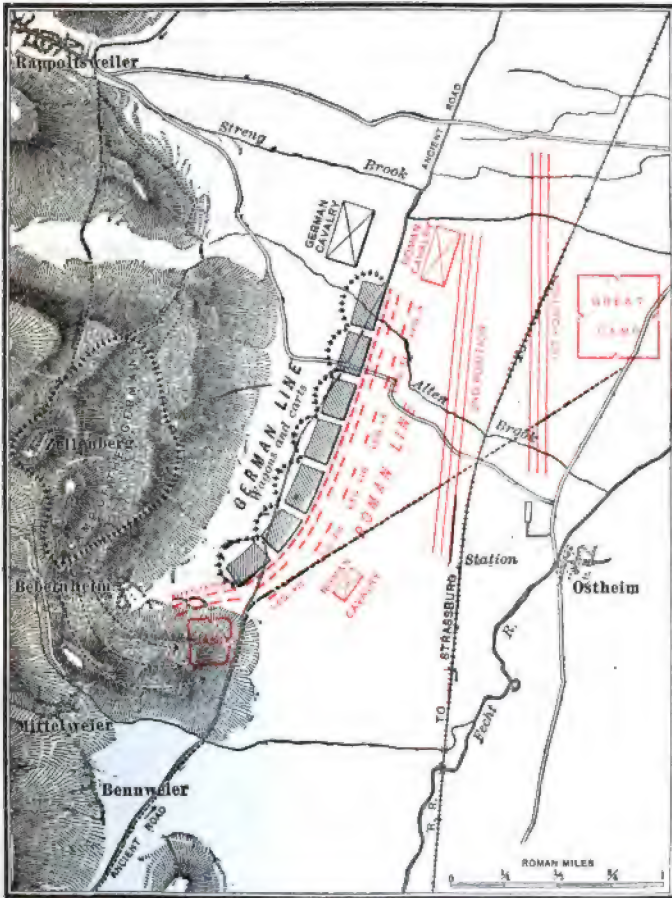
Desperate fighting at close quarters

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Et ita nostri
 5 acriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendi nōn darētur. Reiectis pīlis comminus gladiis pugnatū est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt
 10 complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēs, quī equi-
 15 tātuī praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ei quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidiō misit.

The Germans flee. Ariovistus escapes

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque, pervē-
 20 nērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus cōnfisī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātā ad ripam nactus eā prōfūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam
 25 domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae filiae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.



THE BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

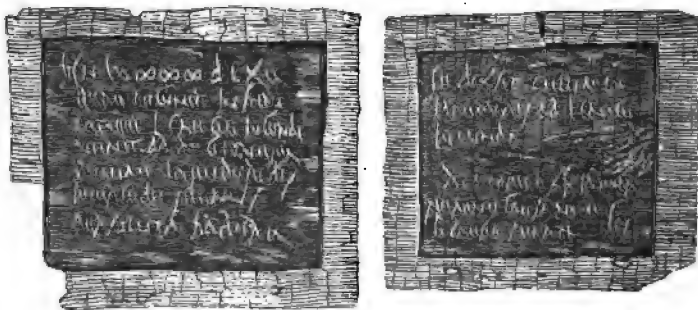
Cæsar's two envoys are rescued

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn

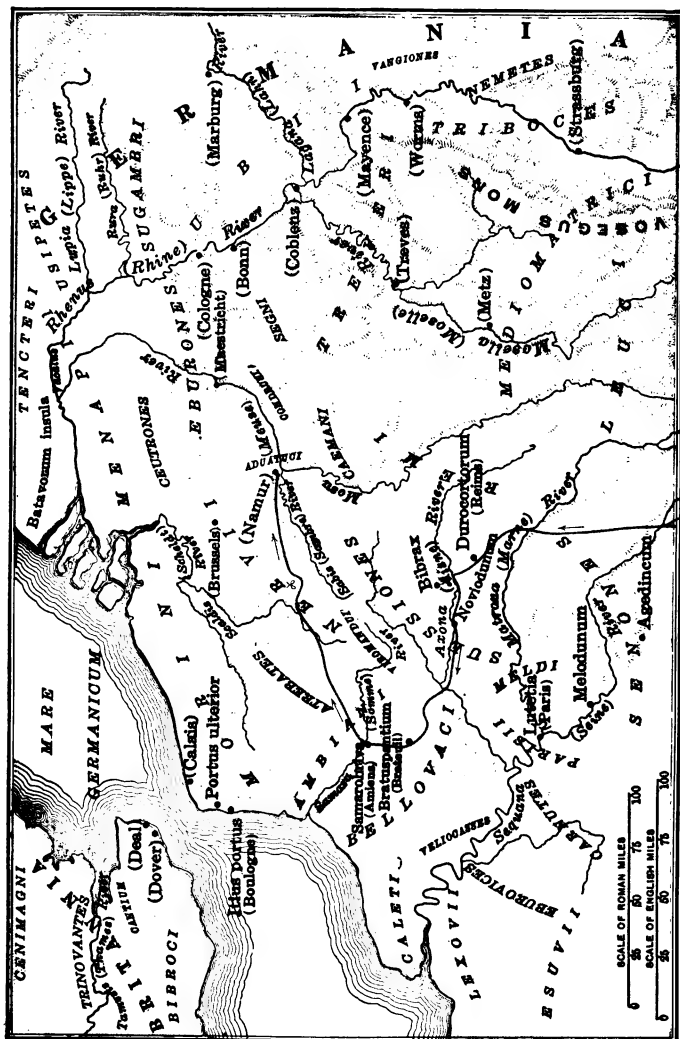
minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne
 5 quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse inco-
 lumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The end of the campaign. Caesar goes to Hither Gaul

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūtiātō Suēbī, quī ad
 10 ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum reverti coepērunt; quōs Ubii,
 quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs insecūtī magnum
 ex eis numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus
 maximīs bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus anni
 postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hi-
 15 bernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad
 conventūs agendōs profectus est.



WRITING TABLETS WITH LATIN SCRIPT



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 57 B.C.

BOOK II

CÆSAR'S SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

All the Belgian tribes combine against the Romans

CUM esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliā, ita utī suprā
dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rŭmōrēs adferē-
bantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs
Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā
populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5

The reasons for the conspiracy

Coniūrandī hās esse causās : primum, quod verērentur nē
omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur;
deinde, quod ab nōn nŭllis Gallis sollicitārentur, — partim
quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita
populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in 10
Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte
animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, — ab nōn nŭllis etiam, quod
in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs homi-
nēs facultātēs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus
facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant. 15

Cæsar moves against them early in the spring

2. His nŭntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs
in citeriøre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte, in in-
teriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit.

Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs
 5 nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūci. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quin ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise aid and report on the situation

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne
 10 vēnisset, Rēmī, qui proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis, mīsērunt qui dicerent: * "Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus; neque cum reliquis Belgis cōsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum con-
 15 iūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquī omnēs Belgae in armis sunt, Germānique qui cis Rhēnum incolunt sēsē cum his coniūnxērunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessiōnēs
 20 quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque nostrōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nōbiscum habent, dēterrere potuerimus quin cum his cōsentirent."

The origin and warlike character of the Belgae

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae civitatēs quantaque in
 25 armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: * "Plērique Belgae sunt orti ā Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductī propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōsēdērunt, Gallōsque qui ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique sunt

quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fit uti eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmant.

The strength of the Belgian tribes

"Dē numerō eōrum omnia habēmus explōrāta, propterea 5 quod propinquitatibus adfinitatibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hī possunt cōficere armāta milia centum, polliciti ex eō numerō 10 ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostrī sunt finitimī; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācus, tōtius Galliae potentissimus, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae 15 imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida habent numerō XII, pollicentur milia armāta L; totidem Nervii, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; xv milia Atrebātēs, Ambianī x 20 milia, Morinī xxv milia, Menapii vii milia, Caleti x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromandui totidem, Aduatuci xix milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmur <cōficere posse> ad xl milia."

25

Cæsar asks the assistance of Diviciacus

5. Cæsar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere

cohortātus docet quantō opere rei pūblicae commūnisque salū-
tis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitudīne
ūnō tempore cōnfligendum sit: 'Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās
Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs
5 populārī coeperint.' His datīs mandātis eum ā sē dimittit.

He crosses the Aisne and there fortifies a camp

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāc-
tās ad sē venire vidit neque iam longē abesse ab eis quōs
miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axo-
nam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trā-
10 dūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus
ūnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae
erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs
reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī pos-
sent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pō-
15 nit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum
cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum
duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūniri iubet.

The Belgæ attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi, eight miles away

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax
aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū
20 Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.
Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi
circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtis moenibus undique
in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus
nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque
25 subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multi-
tūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendi potestās
erat nūllī. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset,* Iccius
Rēmūs, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum

oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eis qui lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: 'Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.'

Caesar sends relief to Bibrax. The Belgæ advance on his camp

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus qui nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittariōs et 5 funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidio oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandi accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundi oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra



A SLINGER (*FUNDITOR*)

Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum 20 minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

Cavalry skirmishes. Caesar fortifies his position and draws up his forces in front of the camp

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; 25 cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent periclitābātur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitie ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum loci
5 aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulatim ad plānitiem redibat, — ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlo-
10 cavit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suōs circumvenire possent.

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci pos-
15 sent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerunt.

A swamp between the two forces prevents a general engagement

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut impedi-
20 tōs adgrederentur parātī in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.

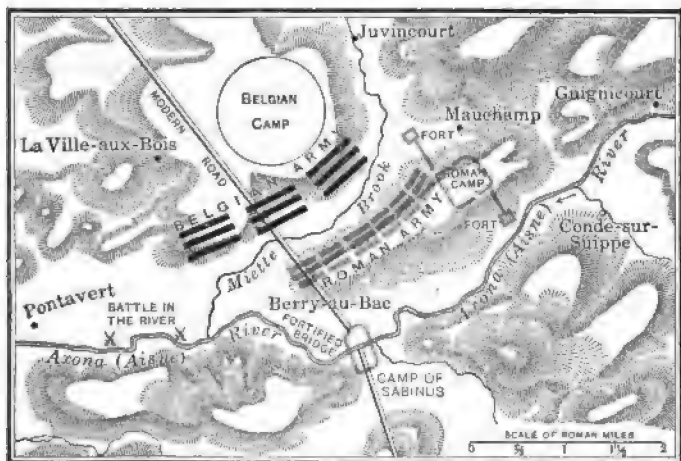
The Belgæ attempt an attack in the rear

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendē-
25 runt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; si

minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbis ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

Cæsar defeats them with great losses

10. Cæsar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem 5 trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācrit̄er in eō locō pugnātum



THE BATTLE ON THE AISNE (AXONA)

est. Hostēs imeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs inter- 10 fēcērunt.

The Belgæ, discouraged, decide to disband

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trāseundō spēm sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt,

atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum
4 intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenirent, ut



BOWMAN (SAGITTARIUS)

potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

*Caesar pursues them and inflicts
great slaughter*

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum per-
25 spexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explorātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit.

Hi novissimōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt ; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod 4 abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exauditō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium ; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

He leads his army into the territory of the Suessiones

12. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit.

He prepares to storm Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender

Castris mūnitis vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Sues- 25 siōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque



A LIGHT-ARMED
SOLDIER

cōstitūtis, magnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

The Bellovacī beg for mercy

- 5 13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Qui cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter
10 milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex
15 mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Diviciacus, the Haeduan, pleads for them

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba :
* " Bellovacī omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Haeduae fuērunt ; impulsī ab suis principibus, qui dicēbant
20 Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduis dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Qui eius cōsiliī principēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn solum Bellovacī
25 sed etiam prō his Haeduī ut tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod sī fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōsuērunt."

Cæsar spares the Bellovaci and receives the Ambiani in surrender

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit; et quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudīne praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō conlātis, ab eō locō in 5 finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

He hears that the Nervii are defiant

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: * "Nullus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patiuntur vinī reliquā- 10 rumque rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferrī, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existimant; sunt hominēs ferī magnaēque virtūtis; increpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtutem prōiēcērint; cōfirmant sēsē neque lē- 15 gātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiționem pācis acceptūrōs."

He marches against the Nervii and their allies

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn amplius milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum 20 Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortunam experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab eis Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs 25 exercitui aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii decide to attack Caesar while he is pitching camp

17. His rēbus cognītīs explorātōrēs centuriōnēsq̄ prae-
mittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs
Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter
facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivīs cognitum est,
5 eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā,
nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt; atque his dēmōstrārunt inter
singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum inter-
cēdere, neque esse quicquam negōti, cum prima legiō in
castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abes-
10 sent, hanc sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque
direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent.

The hedges of the Nervii

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsiliū quī rem dēferēbant, quod
Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim
ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestri-
15 bus valent cōpiis), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, si
praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arbori-
bus incisis atque inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmis
ēnātis, et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effēcerant ut instar
mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn
20 intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter
agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōsiliū
Nervii existimāvērunt.

*The Romans choose a hill for their camp. The Nervii hide
on a hill opposite*

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs
dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen
25 Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine
parī acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius,

passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās



SOLDIERS MARCHING WITH PACKS (*SUB SARCINIS*)

silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

5

The Romans begin to fortify their camp

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat,

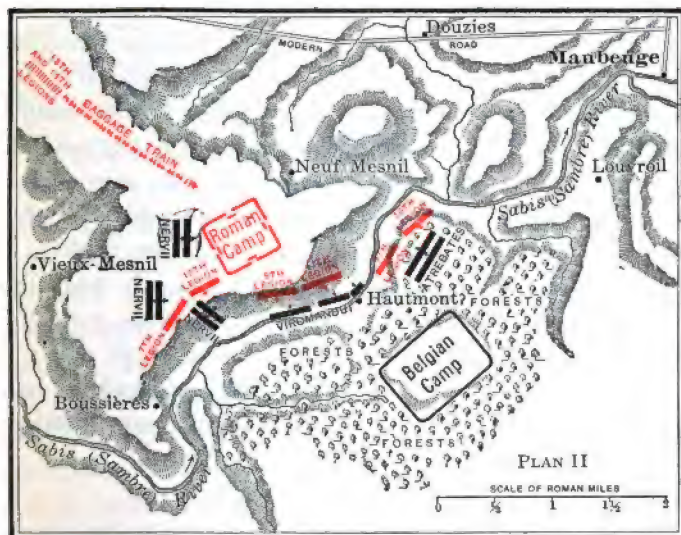
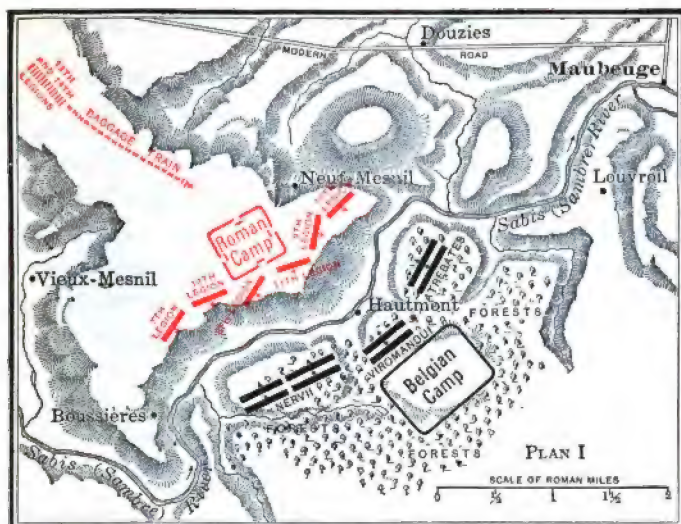
cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum
5 funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequi audērent,
10 interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coepērunt.

The Nervii make a sudden and furious attack

Ubi prīma impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis quī in silvis abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cō-
15 stituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur.
20 Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupāti erant contendērunt.

The situation of the Romans is critical

20. Caesarī ōmnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs,
25 quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcescendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērū magnam partem temporis brevītās et succesus hostium impediēbat.



THE DEFEAT OF THE NERVII

Plan I shows the positions of the contending forces before the attack. Plan II shows their positions at the crisis of the battle

Their skill and training serve them well

His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidiō, — scientia atque
 ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī quid fieri
 oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam
 ab aliis docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōni-
 5 bus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitis castris
 vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium
 nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae
 vidēbantur administrābant.

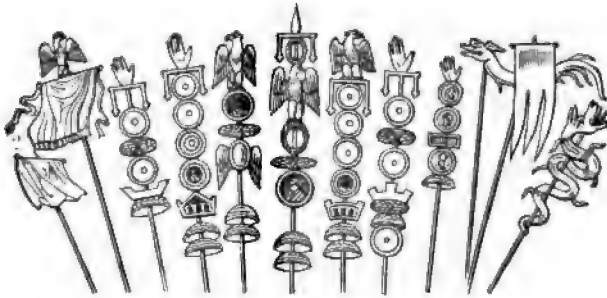
*Lack of time compels the omission of all formalities and of
 some of the usual preparations for battle*

21. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperātis, ad cohortandōs mī-
 10 litēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem
 decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ōratiōne cohortātus
 quam uti suae prīstinae virtutis memoriam retinērent neu
 perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinē-
 rent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici
 15 posset, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram
 partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pugnantis occurrit.
 Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad
 dimicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommo-
 danda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta
 20 dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in
 partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima signa cōspexit, ad haec
 cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

They fight as necessity demands

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque
 collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō
 25 atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in

parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōstrāvimus) interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus



ROMAN MILITARY STANDARDS

esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortunae quoque 5 ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

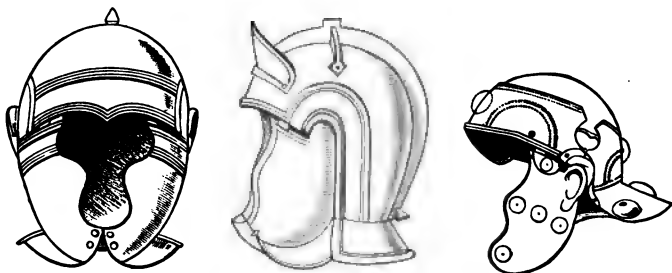
The Atrebates and Viromandui are defeated, but the Nervii gain the camp

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstiterant, pilis ēmissis, cursū ac lassitūdine ex-animātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his ea pars obvenerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com- 10 pulērunt, et trānsire cōnantēs īsecūtī gladiis magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum iniquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, 15 prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripīs proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō

cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circum-
5 venīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Panic prevails in the Roman camp

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eis unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium



ROMAN HELMETS

impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petē-
10 bant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō col-
lis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressi, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque
15 oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

The Treveri think all is lost and hasten home

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxili causā ā civitāte missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium

castra complēri, legiōnēs premi et paene circumventās tenēri, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris 4 impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs, civitatī renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar snatches a shield and rushes to the front

25. Caesar ab decimæ legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgēri signisque in ūnum locum conlātis duodecimæ legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, — quārtæ cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut volnerātis aut occisis, in hīs primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis dēserto locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti 25 posset, — scūtō ab novissimis militi dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent.



STANDARD BEARER
(SIGNIFER)

His presence inspires his men

Cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Cæsar effectively combines two of his legions

5 26. Cæsar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius
10 resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

He receives reinforcements

Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre
15 quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs misit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The tide of battle turns in Cæsar's favor

20 27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtis innixi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicāti etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērēt, omnibus in locis pug-
25 nandō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent.

Caesar praises the valor of the enemy

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēlā in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animī magnitudō redēgerat.

The Nervii are almost completely destroyed

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente 10 ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs unā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, 15 in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus sexāgintā vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidēretur, diligentissimē cōservāvit, suisque finibus atque oppidis 20 ūtī iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci, allies of the Nervii, withdraw to their stronghold

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertis sua 25 omnia in unum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās

rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant.

Origin of the Aduatuci

5 Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedimentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum mul-
10 tōs annōs ā finitimis exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsensū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

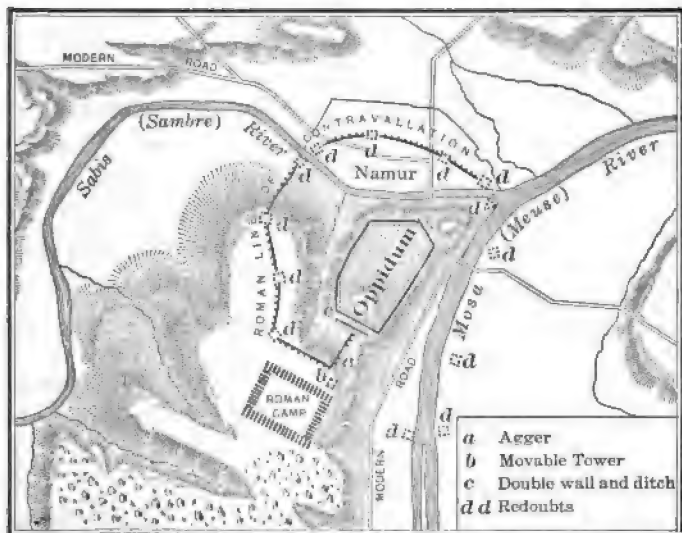
They ridicule Caesar's siege works

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris conten-
15 dēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv milium, crēbrisque castellis circummūniti oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis āctis aggere exstrūctō turrīm procul cōstitui vidērent, primum inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: * "Quibusnam
20 manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae" — nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suōrum brevītās nostra contemptui est — "tanti oneris turrīm in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōfidunt?"

But, becoming alarmed, they offer to surrender if allowed to keep their arms

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vidērent, novā
25 atque inūsītātā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: * "Nōn existimāmus

vōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possitis; nōs nostraque omnia tuae potestāti permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac dēprecāmur: sī forte prō tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine,



SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI

quam ab aliis audimus, statueris Aduatucōs esse cōservan- 5
dōs, nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbīs omnēs ferē finitimi
sunt inimicī ac nostrae virtūtī invident; ā quibus nōs dē-
fendere trāditis armīs nōn poterimus. Nōbīs praestat, sī in
eum cāsum dēdūcāmur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō
patī, quam ab his per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī 10
cōnsuēvimus.”

Cæsar demands their arms. They yield, but treacherously keep part of them

32. Ad haec Cæsar respondit: * "Magis cōsuētūdine
meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōservābō, sī, prius quam
mūrum ariēs attigerit, vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditionis nūlla
est condiciō nisi armīs trāditis. Id quod in Nerviis fēcī
5 faciam, finitimisque imperābō nē quam dēditiciis populi
Rōmānī iniūriam inferant." Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae im-
perārentur facere dixērunt. Armōrum magnā multitudīne
dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut
prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinē acervī armōrum
10 adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea per-
spectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis
eō diē pāce sunt ūsi.

They make a night attack, but are defeated

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex
oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus
15 iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōn-
siliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut
dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum
eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex
cortice factis aut viminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis
20 exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā
minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur,
omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō eruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne
factā, ex proximīs castellis eō concursus est, pugnātumque
25 ab hostibus ita ācritur ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē
salūtis iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla
iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in unā virtūte omnis spēs
cōnsisteret.

Over fifty thousand of them are sold as slaves

Occisīs ad hominū milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diē refractis portis, cum iam

his rebus gestis. omni gallia pacata. in
 a. huius belli barbaros opprimo perlatas. ut ab his nationibus quae
 trans rhenum incolerent. intererentur legati ad caesarem. quibus obfides
 daturas. imperata facturam pollicerentur. quas legationes caesar quod
 in italiam illyricumque properabat intra proxima aestate. adferre uolui-
 sisset. ipse in carmentis. ad delaturosque quae ciuitates. prope in his locis
 erant ubi bellum gesserat. legionibus in hibernasque deductis. in italiam
 profectus. ob eiusque refectio. caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio
 decretae. quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

LATIN MANUSCRIPT

The text of Book II, chapter 35, as it appears in a Latin manuscript of the ninth century. For many years the manuscript was in the monastery of St. Benedict at Fleury-sur-Loire. It is now in Paris and is known as Codex Parisinus Latinus, 5763

dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris, secti-
 ōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēdidit. Ab eis qui
 ēmerant caputū numerus ad eum relātus est milium quin- 5
 quāgintā trium.

The tribes on the coast surrender to Crassus

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā
 miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs Coriosolitas, Esu-
 viōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae ciuitātēs Ōcea-
 numque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eas ciuitātēs in 10
 diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

*The army goes into winter quarters. Cæsar returns to Italy
A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome*

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta huius
belli ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est uti ab eīs nātiōnibus
quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgāti ad Caesarem mitteren-
tur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur.
- 5 Quās lēgātiōnēs Cæsar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque pro-
perābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in
Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitatēs propinquae
eīs locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna
dēductis in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litteris
- 10 Cæsarīs diēs quindecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante
id tempus accidit nulli.



GALLIC COINS

BOOK III

CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES

Galba is sent with one legion to guard a pass of the Alps

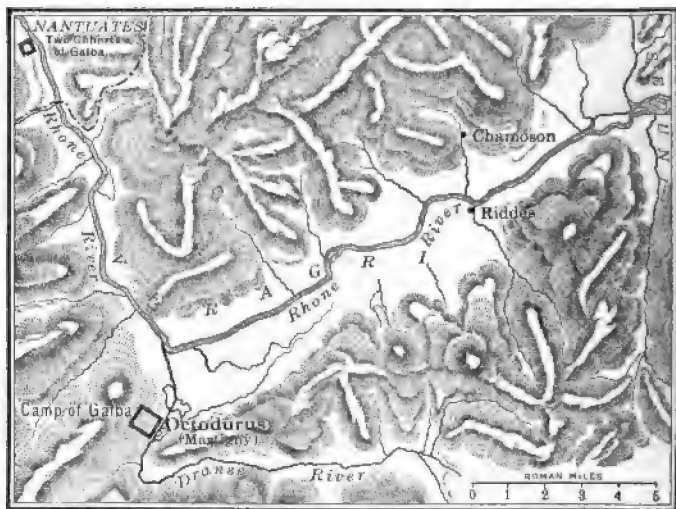
CUM in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsuērant, pateferī volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrāretur, utī in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret.

He makes his winter quarters at Octodurus

Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimīs montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine divideretur, alteram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossaque mūnivit.

An army of Gauls seizes the heights above the town and threatens his camp

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat



OCTODURUS AND THE SURROUNDING TERRITORY

omnēs noctū discessisse, montēque qui impendērent ā
5 maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causis acciderat ut subitō Galli belli renovandi
legiōnisque opprimendae cōsilium caperent: primum quod
legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, detrāctis cohortibus
duābus et complūribus singillatim, qui commeātūs petendī
10 causā missi erant — propter paucitatem dēspiciēbant; tum
etiam quod propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus
in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem

posse impetum suum sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possēssiōnis culmina Alpiū occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant. 5

Conditions are unfavorable, but the Romans decide to defend the camp

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsq̄e plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōq̄e commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusq̄e acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existi- māverat, cōsiliō celeriter convocātō sentiētiās exquirere 10 coepit. Quō in cōsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī prae- ter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsi- diō veniri neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modi 15 sentiētiaē dicēbantur, ut, impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contende- rent. Maiōri tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōsiliō, interim rei ēvēntum experiri et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls make a violent attack with superior numbers

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōstitu- 20 issent conlocandis atq̄e administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeq̄e in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integris viribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō supe- riōre mittere, et quaecumq̄e pars castrōrum nūdātā dēfēn- 25 sōribus premi vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitātē pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, alii integris viribus succēdēbant: quārum rērum

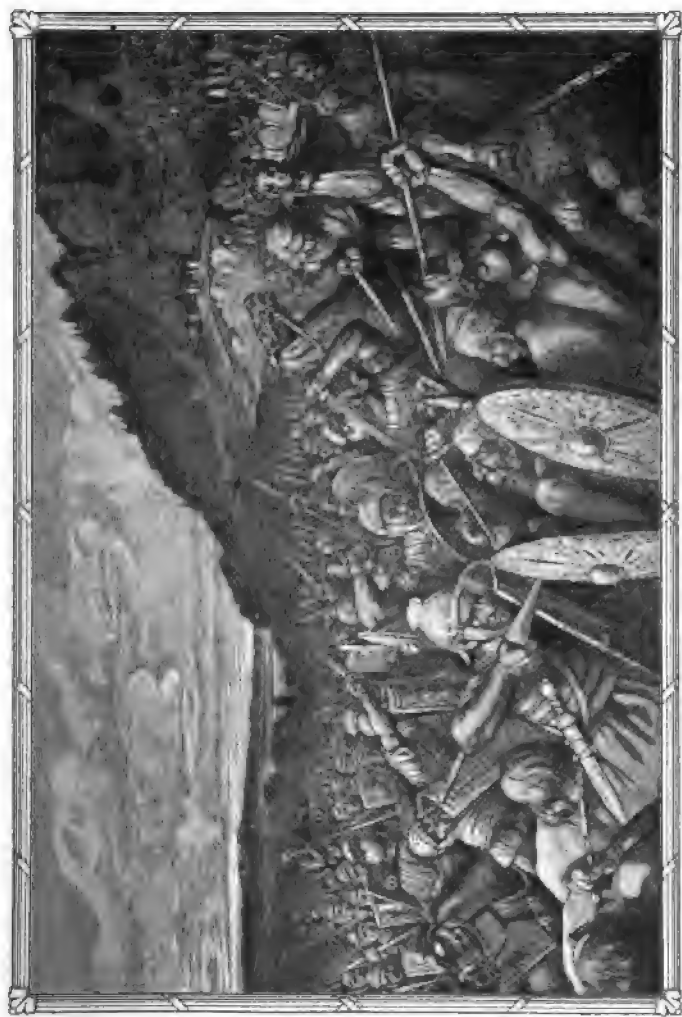
ā nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius loci ubi cōstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

After fighting six hours, the Romans decide to make a sally

5 Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur ac
nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque
hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostris vāllum
scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad
extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pili
centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vol-
10 neribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum,
vir et cōnsili magni et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque
ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum
auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus cele-
riter militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium,
15 ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre refi-
cerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem
spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are disastrously defeated

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt ac, subitō omnibus portis ērup-
tione factā, neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī conli-
20 gendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā
eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique
circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius
xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstā-
bat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam
25 coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere
patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis
sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt.



IAM AMPLIUS HORIS SEX CONTINENTER PUGNATUM EST

Galba withdraws to the Province

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmenti commeātū-que inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vici aedificiis incēnsis in prōvinciam reverti contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perduxit ibique hiemāvit.

THE WAR WITH THE VENETI

The coast tribes revolt against Roman rule

7. His rēbus gestis, cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācā-tam Galliam existimāret, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximū mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmenti erat, praefectōs tribū-nōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitātēs frūmenti causā dimisit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Veneti seize the Roman messengers

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāsti atque aperti paucis portibus interiectis, quōs tenent ipsi, omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūti

cōsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendi Sili atque Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.

Other states do the same and demand back their hostages

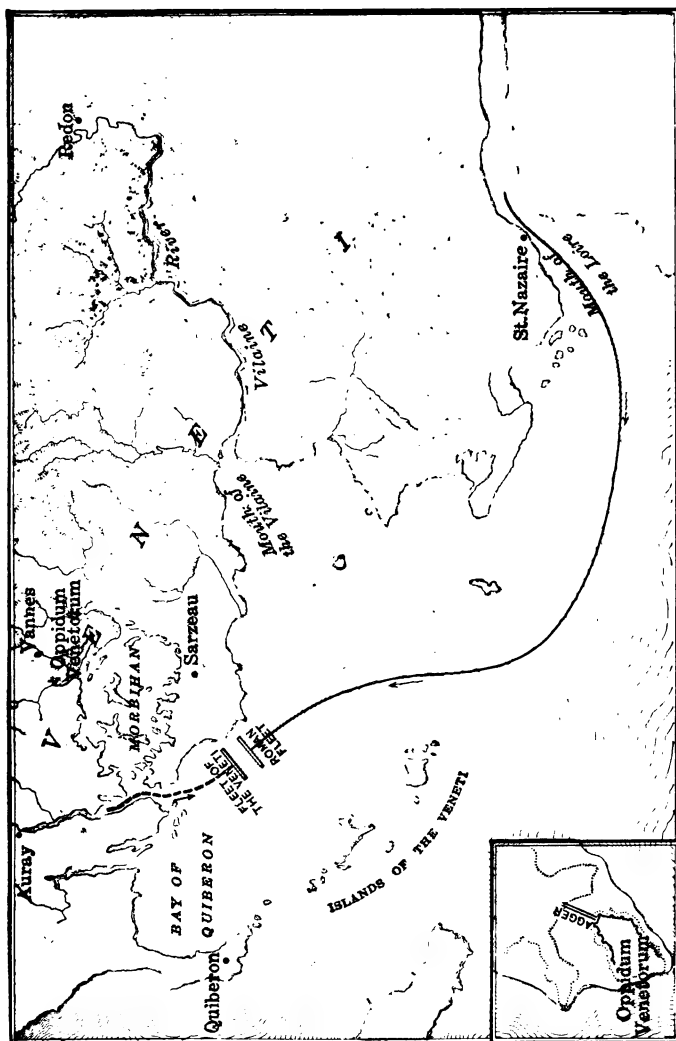
Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adducti (ut sunt Gallōrum
5 subita et repentina cōnsilia), eādē dē causā Trebium Ter-
rasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātis per suōs
principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi cōmūnī cōnsiliō
āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs;
reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā
10 maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitū-
tem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam
sententiam perductā, cōmūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum
mittunt: 'Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

Cæsar orders a fleet to be built and hastens to the scene

9. Quibus dē rēbus Cæsar ab Crassō certior factus, quod
15 ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine
Ligeri, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā insti-
tūi, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus
celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per annī tempus
potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

The Veneti and their neighbors prepare for war

20 Veneti reliquaeque item civitātēs cognitō Cæsarīs adventū,
simul quod quantum in sē facinus admisissent intellegēbant,
lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolā-
tumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniec-
tōs, prō magnitudīne periculi bellum parāre, et maximē ea
25 quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc
maiōre spē quod multum nātūrā loci cōnfidēbant.



THE VENETI AND NEIGHBORING COAST REGION

They have great confidence in their natural advantages

Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmenti inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum 5 nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant. His initis cōsiliis oppida mūniunt, 10 frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās 15 regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar has good reasons for undertaking this war

10. Erant hae difficultātēs belli gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum 20 coniūrātiō, in primis nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnes ferē Gallōs novis rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertāti studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs 25 civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

He divides his forces to keep the rest of Gaul loyal

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximi flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessitī dicēbantur, si per
5 vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titū-
rium Sabinum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs,
10 Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, qui eam manum distinen-
dam cūret.

Brutus is placed in command of the fleet

D. Brūtum adulescentem classī Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs
15 proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

The town sites of the Venetī are described

12. Erant eius modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūsus
20 minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflictārentur.

The difficulty of storming them

Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac si quandō — magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequātis — dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium

adpulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō 5 mari, magnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis portibus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

The ships of the Veneti

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbre ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus, cōnfixa clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; ancoraē prō 15 fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērīsimile) quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse 20 arbitrābantur.

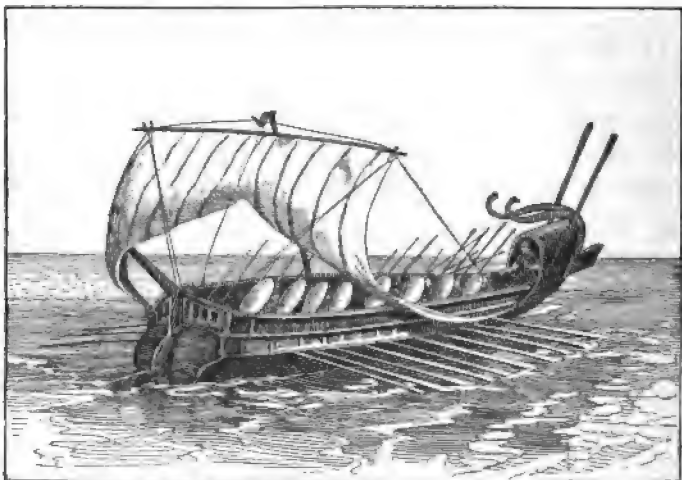
They are better adapted to existing conditions than those of the Romans

Cum his nāvibus nostrae classī eius modi congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta 25 in eis erat firmitūdō — neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō

dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Roman fleet arrives and is attacked by the Veneti

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit
5 frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captis



ROMAN BATTLESHIP (*NAVIS LONGA*)

oppidis reprimi neque eis nocēri posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quæ ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimæ atque omni genere armōrum ōrnatissimæ, profectæ ex portū nostris
10 adversæ cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classi præerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōibusque, quibus singulæ nāvēs erant attribūtæ, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocēri nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis, tamen hās altitudō

puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex infēriore locō satis commodē tēla adigi possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent.

A Roman device disables the ships of the enemy

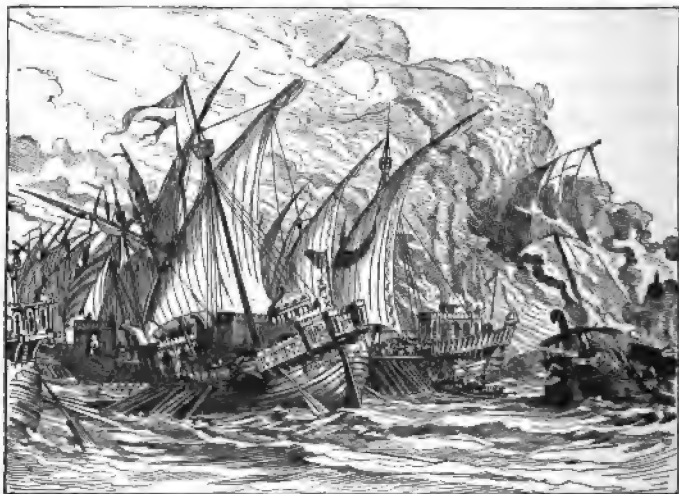
Ūna erat magnō ūsui rēs praeparāta ā nostris, — falcēs praeacūtāe insertae adfixaeque longuriis, nōn absimili fōrmā 5 mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs qui antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsi adductique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praeumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antemnae necessariō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptis omnis ūsus 10 nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant atque eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus 15 dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Romans win the victory and capture the hostile ships

15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trānscondere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, 20 cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni 25 numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quartā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The Veneti surrender and are punished

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat



A NAVAL BATTLE

5 in ūnum locum coēgerant ; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō
 sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent
 habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In
 quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit quō diligentius
 in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur.
 10 Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēdidit.



" RELIQUOS SUB CORONA VENDIDIT "

(See page 94, line 10)

THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI

Sabinus, arriving among the Venelli, finds them hostile

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus, cum eīs cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque his paucis 5 diēbus Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandi studiumque bel- 10 landi ab agrī culturā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.

He leads the Gauls to the belief that he is afraid

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandi potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabinus veniret 15 sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuilt ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut op- 20 portūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

He strengthens this belief by a stratagem

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat et quid fierī velit 25

ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur docet: 'Neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēducāt et ad Caesarem
 5 auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur.' Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendi āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra irī oportēre.

Thoroughly convinced, they prepare an immediate attack

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabinī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia
 10 cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adducti nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eis sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti,
 15 ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

They rush to the camp, where they arrive exhausted

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque
 20 Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt.

Sabinus suddenly sallies forth and defeats them

Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportunitāte loci, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum
 25 pugnārū exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integris

viribus militēs nostri cōsecūti magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectāti, paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt.

Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvāli pugnā Sabinus et dē Sabini victōriā Caesar est certior factus; civitatēque omnēs sē 5 statim Titūrīo dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

THE WAR IN AQUITANIA

Crassus is attacked by the Sotiates

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Gal- 10 liae, — cum intellexeret in eis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōn- sul impedimentis āmissis prōfūgisset, nōn mediocre sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā 15 prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā viris fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prō- vinciae finitimae his regiōnibus) nōminātim ēvocātis, in Sō- tiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs magnis cōpiis coāctis equitātūque, quō plūrimum 20 valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commiserunt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque in- sequentibus nostris, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quas in convalle in insidiis conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hi nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

He defeats them and they surrender

21. Pugnatum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiō-
 ribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem
 positam putārent ; nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine
 reliquis legiōnibus, adulēscēntulō duce, efficere possent per-
 5 spici cuperent ; tandem cōfectī volneribus hostēs terga
 vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex
 itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter
 resistantibus vineās turrēsq̄ ēgit. Illi, aliās ēruptiōne temp-
 tātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctis (cuius rei
 10 sunt longē perītissimī Aquitānī, proptereā quod multis locis
 apud eōs aerāriæ sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostrōrum
 nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Cras-
 sum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā
 rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his brothers in arms

15 22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animīs,
 aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, quī summam imperi tenē-
 bat, cum dc dēvōtis, quōs illi solduriōs appellant, — quōrum
 haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vitā commodis ūnā cum
 eīs fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint ; si quid his per
 20 vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem
 cōnsciscant ; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est
 quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset,
 mortem recūsaret, — cum his Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere
 cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad
 25 arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum
 esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādē dēditiōnis con-
 diciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Other hostile tribes gather their armies against Crassus

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōti, quod oppidum, et nātūrā loci et manū mūnitum, paucis diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, 5 cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitudīne bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō ei dēliguntur quī ūnā cum 10 Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt.

Crassus believes that conditions demand an immediate action

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, — suās cōpiās propter 15 exiguitātem nōn facile didūci, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, — nōn cunctandum existimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, 20 ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

Crassus offers battle, but the enemy declines

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent exspectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudīnem et vete- 25 rem belli glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessis

viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō, ab ducibus
5 prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis, sēsē castris tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportēre quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus
10 cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

Crassus attacks the enemy's camp

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis coniectis dēfēsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus compor-
15 tandis speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circum-itis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādē esse diligentīā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum
20 habēre.

A Roman force surprises the camp in the rear

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnis prae-
miis pollicitātiōibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis eis cohortibus quae praesidiō castris relictae intritae ab labōre erant, et longiōre
25 itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque his prōrūtis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidēri aut quid rei gererētur cognōsci posset.

The enemy abandon their camp and flee

Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis 5 campis cōsectātus, ex milium L numerō, quæ ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the other Aquitanian tribes now surrender

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tar- 10 belli, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs annī tempore cōfissæ, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

CÆSAR'S EXPEDITION TO THE NORTH

Cæsar marches against the Morini and Menapii

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Cæsar, etsi prope exācta iam 15 aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiique supererant quī in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce misissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. 20

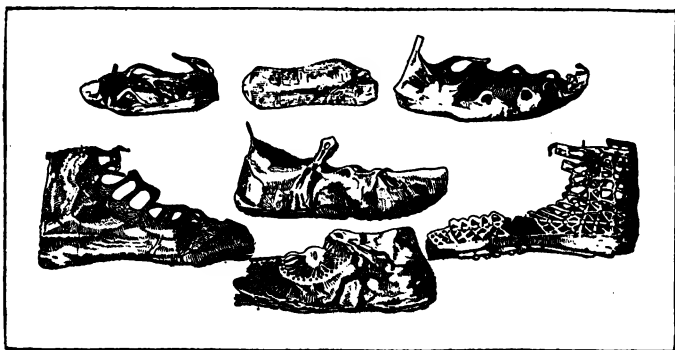
They hide in the forests and swamps

Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quæ proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Cæsar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre

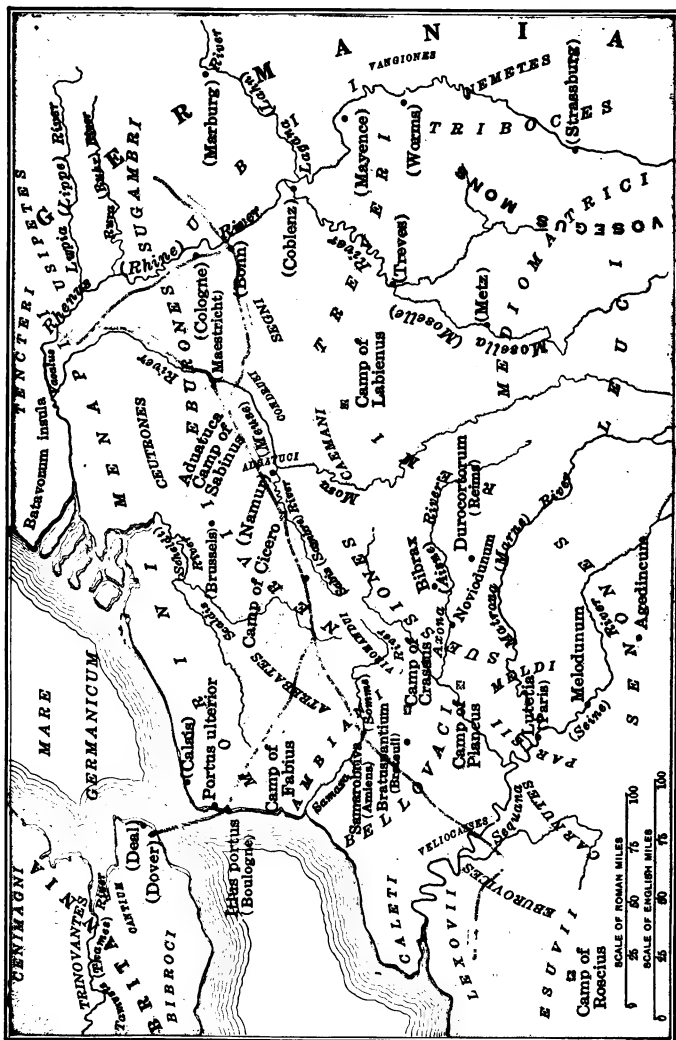
instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostrōs impetum fecerunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cepērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

Violent storms put an end to further action

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit, et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vallō ad
10 utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae utī opus necessariō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pel-
15 libus militēs continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agris, vicis aedificiisque incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus quae proximē bellum fecerant, in hibernis conlocāvit.



ROMAN FOOTWEAR



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 55 B.C.

This map shows also the location of the various camps where the divisions of Cæsar's forces were quartered after the campaign of 54 B.C. (see Book V, chapters 24 and 25)

BOOK IV

CÆSAR'S FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE GERMANS IN GAUL

Harassed by the Suebi, two German tribes invade Gaul

EÃ QUAE secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germāni et item Tencterī magnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur.

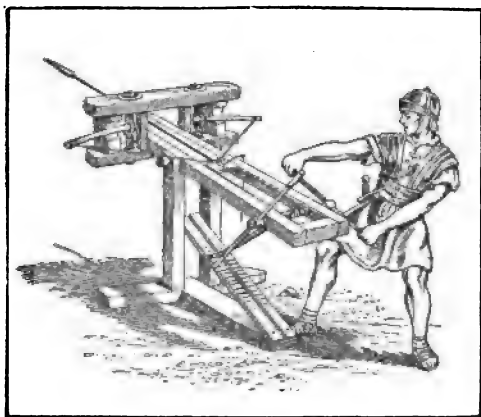
Strength and customs of the Suebi

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armis sunt, illi domī remanent. Sic neque agrī culturā nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitæ, quod ā pueris nullō officiō aut disciplinā adsuēfactī nihil omninō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alit et

immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam
 sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locis frigidissimis neque
 vestitūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter
 exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in
 5 flūminibus.

Their relations with traders

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint



A CATAPULT (*TORMENTUM*)

quibus vëndant
 habeant, quam
 quō ūllam rem
 ad sē importāri
 dēsiderent. Quin
 etiam iūmentis,
 quibus maximē
 Galli dēlectantur
 quaeque impēn-
 sō parant pretiō,
 Germānī impor-
 tātis nōn ūtun-
 tur; sed quae
 sunt apud eōs
 nāta, parva atque

dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris,
 efficiunt.

Their horsemanship. Their sobriety

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus
 25 proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō adsuēfēcē-
 runt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque
 eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam
 ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum
 equitum quamvis pauci adire audent.

Vinum omninō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effeminārī arbitrantur.

They destroy and oppress their neighbors

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum 5 numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter milia passuum centum agri vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; ei paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hū- 10 māniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfacti. Hōs cum Suēbi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitūdinem gravitatemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs 15 sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

*The Usipetes and Tencteri are checked at the Rhine
by the Menapii*

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs suprà diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuerunt; ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germāniae triennium vagāti ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās 20 regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis aditū perterriti, ex eis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.

By a ruse they succeed in crossing into Gaul

Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressi rūsus revertērunt, 5 atque, omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō, insciōs inopinantēque Menapiōs oppressērunt; qui, dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti, sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum 10 quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

Cæsar distrusts the Gauls because of their fickle character

5. His dē rēbus Cæsar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs 15 et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex 20 regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūtiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti, dē summis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He finds proof of Gallic disloyalty and resolves on war with Germany

25 6. Quā cōsuētūdine cognitā, Cæsar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficisci-tur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta

cognōvit : missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nullis cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti Germāni lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. 5 Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animis permulsis et cōfirmātis, equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

The German envoys ask Cæsar for lands in Gaul

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis, iter in 10 ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgati ab eis vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō : 'Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, si lacessantur, quā armis contendat, quod Germānōrum cōn- 15 suētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere : vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō ; si suam grātiā Rōmāni velint, posse eis ūtilēs esse amicōs ; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armis possēderint : sēsē ūnis Suēbis 20 concēdere, quibus nē dii quidem immortalēs parēs esse possint ; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

Cæsar refuses and orders them to leave the country

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit ; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis : 'Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, 25 si in Galliā remanērent ; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre ; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī dari tantae praesertim multitudinī sine

iniuriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsidere, quōrum sint lēgāti apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.’

The envoys seek delay

- 5 9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī
10 frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appell-
15 lātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Medioma-
20 tricū, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, — multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

The envoys return. More parleying to gain time

- 25 11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgāti revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur

orābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant uti ad eōs equitēs qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iurandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē 5
ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi tridui spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut tridui morā interpositā equitēs eōrum qui abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis 10
causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs qui cum omni equitātū antecesserant mittit qui nūntiarent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent; et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius 15
accessisset.

A treacherous attack is made on the Roman cavalry

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod ei qui frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod 20
lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab his petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus his resistentibus, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equis complūribusque nostris dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita 25
perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum agminis nostri vēnissent.

Heroic death of Piso and his brother

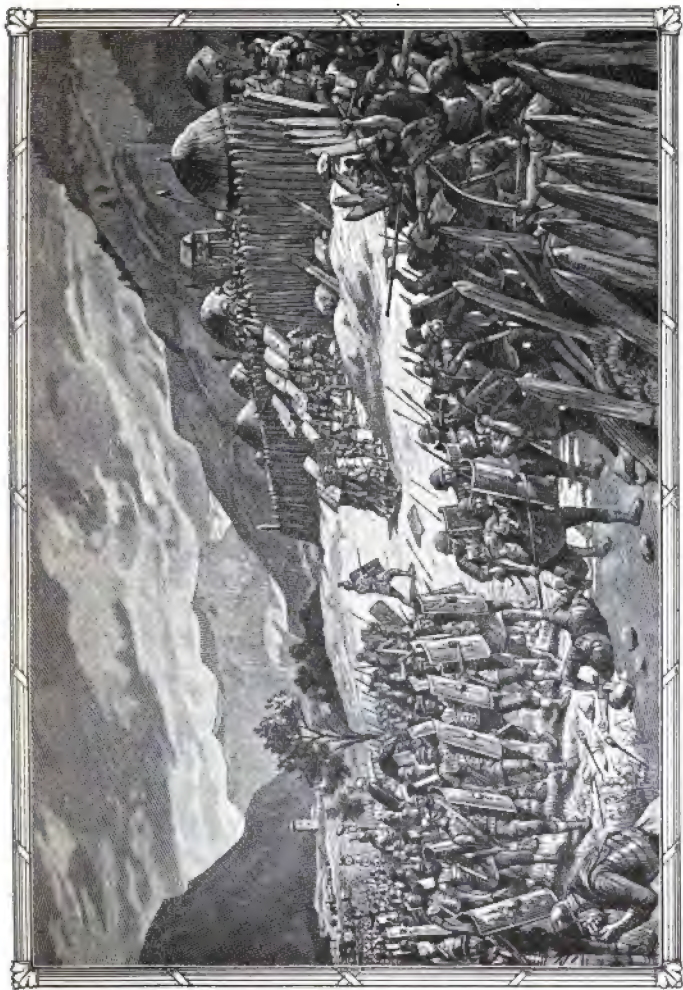
In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitāte suā rēgnū obtinuerat, amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī inter-
 5 clūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis volneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Cæsar decides that the situation demands stern measures

10 13. Hōc factō proeliō, Cæsar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eis qui, per dolum atque insidiās petitā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiæ augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat;
 15 et cognitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūti, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spatī dandum existimābat.

He arrests the German chiefs who come asking a truce

His cōstitutis rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātis et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, oppor-
 20 tūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē eius diēi māne eādē et perfidiā et simulatiōne ūsi Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitis, ad eum in castra venērunt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridī commi-
 25 sissent; simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūitiis fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Cæsar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit;



" MILITES NOSTRI IN CASTRA INRUPERUNT "

(See page 111, line 10)

ipse omnēs cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recenti proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

He then makes a quick march on the German camp and surprises it

14. Ac iē triplici institūtā et celeriter viii milium itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti, 5 et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsili habendi neque arma capiendi spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī pristini diēi perfidiā 10 incitāti in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere 15 coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

The Germans are thoroughly demoralized and many perish

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armis abiectis signisque militāribus relictis sē ex castris eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō 20 interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timōre, lassitudine, vī flūminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucis vulnerātis, ex tanti belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castris 25 retinuerat discēdendi potestātem fēcit. Illi supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum veriti, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY

*Caesar's reasons for believing that he ought to cross
the Rhine*

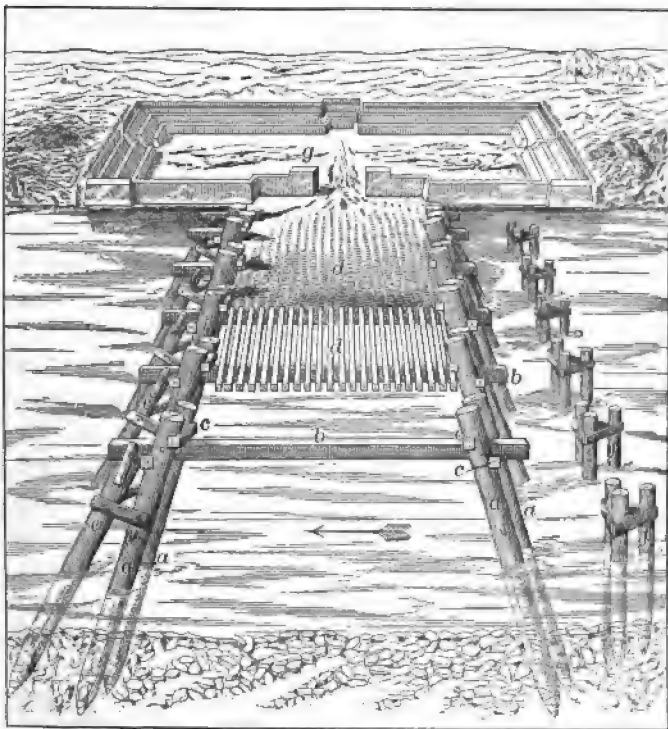
16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trāseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit,
5 cum intellexerent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tenc-
terōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi praedandi frūmentandique
causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam
10 suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat
sēque cum eis coniūnixerat. Ad quōs cum Cāesar nūntiōs
mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulis-
sent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populi Rōmānī imperium
Rhēnum finire; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire
15 nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut
potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?'

Ubii autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgā-
tōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere
ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs
20 premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae
prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi
ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futurum. Tantum
esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō
et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānō-
25 rum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amicitīā populi Rōmānī tūtī
esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum
exercitum pollicēbantur.

He decides to bridge the river

17. Caesar his de causis quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat ; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum



PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia ; *bb*, trabes bipedales ; *cc*, fibulae ; *dd*, directa materia longu-
riis cratibusque constrata ; *ee*, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique
actae ; *ff*, sublicae supra pontem immissae ; *g*, castellum ad caput pontis positum

esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populi Rōmāni digni-
tātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faci-
endi pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem, 5

altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat.

The plan of the bridge

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta, dimēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, 5 intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta 10 intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, binīs utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam 15 partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā materiā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē 20 agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, si arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbaris immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

Cæsar crosses the bridge and invades Germany

25 18. Diēbus x quibus materiā coepta erat comportārī, omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Cæsar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitatibus ad eum lēgātī

veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberā-
liter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūci iubet. At Sugambri,
ex eō tempore quō pōns Institui coeptus est fugā comparātā,
hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud
sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportā- 5
verant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

The invasion fills the Germans with terror

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omni-
bus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis, sē in
finēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus,
si ab Suēbis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit: 'Suēbōs, 10
posteaquam per explorātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent,
mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisisse,
uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia
in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent
ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium 15
ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hic Rōmānō-
rum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse.'

Caesar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eis rēbus cōfectis
quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Ger-
mānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs 20
obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omninō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōn-
sūmptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem prōfectum
arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Caesar decides to invade Britain

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subminis-
 5 trāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam,
 10 neque eis ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus in-
 15 stitūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitudinē idonei portūs, reperire poterat.

He sends Volusenus to reconnoiter and Commius as a peace envoy

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad
 20 sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenire.

25 Interim cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī

Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtutem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctōritās in his regiōnibus magni habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat 5



AN ANCIENT HARBOR

quās possit adeat civitatēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu-sēnus perspectis regiōnibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quintō 10 diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

While the ships are gathering, the Morini surrender

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsārent, quod

hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportunē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere
 5 volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārū rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit.

The muster of the fleet and disposition of the forces

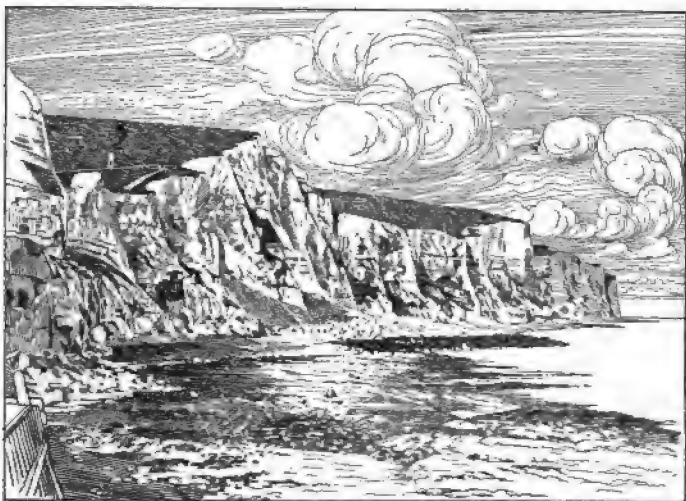
Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis, quot satis esse ad
 10 duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārū habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equitibus distribuit.
 15 Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar crosses the channel and seeks a good landing place

20 23. His cōstitutis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit,
 25 atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locis superiōribus in

litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, 5 ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent

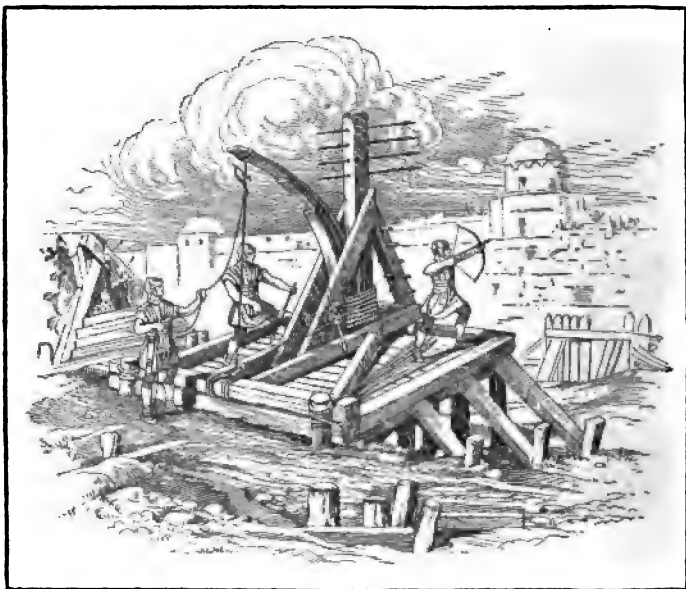


THE CLIFFS OF DOVER

(ut quae celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia pas- 10 suum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

The Britons oppose the landing of the Romans

24. At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērūque genere in proeliis ūti cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūti nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod

A LARGE CATAPULT (*TORMENTUM*)

5 nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pug-
 10 omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī



LANDING OF THE ROMANS ON THE COAST OF BRITAIN

perterriti atque huius omninō generis pugnae imperiti nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōnsue-rant ūtēbantur.

Cæsar tries to drive them away

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiō et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpelli ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum permōti, barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

Valor of a Roman standard bearer

Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter ēveniret, "Dēsilitē," inquit, "commilitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam 25 ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversi ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.



EAGLE BEARER

The Romans land and the Britons flee

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant; atque alius aliā ex nāvi quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur ;
 5 hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item
 10 speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, his subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam
 15 capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

British envoys sue for peace. Caesar grants it

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs esse polliciti
 20 sunt. Ūnā cum his lēgātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērunt; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā
 25 pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent,

ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt. 5

A storm drives back the cavalry transports

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō 10 coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum 15 prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Wind and tide dash the fleet on the British coast

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, 20 et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis — ad nāvigandū inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat 25 accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deērant

quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

These disasters encourage the Britons to renew hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognitis principēs Britanniae, qui post
5 proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūti, cum
et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis dēesse intellege-
rent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōs-
cerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine
impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum
10 factū esse dūxērunt, rebellione factā, frūmentō commeātūque
nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod, hīs
superātis aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem postea belli infe-
rendi causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque
rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castris discēdere et
15 suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

Caesar suspects their design and prepares accordingly

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat,
tamen, et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs
dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque
ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum
20 ex agris cotidiē in castra cōferēbat, et quae gravissimē
adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās
reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eas rēs erant ūsuī ex conti-
nenti comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā
militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut
25 nāvīgārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

Part of his men gather grain, others guard the camp

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine unā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ullā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — ei quī prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesari nūntiāverunt 5 pulverem maiōrem quam cōsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

The Britons attack a foraging party

Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōsili, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succē- 10 dere, reliquās armārī et cōfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premi atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō, pars una erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs 15 hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armis in metendō occupātōs subitō adorti, paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

The Britons' mode of fighting with war chariots

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primō per omnēs 20 partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāverunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, si illi ā 25 multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum

habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt uti in dēclivi ac praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērunt.

The foragers are rescued. The Britons gather a great army

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitāte pugnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt.
- 10 Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agris reliquī discessērunt.
- 15 Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbari nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandi
- 20 facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

They are defeated and their country is laid waste

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum
- 25 effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt

ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Cæsar demands hostages and returns to Gaul

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē 5 pāce vērērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem antea imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērunt; sed ex eis onerāriæ duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā dēlātae sunt. 20



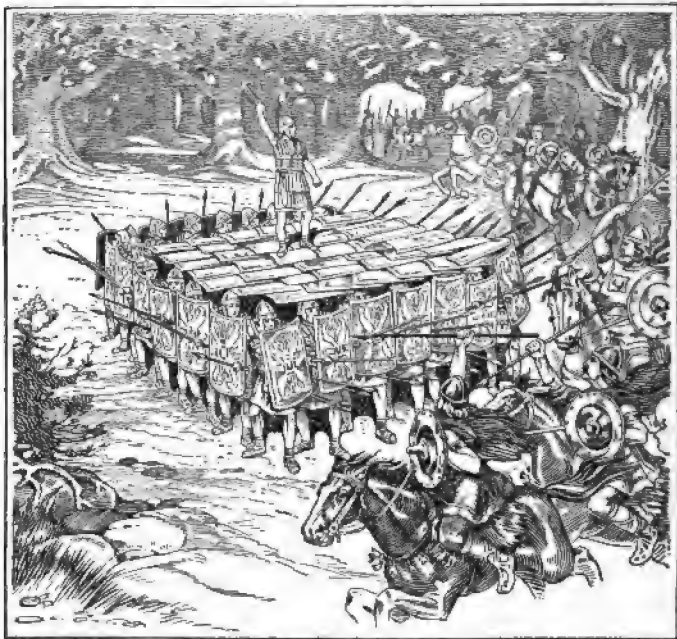
CAVALRYMAN CHARGING

THE REVOLT OF THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII

The Morini attack Cæsar's troops

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter 300 atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum 25

illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim



ORBIS MILITUM

nostrī milītēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius
5 hōris IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Postēā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

They are subdued. The Menapii hide away

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eis legi-
 ōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelli-
 ōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum
 quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō
 erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni pervēnērunt. 5
 At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs
 legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmen-
 tis succisis, aedificiis incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in
 dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Close of the campaign

Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. 10
 Eō duae omninō civitatēs ex Britannīā obsidēs misērunt,
 reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris
 diērum xx supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



BOOK V
CÆSAR'S FIFTH CAMPAIGN, 54 B.C.
THE REBELLION IN NORTHERN GAUL

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1-39

Cæsar contemplates a second invasion of Britain in the following spring (54 B.C.). He orders the building of a suitable fleet, and goes to northern Italy and thence to Illyricum to settle disturbances there (1). On his return to Gaul he has the new fleet assemble at Port Itius. Trouble among the Treveri calls him thither (2). Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, rival chiefs of the Treveri, appeal to him (3). He settles the dispute in favor of Cingetorix (4).

Cæsar's troops assemble at Port Itius (5).

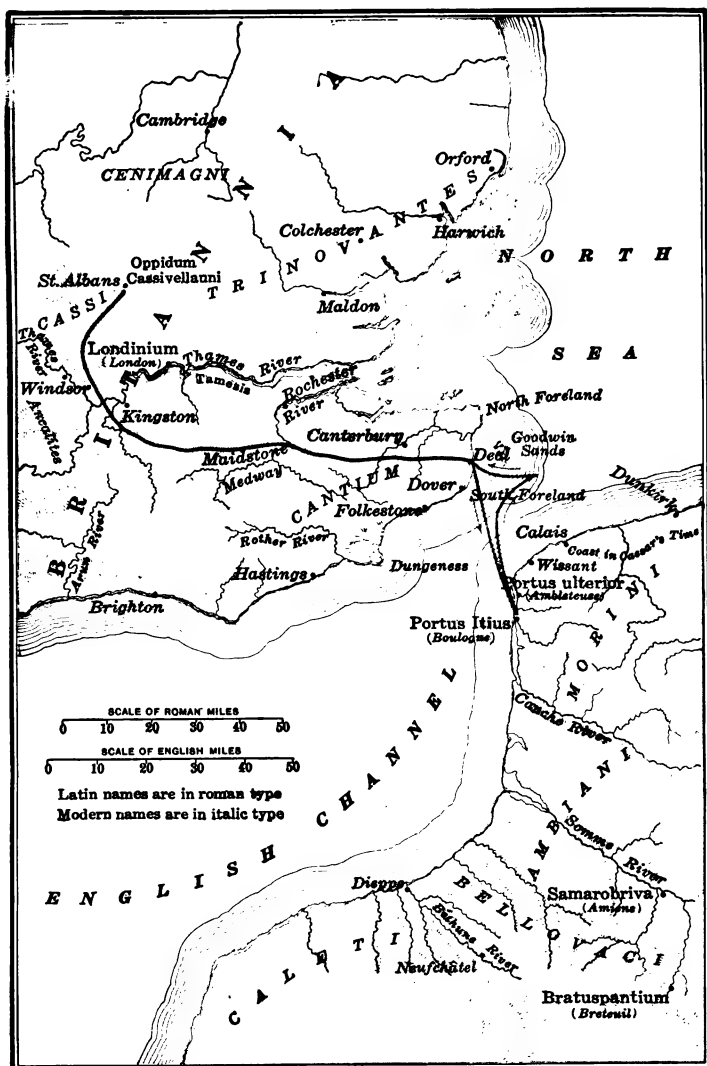
Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Hæduan, again appears and tries to make trouble (6). Cæsar is on his guard. Dumnorix flees, but is captured and put to death (7).

Cæsar sails for Britain with more than eight hundred ships. The natives withdraw from the coast (8). Cæsar lands, and drives the Britons out of their stronghold (9). A storm damages the fleet (10). Cæsar has the ships hastily repaired, and sends word to Labienus, whom he left on the continent, to build others (11).

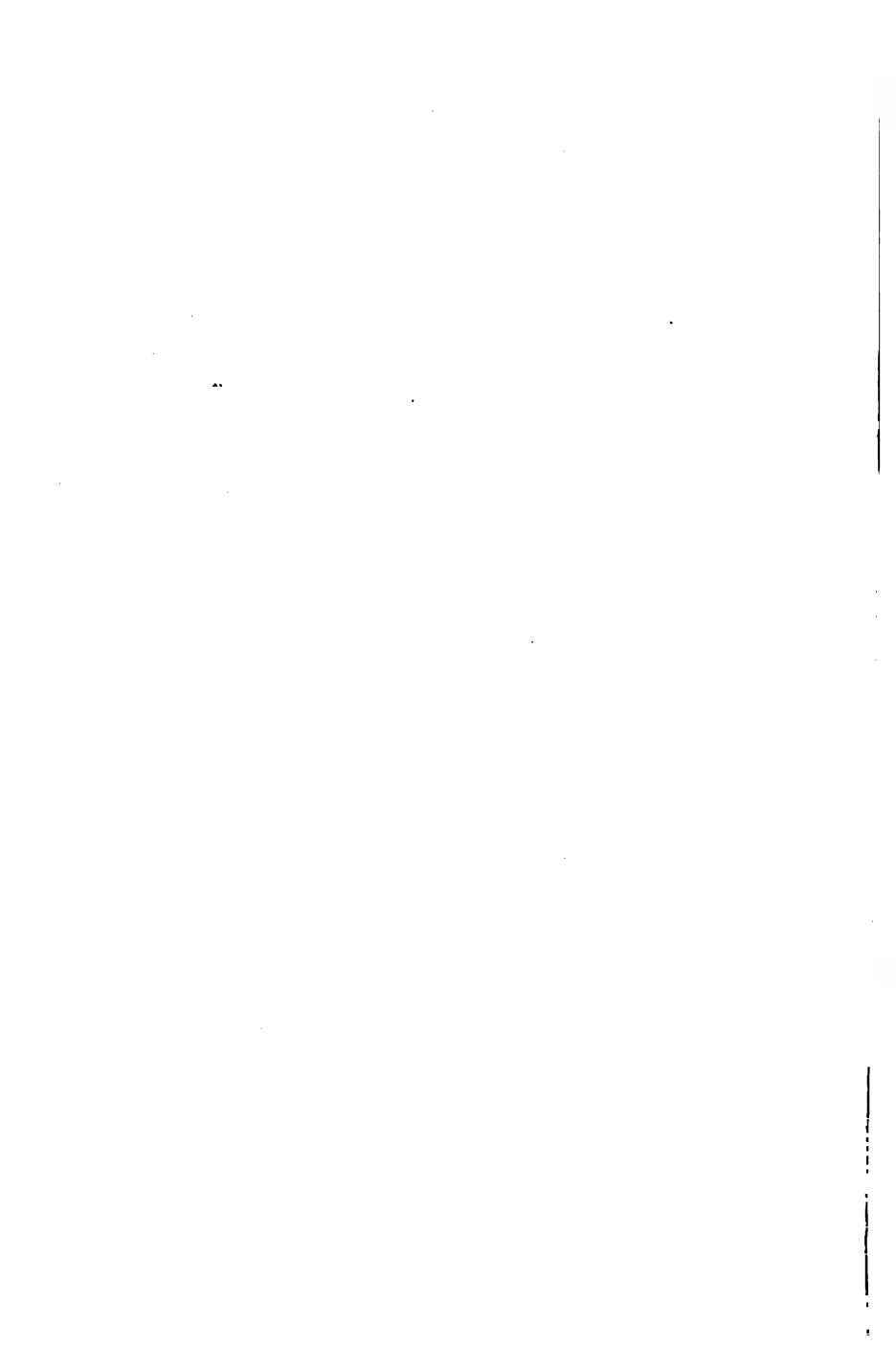
Cæsar describes the inhabitants of Britain and the resources of the country (12). He tells the shape and the size of the island (13). He describes the customs of the people (14). He again defeats the Britons (15). He describes their methods of fighting (16). He again defeats them (17). He crosses the Thames (18). Various tribes yield to him (19-22).

Cæsar returns to Gaul and distributes his army for the winter (23, 24; the camps are shown on the map facing page 103). Fresh risings occur among the Gauls, with reverses for the Romans (25-37).

Ambiorix, a prince of the Eburones, persuades the Aduatuci and Nervii to join the revolt (38). A large force attacks the camp of Quintus Cicero, the orator's brother (39).



THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.



Cicero makes vigorous preparations for resistance

MITTUNTUR ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae, magnis prōpositis praemiis sī pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex mātēriā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibili celeritātē; quae 5 deesse operi vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. A nostris eādē ratiōne quā pridīe resistitur: hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegris, nōn volnerātis 10 facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppugnationem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur; pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum 15 quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Nervian chiefs try to persuade Cicero to retire. He refuses

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habebant, conloquī sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestātē, eadē 20 quae Ambiorix cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 'Omne esse in armis Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnāri.' Addunt etiam dē Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, sī quicquam ab eis praesidi spērent quī 25 suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis

per sē incolumibus ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet : ' Nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populi Rōmāni accipere ab hoste armātō condiціōnem ; sī ab armis discēdere
5 velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant ; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.'

They lay siege to the camp

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quīdecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōsuētūdine ā nōbis cognōverant et quōsdam dē
10 exercitū nacti captivōs ab his docēbantur ; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaustire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitudō cognōsci potuit ; nam minus hōris tribus milium passuum xv in cir-
15 cuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquisque diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vālli, falcēs testūdīnēsque, quās iidem captivi docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

They make a furious assault, which is gallantly resisted

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coōrtō ventō fervētēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula
20 in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sic uti partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs testūdīnēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere
25 coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animi fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitudīne premerentur suaeque omnia impedimenta

atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandi causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hic diēs nostris longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maxi- 5 mus numerus hostium volnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque primis ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suosque 10 omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introire vel- lent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis dēturbāti turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry of two centurions

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, qui 15 iam primis ordinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alteri anteferrētur, omnibusque annis dē locō summis similitatibus contendēbant. Ex his Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? 20 aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectās? Hic diēs dē nostris contrōversiis iūdicābit." Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quāque pars hostium cōnfertissima est visa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem subsequitur. 25 Mediocri spatiō relicto Pullō pilūm in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trācit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversi tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendi facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōni et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Āvertit 30

hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnanti dextram
 morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. Suc-
 currit inimicus illi Vorēnus et labōranti subvenit. Ad hunc
 sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum
 5 verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminuſ rem gerit
 Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit;
 dum cupidius īstat, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit.
 Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō
 incolumēs complūribus interfectis summā cum laude sēsē intrā
 10 mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine
 utrumque versāvit ut alter alteri inimicus auxiliō salūtique
 esset, neque diiūdicārī posset uter utri virtūte antefendus
 vidērētur.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 45-47

Cicero makes efforts to inform Cæsar of his danger; but the letters are intercepted, and the messengers are put to death. After many days, when Cicero's forces are reduced almost to the last extremity, a message finally reaches Cæsar through a slave (45).

Cæsar sends directions to his lieutenants. He bids Crassus to come to him at once with one legion. He orders Fabius, with another legion, to advance into the territory of the Atrebates, where he intends to join him on the march. He sends word to Labienus to take one legion and proceed to the territory of the Nervii, if he thinks it wise to do so (46).

Cæsar advances, and meets Crassus, whom he leaves in command at Samarobriua (now Amiens), an important center of supplies. Continuing his march, he is joined by Fabius. Labienus writes to Cæsar of the danger in withdrawing one of his legions from winter quarters. He describes what has taken place among the Eburones, and says that he is threatened by the forces of the Treveri (47).

How a letter is conveyed to Cicero

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsi opiniōne trium
 15 legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum com-
 mūnī salūti auxiliū in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnis

itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis persuādet uti ad Cicerōnem epistolam dēferat. Hanc Graecis cōnscriptam litteris mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab 5 hostibus cōnsilia cognōscentur. Si adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litteris scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut pristinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat prae- 10 ceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōnspicitur; dēmpla ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, 15 quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls abandon the siege and march against Caesar, who avoids a conflict

49. Galli rē cognitā per explorātōrēs²³ obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōstrāvimus repetit qui 20 litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dimicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō 25 diē lūce primā movet castra, et circiter milia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī periculī rēs tantulis cōpiis iniquō locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem

sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritatē existimābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium VII, praesertim nūllis cum impedimentis, tamen
 5 angustiis viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dimissis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 50 AND 51

Mere skirmishes take place between the cavalry; for the Gauls are awaiting reënforcements, and Cæsar, through a pretense of fear, tries to draw the enemy to his own ground. At daybreak the Gallic cavalry approaches Cæsar's camp, and engages with his cavalry. Cæsar orders his cavalry to yield and retire to the camp, while throughout the camp he causes a display of fear (50).

The Gauls are now tempted to give battle, and boldly attack the camp. Cæsar orders a general sally, and routs the enemy with great loss (51).

Cæsar reaches the camp of Cicero, and congratulates him and his men on their gallant defense

52. Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēque
 10 intercēdebant neque etiam parvulō dētrimentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdīnēs mūnitiōnēque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine
 15 volnere. Ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū

Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cōnsolātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeritāte lēgāti sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō 5 incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 53-58

The report of Cæsar's victory reaches Labienus. When the Treveri hear what has taken place, Indutiomarus, their chief, defers his intended attack on Labienus. All signs now point to a general uprising of the Gauls, and Cæsar decides to spend the winter with his army (53).

Cæsar calls the chiefs of the states to him, and is able to restrain a large part of Gaul; but the Senones and other tribes are ready to revolt (54). The Treveri, led by Indutiomarus, lose no time in making preparations (55). Many tribes join Indutiomarus, and he decides to attack Labienus (56). Labienus acts cautiously. He keeps his forces within his fortifications, and uses whatever means he has to feign fear (57). By an unexpected sally he puts the enemy to flight. Indutiomarus is captured and slain. The forces of the Eburones and Nervii withdraw, and Gaul becomes more peaceful (58).

BOOK VI

CÆSAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN, 53 B.C.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

The campaign of 54 B.C. had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results. On his return Cæsar had found Gaul in a condition of revolt. In spite of some successes the advantage had been, on the whole, with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they received support from across the Rhine, a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check. His plans therefore included not only an invasion of the territory of the northern states, but also a second expedition into Germany.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS I-8

On account of the critical situation in Gaul, Cæsar sends recruiting officers to Italy to raise fresh levies, and also requests Pompey, his fellow triumvir, to send him the forces which were enlisted during his consulship in Cisalpine Gaul. He particularly desires these reinforcements to impress the Gauls with the strength and resources of Rome. In response to his request three more legions are added to his forces in Gaul (1). Cæsar learns what the Treveri and others are doing, and hastens his plans (2).

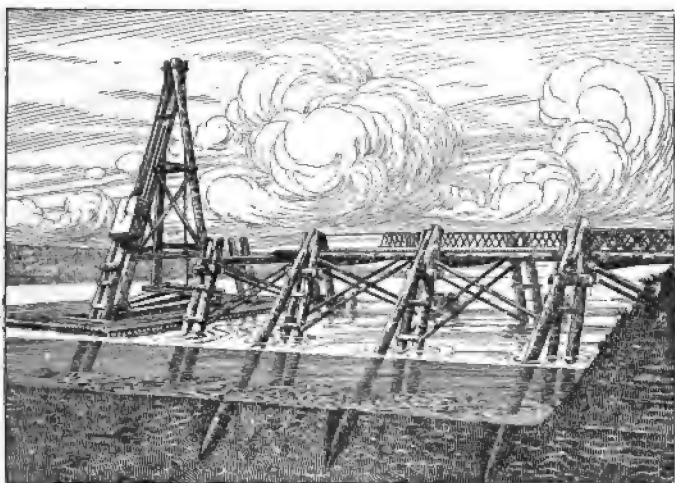
His first move is a swift inroad into the territory of the Nervii, whose fields he lays waste. Then he sets out against the Senones and Carnutes, and receives the submission of both states without a battle (3, 4). He next makes a swift march without baggage into the country of the Menapii, the most northerly of the Gallic peoples, and the ones who alone have failed to send ambassadors to him. They withdraw into their swamps and forests, but Cæsar follows them, ravaging their country, until ambassadors are sent to make peace (5, 6).

While Cæsar is thus engaged, the Treveri make preparation to attack Labienus, who is wintering in their territories. Timely reinforcements

permit Labienus to assume the offensive. He attacks the Treveri, while they are waiting for promised help from the Germans, and after destroying their forces takes possession of their country (7, 8).

Cæsar builds his second bridge across the Rhine

CÆSAR postquam ex Menapiis in Trêverôs vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trêveris miserant; altera, nē ad eôs Ambiorix receptum habēret. His



CÆSAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

cōstitutis rēbus paulō suprà eum locum quō ante exercitum 5
trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā
ratiōne, magnō militum studiō, paucis diēbus opus efficitur.

He crosses, and spares the Ubii

Firmō in Trêveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab
his subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trā-
dūcit. Ubii, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem 10

venerant, purgandi sui causā ad eum legātōs mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitatē in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam : petunt atque orant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus
 5 poenās pendant ; si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbis auxilia missa esse ; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit ; aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirīt.

The Ubii inform Caesar that the Suebi are assembling their forces

10 10. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eis nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūtiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cognitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiis imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōferant,
 15 — spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs, inopiā cibārīōrum adductōs, ad inīquam pugnandi condiōnem posse dēdūci ; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

Scouts report that the Suebi have retreated to the Bacenis forest

Illi imperāta faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt :
 20 20 'Suēbōs omnēs, posteaquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiis quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse ; silvam esse ibi infīnitā magnitūdine, quae appellētur Bācenis ; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātivō mūrō
 25 obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōnibusque prohibēre ; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.'

A digression on the Gauls and Germans is announced

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse videtur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

The political organization of the Gauls

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis 5 domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt qui summam auctōritatem eōrum iudiciō habere existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius rei causā antiquitus institutum videtur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxili 10 egēret; suos enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri nōn patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ūllam inter suos habeat auctōritatem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

The factional struggle between the Haedui and Sequani

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prin- 15 cipēs erant Haedui, alterius Sēquani. Hi, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Haeduis magnaеque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant, eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus 20 factis secundis atque omni nōbilitate Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduis ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim 25

occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitatē adductus, Diviciācus auxili petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat.

The favor of Caesar gives the Haedui the supremacy

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus
5 Haeduis redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitutīs, novis per
Caesarem comparātis, quod eī, qui sē ad eōrum amicitiam
adgregāverant, meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō
sē ūti vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitatēque
amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dimiserant.

The Remi hold the second place

10 In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adae-
quāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī qui propter
veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Haeduis coniungī pote-
rant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illi diligenter
tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritā-
15 tem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē princi-
pēs habērentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī
obtinērent.

The Gallic nobility and the common people

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt nu-
merō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene
20 servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūlli adhibē-
tur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitū-
dine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in
servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia
sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus
25 generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

The druids hold the religious and judicial power

Illi rēbus divinis intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs magnus adulēcentium numerus disciplinae causā concurrit, magnōque hi sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis publicis privātisque cōstituunt; et, si quod est admissum 5 facinus, si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; si quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numerō impiōrum ac scelerātō 10 rum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus cōmunicātur.

Their organization and their meetings

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam 15 inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut si quī ex reliquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, si sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armis, dē principātū contendunt. Hi certō anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōsidunt in locō 20 cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicisque pārent. Disciplina in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta existimātur; et nunc, quī diligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendi causā proficiscuntur. 25

Their prerogatives and system of education

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendunt. Tantis excitāti praemiis et suā

sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūlli vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās
5 esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquis ferē rēbus, publicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur : quod neque in vol-
gus disciplinam efferri velint neque eōs qui discunt litteris cō-
fisōs minus memoriae studēre — quod ferē plērisque accidit ut
10 praesidiō litterārū diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

Their beliefs

In primis hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interire animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs ; atque hōc maximē ad virtutem excitārī putant metū mortis neglētō.
15 Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārū magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūti trādunt.

The knights do the fighting

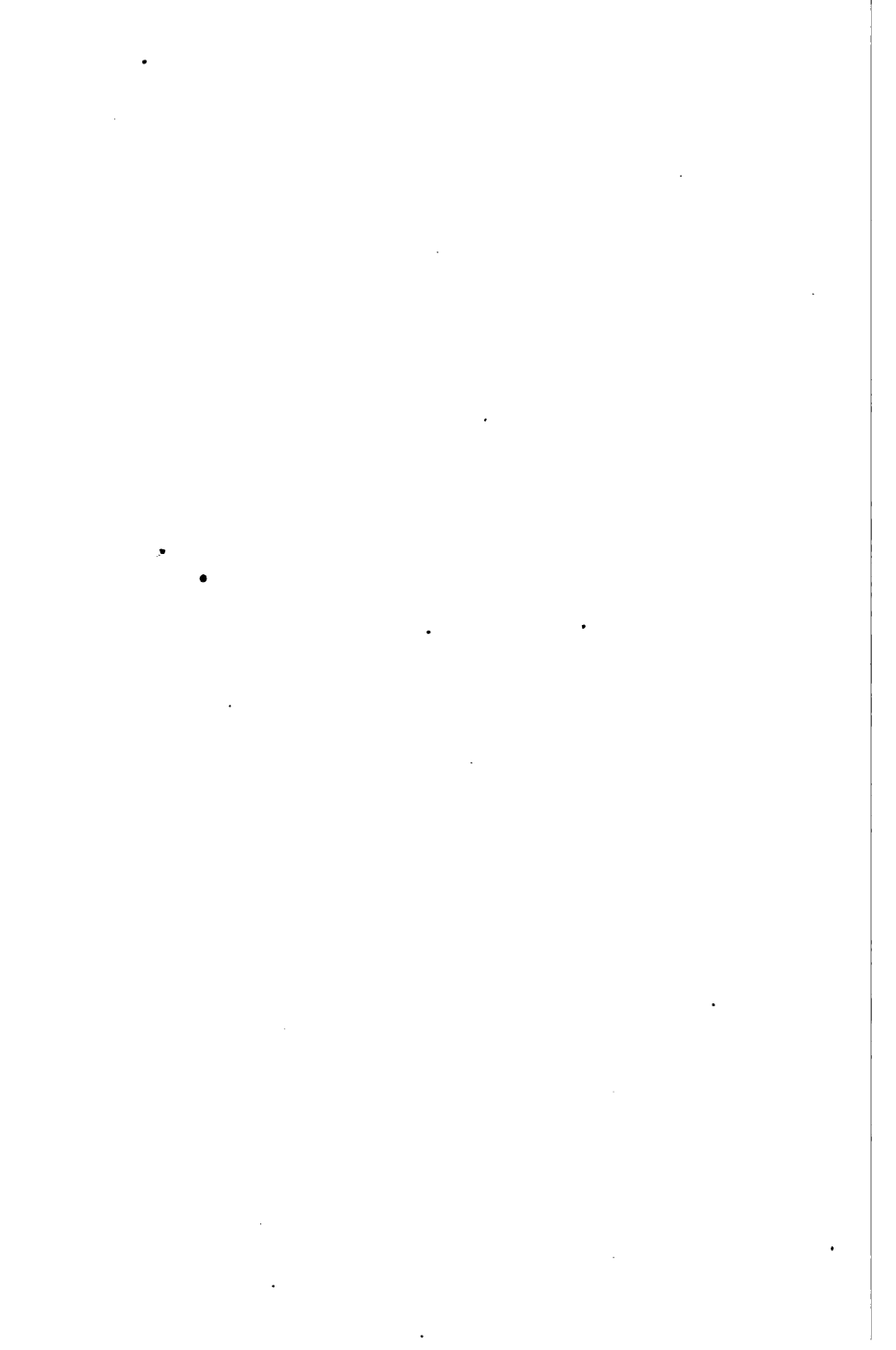
15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum
20 quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsi iniūriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur ; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

The Gauls are superstitious and offer human sacrifices

25 16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus ; atque ob eam causam qui sunt adfecti graviōribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō



A DRUID SACRIFICE



victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur; quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen placārī arbitrantur; publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitudine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventi flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsi, grātiōra dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods whom the Gauls worship

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

20

To Mars they give the spoils of war

Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent. Cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglectā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

Time is measured by the number of nights

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic
5 observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

There is no open association between boys and their fathers

In reliquīs vitae institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerili aetāte in pūblicō in cōspectū patris
10 adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage customs and funeral rites

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēperunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā
15 superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicut in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, si rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem
20 modum quaestiōnem habent, et si compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam
25 servī et clientēs, quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstis fūnebris cōfectis unā cremābantur.

All news is first reported to the magistrates

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōsiliū capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant; quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per conciliū loqui nōn concēditur.

10

The customs of the Germans are very different from those of the Gauls

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus divinis praesint neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs solōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis labōri ac dūritiae student.

Agriculture is discouraged. Land is held in common and apportioned yearly by the magistrates and leading men

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quique ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōsuētūdine

capti studium belli gerendi agrī culturā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās,
 5 quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animi aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequārī videat.

They glory in wide frontiers of deserted land

23. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis
 10 existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere: simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timōre sublātō.

They give great power to their chiefs

Cum bellum civitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habeant
 15 potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

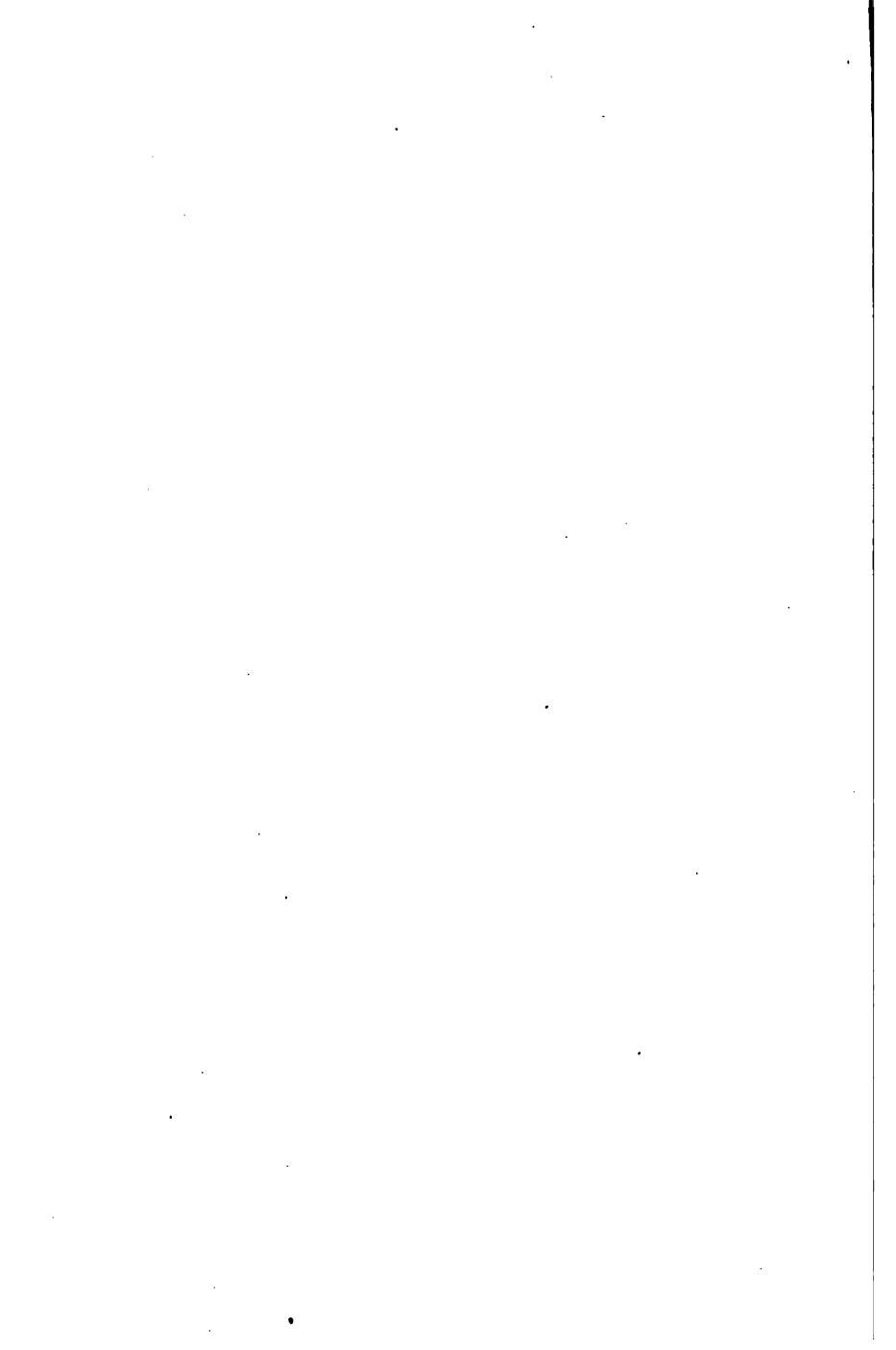
They rob outsiders, but respect guests

Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac
 20 dēsidiaē minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequi velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne conlaudantur; quī ex his secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac
 25 prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur omniumque his rērum postea



EARLY GERMANS

"Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit"



fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; qui quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent; hisque omnium domūs patent victusque commūcātur.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 24-44

The Gauls were once more valorous than the Germans, and sent colonies across the Rhine; but now they are inferior to them (24). The Hercynian forest and its animals are described (25-28).

Cæsar returns to Gaul and proceeds against Ambiorix, who has the good fortune to escape (29, 30). The forces of Ambiorix disband, and withdraw to the forest and marshes (31).

Cæsar marches to Aduatuca, and puts Quintus Cicero in command there (32). He then divides his forces, and proceeds to search for Ambiorix (33). Having learned of the difficulties before him, he seeks alliance with Gallic tribes against the Eburones, the people of Ambiorix (34).

The Sugambri, a German tribe near the Rhine, cross the river to join in plundering the Eburones, and advance toward Cicero's camp (35). Cicero unwisely sends out large numbers of his men to forage (36). The Germans assault the camp and cause a panic (37). Publius Sextius Baculus again distinguishes himself (38). The foragers return, and reach the camp with some difficulty and loss (39, 40). The Germans lose hope and withdraw. Cæsar arrives. Ambiorix again escapes (41, 42).

Cæsar inflicts further military severities on the resisting tribes. He then distributes his legions in winter quarters and sets out for Italy (43, 44).

BOOK VII
CÆSAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN, 52 B.C.

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

General movement among the Gauls for independence

QUIËTĀ Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī caede ; dē senātūsque cōsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dēlectum tōtā
5 prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Galli (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinēri urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantis dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populi
10 Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictis inter sē principēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remōtis locis queruntur dē Accōnis morte ; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmonstrant ; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam ; omni-
15 bus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiis dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primis ratiōnem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant
20 absente imperātōre ex hibernis ēgredi, neque imperātor sine

praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interfici quam nōn veterem belli glōriam libertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes begin the revolt. Rapid spread of the news

2. His rēbus agitātis profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque ex 5 omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrاندō ac fidē sanciatūr petunt, conlātis militāribus signis (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō belli ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātis 10 Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrاندō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō, a conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt, civēsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi 15 cōstiterant, in his C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque inlūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēs- 20 que significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximis trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam cōnfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX. 25

Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, takes the lead

4. Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, — cuius pater principātum

tōtius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum adpetēbat, ā civitāte erat interfectus, — convocātis suis



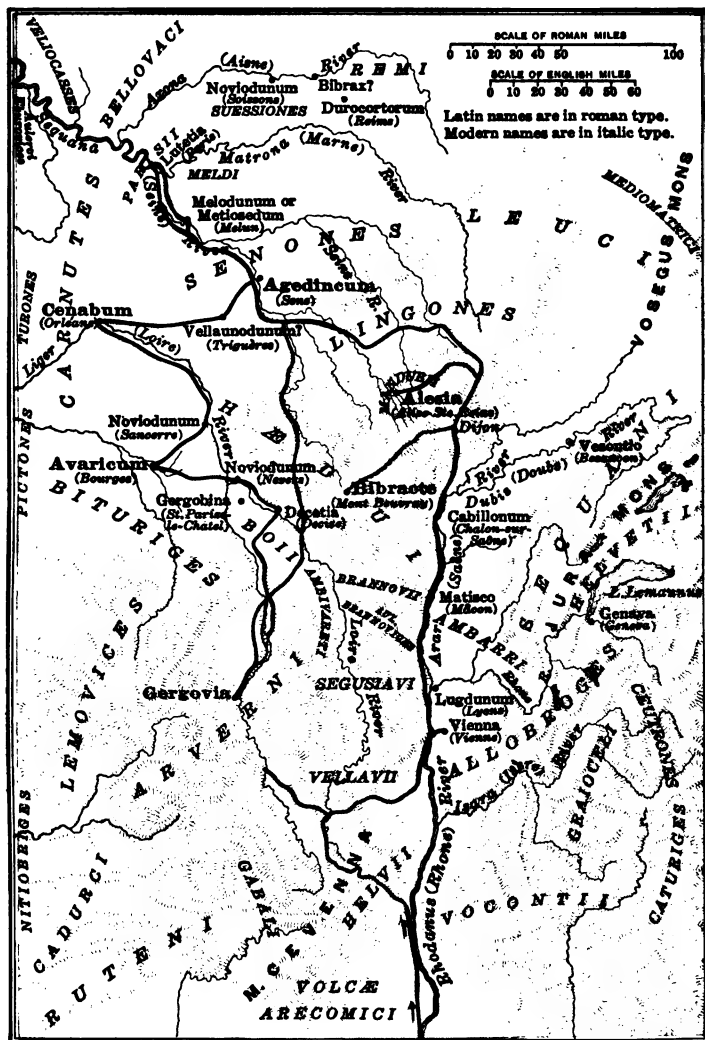
STATUE OF VERCINGETORIX

clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortunam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agris habet dēlectum egeniū ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam perducit; hortātur ut cōmūnis libertātis causā arma capiant; magnisque coāctis cōpiis adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus

paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis ap-
 25 pellātur. Dimittit quōqueversus lēgatiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Many tribes join his standard

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turo-
 nōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōce-
 anum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōsēnsū ad eum dēfertur
 30 imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus his civitātibus obsi-
 dēs imperat; certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūcī



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 52 B.C.

l

d
ir
a
t
s

re
m
B
fi
re
id
pe
q

iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōstituit; in primis equitātui studet.

He maintains severe discipline

Summae diligentiae summam imperī sevērītatem addit; magnitudine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit: nam maiōre commissō dēlictō ignī atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviōre 5 dē causā auribus dēsectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He invades the country of the Bituriges, who ask the Haedui to send them assistance

5. His suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum 10 in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturigēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint.

The Haedui fail them, and so, unable to resist, they join Vercingetorix

Haedui dē cōsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum 15 reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Haeduis dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morāti neque flūmen trānsire ausi, domum revertuntur lēgātisque nostris renūntiant sē Biturigum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus 20 id cōsili fuisse cognōverint ut, si flūmen trānsissent, ūnā ex parte ipsi, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātis prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adducti fēcērint, quod

nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse ponendum. Biturigēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Cæsar leaves Italy and hastens to Gaul

6. His rēbus in Italiam Cæsari nūntiātis, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem in statum
5 pervēnisse intellexeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē
10 eis quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committi vidēbat.

He proceeds to Narbo to counteract the plans of Lucterius

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam civitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrisque obsidēs accipit, et magnā coactā manū
15 in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus inruptionem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōsiliis antevertendum existimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficiscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnis prōvinciālibus, Volcis Arecomicis, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem,
20 quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; partem cōpiarum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Italiā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenire iubet.

Cæsar crosses the Cévennes Mountains through the snow. Vercingetorix goes to protect the Arverni

8. His rēbus comparātis, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in
25 Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsi mōns Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab

Helviis disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore anni altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā nive in altitudinem pedum vi atque ita viis patefactis, summō militum labōre ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō munitōs existimābant, ac nē singulārī 5 quidem umquam hominī eō tempore anni sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.



COIN OF BRUTUS AND ALBINUS

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiū ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Arvernī circumstant atque obsecrant ut suis fortūnis cōsulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripī patiātur, praesertim cum 15 videat omne ad sē bellum trāslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Caesar leaves Brutus in command and seeks reënforcements. Vercingetorix moves toward Gorgobina, a town of the Boii

9. At Caesar bīdūm in his locis morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsq̄e cōgendi ab exercitū discēdit; 20 Brūtum adūlēscentem his cōpiis praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castris absit. His cōstitutis rēbus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem 25 multis ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, si quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduis inirētur cōnsili, celeritāte

praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cognitā Vercingetorix rūsus in Biturigēs exercitum reducit, atque inde
 5 profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helveticō proeliō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduisque attribuerat, oppugnāre instituit.

Caesar, though much perplexed, determines to relieve the Boii

10. Magnam haec rēs Caesari difficultātem ad cōsiliū capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō
 10 legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriis Haeduōrum expugnātis cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amicis in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hibernis ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre visum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpeti quam, tantā
 15 contumeliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdinci legiōnibus atque impedimentis
 20 tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 11-62

Cæsar takes two towns near the Loire (11). Noviodunum surrenders; but when the inhabitants see Vercingetorix approaching, they prepare for defense (12). Cæsar takes Noviodunum, and marches toward Avaricum (13). Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste their country, and thus keep the Romans from supplies (14). The Gauls burn many of their cities, but spare Avaricum (15, 16). The Roman soldiers suffer from lack of food, but maintain a resolute spirit (17). Cæsar marches to engage with Vercingetorix (18). But he finds him too strongly entrenched to warrant an attack (19).

Vercingetorix is accused of treason ; but he clears himself, and appeals to his countrymen (20, 21). The Gauls defend Avaricum with much skill against the Roman works (22, 23). They set fire to the Roman works, and make a sortie, displaying great heroism (24, 25). They finally decide to abandon Avaricum, but are dissuaded by the women (26). The Romans storm the walls and take the town. Most of the inhabitants are put to the sword (27, 28).

Vercingetorix appeals to the Gauls to continue the war (29). His appeal inspires them to further efforts, and he levies new troops (30, 31).

The Hædui appeal to Cæsar to settle a dispute (32). Cæsar goes to them in person (33). He then sends Labienus northward, and he himself proceeds to Gergovia (34, 35). Here he gains an advantage of position over Vercingetorix (36).

Some of the Hædui organize a revolt (37). Litaviccus, commander of the Hæduan contingent, halts his troops at some distance from Gergovia, and persuades them to desert the Roman cause (38). Eporedorix, a Hæduan, conveys the news to Cæsar (39). Cæsar goes to the Hædui and suppresses the revolt (40). He then hastens back to Gergovia to relieve Fabius (41). Further plots are made among the Gauls (42). The Hædui seek reconciliation with Cæsar, but do not cease plotting (43).

Cæsar now devotes himself to the capture of Gergovia (44). He skillfully arranges his troops, and by a sudden attack captures the enemy's camp. His troops are eager to assault the town (45-47). The Gauls receive reënforcements (48). After a close and doubtful struggle the Romans are driven back. Cæsar reproves them for their too great eagerness, but praises their courage (49-52). After some skirmishing Cæsar advances toward the Hædui (53). He is confirmed in his suspicion that the Hædui mean to revolt, but tries to dissuade them (54). Eporedorix and Viridomarus kill the Roman garrison at Noviodunum, destroy Cæsar's stores, and burn the town (55). Cæsar crosses to the north side of the Loire (56).

Labienus marches toward Lutetia, and is opposed by Camulogenus, a chief of the Aulerci (57). Labienus falls back to Metiosedum, which he captures. He is followed by the enemy (58). He now learns of Cæsar's repulse at Gergovia, and of the spread of the Gallic revolt (59). By a stratagem he induces the Gauls to divide their forces, and having attacked and routed them, he joins Cæsar (60-62).

Further extension of the revolt. Vercingetorix appointed commander in chief by a general vote. The Haedui dissatisfied

63. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā bellum aūgētur. Lē-
gatiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā,
auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs nituntur.
Nacti obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum sup-
5 plicio dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Haeduī
ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque belli gerendi commūnicet. Rē
impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur; et rē
in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte
indicitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitudinis
10 suffrāgiis rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem
probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc concilio Rēmī, Lingonēs,
Trēverī āfuērunt: illi, quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequē-
bantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānis premē-
bantur, quae fuit causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutris
15 auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē deiectōs,
principātū; queruntur fortunae commūtatiōnem et Caesaris
in sē indulgentiam requirunt; neque tamen susceptō bellō
suum cōsiliū ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Inviti summae
spei adulēscentēs, Eporēdorix et Viridomārus, Vercingeto-
20 rigi pārent.

Vercingetorix lays extensive plans to spread the revolt and weaken the Romans

64. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsidēs; dēnique ei
rei cōstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, xv milia numerō,
celeriter convenire iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore
contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptātūrum aut aciē dimi-
25 cātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū
frūmentatiōnibus pābulatiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre;

aequō modo animō sua ipsi frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā rei familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertātemque sē cōsequi videant. His cōstitutis rēbus Haeduis Segusiāvisque, qui sunt finitimī prōvinciae, x milia peditum imperat ; hūc addit equitēs dccc. His prae- 5 ficit frātre Eporēdorigis bellumque inferri Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārū Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestinis nūntiis lēgatiōibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, 10 quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum principibus pecūniās, civitāti autem imperium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

Cæsar sends to Germany for cavalry

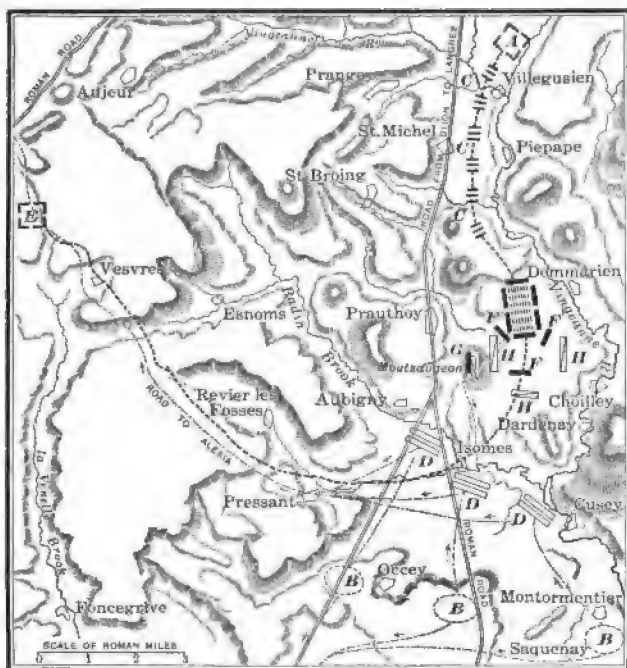
65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et viginti, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvincia ab L. Caesare 15 lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helvi suā sponte cum finitimis proeliō congressi pelluntur, et C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Caburi filiō, principe civitātis, complūribusque aliis interfectis, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis magnā 20 cum cūrā et diligentīā suōs finēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsis omnibus itineribus nullā rē ex prōvincia atque Italiā sublevāri poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātēs quās superiōribus annis pācāverat ; equitēsque ab 25 his arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, qui inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneis equis utēbantur, ā tribūnis militum reliquisque equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātis equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

Vercingetorix addresses a council of cavalry officers, urging an attack on the Romans. They eagerly assent

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperāti conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō
 5 facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter milia passuum x ab Rōmānis trinis castris Vercingetorix cōnsēdit; convocātisque ad cōsiliū praefectis equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinen-
 10 dam libertatē satis esse; ad reliquū temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; maiōribus enim coāctis cōpiis reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impeditōs adorianur. Si peditēs suis auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; si, id quod magis
 15 futūrum cōfidat, relictis impedimentis suae salūti cōsulant, et ūsū rērum necessariārum et dignitāte spoliātum iri. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quā nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbere dubitāre. Id quō maiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castris habitūrum
 20 et terrōri hostibus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sāctissimō iūre iūrاندō cōfirmārī oportere nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.'

The attack is made, and the Gauls are defeated with considerable loss

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrاندum adāctis,
 25 posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque



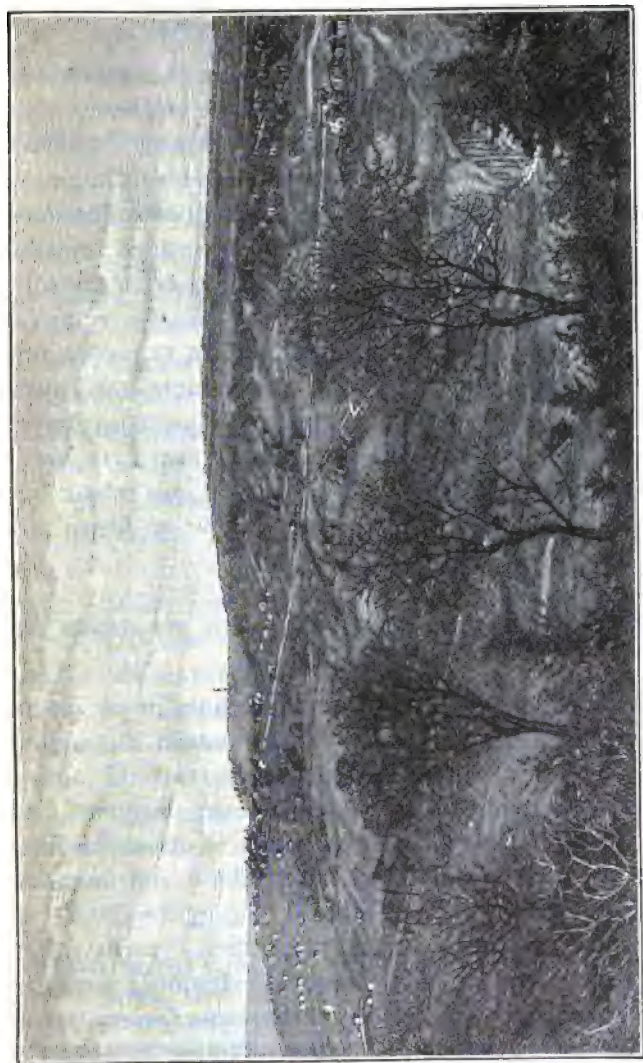
DEFEAT OF VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE

- A** Cæsar's camp the night before the battle
- B** The three camps of Vercingetorix
- C** The Roman column of march at the time of the attack
- D** The Gallic lines of infantry
- E** Cæsar's camp the night after the battle
- F** Cæsar's Roman cavalry
- G** Cæsar's German cavalry
- H** The Gallic cavalry

equitātum tripartitō divisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pug-
nātur unā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit agmen; impedi-
menta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Si quā in parte nostri
labōrāre aut gravius premi vidēbantur, eō signa inferri Cae-
5 sar aciemque converti iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad
insequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilii cōfirmābat.
Tandem Germāni ab dextrō latere summum iugum nacti
hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Ver-
cingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiis cōsēderat, persequuntur
10 complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliqui, nē
circumvenirentur veriti, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locis
fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haedui capti ad Caesarem per-
dūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum
Convictolitavi proximis comitiis habuerat; et Cavarillus, quī
15 post dēfectiōnem Litavici pedestribus cōpiis praefuerat; et
Eporēdorix, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum
Sēquanis bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix retires to Alesia, which Caesar determines to invest

68. Fugātō omni equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut
prō castris conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod
20 est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque
impedimenta ex castris edūci et sē subsequi iussit. Caesar
impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus
praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est
passum, circiter III milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis,
25 alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū
perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā maximē parte
exercitūs cōfidēbant) erant pulsi, adhortātus ad labōrem
militēs Alesiam circumvallāre instituit.



ALISE-SAINTE-REINE (ALESIA)

Description of Alesia and its defenses

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitīēs circiter milia passuum III in longitū-
 5 dinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocri interiectō spatiō, parī altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiaē Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitudinem VI pedum prae-
 10 dūxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus XI milia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportunis locis erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmis prae-
 15 sidiis tenēbantur.

A cavalry battle in the plain. The Gauls are defeated with great slaughter

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitīē quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrisque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostris Caesar Germānōs sub-
 20 mittit legiōnēsq̄e prō castris cōstituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostris animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniecti sē ipsi multitudīne impediunt atque angustioribus portis relictis coartantur. Germāni ācrius ūsque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur.
 25 Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūlli relictis equis fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn

minus qui intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur ; veniri ad sē cōfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant ; nōn nulli perterriti in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equis captis, Germānī sēsē recipiunt. 5

Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry and calls for help from without

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānis perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitatem adeat omnēsque qui per aetatem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōponit, obtes- 10 taturque ut suae salutis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūni libertate meritum in cruciatum hostibus dēdant. Quod si indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcūm interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frū- mentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam 15 longius tolerāre posse parcendō. His datis mandātis, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit ; frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet ; capitis poenam eis qui nōn pāruerint cōstituit ; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiis compulsa, viritim distribuit ; frū- 20 mentum parcē et paulātim mētiri instituit ; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 72-90

The last chapters of the seventh book (72-90) describe the siege and capture of Alesia. Froude says of this achievement : " The most daring feat in the military annals of mankind had been successfully accomplished. A Roman army which could not at the utmost have amounted to fifty thousand men had held blockaded an army of eighty thousand, not weak

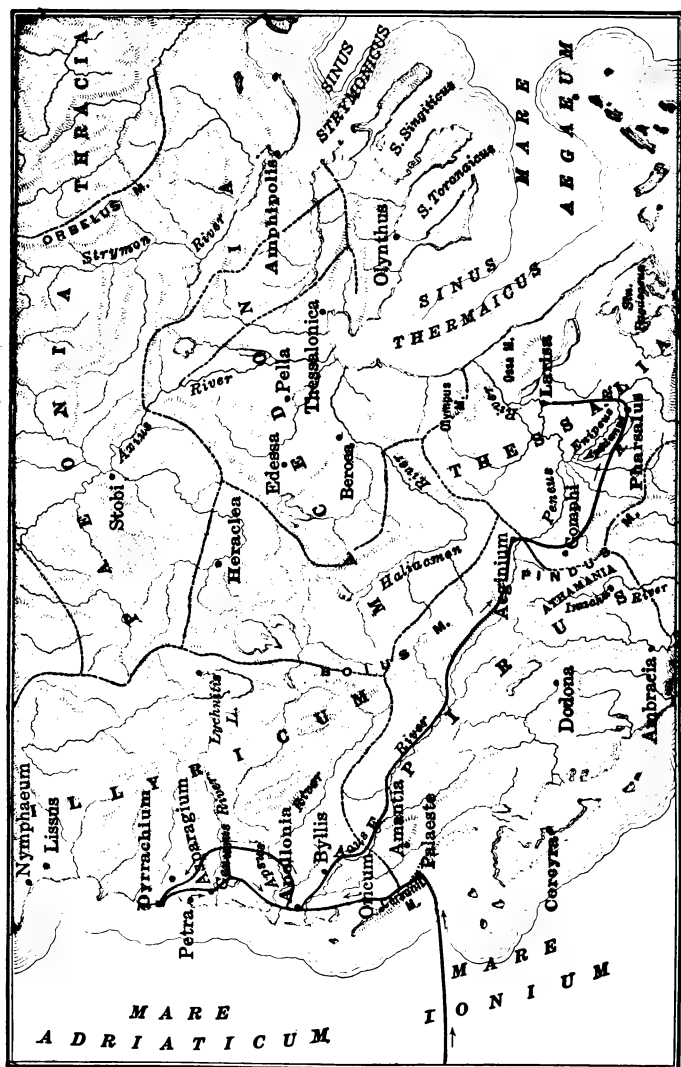
Asiatics, but European soldiers, as strong and as brave individually as the Italians were; and they had defeated, beaten, and annihilated another army which had come expecting to overwhelm them, five times as large as their own."

Plutarch describes the surrender as follows:

"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate and rode round Cæsar, who was seated; then he dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

The fate remaining for this gallant patriot, who lacked only success to be hailed as the savior of his country, was to be kept in chains for six years, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. A gigantic statue in his memory stands to-day on the heights of Alesia (see p. 152). Cæsar's own narration closes with the surrender of Vercingetorix. The remainder of the story of the Gallic War is told in the eighth book by Cæsar's faithful officer and friend, Aulus Hirtius.

After the fall of Alesia, sporadic attempts at revolt in various parts of Gaul were put down, and a final rally of the patriotic party at the stronghold of Uxellodunum was crushed. Cæsar then invited the chiefs of the tribes to come to him, told them of the great future that lay before them as members of a splendid imperial state, and gave them magnificent presents. He so impressed them by his gracious clemency that they served him faithfully thereafter, and never again made an effort to recover their independence.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 48 B.C.

THE CIVIL WAR

BOOK III

CHAPTERS 82-112

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA AND THE BEGINNING OF THE ALEXANDRIAN WAR, 48 B.C.

Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly

POMPĒIUS paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit cōtiōnātusque apud cūctum exercitum suis agit grātiās, Scipiōnis milītēs cohortātur ut partā iam victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptisque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum 5 Scipiōne honōrem partitur classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illi iubet praetōrium tendi.

The soldiers are confident of victory

Auctis cōpiis Pompēi duōbusque magnis exercitibus coniūctis pristina omnium cōfirmātur opiniō et spēs victōriae augētur, adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, 10 id morārī reditum in Italiam vidērētur, et, sī quandō quid Pompēius tardius aut cōsiderātius faceret, ūnius esse negōtium diēi, sed illum dēlectārī imperiō et cōsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dicerent.

They quarrel over the division of the expected booty

Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiis ac sacerdotiis conten- 15 dēbant in annōsque cōsulātum dēfiniēbant, alii domōs bonaque eōrum quī in castris erant Caesaris petēbant;

magnaue inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportēretne Lūcili Hirri, quod is ā Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, 20 proximis comitiis praetōriis absentis ratiōnem habēri, cum eius necessārii fidem implōrarent Pompēi, praestāret quod proficiscenti recēpisset, nē per eius auctōritātem dēceptus vidērētur, reliqui, in labōre parī ac periculō nē ūnus omnēs antecēderet, recūsārent.

canō, -ere, cecini, cantus, sing;
sound

civilis, -e, civil; of citizens

classicum, -i, *n.*, signal; trumpet
cōsiderātus, -a, -um, *part. as adj.*,
with deliberation

cōsulāris, -e, of consular rank

cōntiōnor, -āri, -ātus, harangue,
make an address

dēfiniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, determine

Hirrus, -i, *m.*, Lucilius Hirrus, a
follower of Pompey

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, produce;
gain

Parthi, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians

particeps, -cipis, *m.*, sharer

praetōrium, -i, *n.*, a general's tent

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, praeto-
rian; *masc. as noun*, ex-praetor

sacerdōtium, -i, *n.*, priesthood

Scipiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Quintus Cae-
cilius Metellus Pius Scipio, col-
league of Pompey

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly

3. *partā iam victōriā*: 'as if the victory had already been gained.'
6. *apud eum*: 'at his quarters.' 7. *tendī*: 'to be set up' (lit. 'stretched').
12. *tardius aut cōsiderātius*: 'rather slowly or deliberately.' 14. *servō-
rum habere numerō*: 'regarded as slaves.' 16. *in annōs*: 'for succeed-
ing years.' 18. *oportēretne Lūcili Hirri . . . absentis ratiōnem habēri*:
'whether Lucilius Hirrus ought to be considered in his absence.' 21. *prae-
stāret . . . recēpisset*: 'that he should fulfill that which he had guaran-
teed to him at his departure.' 22. *eius*: i.e. Pompey's. 24. *recūsārent*:
'made objection.'

The officers revile each other

83. Iam dē sacerdōtiō Caesaris Domitius, Scipiō Spin-
therque Lentulus cotidiānis contentiōnibus ad gravissimās
verbōrum contumeliās palam dēscendērunt, cum Lentulus
aetātis honōrem ostentāret, Domitius urbānam grātiam
5 dignitātemque iactāret, Scipiō adfinitāte Pompēi cōfideret.

Postulāvit etiam L. Afrānium prōdiōnis exercitūs Acūtius Rūfus apud Pompēium, quod gestum in Hispāniā diceret.

Domitius suggests a plan for future vengeance on their enemies

Et L. Domitius in cōsiliō dixit placēre sibi bellō cōfectō ternās tabellās dari ad iūdicandum eis qui ordinis essent senātōrii bellōque unā cum ipsis interfuissent, sententiāsque de singulis ferrent qui Rōmæ remānsissent quique intrā praesidia Pompēi fuissent neque operam in rē militāri praestitissent; unam fore tabellam qui liberandōs omnī periculō cēnsērent; alteram qui capitis damnārent; tertiam qui pecūniā multārent.

In their greed for spoils they forget that the victory is yet to be won

Postrēmō omnēs aut de honoribus suis aut de praemiis pecūniae aut de persequendis inimiciis agēbant, nec quibus ratiōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum uti victoriā debērent cōgitābant.

Acūtius, -i, m., Acutius Rufus, mentioned only here	multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, punish (by fine)
Afrānius, -i, m., Lucius Afranius, a lieutenant of Pompey	senātōrius, -a, -um, senatorial
Domitius, -i, m., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, a supporter of Pompey	Spinther, -eris, m., Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther, one of Pompey's officers
	tabella, -ae, f., tablet, ballot

1. sacerdotiō: Cæsar's office as pontifex maximus. 3. cum . . . ostentāret: 'Lentulus urging the respect due to his age.' 4. urbānam grātiā dignitātemque: 'his influence and standing in the city.' 5. adfinitāte: Pompey had married Scipio's daughter. 6. Postulāvit . . . exercitūs: 'accused of betraying the army.' 9. ad iūdicandum: 'for voting.' 10. sententiās . . . qui: 'that they should express their opinions on each one of those who' etc. The antecedent of *qui* is (*eis*) *singulis*. 13. liberandōs: refers to *qui Rōmæ remānsissent* etc. 14. qui capitis damnārent: 'who would inflict the death penalty.' With verbs of condemning etc. the penalty is expressed sometimes by the genitive (as *capitis*) and sometimes by the ablative (as *pecūniā* in the same line).—qui pecūniā multārent: 'who would inflict a fine.' 16. agēbant: 'wrangled.'

Caesar vainly offers battle several days in succession

84. Rē frumentariā praeprātā cōfirmātisque militibus
et satis longō spatiō temporis a Dyrrachinis proeliis inter-
missō, quō satis perspectum habēre militum animum
vidērētur, tentandum Caesar existimāvit quidnam Pompēius
5 prōpositi aut voluntātis ad dimicandum habēret. Itaque ex
castris exercitum ēdūxit, aciemque instrūxit, primō suis
locis paulōque ā castris Pompēi longius, continentibus vērō
diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castris suis collibusque Pompēianis
aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōfirmātiōrem eius
10 exercitum efficiēbat.

*Being inferior in cavalry, he trains a mixed force of
light-armed infantry and horse*

Superius tamen institūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōstrā-
vimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multis partibus esset
inferior, adulescentēs atque expeditōs ex antesignānis ēlēctis
ad pernitiātem armis inter equitēs proeliārī iubēret, qui
15 cotidiānā cōsuētūdine ūsum quoque eius generis proeliōrum
perciperent. His erat rēbus effectum ut equitum mille etiam
apertiōribus locis VII milium Pompēianōrum impetum, cum
adesset ūsus, sustinēre audērent neque magnopere eōrum
multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proe-
20 lium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex
duōbus quōs perfūgisce ad Pompēium suprā docuimus cum
quibusdam interfēcit.

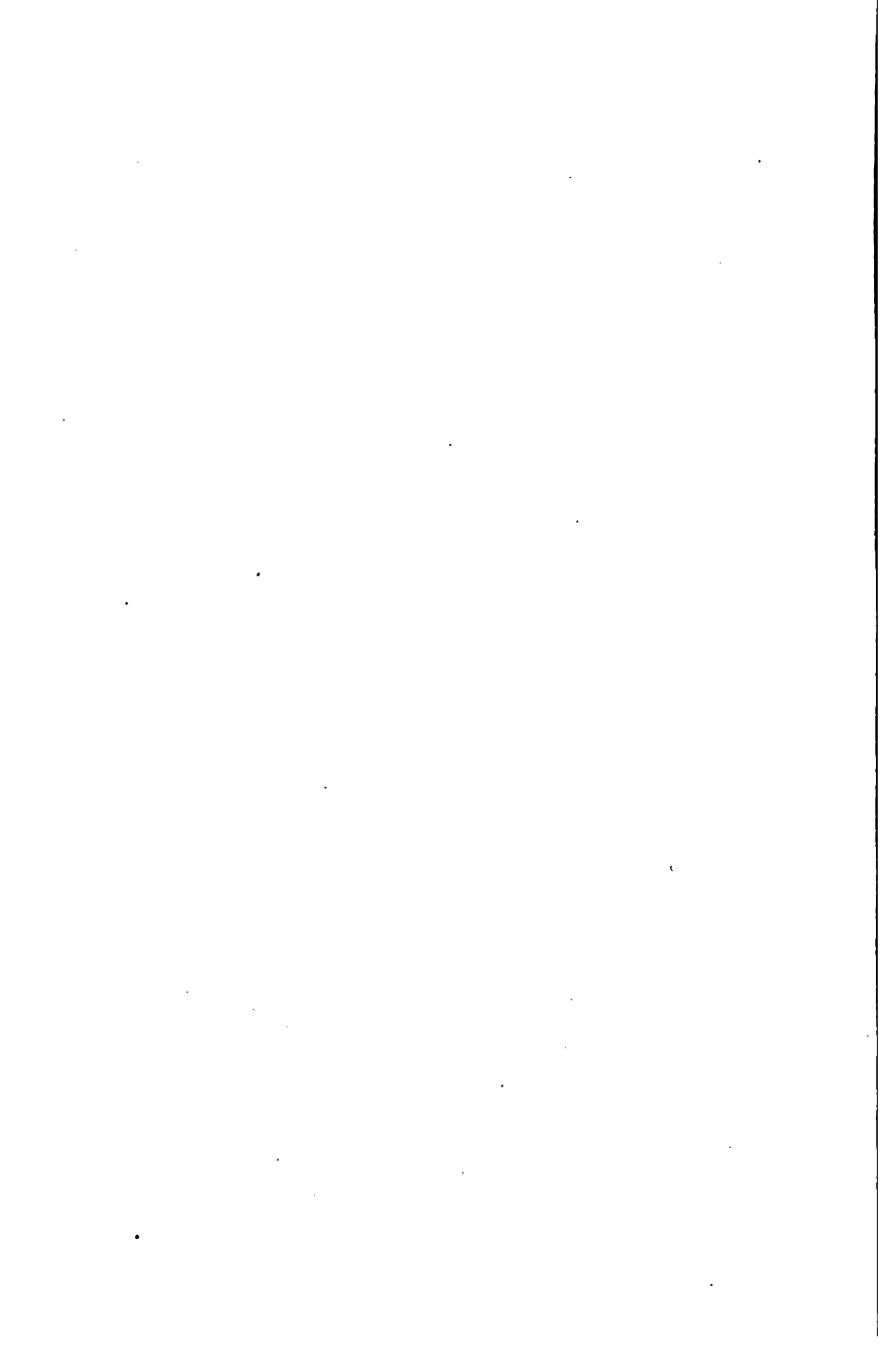
antesignānus, -ī, *m.*, a soldier fight-
ing in the first line
Dyrrachinus, -a, -um, of Dyrrachium

pernitiās, -ātis, *f.*, swiftness
Pompēianus, -a, -um, of Pompey
tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make trial

3. quō . . . vidērētur: a descriptive clause. The antecedent of *quō* is *spatiō*. 4. quidnam . . . habēret: 'what purpose or wish Pompey entertained



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR CONSUL



for the combat.' 6. *suīs locis*: 'ground of his own choosing.' 7. *continentibus vērō diēbus*: 'but during successive days'; contrasting with *primō* above. 8. *collibus Pompēiānis*: 'the hills occupied by Pompey's men.' 11. *Superius . . . Institutum*: 'the former arrangement.' 12. *ut . . . iubēret*: in apposition with *institutum*. 13. *ēlēctis ad pernīcītātē armīs*: 'equipment chosen with reference to speed' (i.e. light armor). 16. *perciperent*: 'acquired.' 21. *suprā docuimus*: 'I have said above' (i.e. in a preceding chapter).

Despairing of a battle, Cæsar decides to break camp

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās radicēs montis aciem instruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, expectāns, sī iniquīs locis Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar, nullā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlici posse Pompēium existimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iudicāvit, utī castra 5 ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendis castris plūribusque adeundis locis commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsionem dimicandi nanciscerētur et insolitum ad labōrem Pompēi exercitum cotidiānis itineribus dēfatigāret. 10

Pompey unexpectedly offers battle. Cæsar addresses his troops and leads them forth

His cōstitutis rēbus signō iam profectiōnis datō tabernaculisque dētēnsis, animadversum est paulō ante extrā cotidiānam cōsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēi prōgressam, ut nōn iniquō locō posse dimicārī vidērētur. Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, 15 "Differendum est," inquit, "iter in praesentiā nōbis et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō simus ad dimicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsionem postea reperiēmus"; cōnfestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.

dētendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsus, take down (a tent) (<i>lit.</i> unstretch)	insolitus, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unused
ēliciō, -licere, -licui, -licitus, entice out, draw out	tunc, <i>adv.</i> , then, thereupon, forth- with

3. *sē subiceret*: 'would advance' ('would expose himself'). 6. *semperque . . . itineribus*: 'keep constantly on the move.' 8. *commodiōre . . . ūterētur*: 'avail himself of supplies more advantageously.' 12. *extrā*: 'contrary to.' 14. *nōn iniquō*: i.e. to Cæsar.

*Pompey, relying on his cavalry, is confident of an easy victory.
He explains his plan of attack*

86. Pompēius quoque, ut postea cognitum est, suorum omnium hortatū statuerat proeliō decertare. Namque etiam in cōsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore uti exercitus Caesaris pelleretur. Id cum
5 essent plērique admirāti, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incredibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōsiliī mei accipite, quō firmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsi equitibus nostris, idque mihi factūrōs cōfirmāvērunt, ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō
10 adgrederentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nobis tēlum in hostem iaceretur. Ita sine periculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum cōficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūtiāvit ut essent animō
15 parāti in posterum et, quoniam fieret dimicandī potestās, ut saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū manūque reliquōrum opiniōnem fallerent.

7. *quō . . . prōdeātis*: clause of purpose. 9. *sit accessum*: impersonal. 10. *prius*: to be construed with *quam*. 15. *in posterum*: 'for the future.' — *ut*: 'as.' 16. *ūsū manūque*: i.e. in the actual test of their prowess; opposed to *cōgitāvissent*. — *reliquōrum*: 'the rest' (of their comrades who were not present).

Labienuſ follows, and ſpeaks with contempt of Cæſar's army

87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Cæſaris cōpiās dēſpiceret, Pompēi cōſilium ſummis laudibus efferret, "Nōlī," inquit, "eſtimāre, Pompēi, hunc eſſe exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvicerit. Omnibus interfui proeliis, neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars 5 illius exercitūs ſuperest; magna pars dēperiit, quod accidere tot proeliis fuit neceſſe, multōs autumnī peſtilentia in Italiā cōſūmpsit, multi domum diſceſſerunt, multi ſunt relictī in continentī. An nōn audisti ex eīs quī per cauſam valētūdinis remānſerunt cohortēs eſſe Brundiſi factās? Hæ cōpiæ 10 quās vidētis ex dēlectibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā ſunt reſectæ, et plērique ſunt ex colōniis Trāſpadānis. Ac tamen quod fuit rōboris duōbus proeliis Dyrrachinis interiit."

All ſwear never to return to camp unleſs victorious

Haec cum dixiſſet, iūrāvit ſē niſi victōrem in caſtra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus eſt. Hoc 15 laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec cum facta ſunt in cōſiliō, magnā ſpē et lætitiā omnium diſceſſum eſt; ac iam animō victōriam præcipiēbant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam peritō imperātōre nihil frūſtrā cōfirmārī vidēbātur. 20

autumnus, -ī, *m.*, autumn

Brundiſium, -ī, *n.*, Brundiſium, a

ſea-port in ſouthern Italy

lætitia, -æ, *f.*, gladneſs, joy

peſtilentia, -æ, *f.*, ſcourge, peſtilence

Trāſpadānus, -a, -um, dwelling acroſs the Po

1. excēpit: 'followed' (in ſpeaking). — cum . . . dēſpiceret (et) efferret: 'while he depreciated . . . (and) extolled.' 3. quī . . . dēvicerit: clause of deſcription. 9. continentī: i. e. Italy. — ex eīs: conſtrue with *eſſe factās*. 13. quod fuit rōboris: 'what ſtrength there was'; *rōboris*, partitive genitive. 18. diſceſſum eſt: impersonal, but tranſlate, 'they departed.'

Formation of Pompey's line of battle

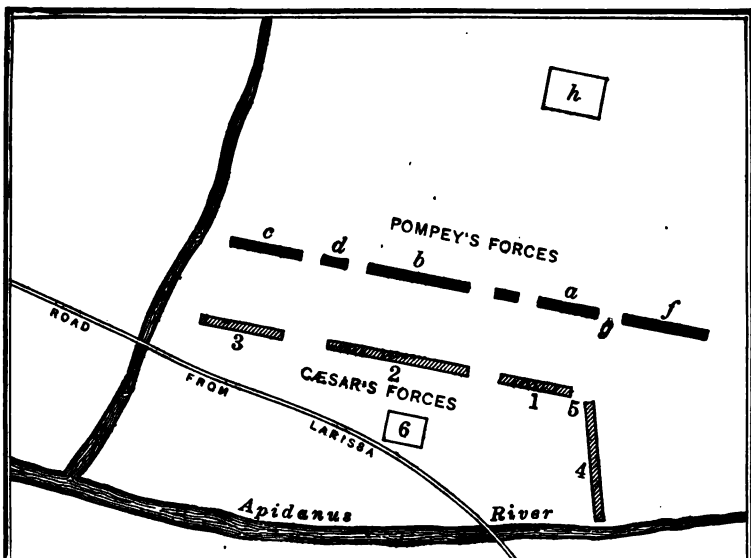
88. Caesar, cum Pompēi castris adpropinquāset, ad hunc modum aciem eius instrūctam animadvertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōsultō; quārum ūna prima, altera tertia appē-
 5 lābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scipiō cum legiōnibus Syriacis tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūcta cum cohortibus Hispānis, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius existimābat. Reliquās inter
 10 aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcērat numerōque cohortēs cx explēverat. Haec erant milia XLV, ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriis superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat. Reliquās cohortēs VII in castris propinquisque castellis praesidiō disposuerat.
 15 Dextrum cornū eius rivus quīdam impeditis ripis mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū obiēcērat.

beneficiārius, -ī, m., a soldier exempt from menial duties; a favorite Ciliciēnsis, -e, Cilician
 Syriacus, -a, -um, of Syria

1. *ad hunc modum*: 'after this fashion.' 4. *ex senātūs cōsultō*: 'by a decree of the senate.' 5. *Mediam aciem*: 'the middle of the line.' 7. *trāductās*: sc. *esse*. 8. *Hās . . . existimābat*: 'Pompey considered these the steadiest that he had.' 10. *numerō*: ablative of respect. 14. *praesidiō*: dative of purpose. 15. *impeditis*: 'presenting obstructions.'

Formation of Caesar's line of battle

89. Caesar superius institūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsi erat Dyrrachinis proeliis vehementer attenuāta, et huic sic adiūxit octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque
 5 alteram alteri praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX



EXPLANATION

POMPEY'S LINE OF BATTLE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>a Two legions turned over to Pompey by Cæsar before the Civil War began</p> <p>b The center, commanded by Scipio</p> <p>c The right wing, consisting of the Cilician legion in conjunction with the cohorts brought from Spain by Afranius</p> | <p>d The remaining cohorts</p> <p>e A river</p> <p>f The left wing, consisting of the cavalry commanded by Labienus, the archers and slingers</p> <p>g Pompey</p> <p>h Pompey's camp, guarded by seven cohorts</p> |
|--|---|

CÆSAR'S LINE OF BATTLE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 The right wing, consisting of the tenth legion, commanded by Sulla</p> <p>2 The center, commanded by Domitius</p> <p>3 The left wing, consisting of the eighth and ninth legions, commanded by Antony</p> | <p>4 The fourth line, of six cohorts, designed to protect the right wing against Pompey's cavalry</p> <p>5 Cæsar, opposite Pompey</p> <p>6 Cæsar's camp, guarded by two cohorts</p> |
|---|--|

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA, 48 B.C.

cōstitutās habēbat, quae summa erat milium xxii; cohortēs
 duās castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium,
 dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat.
 Ipse contrā Pompēium cōstitit. Simul his rēbus animad-
 10 versis quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitudīne equitum
 dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē sin-
 gulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex his quārtam instituit equitā-
 tuique opposuit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque eius
 diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōstāre. Simul
 15 tertiae aciēi tōtiūque exercitui imperāvit nē iniussū suō con-
 curreret; sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

Antōnius, -i, m., Marcus Antonius,
 the famous triumvir; served in
 the Civil War under Cæsar and
 was one of his active partisans
attenuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make
 thin; lessen

cōnstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātūrus, lit.
 stand together; **cōnstat,** depend
 upon (*with in*)
Sulla, -ae, m., Publius Cornelius
 Sulla, an officer of Cæsar; nephew
 of Sulla, the great dictator

8. **praeposuerat:** 'had placed in command.' We should expect datives
 with the accusatives. 14. **cōnstāre:** 'depended upon.'

*Cæsar reminds his men of his efforts for peace, then gives the
 signal for battle*

90. Exercitum cum militārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur
 suaque in eum perpetui temporis officia praedicāret, imprimis
 commemorāvit 'testibus sē militibus ūti posse quantō studiō
 pācem petisset; quae per Vatinius in conloquiis, quae per
 5 Aulum Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset; quibus modis ad
 Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgātis contendisset. Neque
 sē umquam abūtī militum sanguine neque rem pūblicam
 alterutrō exercitū privāre voluisse.' Hāc habitā ōrātiōne
 exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā
 10 signum dedit.

abūtor , -ūti, -ūsus, sacrifice	Ōricum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , Oricum, a town of
alteruter , -tra, -trum, either	Illyricum
Libō , -ōnis, <i>m.</i> , Lucius Scribonius	Vatinius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Publius Vatinius,
Libo, father-in-law of Sextus	a subordinate of Cæsar
Pompey	

2. **sua . . . officia**: 'his constant services to it.' 3. **testibus . . . posse**: 'he could call his soldiers to witness.' 4. **in conloquiis**: 'to gain a conference' (with Labienus). 6. **contendisset**: 'he had striven.'

Heroism of Crastinus, a veteran volunteer

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, qui superiōre annō apud eum primum pilum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hic signō datō, "Sequimini mē," inquit, "manipulārēs meī qui fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī quam cōstituistis operam date. Ūnum hoc proelium superest; quō cōfectō, et ille suam dignitatem et nōs nostram libertatem recuperābimus." Simul respiciēs Caesarem, "Faciam," inquit, "hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vivō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās." Haec cum dixisset, primus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum ēlēcti militēs circiter cxx voluntarii eiusdem centuriae sunt prōsecuti.

centuria , -ae, <i>f.</i> , century, a company of nominally a hundred men	hodiē , <i>adv.</i> , to-day
Crāstinus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Crastinus	manipulāris , -is, <i>m.</i> , comrade (of the same maniple)
	voluntārius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , volunteer

2. **primum pilum . . . dūxerat**: 'had been primipilus' etc. 5. **quam . . . date**: 'exert yourselves as you have resolved' (lit. 'give the service which you have resolved upon'). 6. **ille**: i.e. Cæsar. 8. **ut . . . agās**: 'that you will thank me whether alive or dead.'

Pompey does not charge, but awaits Caesar's attack

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī, ut satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō

movērent, aciemque eius distrahi paterentur; idque admoniti
 5 C. Triāri fēcisse dicēbātur, ut primus excursus visque mili-
 tum infringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suis ōrdi-
 nibus dispositi dispersōs adorirentur; leviusque cāsūra pila
 spērābat in locō retentis militibus quam si ipsi immissis
 tēlis occurrissent; simul fore ut duplicatō cursū Caesaris
 10 militēs exanimārentur et lassitudine cōnficerentur.

He is criticized for so doing

Quod nobis quidem nullā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō vidētur,
 proptereā quod est quaedam animi incitātiō atque alacritās
 nātūrālīter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur.
 Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque
 15 frūstrā antiquitus institūtum est ut signa undique concinerent
 clāmōremque ūniversi tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs ter-
 rēri et suōs incitāri existimāvērunt.

admonitus, -ūs, *m.*, advice
 concinō, -ere, -uī, —, sound to-
 gether
 distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus,
 stretch out; break
 excursus, -ūs, *m.*, dash
 incitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, enthusiasm
 infringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, break

innātus, -a, -um, *part. of innāscor*,
 inborn
 nātūrālīter, *adv.*, naturally
 praedicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, say
 beforehand; command before-
 hand, advise
 Triārius, -ī, *m.*, Caius Valerius
 Triarius

3. ut . . . exciperent: 'to await Caesar's attack.' 4. distrahi: 'to be thrown into disorder.' 6. in . . . dispositi: 'and that they (i.e. the Pompeians) remaining in their ranks.' 7. leviusque . . . spērābat: 'he hoped that the javelins would fall with less effect' (lit. 'more lightly'). 8. retentis militibus: ablative absolute with conditional force. — immissis . . . occurrissent: 'should charge against the missiles that were hurled against them.' 11. nobis: 'to me,' i.e. Caesar. — nullā ratiōne: 'with no good reason.' 13. nātūrālīter . . . omnibus: 'implanted by nature in all.' 14. neque . . . institūtum est: 'nor was it a vain institution of our ancestors.'

Cæsar's men advance, halt to get breath, then charge

93. Sed nostri militēs datō signō cum infēstis pilis prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompēiānīs, ūsū peritī ac superiōribus pugnis exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōstitērunt, nē cōsumptis viribus adpropinquārent, parvōque intermissō 5 temporis spatiō ac rūsus renovātō cursū pila misērunt celetterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strinxērunt.

Pompey's infantry receives the attack bravely. His cavalry attempts a flank movement

Neque vērō Pompēiāni huic rei dēfuērunt. Nam et tela missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ordinēs cōservārunt pilisque missis ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem 10 tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitudō sagittāriōrum sē prōfūdīt; quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompēi hōc ācrius instāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram 15 ā latere apertō circumire coepērunt.

Cæsar's fourth line stampedes Pompey's cavalry, destroys the archers and slingers, and attacks the left wing in the rear

Quod ubi Cæsar animadvertit, quārtæ aciēi, quam instituerat sex cohortium, dedit signum. Illī celeriter prōcucurrērunt infēstisque signis tantā vi in Pompēi equitēs impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōsisteret omnēsque conversi nōn 20 solum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus submōtis omnēs sagittārii funditōrēsque dēstitūtī inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt.

Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantibus etiam
 25 tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānis circumiērunt eōsque
 ā tergō sunt adortī.

explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, unfold; extend	prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, <i>with</i> sē, rush forward
infēstus, -a, -um, hostile; in hos- tile array, <i>i. e.</i> with weapons and standards advanced	stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, draw turmātim, <i>adv.</i> , by squadrons

1. cum: conjunction. 2. concurrī: impersonal. 3. ūsū . . . exer-
 citātī: 'skilled through practice and trained in former battles.' 8. huic
 rei dēfuerunt: 'lack resources to meet these tactics.' 24. etiam tum:
 'even under these circumstances.'

*Cæsar's third line enters the action. Pompey's infantry
 breaks and flees*

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta
 fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit.
 Ita cum recentēs atque integri dēfessīs successissent, alii
 autem ā tergō adorirentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuē-
 5 runt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem
 fefellit, quīn ab eis cohortibus quæ contrā equitātum in
 quārtā aciē conlocātae essent, initium victōriæ orīrētur, ut
 ipse in cohortandis militibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim
 primum equitātus est pulsus, ab eisdem factae caedēs sagit-
 10 tārīōrum ac funditōrum, ab eisdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā
 parte circumita atque initium fugae factum.

*Pompey quits the field, flees to the camp, and retires into his
 tent in utter despair*

Sed Pompēius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit atque
 eam partem cui maximē cōfidēbat perterritum animadvertit,
 aliis quoque diffisus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra

equō contulit et eīs centuriōnibus quōs in statiōne ad praetō- 15
 riam portam posuerat, clārē, ut militēs exaudirent, "Tuēmini,"
 inquit, "castra et dēfendite diligenter, sī quid dūrius acci-
 derit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia
 cōfirmō." Haec cum dixisset, sē in praetōrium contulit
 summae rei diffidēs et tamen ēventum exspectāns. 20

clārē, *adv.*, loudly, clearly, dis- diffidō, -ere, -fusus sum, distrust,
 tinctly not have confidence

3. dēfessis successissent: 'had come to the support of those who were
 exhausted.' 5. Caesarem fefellit: 'escape Caesar's notice.' 7. ut: 'as.'
 12. ut: 'when.' 14. aliis . . . diffisus: 'having no confidence in the
 others.' 17. sī quid dūrius acciderit: 'if it goes too hard with us.'
 18. circumeō: translate as future; also cōfirmō. 20. summae rei diffi-
 dēs: 'apprehensive of the issue.'

Caesar follows up his advantage and attacks the camp

95. Caesar Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs
 nūllum spatium perterritis dare oportere existimāns, militēs
 cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortunae ūterentur castraque
 oppugnārent. Quī, etsi magnō aestū (nam ad meridiem rēs
 erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parāti 5
 imperiō pārūrunt.

The camp is taken and its defenders flee

Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ in-
 dustriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius a Thrācibus bar-
 barisque auxiliis. Nam quī aciē refūgerant militēs, et animō
 perterriti et lassitudīne cōfecti, missis plērique armīs signis- 10
 que militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum
 dēfēsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō
 cōstiterant multitudinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuerunt, sed
 cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs

- 15 ducibus ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgi, —, flee, industriē, *adv.*, with energy
take refuge Thrāx, -ācis, *m.*, a Thracian

3. beneficiō: 'favor.' 4. magnō aestū: ablative absolute. — rēs erat perducta: 'the contest had been prolonged.' 15. ducibus . . . tribūnisque: 'under the leadership of the centurions and tribunes.'

Luxurious appointments of the camp

96. In castris Pompēi vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argenti pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernacula cōstrāta, Lūci etiam Lentuli et nōn nullōrum tabernacula prōtectā hederā, multaue praetereā quae nimiam
5 lūxuriam et victōriae fidūciam dēsīgnārent, ut facile existimārī posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēi timuisse, quī nōn necessariās conquirerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercitui Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessariū ūsum dēfuiissent.

Pompey with thirty horsemen escapes to the coast and embarks

- 10 Pompēius, iam cum intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētrāctis insignibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castris eiēcīt prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit. Neque ibi cōstitit, sed eādē celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū
15 equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dicēbātur, querēns tantum sē opīniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

comitātus, -ūs, *m.*, attendance; cōstrātus, -a, -um, *part. of cō-*
company sternō, covered over, paved

hedera, -ae, *f.*, ivy

Lārisa, -ae, *f.*, Larissa, a town in
Thessaly

Lentulus, -i, *m.*, Lucius Cornelius
Lentulus

nimius, -a, -um, excessive

prōtectus, -a, -um, *part. of* prō-
tegō, shielded

struō, -ere, *strūxi*, *strūctus*, erect,
build

trichila, -ae, *f.*, arbor, summer-
house

5. **victōriae fidūciam**: 'confidence of victory.' 6. **nōn**: construe with *necessāriis*. 7. **conquirērent**: subjunctive in a descriptive causal clause. 8. **lūxuriam obiciēbant**: 'imputed extravagance.' 9. **dēfuiissent**: in a descriptive concessive clause. 11. **dētrāctis . . . imperātōris**: 'stripping (from himself) the trappings of commander in chief.' 16. **tantum . . . fefelisse**: 'his expectations had so far failed him.' 18. **ab eō**: sc. *genere*.

*Caesar, leaving a guard at Pompey's camp and his own, pursues
the retreating enemy with four legions*

97. Caesar castris potitus, ā militibus contendit nē in
praedā occupātī reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent.
Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circummūnīre instituit.
Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi eī locō,
relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eius Lārisam versus sē recipere 5
coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā Caesar cōpiās suās divisit
partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem
in sua castra remisit, IIII sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiō-
reque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit et prōgressus
milia passuum VI aciem instrūxit.

10

He besieges the remnants of Pompey's army on a mountain

Quā rē animadversā Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōn-
stitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar militēs
cohortātus, etsī tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōfectī
noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte
sēcūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō 15
opere illi dē dēditiōne missis lēgātīs agere coepērunt.

Pauci ōrdinis senātōrii, quī sē cum eis coniūnerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt.

aquor, -ārī, -ātus sum, get water subluō, -ere, —, -lūtus, flow at
sēcūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off the foot of

1. *ā militibus contendit*: 'earnestly entreated the soldiers.' 2. *reliqui negōtī gerendī*: 'of finishing the business.' 5. *iugis eius*: 'along its ridges.' 9. *Pompēiānis occurrere coepit*: 'started to intercept the Pompeians.'

They surrender and are pardoned. Cæsar goes to Larissa

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs quī in monte cōnsēderant ex superiōribus locis in plānitie dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passisque palmis prōiecti ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem
5 petivērunt, cōsōlātus cōsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit, militibusque suis commendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid sui dēsiderārent. Hāc adhibītā diligentīā ex castris sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sēcum
10 dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra reverti iussit, eōdemque diē Lārissam pervēnit.

recūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, refusal, objec- requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvi, -quiētus,
tion rest

4. *passisque palmis*: 'and with outstretched hands.' 5. *pauca . . . locūtus*: 'speaking briefly' 6. *quō . . . timōre*: 'to alleviate their fear'; *quō* being equivalent to *ut* and *timōre* being ablative of description. 8. *neu quid sui dēsiderārent*: 'and that they should not suffer any loss'; *sui*, partitive genitive.

Cæsar's losses

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius cc militēs dēsiderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmisit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius

mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficiscēns 5 dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimābat eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iudicābat.

Pompey's losses

Ex Pompēiānō exercitū circiter milia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditionem vērunt amplius milia xxiiii 10 (namque etiam cohortēs quae praesidiō in castellis fuerant sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multī praetereā in finitimās civitatēs refūgērunt; signaque militāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta clxxx et aquilae viii. L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiēns, cum virēs eum lassitudine dēfēcissent, 15 ab equitibus est interfectus.

excellēns, -entis, <i>part. of</i> excellō,	falsus, -a, -um, untrue
surpassing	mentiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , mention

1. dēsiderāvit: 'he suffered the loss of' (lit. 'he missed'). 4. gladiō . . . coniectō: 'struck right in the face by a sword.' 5. quod . . . dixerat: in chapter 91. 7. optimē . . . meritum: 'that he had most excellently served his (Caesar's) interests.'

Caesar pursues Pompey into Macedonia, where the latter tries to raise an army

102.¹ Caesar omnibus rēbus relictis persequendum sibi Pompēium existimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē rūsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset, et, quantumcumque itineris equitātū efficere poterat, cotidiē prōgrediēbatur, legiōnemque ūnam minōribus 5 itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēi nōmine Amphipoli prōpositum, utī omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs, Graecī civēsque Rōmānī, iūrandi causā convenirent. Sed

¹ Chapters 100 and 101 are omitted.

utrum āvertendae suspiciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset,
 10 ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an
 novis dēlectibus, si nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre
 cōnārētur, existimārī nōn poterat.

At Caesar's approach Pompey sails from Amphipolis

Ipse ad ancoram unā nocte cōstitit et, vocātis ad sē
 Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessariōs sūmptūs
 15 corrogātā, cognitō Caesaris adventū, ex eō locō discessit et
 Mytilēnās paucis diēbus vēnit. Bīdium tempestāte retentus
 nāvibusque aliis additis āctuārius in Ciliciam atque inde
 Cyprum pervēnit.

*At Cyprus he learns that Antioch is closed against him. Rhodes
 too is hostile*

Ibi cognōscit cōsensū omnium Antiochēnsium civiumque
 20 Rōmānōrum . quī illic negōtiārentur arcem captam esse
 exclūdendi suī causā, nūntiōsque dīmissōs ad eōs quī sē ex
 fugā in finitīmās civitatēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antio-
 chīam adirent; id si fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis periculō
 futurum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, quī superiōre annō cōnsul
 25 fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōsulārī ac nōn nullis aliis acciderat
 Rhodī; quī cum ex fugā Pompēium sequerentur atque in
 insulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū recepti nōn erant
 missisque ad eōs nūntiis ut ex his locis discēderent, contrā
 voluntātem suam nāvēs solvērunt. Iamque dē Caesaris
 30 adventū fāma ad civitatēs perferēbātur.

āctuārius, -a, -um, fast-sailing
 Amphipolis, -is, f., a city of Mace-
 donia
 Antiochēnsis, -e, adj., of Antioch;
 masc. as noun, an inhabitant of
 Antioch

Antiochia, -ae, f., Antioch, capital
 of Syria
 Cilicia, -ae, f., Cilicia, a district of
 southeastern Asia Minor
 corrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, collect,
 obtain by soliciting

Cyprus, -i, f., Cyprus, an island
near Cilicia

ēdictum, -i, n., edict

Macedonia, -ae, f., Macedonia

Mytilēnae, -ārum, f., Mytilene, the
chief city of the island of Lesbos

quantumcumque, -icumque, n.,
however much

Rhodos, -i, f., Rhodes, an island
in the Aegean Sea, about twelve
miles south of Caria in south-
western Asia Minor

7. **Amphipoli**: 'at Amphipolis.' 8. **iūrāndi causā**: 'to take the oath
of allegiance.' 11. **dēlēctibus**: ablative of means. 16. **diēbus**: ablative
of time within which. 19. **cōsēnsū**: modifies *captam esse*. 21. **exclūdendī
suī causā**: 'for the sake of shutting him out'; see G. § 225. b. — **suī**: indi-
rect reflexive (G. § 133). 23. **sī fēcissent**: future more probable condition
in indirect discourse (G. §§ 199. II. a, 210). — **magnō . . . futūrum**: 'they
would be in great danger of losing their lives.' 26. **Rhōdi**: locative case.

*Provided with men and money he sails from Cyprus for Pelusium,
a city on the easternmost mouth of the Nile*

103. Quibus cognitis rēbus Pompēius, dēpositō adeundae
Syriae cōsiliō, pecūniā societātis sublātā et ā quibusdam
privātis sūmptā et aeris magnō pondere ad militārem ūsum
in nāvēs impositō duōbusque milibus hominum armātis,
partim quōs ex familiis societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā 5
negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suis quisque ad hanc rem
idōneōs existimābat, Pēlūsium pervēnit.

*Through envoys Pompey begs Ptolemy, king of Egypt, for asylum in
Alexandria*

Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, magnis cōpiis
cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucis ante
mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amicōs rēgnō expulerat; 10
castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castris distā-
bant. Ad eum Pompēius misit, ut, prō hospitio atque
amicitiā patris, Alexandriā reciperētur atque illius opibus in
calamitatē tegerētur.

The envoys arouse suspicion by talking with the king's troops

- 15 Sed quī ab eō missī erant, cōfectō lēgatiōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis conloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēi militēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā
20 Gabinius Alexandriam trādūxerat bellōque cōfectō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem pueri, reliquerat.

Alexandria, -ae, *f.*, Alexandria, capital of Egypt

Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra, the famous Egyptian queen

Gabinius, -ī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius, an officer of Cæsar

negōtiātor, -ōris, *m.*, business man

Pēlūsium, -ī, *n.*, Pelusium, a city on the Nile

Ptolemaeus, -ī, *m.*, Ptolemy, Egyptian king

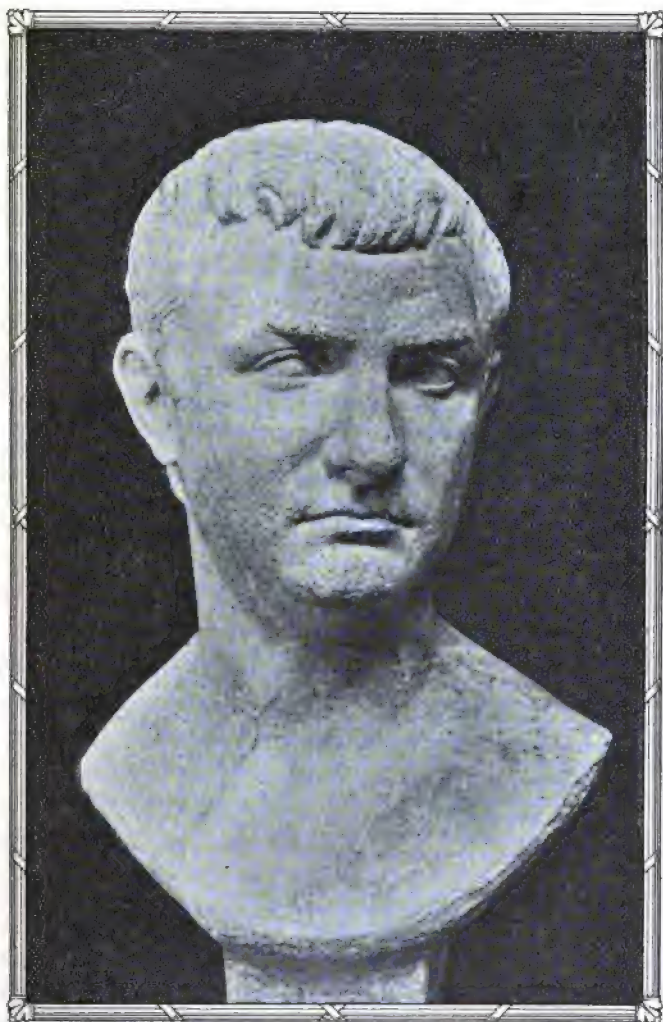
societās, -ātis, *f.*, *esp.* pūblicānōrum, guild of revenue collectors

Syria, -ae, *f.*, Syria

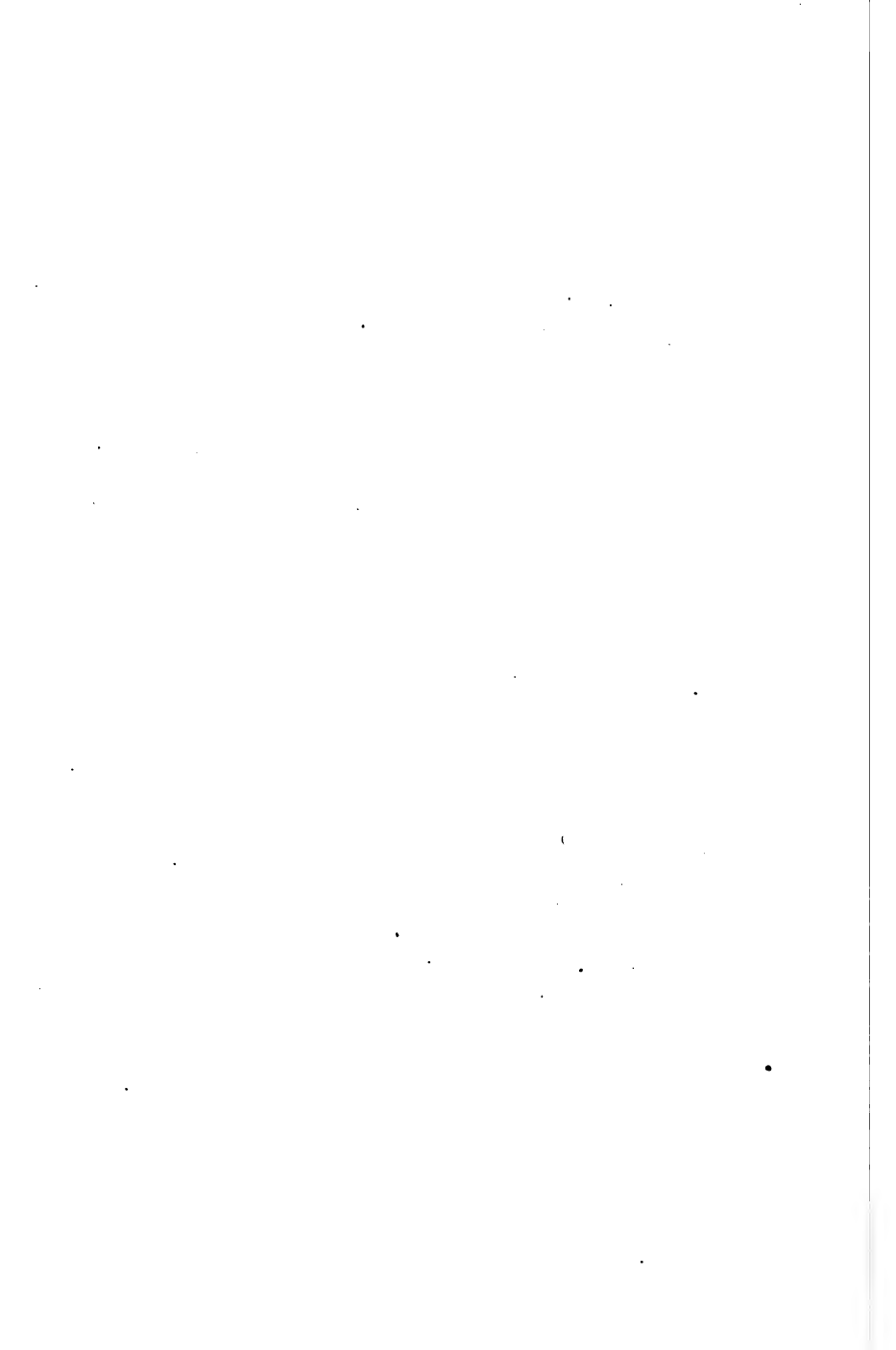
2. pecūniā . . . sūmptā: 'taking money from the tax collectors' guild and exacting it from certain private citizens.' 5. ex familiis: 'from the slaves.' 6. ex suis: 'of his friends.' 8. aetāte: ablative of respect. 11. spatiō: ablative of measure of difference. 15. quī: the antecedent is the subject understood of *coepērunt*. — ab eō: i. e. by Pompey.

The king's advisers act treacherously

104. His tunc cognitis rēbus amīcī rēgis, quī propter aetātem eius in cūratiōne erant rēgni, sive timōre adducti, ut postea praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgiō, nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret, sive dēspectā
5 eius fortūnā, ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amicis inimici exsistunt, his quī erant ab eō missī palam liberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venire iussērunt; ipsi clam cōsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulārī hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum militum, ad
10 interficiendum Pompēium misērunt.



GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS



Pompey is murdered

Ab his liberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōitiā Septimī prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum apud eum ordinem dūxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucis suis; ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā necātur. 15

Achillās, -ae, *m.*, Achilles, a pre-
fect of the young Ptolemy

Aegyptus, -i, *f.*, Egypt
cūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, management

praedō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, pirate
rēgius, -a, -um, royal

Septimius, -i, *m.*, Lucius Sep-
timius

2. in cūrātiōne erant rēgni; 'held the regency of the kingdom.' 6. his: indirect object of *respondērunt*. — *palam*: contrasts with *clam* below. 11. ipse: i.e. Pompey. 12. prōductus: 'led on,' 'induced.' — praedōnum: 'pirates.' — apud . . . dūxerat: 'had commanded a division under him.' 13. cum paucis suis: 'with a few of his men.' 15. in custōdiā: 'while under guard,' or 'in prison.'

*Caesar arrives in Asia and prevents the pillage of Diana's temple
at Ephesus*

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque rei causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut his testibus in summā pecūniae ūterētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris prōfūgissee. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae 5 pecūniae Caesar auxilium tulit.

Strange events occur on the day of Caesar's victory

Item cōnstābat Ēlide in templō Minervae, repetitis atque enumerātis diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fēcisset, simulācrum Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocātum esset et ante ad simulacrum Minervae spectāvis- 10 set, ad valvās sē templi limenque convertisse. Eōdemque

diē Antiochiaē in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmōr et signōrum sonus exauditus est, ut in mūrīs armāta civitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit. Pergamī in occultis ac recon-
 15 ditis templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adire fās nōn est, quāe Graeci *ἄδύτα* appellant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallibus in templō Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coāgmenta lapidum ex pavimentō exstitisse ostendēbātur.

Ampius, -ī, *m.*, Titus Ampius Balbus, a friend of Pompey

Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia Minor

coāgmentum, -ī, *n.*, joint

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make sacred

Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, the goddess

discurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run to and fro

Ēlis, -idis, *f.*, Elis, a city in the Peloponnesus

ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, count, reckon

Ephesius, -a, -um, Ephesian

Ephesus, -ī, *f.*, Ephesus, a city of Ionia

fānum, -ī, *n.*, temple

limen, -inis, *n.*, threshold

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, the goddess

pavimentum, -ī, *n.*, pavement

Pergamum, -ī, *n.*, Pergamum, a city in western Asia Minor

Ptolemāis, -idis, *f.*, Ptolemais, a city of Phoenicia

reconditus, -a, -um, deep, hidden

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.*, priest

sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, sound, ring out

sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound

statua, -ae, *f.*, statue, image

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple

Trallēs, -ium, *f.*, Tralles, a city of Caria

tympanum, -ī, *n.*, drum, tambourine

valva, -ae, *f.*, door

2. *pecūniās*: 'treasures.' 4. *testibus in summā*: 'witnesses to the amount.' 5. *duōbus temporibus*: 'on two occasions.' 7. *repetitis . . . diēbus*: 'by recalling and reckoning the dates.' 10. *ante*: adverb, 'previously.' 12. *Antiochiaē*: locative (as is also *Pergamī* below); see G. § 120. a. 13. *armāta civitās*: 'the citizens in arms.' 14. *in occultis ac reconditis templī*: 'in secret and remote parts of the temple.' 16. *ἄδύτα*: 'adyta,' a Greek neuter plural, 'shrines,' but meaning literally 'not to be entered.'

Caesar with a small force follows Pompey to Egypt

106. Caesar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus cum audisset Pompēium Cypri visum, coniectāns eum Aegyptum iter habere propter necessitudinēs rēgni reliquāsque eius loci opportunitatēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequi iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q. Fūfiō lēgātō 5 ēvocāverat, equitibusque DCCC et nāvibus longis Rhodiis x et Asiaticis paucis Alexandriam pervēnit. In his erant legiōnibus hominum milia tria cc; reliquī vulneribus ex proeliis et labōre ac magnitudine itineris cōfecti cōsequi nōn potuerant. Sed Caesar cōnfisus fāmā rērum gestārum 10 infirmis auxiliis proficisci nōn dubitāverat, aequē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore existimāns.

At Alexandria he hears of Pompey's death. The Alexandrians resent Caesar's display of authority

Alexandriae dē Pompēi morte cognōscit atque ibi primum ē nāve ēgrediēns clāmōrem militum audit quōs rēx in oppidō praesidi causā reliquerat, et concursum ad sē fieri videt, 15 quod fascēs anteferrentur. In hōc omnis multitūdō maiestatem rēgiāminuī praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō tumultū crēbrae continuis diēbus ex concursū multitūdinis concitātiōnēs fiēbant complūrēsque militēs huius urbis omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

20

Achāia, -ae, *f.*, Achaia, a Roman province, nearly corresponding to modern Greece

Asiaticus, -a, -um, *of, or from*, Asia

concitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, uprising

coniectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *infer*

fascis, -is, *m.*, a bundle; *in the*

plural, fasces, the bundle of rods carried before the higher magistrates by a lictor

Fūfius, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Fufius Calenus, a lieutenant of Cæsar

Rhodius, -a, -um, *of, or from*, Rhodes

sēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *allay, settle*

2. *Cypri*: locative.— *Aegyptum*: accusative of the place whither. We should expect a preposition. 3. *necessitudinē rēgni*: 'his close relations with the kingdom.' 10. *cōfusus . . . gestarum*: 'relying on the reputation of his exploits.' 13. *Alexandriae*: locative. 15. *concursum . . . videt*: 'saw a crowd throng toward him.'

Cæsar, detained by contrary winds, sends for more troops

107. Quibus rēbus animadversis legiōnēs sibi aliās ex Asiā addūci iussit, quās ex Pompēianis militibus cōnfecerat. Ipse enim necessariō etēsīs tenēbatur, qui nāvigantibus Alexandriā sunt adversissimi ventī.

He decides to act as arbiter between Ptolemy and Cleopatra

5 Interim contrōversiās rēgum ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōsul, pertinēre existimāns, atque eō magis officiō suō convenire, quod superiōre cōsulātū cum patre Ptolemaeō et lēge et senātūs cōsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem Ptolemaeum atque eius
10 sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs quōs habērent dimittere, et dē contrōversiis iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armīs disceptāre.

disceptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, contend, etēsiae, -ārum, *m.*, the etesian
dispute winds, trade winds

3. *etēsīs*: these winds prevail more than a month every summer in the eastern part of the Mediterranean. 7. *officiō suō convenire*: 'it was in accord with his official duty.' 11. *iūre apud sē*: contrasts with *inter sē armīs*.

The king's friends, angered, plot to destroy Cæsar and his army

108. Erat in prōcūrātiōne rēgni, propter aetātem puerī, nūtricius eius, eunūchus nōmine Pothinus. Is primum inter suōs querī atque indignārī coepit rēgem ad causam dicendam ēvocārī; deinde adiūtōrēs quōsdam cōsiliī sui nactus ex

rēgis amicis, exercitum ā Pēlūsio clam Alexandriam ēvocā- 5
vit atque eundem Achillam, cuius suprā meminimus, omni-
bus cōpiis praefecit. Hunc, incitātum suis et rēgis inflātum
pollicitātiōnibus, quae fieri vellet litteris nūntiisque edocuit.

The will of Ptolemy, father of Ptolemy and Cleopatra

In testāmentō Ptolemaei patris hērēdēs erant scripti ex
duobus filiis maior et ex duabus filiabus ea quae aetate 10
antecedēbat. Haec uti fierent, per omnēs deōs perque foe-
dera quae Rōmae fēcisset, eōdem testāmentō Ptolemaeus
populum Rōmānum obtestābatur. Tabulae testāmenti ūnae
per lēgātōs eius Rōmam erant adlātāe, ut in aerāriō pōne-
rentur (hae, cum propter pūblicās occupātiōnēs pōni nōn 15
potuissent, apud Pompēium sunt dēpositae), alterae eōdem
exemplō relictāe atque obsignātae Alexandriae prōferēbantur.

adiutor, -oris, <i>m.</i> , helper, confederate	inflātus, -a, -um, <i>part. of inflō</i> , elated
aerārium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , treasury	nūtricius, -a, -um, fostering; <i>marc.</i> as noun, guardian
dēpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, put down, deposit	prōcūrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , administration
eunūchus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , eunuch	prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring forward, find
hērēs, -ēdis, <i>c.</i> , heir	

3. rēgem . . . ēvocāri: 'that a king should be summoned to defend himself.' 13. Tabulae testāmenti ūnae: 'one copy of the will.' 16. alterae: i. e. tabulae. — eōdem exemplō: 'exactly like it'; ablative of description.

Achillas marches on Alexandria with the king's army

109. Dē his rēbus cum agerētur apud Caesarem, ipse
maximē vellet prō commūni amicō atque arbitrō contrō-
versiās rēgum compōnere, subitō exercitus rēgius equitatus-
que omnis venire Alexandriam nūntiātur. Caesaris cōpiae
nēquāquam erant tantae, ut eis, extrā oppidum si esset 5

dimicandum, cōfideret. Relinquēbātur ut sē suis locis oppidō tenēret cōnsiliumque Achillae cognōsceret. Militēs tamen omnēs in armis esse iussit, rēgemque hortātus est ut ex suis necessariis quōs habēret maximae auctōritātis lēgātōs
 10 ad Achillam mitteret, et quid esset suae voluntātis ostenderet.

He kills the king's ambassadors, sent by Caesar's advice

Ā quō missi Dioscoridēs et Serāpiōn, quī ambō lēgātī Rōmae fuerant magnamque apud patrem Ptolemaeum auctōritātem habuerant, ad Achillam pervēnērunt. Quōs ille, cum in cōnspectum eius vēnissent, priusquam audiret aut
 15 cuius rei causā missi essent cognōsceret, corripī atque interfici iussit; quōrum alter acceptō volnere occupātus per suōs prō occisō sublātus, alter interfectus est. Quō factō rēgem ut in suā potestāte habēret Caesar efficit, magnam rēgium nōmen apud suōs auctōritātem habēre existimāns, et ut
 20 potius prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum quam rēgiō cōnsiliō susceptum bellum vidērētur.

ambō, ambae, ambō, both

corripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, seize,

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, settle

arrest

2. prō: 'in the capacity of.' 10. quid esset suae voluntātis: 'what his desire was'; voluntātis, partitive genitive. 16. occupātus per suōs etc.: 'was caught up by his friends and carried off for dead.' 20. prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum . . . cōnsiliō: 'by the private design of a few men, and brigands at that, than by that of the king.'

The forces of Achilles, their number and character

110. Erant cum Achillā cōpiae, ut neque numerō neque genere hominum neque ūsū rei militāris contemnendae vidērentur. Milia enim xx in armis habēbat. Haec cōnstābant ex Gabiniānis militibus, quī iam in cōnsuētūdinem Alexan-
 5 drinae vitae ac licentiae vēnerant et nōmen disciplinamque

populī Rōmānī dēdidicerant uxōrēsque dūxerant ex quibus plērique liberōs habēbant. Hūc accēdēbant conlēctī ex prae-
dōnibus latrōnibusque Syriae Ciliciaeque prōvinciae finitimā-
rumque regiōnum. Multi praetereā capitis damnāti exsulēsque
convēnerant; fugitivis omnibus nostris certus erat Alexan- 10
driāe receptus certaue vitae condiō, ut datō nōmine militum
essent nūmerō; sī quis ā dominō prehenderētur, cōnsēnsū
militum ēripiēbatur, quī vim suōrum, quod in simili culpā
versābantur, ipsī prō suō periculō dēfendēbant. Hi rēgum
amicōs ad mortem dēposcere, hī bona locuplētum diripere, 15
stipendi augendi causā rēgis domum obsidēre, rēgnō expel-
lere, aliōs arcessere vetere quōdam Alexandrīni exercitūs
īnstitūtō cōnsuērant. Erant praetereā equitum milia duo.
Inveterāverant hī omnēs complūribus Alexandriae bellis;
Ptolemaeum patrem in rēgnū redūxerant, Bibuli filiōs 20
duōs interfēcērant, bella cum Aegyptiis gesserant. Hunc
ūsum rei militāris habēbant.

Alexandrīnus, -a, -um, of 'Alex-
andria

Bibulus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Calpurnius
Bibulus, naval commander under
Pompey

contemnō, -ere, -tempti, -temptus,
despise

dēdiscō, -ere, -didici, —, forget
exsul, -ulis, *m.*, exile

Gabiniānus, -a, -um, of Gabinius
licentia, -ae, *f.*, looseness
locuplēs, -ētis, rich

prehendō, see **prēndō** in the vocab-
ulary

3. **cōnstābant ex**: 'consisted of.' 4. **in cōnsuētūdinem . . . vēnerant**:
'had become habituated.' 7. **conlēctī . . . latrōnibusque**: 'a collection
of robbers and highwaymen.' 9. **capitis damnāti**: 'who had been con-
demned to death.' 10. **fugitivis**: dative of reference (G. § 85). 11. **re-**
ceptus: 'refuge.' — **ut . . . essent**: in apposition with *condiō*. — **mili-**
tum essent nūmerō: 'they should enlist as soldiers.' 12. **prehenderētur**:
'was on the point of being seized.' 13. **vim suōrum**: 'violence offered to
any of their number.' 14. **prō suō periculō**: 'at the risk of their lives.' —
Hī: subject of *cōnsuērant*, l. 18. 15. **dēposcere**: this and the following
infinitives depend upon *cōnsuērant*. 17. **vetere quōdam . . . īnstitūtō**:
'by an old privilege of the Alexandrian army.'

Achillas seizes the whole city except the part occupied by Caesar

111. Hīs cōpiis fidēs Achillās paucitātemque militum
Caesaris dēspiciēns occupābat Alexandriam praeter eam
oppidi partem quam Caesar cum militibus tenēbat. Primō
impetū domum eius inrumpere cōnātus est ; sed Caesar dis-
5 positis per viās cohortibus impetum eius sustinuit.

At the port, however, Caesar gains the victory

Eōdemque tempore pugnātum est ad portum, ac longē
maximam ea rēs adtulit dimicātiōnem. Simul enim diductis
cōpiis plūribus viīs pugnābātur, et magnā multitudīne nāvēs
longās occupāre hostēs cōnābantur ; quārum erant I. auxiliō
10 missae ad Pompēium proeliōque in Thessaliā factō domum
redierant, illae trirēmēs omnēs et quinquerēmēs aptae in-
structaeque omnibus rēbus ad nāvigandum, praeter hās XXII
quae praesidi causā Alexandriae esse cōsuērant ; cōstrātae
omnēs ; quās si occupāvissent, classē Caesarī ēreptā portum
15 ac mare tōtum in suā potestāte habērent, commeātū auxiliis-
que Caesarem prohibērent. Itaque tantā est contentiōne
āctum quantā agī debuit, cum illi celerem in eā rē victōriam,
hī salutem suam cōsistere vidērent. Sed rem obtinuit
Caesar omnēsque eās nāvēs et reliquās quae erant in nāvāli-
20 bus incendit, quod tam lātē tuērī parvā manū nōn poterat,
cōnfestimque ad Pharum nāvibus militēs exposuit.

fidēs, -entis, *part. of fidō*, relying
upon

nāvālia, -ium, *n.*, docks, shipyards

Pharus, -i, *f.*, Pharos, an island

opposite Alexandria, with a
lighthouse of the same name,
which was one of the seven
wonders of the world

10. proeliōque . . . factō : 'and at the conclusion of the war in Thes-
saly.' 14. si occupāvissent : a future condition thrown into past time on
the principle of indirect discourse (implied). Their own thought was, 'if

we shall have seized' etc. 17. *actum*: impersonal; 'the contest was carried on with as great a struggle as might have been expected' (lit. 'as it ought to have been carried on'). — *quantā*: correlative with *tantā*, ablative of manner. 18. *rem obtinuit*: 'won the contest.' 21. *exposuit*: 'landed,' 'set on shore.'

Description of Pharos and its lighthouse

112. Pharos est in insulā turris magnā altitudīne, mīrificis operibus exstrūcta; quae nōmen ab insulā accēpit. Haec insula obiecta Alexandriae portum efficit; sed ā superiōribus regiōnibus in longitudinem passuum DCCCC, in mare iactis mōlibus, angustō itinere et ponte cum oppidō coniungitur. 5 In hāc sunt insulā domicilia Aegyptiōrum et vicus oppidi magnitudīne; quaeque ibi cumque nāvēs imprudentiā aut tempestāte paulum suō cursū dēcesserunt, hās mōre praedōnum diripere cōsuērunt. Eīs autem invitīs ā quibus Pharos tenētur, nōn potest esse propter angustias nāvibus 10 introitus in portum.

*Caesar takes possession of Pharos. Elsewhere the battle is indecisive.
Caesar fortifies his headquarters*

Hoc tamen veritus Caesar, hostibus in pugnā occupātis, militibus expositis Pharumprehendit atque ibi praesidium posuit. Quibus est rēbus effectum ut tūtō frūmentum auxiliaque nāvibus ad eum supportārī possent. Dīmisit enim 15 circum omnēs propinquās prōvinciās atque inde auxilia ēvocavit. Reliquis oppidi partibus sic est pugnātum, ut aequō proeliō discēderēt et neutri pellerentur (id efficiēbant angustiae loci), paucisque utrimque interfectis Caesar loca maximē necessariā complexus noctū praemūnit. In hōc trāctū oppidi 20 pars erat rēgiae exigua, in quam ipse habitandī causā initio erat inductus, et theātrum coniūctum domui, quod arcis tenēbat locum aditusque habēbat ad portum et ad reliqua

nāvālia. Hās mūnitiōnēs insequentibus auxit diēbus, ut prō
25 mūrō obiectās habēret neu dimicāre invitūs cōgerētur.

*The younger daughter of Ptolemy joins Achilles. The Alexandrian
War now begins in earnest*

Interim filia minor Ptolemaei rēgis, vacuum possessiōnem
rēgni spērāns, ad Achillam sēsē ex rēgiā trāiēcit ūnāque
bellum administrāre coepit. Sed celeriter est inter eōs dē
principātū contrōversia orta; quae rēs apud militēs largi-
30 tiōnēs auxit; magnīs enim iactūris sibi quisque eōrum animōs
conciliābat. Haec dum apud hostēs geruntur, Pothinus, nū-
tricius pueri et prōcūrātor rēgni, in parte Caesaris, cum ad
Achillam nūntiōs mitteret hortārēturque nē negōtiō dēsisteret
nēve animō dēficeret, indicātis dēprehēnsisque internūntiis,
35 ā Caesare est interfectus. Haec initia bellī Alexandrīni
fuērunt.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dwell
indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discover
internūntius, -ī, *m.*, negotiator,
messenger between (two parties)
mirificus, -a, -um, causing wonder,
wonderful

praemūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify
prōcūrātor, -ōris, *m.*, governor,
manager
rēgia, -ae, *f.*, royal palace
theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theater
trāctus, -ūs, *m.*, region, district

3. obiecta: 'situated opposite,' with the dative.—ā superiōribus
regiōnibus: 'on the upper side.' 4. in mare iactis mōlibus: 'piles
being set in the sea.' 7. magnitūdine: ablative of description; 'of the size
of a town.'—cumque: with quae, equal to quaecumque; 'whatever ships.'
9. Eis . . . invitīs: ablative absolute with conditional force. 10. nōn potest
esse . . . nāvibus introitus: 'ships cannot enter.' 15. Dimisit: supply homi-
nēs as object. 22. arcis tenēbat locum: 'served as a citadel.' 24. ut . . .
habēret: 'that he might have them before him as a rampart.' 26. vacuum
. . . spērāns: 'hoping to get possession of the kingdom (now left) vacant.'
29. principātū: 'leadership.' 30. magnīs . . . conciliābat: 'for each tried
by generous gifts to win their allegiance.'

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

BOOK I

13. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit : ' Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset ; sīn bellō persequi perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret ; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis niterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit : ' Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētii commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni accidissent ; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre ; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse ? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter

glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundiōrēs
5 interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrū.'

10 Divicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus . . . prōponit: 'Esse nōn nullōs
15 quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimū valeat, qui privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frumentū cōferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, si iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum
20 imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūtiārī: hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coāctus Caesari ēnūtiārīt,
25 intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.'

18. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsū esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.
30 Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem

familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbillissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxorem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre.

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret. 'Scire sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgi commovērī. Quod si quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur.'

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsi prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse; propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās

Helvētīi reliquissent, uti tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperi-
ōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent,
quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum
iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent.'

- 5 31. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs
prōiēcērunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē
ea quae dixissent ēnūtiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent
impetrārent; proptereā quod, si ēnūtiātum esset, summum
in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'
- 10 Locūtus est prō his Diviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtius
factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre
Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū
inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse uti ab Ar-
vernīs Sēquanisque Germāni mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum
15 primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs
et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī ada-
māssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et
xx milium numerum. Cum his Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs
semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem
20 pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum,
omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque
frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmāni hospitio atque
amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse
Sēquanis obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrاندō
25 civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque
auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs
quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent.
Ūnum sē esse ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum quī addūci nōn
potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam
30 rem sē ex civitāte profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee
auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrاندō neque
obsidibus tenērētur.

'Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victis accidis-
disse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum
finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset
optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte
tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucis 5
mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnis-
sent, quibus locūs ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs
annīs uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs
Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōferendum esse
Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem 10
victūs cum illā comparandam.

'Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō
vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē
et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs
poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, si qua 15
rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Homi-
nem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse
eius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

'Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omni-
bus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcērint, ut 20
domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā
Germānis petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experi-
antur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn
dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum sup-
plicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs 25
vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populi Rōmāni dēterrere
posse nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur,
Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuriā posse dēfendere.'

32. Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hōc esse miseriō-
rem et graviōrem fortunam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, 30
quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implō-
rāre audērent; absentisque Ariovisti crūdēlitātem, velut si

cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanis vērō, qui intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.'

5 **34.** Ei lēgatiōnī Ariovistus respondit: 'Si quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque
10 mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesarī aut omninō populō Rōmānō negōti esset.'

35. His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō
15 populique Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret:
20 primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanisque permitteret ut quōs illi habērent voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociisque eōrum bellum inferret.
25 Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; si nōn impetrāret, sēsē — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsumisset uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei publicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōs-
30 que amicōs populi Rōmānī dēfenderet — sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum.'

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse belli ut quī vicissent, eis quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse.' Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum 5 suō iūre ūteretur, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptāssent et armis congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiārīos esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī suō adventū vectigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē 10 obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniuriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētū- 15 rum, nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur; intellētūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.'

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omnium- 20 que ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam adpetisse. Cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam 25 ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitis suis postulātis atque aequitāte condiōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē 30 ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum

patrum nostrorum memoriā, cum, Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplina quam
5 ā nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē boni cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

'Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe-
10 numerō Helvētīi congressī, nōn solum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārīnt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperīre posse, diūturnitate bellī dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs
15 mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī
20 posse.

'Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs,
25 Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

'Quod nōn fore dictō audientes neque signa lātūrī dicantur (militēs), nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā
30 fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

‘Itaque sē quod in longiorem diem conlātūrus fuisset, re-
praesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra
mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud
eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod si
praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne 5
itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibiue eam praetōriam cohor-
tem futūram.’

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē
suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: ‘Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē
nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn 10
sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque
reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs
ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre belli quod
victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed
Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē 15
oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās
omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si
iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre;
sī pāce ūti velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre quod
suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. 20

‘Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ornāmentō et praesidiō,
nōn dētrimentō esse oportere, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si
per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii
subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī
Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetierit. 25

‘Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id
sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere;
eius rei testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et
quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in
Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante 30
hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae
finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs

veniret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdi nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse iniquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

- 5 'Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rērum ut nōn sciret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haedui sēcum et cum Sēquanis habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmāni ūsōs esse.
- 10 'Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendi causā habēre. Qui nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducāt ex his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcērit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi
- 15 Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella geri
- 20 vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populi Rōmāni cōsuētūdinem patī uti optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam

25 populi Rōmāni. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populi Rōmāni iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iū-

30 diciūm senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūti voluisset.'

47. 'Quid ad sē venirent? an speculandi causā?'

BOOK II

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne
vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad
eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis, mī-
sērunt, quī dicerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in
potestātem populi Rōmāni permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs 5
Belgis cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniū-
rāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et
oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs
omnēs Belgās in armis esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum
incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum 10
omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōn-
sanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur,
ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant,
dēterrere potuerint quin cum hīs cōnsentirent.'

4. Cum ab eis quaereret quae civitātēs quantaque in 15
armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: 'Plē-
rōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitus
trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque
quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum
nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōs- 20
que intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri
utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōs-
que spiritūs in rē militārī sūmerent.

'Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta' Rēmī dī-
cēbant, 'propterea quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque con- 25
iūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūni Belgārum
conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum
inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum
numerō valere; hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum,

pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae
 5 potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque summā tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī milia armāta L; totidem Nervios, quī
 10 maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV milia Atrebātēs, Ambianōs X milia, Morinōs XXV milia, Menapiōs VII milia, Caletōs X milia, Vellocassēs et Viromanduos totidem, Aduatucōs XIX milia; Condrūsos, Eburonēs, Caerōsos, Caemānos, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur,
 15 arbitrārī <cōficere posse> ad XL milia.'

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent
 20 Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs omnēs indignitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduis dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsili principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed
 25 etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utātur. Quod si fēcērit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.'

15. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā
 30 mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: 'Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod his

rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimārent ; esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent ; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.’ 5

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī : ‘ Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent ; sē 10 suaue omnia eōrum potestātī permittēre ’ dixērunt. ‘ Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī : sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audirent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armis dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre ; ā quibus sē 15 dēfendere trāditis armis nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō pati, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.’

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit : ‘ Sē magis cōsuētūdine 20 suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent ; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armis trāditis. Sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.’ 25

ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
abl. abs. = ablative absolute
adv. = adverb
cf. = cōnfer, *i. e.* compare
dir. = direct
disc. = discourse
f. = feminine
ff. = and following
fig. = figure
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
ill. = illustration
impers. = impersonal
imprv. = imperative
ind. = indicative
indef. = indefinite
indir. = indirect
inf. = infinitive
Introd. = Introduction
l., ll. = line, lines
lit. = literally

m. = masculine
n. = neuter
neg. = negative
obj. = object *or* objective
p., pp. = page, pages
part. = partitive
pass. = passive
past abs. = past absolute
past descr. = past descriptive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
pred. = predicate
reflex. = reflexive
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, *i. e.* supply
sing. = singular
subj. = subject *or* subjective
subjv. = subjunctive
subord. = subordinate
subst. = substantive
transl. = translate

NOTES

THE ARGONAUTS

References preceded by a section sign (§) are to the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.)

PAGE xli, introduction. This introduction and the story of the Argonauts are taken (with a few slight changes) from "Fabulae Faciles," a first Latin reader prepared by Mr. F. Ritchie, an Englishman. In style and in vocabulary the Latin imitates that of Cæsar, and is excellent in preparing for the reading of Nepos and Cæsar.

PAGE xli, LINE 1 *quōrum*: part. gen. with *alter* (§ 76).

xli 2 *Ex his*: 'of these (brothers).' The abl. with *ex* is here used instead of the part. gen. With cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) the abl. is the regular construction: *ūnus ex mīlitibus*, 'one of the soldiers.'

xli 4 *rēgni cupiditāte*: 'by a desire for (of) the kingdom' (§ 75).

xli 6 *Quidam . . . ex amicis*: *quidam* commonly takes the same construction as cardinal numerals (see note on l. 2).

xlii 3 *cum . . . rediissent*: 'when they had returned,' a descriptive clause of time (§ 194. b).

xlii 4 *puerum mortuum esse*: 'that the boy was dead' (lit. 'had died'); *puerum* is the subj. of *esse*, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 217. b). The direct words of the speaker were *puer mortuus est*. In indir. disc. the subj. (*puer*) becomes accusative, and the verb (*est*) becomes an inf. — *haec*: 'this' (lit. 'these things'); Latin frequently uses the plur. to denote not two or more things, but the details or circumstances of one thing.

xlii 6 *esset*: 'was,' subjv. in an indir. question (§ 201).

xlii 7 *cum*: 'since,' introducing a causal clause (§ 195). — *esse*: as in l. 4. — *nesciō quam fābulam . . . finxērunt*: 'they got up some story, I don't know what.'

xlii 9 *nē . . . āmitteret*: 'that he should lose,' obj. of *veritus* (§ 184).

xlii 10 *vī, fraude*: ablatives of means (§ 106). — *Delphōs*: place whither (§ 97). At Delphi, in central Greece, was the famous shrine of Apollo.

xlii 11 *qui . . . cōsuleret*: 'to consult,' a clause of purpose (§ 175). — *ōrāculum*: 'oracle.' The word means here the priestess through whom Apollo delivered his prophetic utterances. The word 'oracle' may also mean the place where the utterance is delivered, or the utterance itself.

xlīi 12 *vēnisset*: like *esset* in l. 6.

xlīi 14 *ut . . . cavēret*: 'to beware of' (lit. 'that he should guard against'), a clause of purpose depending on *monuit* (§ 183). — *sī quis*: 'if anybody'; a pronoun after *sī* is usually indef.

xlīi 15 *ut . . . factūrus esset*: a clause of result (§ 187. II).

xlīi 17 *certain diem*: the sing. *diēs*, when it denotes an appointed time or duration of time, is usually feminine. — *Diē cōstitutā*: abl. of the time at which (§ 119).

xlīi 19 *ā puerō*: 'from a boy,' 'from boyhood.'

xlīi 21 *in trāseundō . . . flūmine*: 'in crossing a river' (lit. 'in a river to be crossed'; § 224). — *nesciō quō*: see note on l. 7.

xlīi 23 *alterō pede nūdō*: 'with one foot bare' (lit. 'one foot being bare'; §§ 117, 118). — *quem*: 'and him,' 'him.' A rel. is equivalent to a connective and a demonstrative; the connective may be omitted in translating (§ 143).

xlīi 25 *dēmōnstrāvisset*: to be translated as if it were ind., 'had spoken of.' The form is subjv. because the rel. clause depends on *esse*, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 208).

xlīi 26 *nōmine*: 'by name'; abl. of respect (§ 115).

xlīi 28 *illud*: 'the famous,' a common meaning of this pronoun when it follows the noun. — *Phrixus*: Phrixus and his sister Helle escaped from their wicked stepmother by being carried away on a flying ram with a golden fleece. Helle fell into the sea (named Hellespont after her). Phrixus was carried to Colchis. He sacrificed the ram and gave the fleece to *Æetes*, who hung it in a sacred grove and had it guarded by a sleepless dragon.

xlīi 1 *ut . . . potirētur*: 'of getting' (lit. 'that he should get'), a subst. clause in apposition with *negōtium* (§§ 181, 183). — *vellere*: for the case see § 107.

xlīi 2 *cum*: 'since' (§ 189).

xlīi 6 *iter*: accusative of extent of space with *abesset* (§ 96).

xlīi 8 *quī . . . docērent . . . dicerent*: like *quī . . . cōsuleret*, p. xlii, l. 11.

xlīi 11 *ūsui*: 'of use,' 'useful' (lit. 'for a use'; § 89).

xlīi 21 *operi*: dative after *prae* in *praeerat* (§ 84); but some verbs of this kind take the accusative.

xlīi 22 *nō . . . quidem*: 'not . . . even'; the emphatic word or words stand between *nō* and *quidem*.

xlīi 24 *paulō . . . lātior*: 'a little broader' (lit. 'broader by a little'; § 114). — *quam quibus*: 'than those which'; the antecedent of *quibus*, if expressed, would be *cae*; *quibus* is in the abl. after *ut* (§ 107). — *nostrō mari*: the Mediterranean. The author writes as if he were an ancient Roman. — *cōsuēvimus*: the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of certain verbs are to be translated as if they were the present, the past descriptive or perfect, or the future. Thus *cōsuēvī* means 'I am (lit. 'have become') accustomed.'

xlili 25 *tōta*: an adjective agreeing with *nāvis*, but to be translated as an adv., 'all,' 'wholly' (§ 126).

xliv 1 *ferunt*: 'they say,' 'it is said.'—*citharoedum*: in apposition with *Orpheum*, which is in the accusative as subj. of *fuisse* (§ 217. b).

xliv 3 *quōs*: subj. of *esse* (l. 4); its antecedent is *ēds* (§ 139).

xliv 5 *sociōs*: 'as allies'; in apposition with *ēds* (§§ 54, 58).

xliv 9 *multō post*: 'much later' (lit. 'afterwards by much'; § 114).

xliv 10 *nōmine*: see p. xlii, l. 26.

xliv 11 *hospitiō*: 'hospitably,' an abl. of manner without an adjective or *cum* (§ 110).

xliv 14 *ut . . . possent . . . dēicerentur*: see § 179.

xliv 16 *cum*: 'since' (§ 189).

xliv 18 *ēgredi*: 'from landing' (lit. 'to land'), obj. of *prohibēbant* (§ 185. a).

xliv 19 *pugnātum est*: 'they fought' (§ 66).

xliv 20 *ab Argonautis*: abl. of agent (§ 104).

xliv 21 *sē*: 'they themselves,' 'they' (§ 217. b).

xliv 28 *ā nautis*: see § 102.—*cōpiam*: subj. of *dēficere*.

xliv 1 *habērent*: like *dēmōnstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25.

xliv 3 *fōrmā praestantissimā*: 'of' etc. (§ 116).

xliv 4 *dum . . . quaerit*: for the tense see § 198. I.

xliv 6 *ei persuādēre*: see § 83.

xliv 19 in: 'toward.'—*praebuisset*: like *dēmōnstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25.—

Cuius: see note on *quem*, p. xlii, l. 23.

xliv 24 *Quae cum ita essent*: 'this being so' (§ 189); with *quae*, cf. *haec*, p. xlii, l. 4.

xliv 25 *haud . . . morerētur*: 'Phineus was nearly dying of hunger' (lit. 'not much was wanting but that Phineus should die of hunger'); the clause *quīn . . . morerētur* is a rel. clause of result (§ 180); *famē* is an abl. of cause (§ 109).

xlvi 1 *opiniōnem virtūtis*: 'reputation for valor' (lit. 'opinion of valor'; obj. gen., § 75).—*nec dubitābat quīn*: see § 186.

xlvi 3 *quī . . . vocāret*: 'to invite' (§ 175).

xlvi 5 *sī . . . repperissent*: 'if they should find' (lit. 'should have found'), a subord. clause in indir. disc. (like *dēmōnstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25). The direct words of Phineus were *magna praemia vobīs dabō sī remedium reppereritis*, in which *reppereritis* ('shall have found') is a fut. perf. (§ 199. II. a).

xlvi 12 *Quod*: 'this'; see note on *quem*, p. xlii, l. 23.

xlvi 15 *Hōc factō*: 'when this had been done' (§ 117. b).

xlvi 17 *ingenti magnitūdine*: see § 116.

xlvi 18 *eō cōnsiliō*: 'with this design,' an abl. of accordance (§ 111).—*nē quis . . . perveniret*: a neg. clause of purpose (§ 174), in apposition with *cōnsiliō*; for *quis* see p. xlii, l. 14.

xlvi 19 *parvō intervallō*: 'at a small distance apart' (§ 118).

xlvi 22 *faciendum esset*: 'needed to be done' (§§ 224. a, 201). — *sublātis ancoris nāvem solvit*: 'weighed anchor and set sail' (§ 117). If all verbs had a past participle active (as in deponent verbs, § 37), the abl. abs. would be far less frequent; here, for example, we should then have *ancorās sublātus nāvem solvit*, in which *sublātus* would agree with the subj. of *solvit*. Cf. *adductus . . . expulit* (p. xli, l. 4) and *veritus . . . misit* (p. xlii, l. 9).

xlvi 25 *rēctā viā*: 'in a straight course' (§§ 106. a, 120. note 1).

xlvi 26 *caudā tantum āmissā*: 'having lost its tail only'; see note on *sublātis ancoris*, l. 22.

xlvi 27 *antequam . . . concurrerent*: 'before they should run together' (§ 197. b).

xlvi 1 *quōrum auxiliō . . . ērepti essent*: 'since by their aid they had been snatched,' a rel. clause of cause (§ 190 and note).

xlvi 12 *trādītūrum*: *trādītūrum esse*. When the inf. is formed with the participle, *esse* is often omitted.

xlvi 13 *prius*: 'first' (lit. 'before'). — *perfēcisset*: 'should perform,' like *sī . . . repperissent*, p. xli, l. 5.

xlvi 17 *serendī (erant)*: in such cases the auxiliary *est* is often omitted; for *serendī* see *faciendum*, p. xli, l. 22.

xlvi 19 *rei*: 'his task.'

xlvi 23 *eō ipsō cōsiliō*: like *eō cōsiliō*, p. xli, l. 18; transl. *ipsō* by 'very.'

xlvi 27 *quod . . . aleret . . . cōfirmāret*: see § 175.

xlvi 1 *essent*: 'were'; subjv. because it is subord. to *ut . . . oblineret*. This is called the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

xlvi 2 *omnibus . . . antecellēbat*: see § 84. — *magnitūdine et viribus*: see § 115.

xlvi 7 *ortā lūce*: 'at daybreak' (lit. 'light having risen'; § 117).

xlvi 13 *quā in rē*: 'in this' (§ 143). A monosyllabic preposition often stands between adjective and noun.

xlvi 18 *essent*: as in l. 1.

xlvi 21 *gignerentur*: like *essent*, ll. 1, 18.

xlvi 24 *dum*: see § 198. III. b.

xlvi 25 *ita . . . ut*: 'just as.'

xlvi 26 *esset*: like *dēmōstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25.

xlvi 27 *ingenti magnitūdine*: see § 116. — *gladiis galeisque*: see § 106.

xlvi 28 *mirum in modum*: 'wonderfully.'

xlvi 29 *dedisset*: 'had given' (§ 208).

xlvi 2 *cum*: 'since' (§ 189).

xlvi 11 *sī . . . mānēisset*: 'if she should stay.' Medea said *in magnō crō periculō sī in rēgiā mānērō* (§ 199. II. a); see note on p. xli, l. 5.

- xliv** 17 *prōfuisset*: 'had aided'; like *essent*, p. xlviii, ll. 1, 18.
xliv 19 *nē . . . timēret*: see § 183.
xliv 26 *quī . . . essent*: see § 175. — *praesidiō nāvi*: double dative (§ 89).
l 7 *dum . . . dormit*: see § 198. I.
l 12 *id negōtium . . . periculi*: 'that this undertaking was one of the greatest danger'; pred. gen. (§ 77. a).
l 15 *mātūrandum (esse) sibi*: 'that they ought to hasten' (lit. 'that there should be a hastening by them'; §§ 87, 222. II).
l 18 *esset*: 'was' (§ 201).
l 20 *advenientibus occurrerunt*: see § 84.
l 23 *quod rēs . . . ēvēnisset*: 'because, as they said, the undertaking' etc. (§ 188. b).
l 27 *inimicō . . . animō*: 'hostilely minded' (§ 116).
li 1 *hōc dolōre*: 'by his anger at this' (lit. 'by this anger'; § 109).
li 5 *cum*: 'since' (§ 189). — *quā*: 'by which' (§ 106).
li 6 *eādem celeritāte quā*: 'with the same speed as' (§ 110).
li 7 *minimum āfuit quin . . . caperentur*: like *haud . . . moveretur*, p. xlv, l. 25.
li 8 *neque . . . posset*: 'for the distance between them was only a javelin's throw' (lit. 'for it was not farther between than whither' etc.).
li 13 *nōmine*: see p. xlii, l. 26.
li 18 *Neque opiniō eam fefellit*: 'nor was she mistaken.' Literally?
li 21 *quod necesse fuit*: 'as was inevitable.'
li 22 *prius . . . quam*: 'until.'
li 24 *prōgressus esset*: like *sī . . . repperissent*, p. xlvi, l. 5. *Aētes* said *nihil mihi prōderit sī longius prōgressus erō* (§ 199. II. a); translate this.
li 25 *animō dēmisseō*: 'dejected' (§ 117).
lii 2 *rettulisset*: 'should bring back'; cf. p. li, l. 24.
lii 5 *neque dubium est quin . . . adsit*: see § 186.
lii 6 *Liceat . . . mihi*: 'permit me' (lit. 'let it be permitted to me'; § 172. b). — *dum vivam*: 'while I live' (§ 214).
lii 9 *rogāset*: 'asked'; a short form for *rogāvisset* (*vi* of the perf. stem is frequently omitted). His words were *id faciam* (fut.) *quod rogāvissī*.
lii 14 *Vultisne*: for *vultis* see *volō*, § 42; for *-ne* see the vocabulary.
lii 15 *fieri*: see § 45.
lii 16 *Num . . . potest*: 'this can't be done, can it?' See *num* in the vocabulary.
lii 19 *possit*: see § 201.
lii 22 *dum . . . effervēsceret*: see § 198. III. b; cf. p. xlviii, l. 24.
lii 28 *ipsae*: agreeing with *vōs* (l. 27).
liii 6 *quibus*: see § 107.

liii 20 *ultūram*: like *trāditūrum*, p. xlvii, l. 12.

liii 23 *induisset*: 'put on'; like *essent*, p. xlviii, l. 1.

liii 24 *nihil malī*: 'no harm' (lit. 'nothing of harm'; § 76).

liii 25 *mōre fēminārum*: 'like a woman' (§ 111).

liv 1 *magnum* . . . *manēret*: her direct words were *magnum mihi erit periculum si diūtius hīc manēbō* (§ 210); translate this.

liv 7 *ita'que*: 'and thus'; this is *ita* with *-que* attached, not the adv. *itaque* ('therefore').

liv 9 *cāsū sive cōsiliō*: see § 111.

THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

lvii 1 CHAP. 1. *Hannibal* . . . *Karthāginiēnsis*: these words (without a verb) serve as a title to the biography.

lvii 3 *superārit*: cf. *rogāisset*, p. lii, l. 9, and see note; for the mood see § 187. II and note 1.

lvii 4 *tantō praestitisse* . . . *quantō*: 'as much surpassed . . . as' (lit. 'by so much surpassed . . . by how much'; § 114). *Praestitisse* here takes the accusative; see note on *operī*, p. xliii, l. 21. — *prūdentiā*: see § 115.

lvii 5 *antecēdat*: 'excels'; for the subjv. see § 208.

lvii 6 *eō*: *populō Rōmānō*.

lvii 7 *Quod*: 'in view of which,' 'and therefore' (see note on *quem*, p. xlii, l. 23); the adverbial use of the accusative neuter singular. — *nisi* . . . *potuisse*: a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b) in indir. disc. (§ 213). The dir. form would regularly be *nisi dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs superāre potuisset*. But *potuisse* stands for *potuit*, the perf. ind., which is often used instead of the past perf. subjv. when the verb (such as *potuit*) denotes possibility, propriety, or necessity. Transl. *superāre potuit* 'he could have overcome.' Instead of saying *vidētur eum Rōmānōs superāre potuisse* (§ 217. b), 'it seems that he could have' etc., the Latin prefers to make *eum* the personal subj. of *vidētur* and say *vidētur Rōmānōs superāre potuisse*, 'he seems to have been able to overcome the Romans.' When the subj. of the inf. is thus made the subj. of the principal verb, we have what is called the personal construction in indir. disc.

lvii 11 *ut* . . . *dēposuerit*: 'that he gave up his life before that' (lit. 'that he sooner gave up his life than he gave up that'); a clause of result (§ 179).

lvii 12 *quī* . . . *numquam dēstiterit*: 'a man who never ceased,' or 'since he never ceased'; a clause of characteristic (§ 177). The translation of such clauses may begin with 'since,' 'although,' 'such that,' or the like, according to the context. — *cum*: 'although' (§ 192). — *opum indigēret*: the gen. (instead of the abl.) is sometimes used with verbs and adjectives denoting plenty or want.

- lvii 13 *animō*: abl. after *dēstiterit* (§ 101).
 lvii 14 CHAP. 2. *ut omittam*: 'to say nothing of' (§ 174).
 lvii 17 *rubrō mari*: 'the Persian Gulf'; an early use of the name.
 lvii 18 *vēnissent . . . fēcissent . . . comperisset . . . vidisset*: all these depend on *cum* (§ 194. b). — *qui . . . explorārent darentque*: see § 175.
 lvii 20 *in suspiciōnem rēgi*: 'under the king's suspicion' (§ 85).
 lvii 21 *alia atque*: 'otherwise than' ('other things than').
 lviii 2 *tempore*: 'opportunity' (§ 117).
 lviii 3 *commemorāset*: cf. *rogāset*, p. lii, l. 9, and see note.
 lviii 4 *puerulō mē*: see § 118.
 lviii 5 *utpote . . . nātō*: 'since I was not more than nine years old' (explaining why he refers to himself as *puerulō*); *nātō* agrees with *mē* (l. 4).
 lviii 6 *Karthāgine*: see § 101. a.
 lviii 7 *dum cōficiēbātur*: the present would be the proper tense (§ 198. I).
 lviii 10 *Faciam . . . dederis*: see § 199. II. a.
 lviii 15 *eādē mente*: see § 116.
 lviii 16 *sim futūrus*: 'I shall be.' — *sī quid*: see note on *sī quis*, p. xlii, l. 14.
 lviii 17 *nōn imprūdenter fēcēris sī mē cēlāris* (for *cēlāveris*): 'you would act not unwisely if you should conceal (it) from me' (§ 199. II. b); *mē* is accusative after *cēlāris*, which may take two accusatives (the person and the thing).
 lviii 18 *frustrāberis sī nōn . . . posueris*: see § 199. II. a.
 lviii 20 CHAP. 3. *Hāc . . . aetāte*: see § 119. — *quā diximus*: the complete sentence would be *quā diximus eum profectum esse* (supplied from *profectus est*).
 lviii 21 *imperātōre*: pred. (§ 58).
 lviii 23 *Id*: his appointment. — *Karthāginem*: see § 97.
 lviii 25 *viginti annis nātus*: cf. *novem annōs nātō*, l. 5; see § 119. note. Duration of time is regularly expressed by the accusative (§ 96).
 lx 4 *quō factō*: see § 117.
 lx 6 *eā (viā) . . . quā (viā)*: 'there . . . where'; originally ablatives (§ 106. a).
 lx 10 CHAP. 4. *Clastidī*: see § 120. a.
 lx 16 *dextrō (oculō)*: see § 107. — *cum*: see § 192.
 lx 22 *ūnō proeliō*: the famous battle of Cannæ, 216 B.C. The Roman army was almost annihilated.
 lxi 3 CHAP. 5. *dētrimentō exercitūs*: 'harm to his army'; obj. gen. (§ 75).
 lxi 6 *Quō . . . obiectō visū*: see § 117.
 lxi 9 *Hanc post rem*: cf. *quā in rē*, p. xlviii, l. 13, and see note.
 lxi 11 *diēbus*: see § 114.
 lxi 13 *parī ac dictātōrem imperiō*: *parī ac dictātor fuit imperiō*, 'having the authority of dictator.' For *parī . . . imperiō* see § 116. *Dictātōrem* agrees, by attraction, with *magistrum* (accusative).
 lxi 15 *absēns*: 'in his absence'; his brother Mago was in command.

lxi 18 *Longum est*: 'it would be a long story.' Here the Latin uses the ind. where we use the subjv.

lxi 19 *ex quō . . . possit*: 'that from this' etc. (§ 175).

lxi 23 *CHAP. 6. dēfēsum*: see § 226. *a.*

lxi 26 *fugārat*: for *fugāverat*; cf. *rogāsset*, p. lii, l. 9. — *Cum hōc*: 'with him.'

lxi 27 *quō valentior . . . congregerētur*: see § 176; for the case of *quō* see § 114.

lxi 28 *In conloquium convēnit*: 'a conference was arranged.' *Convēnit* is impers., 'it was agreed.'

lxi 29 *Post . . . paucis diēbus*: see § 114.

lxi 30 *dictū*: see § 226. *b.*

lxii 2 *milia passuum trecenta*: apparently an exaggeration or an error. See the map, p. lix.

lxii 4 *Hadrūmētī*: like *Clastidī*, p. lx, l. 10.

lxii 5 *novis dilēctibus*: see § 106.

lxii 10 *CHAP. 7. ad . . . cōsulēs*: the names of the consuls were commonly used to designate the year of an event. The names may or may not be connected by *et*. — *Hīs enim magistrātibus*: see § 118.

lxii 11 *quī . . . agerent . . . dōnārent . . . peterent*: 'to express' etc. (§ 175).

lxii 12 *quod . . . fēcissent*: 'because they had made' (§ 208; see also § 188. *b.*).

lxii 13 *eōs*: i. e. the Romans.

lxii 14 *eōrum*: i. e. of the Carthaginians. — *Fregellis*: see § 120. — *essent*: 'might be.'

lxiii 1 *ex*: 'in accordance with.'

lxiii 2 *Mūnus . . . Māgōnem*: see §§ 202, 203. The direct words of the senate were *mūnus vestrum grātum acceptumque est; obsidēs quō locō rogātis erunt; captīvōs nōn remittēmus, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum est, . . . habētis . . . Māgōnem*.

lxiii 3 *remissūrōs*: the subj. is *sē* (to be supplied), referring to the Romans.

lxiii 4 *cuius operā*: 'through whose effort.'

lxiii 6 *Hōc respōnsō . . . cognitō*: see § 117.

lxiii 7 *domum*: see § 97.

lxiii 8 *postquam . . . annō secūdō et vicēsīmō*: 'twenty-two years (lit. 'in the twenty-second year') after he had become commander in chief.'

lxiii 11 *parī diligentiā . . . ac*: 'as earnest (lit. 'of equal earnestness'; § 116) as.'

lxiii 13 *ut esset pecūnia . . . penderētur*: 'that there was money to pay.' For *ut esset* see § 187. I; for *quae . . . penderētur*, § 175.

lxiii 15 *M. Claudiō . . . cōsulibus*: see § 118, and the note on p. lxii, l. 10.

lxiii 16 *sui exposcendī grātiā*: 'for the purpose of demanding him' (§ 224. *b.*). — *missōs*: *missōs esse* (§ 217. *b.*).

lxiii 17 *senātus*: 'an audience of the senate.'

lxiii 19 quae . . . comprehenderent . . . cōsequi: 'to seize him if they could overtake (him).' The direct words were *comprehendite eum, si poteritis cōsequi* (§ 199. II. a; the impv., *comprehendite*, is equivalent to a fut. ind.). For the mood and tense of *possent* see §§ 208, 209 and note, 210.

lxiii 24 CHAP. 8. si . . . posset: 'to see if he could' (§ 201).

lxiii 25 Antiochī spē: 'through their hope in Antiochus' (obj. gen., § 75).

lxiii 27 Hūc: 'to this place' (Cyrene).

lxiii 29 Illi: Hannibal and Mago. Begin the sentence with *cum*; *illi*, indicating a change of subj., and hence being emphatic, is placed first in the sentence (p. 405). — **dēspērātis rēbus:** 'despairing of success.'

lxiv 2 naufragiō: see § 106. — **ā servulis:** see § 104. — **interfectum:** *interfectum esse* (§ 217. b), depending on *scriptum reliquērunt*, 'have left the statement' (lit. 'have left written'; *scriptum* is the accusative neuter sing. of the past participle).

lxiv 3 si . . . voluisset . . . dīmicāset (*dīmicāvisset*): see § 199. III. b.

lxiv 8 Tiberī . . . Thermopylis: after the adv. *propius* (§ 90).

lxiv 11 Quem: 'Antiochus.' English is not well supplied with pronouns, and clearness often requires the repetition of the noun.

lxiv 13 vidēbat: 'Hannibal saw'; see the preceding note.

lxiv 16 In quō: 'in this battle.' — **cum:** 'while.' — **suī:** 'his forces.'

lxiv 17 quō cornū: *eō cornū quō* (§ 140). — **rem gessit:** 'fought.'

lxiv 18 CHAP. 9. verēns nō dēderētur: see § 184.

lxiv 19 si . . . potestātem: 'if he had offered a chance at himself' (§ 75).

lxiv 21 vir omnium callidissimus: 'this shrewdest of men' (lit. 'shrewdest man of all'; § 76). — **in magnō . . . prōvidisset:** his direct words were *in magnō erō periculō, nisi quid prōviderō* (§ 199. II. a); for *quid* see note on *quis*, p. xlii, l. 14.

lxiv 23 exīsse: for *exīisse* (from *exēō*); for the mood see § 217. b.

lxiv 25 summās (*amphorās*): 'the tops of the jars.' A few superlative adjectives commonly denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant; thus *summus mōns* does not mean 'the highest mountain,' but 'the highest part (top) of the mountain.'

lxiv 29 domī: 'at his house' (§ 120. a).

lxv 2 tolleret: the obj., *amphorās*, is to be supplied.

lxv 6 CHAP. 10. quam . . . armāvit: 'than arm.'

lxv 8 opibus: see § 115.

lxv 10 eō: 'Prusias'; see note on p. lxiv, l. 11.

lxv 11 et mari et terrā: 'both at sea and on land'; cf. *terrā marique*, 'on land and sea.' The preposition *in* is not required with these expressions (§ 120). — **utrobique:** i. e. *et mari et terrā*.

lxv 12 quō magis: 'and all the more' (§ 114).

lxv 13 quem si . . . fore: see note on p. lxiv, l. 21.

lxv 16 *multitūdine*: 'in the number' (§ 115). — *dolō*: see § 106. — *cum*: 'since' (§ 189).

lxv 17 *armis*: see § 115. — *Imperāvit . . . serpentēs . . . conligi*: see § 217. *a*. *Imperō* ordinarily takes the subjv. with *ut* (§ 183).

lxv 21 *omnēs ut*: *ut omnēs*; *omnēs* is more emphatic before *ut* (p. 405).

lxv 22 *tantum . . . sē dēfendere*: 'merely to defend themselves.'

lxv 23 *cōsecūtūrūs* (*esse*): see § 217. *b*; the verb of saying is implied in *praecipit* (l. 20). — *Rēx . . . factūrum* (*esse*): the order of the words is determined by their emphasis (p. 405). *Rēx* is the subj. of *vehērētur*, and this clause is in turn the obj. of *scīrent* (§ 201). For *ut scīrent* see § 187. I.

lxv 24 *quem sī . . . fore*: 'he promises that if' etc.

lxv 25 *magnō iis . . . praemiō fore*: 'they shall be richly rewarded' (lit. 'it shall be to them for a great reward'; § 89).

lxv 28 CHAP. 11. *darētur*: 'should be given' (§ 197. *b*).

lxvi 4 *quod*: 'because' (§ 188. *a*).

lxvi 7 *quae . . . pertinērent*: see § 177.

lxvi 10 *praeceptō*: see § 111.

lxvi 16 *Quae iacta . . . concitārun* (*concitāvērunt*): 'the throwing of these (lit. 'which thrown') made the fighters laugh' (lit. 'provoked laughter for' etc.; § 85).

lxvi 18 *opplētās . . . serpentibus*: 'filled with serpents' (§ 106).

lxvi 22 *aliās*: 'on other occasions'; an adv.

lxvi 28 CHAP. 12. *quī Hannibale vivō . . . existimārent*: 'since they thought (§ 190) that so long as Hannibal lived' (§ 118).

lxvi 29 *futūrōs*: *futūrōs esse*.

lxvii 2 *suum . . . sibi*que: indir. reflexives, referring to the Romans (§ 133). — *sēcum*: a dir. reflex. referring to Prusias (§ 132).

lxvii 3 *illud . . . nē . . . postulārent*: 'he objected to their asking' (§ 185). — *id . . . fieri*: see § 217. *a*; *id* is the antecedent of *quod*.

lxvii 4 *quod . . . esset*: 'which was' (§ 214). — *ipsī . . . comprehēderent*: 'that they themselves should seize (him)'; in indir. disc., a verb of saying being implied in *recūsāvit*. His direct words were *ipsī comprehendite* (impv.).

lxvii 5 *ubi esset*: see § 208. — *inventūrōs*: (*eōs*) *inventūrōs esse* (§ 217. *b*). His direct words were *locum ubi est facile inveniētis*.

lxvii 7 *mūneri*: see § 89. — *aedificārat*: *aedificāverat*.

lxvii 13 *num . . . obsidērētur*: see § 201. note.

lxvii 15 *occupātōs*: *occupātōs esse* (§ 217. *b*).

lxvii 16 *factum*: *factum esse* (§ 217. *b*).

lxvii 17 *Quam nē . . . dīmitteret*: 'that he might not lose his life at another's will'; for *aliēnō arbitriō* see § 111. — *memor . . . virtūtum*: see § 80.

lxvii 20 CHAP. 13. *perfūctus labōribus*: see § 107.

lxvii 21 *Quibus cōsulibus*: see note on p. lxii, l. 10. — *interierit*: see § 201.

lxvii 23 scriptum reliquit: see note on p. lxiv, l. 2.

lxvii 26 Atque: 'and it is noteworthy that'; the conjunction *et* simply connects; *atque* always throws emphasis on what follows. — **tantus . . . tantisque**: 'great' (do not say 'so great').

lxvii 27 nōn nihil temporis: see § 76. a.

lxvii 29 Huius belli gesta: 'Hannibal's (lit. 'this man's') exploits in war'; for *belli* see §§ 72, 73.

lxviii 1. duo: *duo sunt*.

lxviii 4 ūsus est doctōre: 'had as instructor' (§ 107).

lxviii 6 quō facilius . . . possit: see § 176. — **utrōrumque**: 'of both' (Roman and foreign leaders).

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

1 1 CHAP. I. Gāius: the regular Latin form, usually written 'Caius' in English. — **familiā**: abl. of origin (§ 102).

1 3 Cinnae: a prominent leader of the popular party.

1 4 Sullae: the great partisan of the nobility and the opponent of Cinna.

1 10 Rhodum: Rhodes, an island near the coast of Asia Minor.

1 11 prōgreditur: historical present (§ 153. a).

1 13 per pecūniās magnās: 'by a great ransom.' What literally?

2 1 CHAP. II. quaestor: an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or praetor in charge of a province; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2 6 Aedilis: an officer at Rome, among whose duties was the charge of public buildings and games; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2 7 lūdōs: games were presented in the circus in great variety, and often at great expense, by the officials to gain the favor of the people. See p. xii.

2 8 in aes aliēnum . . . incidit: 'he incurred debt.'

2 9 Cōsul: the consuls were the highest officers at Rome. Two were elected each year. See Introd. I. 5 and 6. — **societātem**: the alliance known as the First Triumvirate; see Introd. I. 6.

2 10 Lēgem . . . tulisset: 'he had proposed a law.'

2 11 rem ad populum rettulit: 'he laid the matter before the people.'

3 5 CHAP. III. primus Rōmānōrum: i. e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.

3 11 conversum: past participle of *convertō* modifying *aquiliferum*; transl. by a clause, 'who had turned' (§ 220. e).

3 14 quibuscum: for the preposition *cum* as enclitic see § 150. a.

3 15 parātās: past participle modifying *legiōnēs*; *vinci* depends on *parātās*.

3 16 CHAP. IV. Parthōs: a warlike people southeast of the Caspian Sea.

3 21 ut . . . peteret: 'that he might be a candidate for the consulship a second time.'

4 1 *sē . . . velle*: 'that he wished to be a candidate while absent.'

4 4 *Rubicōnem*: a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province. The crossing of this boundary with an army was equivalent to a declaration of war.

4 6 *cōgitāns*: see § 167.

4 9 *iacta est ālea*: 'the die is cast'; i.e. 'the decisive step has been taken.'

4 10 *Brundisium*: a port of Calabria in southern Italy, whence ships sailed, and still sail, to Greece.

5 1 CHAP. V. *Ēpīrum*: *Epīrus*, a district in northern Greece. See map, p. 167.

5 2 *Dyrrachī*: *Dyrrachium*, a town in Illyricum. — *dum cōpiæ . . . pervenirent*: 'until the forces . . . should arrive'; for the subjv. mood see § 198. III. *b*.

5 4 *ēgreditur*: historical present (§ 153. *a*); transl. as a past abs. (§ 156. *b*); so also *cōnscedit*.

5 8 *prius*: to be taken with *quam*; the parts of *antequam* and *priusquam* are often separated in this way; for the ind. mood see § 197. *a*.

5 14 *mōre*: some ablatives of manner, even when not accompanied by an adjective, are used without *cum*.

6 1 CHAP. VI. *Āfricō*: understand *bellō*.

6 2 *Magnī*: an honorary name given to Pompey. See ill., p. 188.

6 6 *Proeliō quōdam*: 'in a certain battle'; *proeliō* is an abl. of time (§ 119), though the English idiom would lead us to expect *in proeliō*, an abl. of place where.

6 7 *suōrum*: the possessive reflex. adjective (§ 132); sc. *militum*. — *quod . . . servasset*: a cause stated on the authority of some one other than the writer (§ 188. *b*); 'he upbraided Fortune because (as it seemed to him) she had kept him for this disaster.'

6 9 *sibi*: the dative of reference (§ 85), often used with the dative of purpose or end (§ 89); 'he thought that that war would prove disastrous to him' (lit. 'for a disaster to him').

6 18 *omnium*: an obj. gen. (§ 75. *b*); if *victor*, on which the gen. depends, were a verb, *omnium* would be the dir. obj. (accusative), *vicit omnes*.

7 2 CHAP. VII. *annumque . . . accommodavit*: i.e. he made the number of days in the calendar year accord with that in the solar year. See § 227. *a*.

7 3 *Repetundārum*: a gen. used with a verb of convicting; 'those convicted of extortion.' — *cōvictōs*: a past participle agreeing with *eōs* understood.

7 4 *quæ . . . minuerent*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

7 5 *exercuit*: 'enforced.'

7 7 *Dictātor*: a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger and having absolute power. When Cæsar was appointed dictator *in perpetuum*, that

is, for a term extending beyond the period of danger and necessity, it was feared that he was aiming at regal authority. See *Introd. I. 9.*

7 8 *insolentius*: 'too arrogantly'; see § 145.

7 18 *ūnus et alter rogābant*: i.e. people generally were asking etc.

7 14 *Rēxne . . . Caesar*: see *Introd. I. 10.*

8 CHAP. VIII. The dramatic events recorded in this chapter are graphically presented by the colored plates, pp. 8, 305.

8 6 *Nōne scis*: 'don't you know?' See § 170. a. 2.

8 7 *Idūs Mārtiās*: see § 227. d.

8 8 *cum . . . vēnisset*: note the difference in time between *vēnisset* and *recūsāret* (l. 10); 'when he had come . . . when he kept refusing.'

8 11 *Caesarem*: obj. of *volnerat*, of which *Casca* is the subj.

9 1 CHAP. IX. *sī . . . data esset*: 'if it had been in his power to choose' (lit. 'if the power of choosing had been given to him'); a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b).

9 2 *prīdiē quam occisus est*: 'on the day before he was killed.' There is a comparative idea in *prīdiē* ('the day sooner'), which allows the use of the same construction as follows *priusquam* (§ 197. a).

9 3 *conlātō*: with *sermōne*; *sermōnem cōnferre*, 'to carry on a conversation.'

9 5 *quō . . . hōc*: these abls. of measure of difference may best be translated by the English correlatives 'the . . . the' (cf. 'the deeper the well, the colder the water'); lit. 'by how much the more infrequent . . . by so much the more praiseworthy.'

9 7 *Cum enim dēprehendisset*: 'for when he had seized.'

9 8 *ab eīs . . . restiterant*: 'by those who had opposed him'; for the case of *sibi*, see § 83.

9 15 CHAP. X. *Caesar . . . statūrā*: 'Caesar is said to have been tall' (lit. 'of high stature'). The abl. of description, *statūrā*, is in the pred. of the sentence, as are also *ore*, *oculīs*, and *capite* (§ 116. b). See *Introd. I. 11.*

9 16 *Quam*: 'and this,' or simply 'this'; see § 143.

9 17 *molestē ferēbat*: 'he was annoyed at' (lit. 'he bore ill').

9 18 *gestandae*: the gerundive is to be carefully distinguished from the gerund, which is always governed as a noun, but has an active verbal force and so sometimes, but not generally, has an obj. in the accusative. The gerundive is pass. and agrees with its noun like an adjective. The gerund form corresponding to *iūs laureae gestandae* would be *iūs gestandī lauream*, 'the right of wearing the laurel wreath.' The gerundive is to be translated in the same way, though lit. it means 'the right of the laurel wreath to be worn.'

10 1 *Rei militāris . . . peritissimus*: see § 80. See *Introd. I. 12.*

10 3 *equō*: 'on horseback.' — *pedibus*: 'on foot.'

10 5 *ut . . . perveniret*: a result clause.

10 7 *ut visum est*: 'as it seemed.'

THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

11 1 CHAP. 1. *Gallia*: the whole country of Gaul excepting the Roman Province (*Uterior Prōvincia*) and Cisalpine Gaul (*Citerior Prōvincia*, now known as northern Italy). See the map at the beginning of the book, and the Introd. II. 1. — *omnis*: 'as a whole.' — *divisa*: past participle used as an adjective.

11 2 *ānam*: sc. *partem* from *partēs* above. — *incolunt*: 'inhabit.' The words *quārum* . . . *incolunt* etc. may be translated freely, 'one of which is inhabited by the Belgæ' etc. — *quī*: the antecedent is *ei* ('those') understood, subj. of *incolunt*.

11 3 *ipsōrum*: shown to be emphatic by its position (see Composition, Lesson I. 2); 'in their own language.'

11 4 *linguā*: abl. of respect (§ 115). — *inter sē*: 'from one another' (lit. 'among themselves').

11 5 *Gallōs* etc.: trace these boundaries on the map. Use the maps in all cases to locate the names of places and peoples.

11 6 *dividit*: the verb is sing. because the rivers make one boundary (§ 68).

11 7 *Hōrum*: part. gen. with *fortissimī* (§ 76). — *propterea quod*: 'because' (lit. 'because of this, that').

11 8 *cultū*: 'civilization,' as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — *hūmānitāte*: 'refinement,' of mind or feeling. — *prōvinciae*: *Uterior Prōvincia*, the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul. See map and Introd. II. 1. This territory was organized as a province, and was under the influence of Roman civilization.

11 9 *mercātōrēs*: traders, or peddlers. They traveled with mules, pack horses, and wagons.

11 10 *effēminandōs*: gerundive (§ 224. *b*). Distinguish carefully from the gerund.

11 11 *Germānis*: dative with an adjective of nearness (§ 90). — *Rhēnum*: this natural boundary has always been patriotically guarded by the Germans and has inspired their well-known song "Die Wacht am Rhein."

11 12 *Quā dē causā*: 'and for this reason'; for the translation of a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

11 14 *cum*: 'while.' — *suīs* and *ipsī*: both refer to the Helvetii, *eīs* and *eōrum* to the Germans. For the reflexive *suīs* see § 132.

12 1 *quam* . . . *dictum est*: 'which it has been said (above) the Gauls occupy.' For the indir. disc. see § 204. The dir. disc. would be *Gallī obtinent*. Do not transl. *obtīnere* 'obtain.'

12 3 *ab Sāquanis*: 'on the side of' etc.

12 4 *vergit* etc.: 'slopes to the north'; the highlands are along the southern boundary, and most of the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.

12 5 *Galliae*: Central (or Celtic) Gaul, the country just described, not *Gallia omnis*.

12 6 *spectant in*: 'face,' or 'lie toward.'

12 9 *inter occāsum* etc.: 'toward the northwest,' i.e. from the Province, the quarter from which this direction and that mentioned in l. 6 are considered.

12 11 CHAP. 2. *M(ārcō) Messālā et M(ārcō) Pisōne cōsulibus*: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b). Transl., 'in the consulship of Marcus Messala' etc. In reading the Latin and in translating always give the names in full. Two consuls were elected annually, and the Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls in office (§ 228). The two named above were consuls in 61 B.C., three years before Cæsar went to Gaul.

12 12 *coniūratiōnem*: 'a conspiracy.' The Helvetii had been governed by kings, but were now ruled by chiefs from among the nobles (*nōbīlēs*). Orgetorix, by making himself leader of the emigration, hoped to gain royal power over the Helvetii, and through them to extend his sway over the whole of Gaul.—*civitātī*: dative after *persuādit* (§ 83).

12 13 *ut . . . exirent*: subst. clause used as the obj. of *persuādit* (§ 183).

12 14 *perfacile esse* etc.: indir. disc. after a verb of saying implied in *persuādit*. The dir. words of persuasion used were *perfacile est* etc., *potiri* being the subj. and *perfacile* in the pred. of *est*. 'He persuaded them . . ., (saying) that it was very easy.'—*cum . . . praestārent*: causal clause (§ 189).—*omnibus*: dative with a compound verb (§ 84).

12 15 *imperiō*: see § 107. a.

12 16 *Id*: dir. obj. of *persuādit*. See Composition, Lesson XXVIII. note 1.—*hōc*: abl. of cause (§ 109).

12 17 *ūnā ex parte*: 'on one side.'

12 22 *Hīs rēbus fiēbat*: 'from these causes it came about' (§ 109).—*ut . . . vagārentur*: 'that they roamed about less widely' etc.; but transl. more freely and naturally, 'from these causes it came about that they were becoming less free to wander.' The clauses *ut . . . vagārentur . . . possent* are the subjs. of *fiēbat* (§ 187. II).

12 23 *finitimis*: see § 84.—*quā ex parte*: 'and for this reason'; for this translation of *quā* see § 143 and cf. p. 11, l. 12.—*hominēs*: 'being men,' in apposition with the subj. of *adficiēbantur*.

12 24 *bellandī*: gerund (§ 223. a).

12 26 *mīlia passuum*: 'miles.' The *passus* was the stretch from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five

Roman feet. A Roman mile (1000 paces) was about 400 feet less than ours.—*mīlia*: accusative of extent (§ 96).

12 27 *passuum*: part. gen. (§ 76).—CCXL: *ducenta quadrāgintā*; always give the Latin words for numerals when reading the text.—*patēbant*: keep in mind the difference in meaning between the past descr. and the perf. (§§ 154. b., 156).

13 1 CHAP. 3. *His rēbus*: 'by these considerations' (§ 109).

13 2 *quae . . . pertinērent*: dependent clause in indir. disc. (§ 203. a). There is, to be sure, no verb here that expressly means 'say' or 'think,' but from the main verb *cōstituērunt* one can see that the clause expresses the thought of the Helvetii, not of Cæsar, and for this reason the subord. verb is in the subjv.

13 3 *quam maximum*: 'as great as possible.'

13 6 *cōficiendās*: 'completing'; gerundive, denoting purpose (§ 225. a).

13 7 *in tertium annum . . . cōfirmant*: 'fix . . . for the third year.' For the tense of *cōfirmant* see § 153. a.

13 9 *Casticō*: see § 83.

13 10 *filiō, Sēquanō*: in apposition with *Casticō* (§ 58).

13 12 *ut . . . occupāret*: subst. clause, obj. of *persuādet* (§ 183). For the past tense see the rule for sequence of tenses (§§ 162, 164).

13 13 *quod*: rel. pronoun with *rēgnum* for antecedent (§ 137).—*Dumnorīgī*: indir. obj. of *persuādet* (l. 15). Dumnorix was a younger brother of Diviciacus (l. 14), a strong representative of the old aristocratic clan-spirit among the Hædui. He was ambitious for power, a vigorous leader of the anti-Roman faction among his people, and caused Cæsar much trouble for many years.

13 14 *Diviciāci*: this Hæduan chief had been in Rome, knew Cicero and other prominent Romans, and was the constant friend and ally of Cæsar in his campaigns. He represented the popular element that was opposed to the old clannish aristocracy, of which such men as Orgetorix and Dumnorix were the leaders.

13 15 *ut idem cōnārētur*: 'to make the same attempt.'

13 17 *Perfacile*: pred. with *esse* of the sentence of which *cōndita perficere* is the subj. (§ 48. I. b); n. gender because the subj. is an inf. *Cōndita* is n. plur. accusative, obj. of *perficere*.—*factū*: see § 226. b.—*illis probat*: 'undertook to show them'; historical present (§ 153. a).

13 19 *esse*: indir. disc. with a verb of saying understood; '(he told them) there was no doubt that' etc. (§ 203. a).—*quin . . . possent*: see § 186.—*Galliae*: see § 76.

13 20 *sē . . . conciliātūrum (esse)*: the indir. disc. continues; '(he told them) that he would win over' etc. The dir. form was *conciliābō*. Remember

that the reflexives *sē* and *suus* in their various forms refer, as a rule, to the subj. of their clause, and in indir. disc. to the subj. of the verb of saying (§ 133).

13 21 *ōrātiōne*: do not transl., 'oration'; the meaning is rather a 'plea,' or 'argument.' For the case see § 109.—*fīdem et iūs iūrāndum*: transl. freely, 'an assurance confirmed by oath.'

13 22 *rēgnō occupātō*: abl. abs. expressing time (§ 117. *b*). Such a construction can generally be expanded in translation into a clause denoting time, cause, condition, or concession, introduced by 'when,' 'since,' 'if,' or 'though,' according to the context.—*per trēs . . . populōs*: i.e. the Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani.

13 23 *Galliae*: see § 81. *d*.—*posse*: equivalent to a fut. inf.: indir. disc. with *sēsē* as subj. (§ 204).

13 24 CHAP. 4. *Mōribus*: see § 111.

13 25 *ex vinculis*: lit. 'out of chains'; i.e. '(standing) in chains.' We should say simply 'in chains.'—*causam dicere*: 'to plead his cause.'—*Damnātum*: a past participle expressing condition (§ 220. *c*) and modifying *eum* understood, which would be the obj. of *sequī*; the subj. of *sequī* is *poenam*, which is explained by the subst. appositive clause *ut . . . cremārētur* (§ 183, third example). The whole expression *damnātum poenam sequī . . . ut igni cremārētur* is the subj. of *oportēbat*. The following diagram will show the relation of these words:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{poenam} \text{ (ut [is] cremārētur igni)} \\ \textit{sequī} \text{ ([eum] damnātum)} \\ \textit{oportēbat} \end{array} \right.$$

Transl. freely, 'he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned with fire.'

14 1 *Diē*: see § 119.—*causae dictiōnis*: 'for the trial' (lit. 'of the pleading of the case'). *Dictiōnis* depends on *diē*, and *causae* is the obj. gen. after *dictiōnis* (§ 75. *b*).

14 2 *familiam*: 'clansmen.' See the vocabulary for the various meanings of this word.—*ad*: 'about'; adv. modifying the numeral adjective *decem*.

14 3 *clientēs*: 'retainers'; volunteer or adopted followers, the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul.

14 4 *nē . . . diceret*: neg. clause of purpose (§ 174).

14 6 *Cum . . . cōnārētur*: descriptive clause of time (§ 194. *b*).—*iūs*: the 'right' of the state to punish traitors.

14 9 *quīn . . . cōnscīverit* (from *cōnscīscō*): 'that he committed suicide' (§ 186). The construction is analogous to that following *nōn est dubium*.

14 10 CHAP. 5. *nihilō*: 'none the less'; lit. 'less by nothing' (§ 114).

14 11 *ut . . . exeant*: subst. clause in apposition with *id* (§ 183).

14 18 *numerō*: see § 115; *ad* as above in l. 2. — *vīcōs*: 'villages,' i.e. unfortified groups of houses; *oppida*, on the other hand, are fortified (walled) towns capable of defense.

14 14 *incendunt*: 'set on fire.'

14 15 *combūrunt*: 'burn up.' — *domum*: see § 97. The verbal idea of 'returning' in the noun *reditōnis* allows this construction, which is usual only with verbs. — *spē sublātā*: equivalent to a temporal clause (§ 117. b). *Sublātā* is from *tollō*.

14 16 *ad . . . subeunda*: see § 225. a.

14 18 *utī . . . proficiantur*: subst. clause, dir. obj. of *persuādēt* (§ 183). In this clause *ūsi* agrees with the omitted subj. of *proficiantur*.

14 19 *cōsiliō*: abl. with *ūsi* (§ 107. a). — *vīcis exūstis*: abl. abs.

14 22 *receptōs . . . adsciscunt*: transl., 'they receive the Boii into their own number (*ad sē*) and unite them to themselves as allies.'

14 23 CHAP. 6. *Erant* etc.: 'there were in all (only) two ways' etc.

14 24 *possent*: the subjv. in a clause of description or characteristic (§ 177. a).

14 25 *inter . . . Rhodanum*: about nineteen Roman miles from Geneva. The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman Province. — *vix quā . . . dūcerentur*: 'where carts could scarcely be drawn in single file.' *Dūcerentur* is a subjv. of description, like *possent* in l. 24.

15 1 *possent*: a subjv. of result (§ 179).

15 2 *multō*: see § 114. While this route was easier, it required them to crush the Roman force at Geneva before they could use it.

15 3 *pācātī erant*: 'had been subjugated,' three years before. The Roman idea of 'pacifying' a people was to subdue them.

15 4 *locīs*: see § 120. b. — *vadō*: 'by ford(ing)' (§ 106).

15 7 *persuāsūrōs (esse)*: indir. disc. Observe that *esse* is frequently omitted. The dir. expression was *persuādēbimus* (§ 204).

15 8 *bonō animō*: 'well disposed' (§ 116. b). — *vidērentur*: subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208).

15 9 *paterentur*: see § 183; *suōs* and the subj. of *paterentur* (understood) refer to the Allobroges; *eōs* refers to the Helvetii.

15 11 *convenient*: see § 175. — a. d. v. Kal. Apr.: = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs*; transl. as if it were *quintō diē ante Kalendās Aprīlēs*, 'on the fifth day before the Calends of April,' i.e. March 28 (§ 227. h, i).

16 1 CHAP. 7. *Caesarī*: almost any word in a Latin sentence may be made emphatic by being placed first. CÆSAR here makes his first appearance. His dramatic entrance at the critical moment, after the stage has been carefully set by describing how difficult the situation was, is characteristic of his style and of the man. Observe how carefully he has set forth (1) the geography of the

country, chap. 1; (2) the situation and plans of the Helvetii, chaps. 2-6; and then (3) how he centers attention on himself, the main figure, as he enters on the scene. Observe that he regularly writes of himself in the third person.

16 2 *ab urbe*: Cæsar was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship preparatory to setting out for his province. See Introd. I. 7. The word *urbs* in Latin writers regularly means Rome, THE CITY. — *quam maximis potest itineribus*: 'by the longest possible marches' (§ 124).

16 3 *ulteriōrem*: i.e. beyond the Alps, *Uterior Prœvincia*.*

16 5 *imperat*: here used in the sense 'to make requisition on.' *Prœvinciæ* is the indir. obj., and *numerus* the dir. obj.

16 6 *legiō*: this was the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous.

16 7 *certiōrēs facti sunt*: 'were informed' (lit. 'made more certain').

16 9 *quī dicerent*: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); not 'who said,' but 'who should say,' or, in better English, 'to say.' The construction after *dicerent* is indir. disc. The direct words of the ambassadors were *nōbīs est in animō . . . quod aliud iter habēmus nullum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbīs facere liceat*.

16 10 *sibi*: dative of possession (§ 88).

16 12 *ut . . . liceat*: subst. clause, obj. of *rogāre* (§ 183).

16 13 *memoriā tenēbat*: 'remembered' (lit. 'held by memory'); equivalent to a verb of knowing and so followed by indir. disc.

16 14 *sub iugum*: the *iugum* was made by sticking two spears into the ground and laying another across them above. Conquered soldiers were made to pass under this as a sign of *sub-jugation*; this act was equivalent to the modern 'laying down arms.'

16 15 *concēdendum (esse)*: impers., depending on *putābat*. — *hominēs*: subj. of *temperātūrōs (esse)* depending on *existimābat*. — *inimicō animō*: abl. of description (§ 116).

16 16 *datā facultāte*: abl. abs. expressing condition (§ 117. a).

16 18 *dum . . . convenirent*: 'until the men should' etc. (§ 198. III. b).

16 19 *diem*: the meaning here is 'time,' not 'day.'

16 20 *ad 1d. Apr.*: 'April 13' (§ 227, d). — *reverterentur*: 'they should return' (§ 205).

16 21 *CHAP. 8. legiōne*: abl. of means (§ 106).

17 1 *milia*: accusative of extent (§ 96). Cæsar's *diem ad dēliberandum* was used in fortifying the south bank of the river. The whole distance was, as Cæsar says, about nineteen miles, but the banks were so steep that only about three miles in all actually needed defense. Where this was necessary, the bank was cut down so as to be vertical. Then a trench was made a short distance back from the bank and running parallel to it. The earth from the trench was thrown in front of it to increase the height of the river bank. The *pedum sēdecim* is the distance from the top of the wall of earth to the bottom of the ditch.

17 2 *pedum*: gen. of description (§ 77).

17 3 *quō facilius . . . posset*: why is *quō* used instead of *ut*? See § 176.

17 4 *sē invitō*: abl. abs.; 'against his will' (§ 117. c).—*cōnārentur . . . posset*: note that these verbs are in secondary sequence after the historical presents *dispōnit* and *commūnit* (§ 164).

17 6 *negat sē . . . posse*: 'says he cannot' etc. Do not transl. *negat* 'deny.'

17 8 *cōnentur*: subjv. because it is in a subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208).—*prohibitūrum (esse)*: supply *sē* for subj. and *ēd* for obj.

17 10 *nōn numquam*: 'sometimes'; the two negatives equal an affirmative.

17 11 *sī . . . possent*: indir. question depending on *cōndīi*; 'having tried (to see) whether' etc. (§ 201).

17 12 *cōnātū*: see § 101.

17 14 CHAP. 9. *ūna . . . via*: 'only the one way.'

17 16 *possent*: subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).

17 17 *ut . . . impetrārent*: a purpose clause (§ 174).—*ēd dēprecātōre*: 'by his intercession' (lit. 'he being intercessor').

17 18 *grātiā*: 'personal influence'; abl. of cause (§ 109).

17 20 *novīs rēbus*: 'revolution'; dative (§ 83).

17 22 *obstrictās*: used as a pred. adjective.

17 23 *patiantur . . . dent*: subjv. in subst. clauses of result (§ 187. I).—*obsidēs*: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact was broken, the hostages were held responsible and punished.

17 24 *Sēquanī . . . Helvētīi*: sc. *obsidēs dent*; *dent* is followed by the purpose clauses *nē . . . prohibeant* and *ut . . . trāseant* (§ 174).

18 4 CHAP. 10. *fieret*: subjv. in a subord. clause in indir. disc. after *intelligēbat* (§ 208).

18 5 *futūrum (esse) ut . . . habēret*: 'it would be to the great peril of the Province to have' etc.; *ut . . . habēret* is a subst. clause of result, subj. of *futūrum (esse)* (§ 187. II).

18 6 *locis*: abl. of place where (§ 120. b).

18 7 *finitimōs*: pred., 'have as neighbors' etc.

18 8 *mūnitiōnī*: see § 84.—*Labiēnum*: an officer in whom Cæsar had the greatest confidence, and to whom he generously gives much credit.

18 9 *līgātum*: see Introd. III. 6. b. See vocabulary for two meanings of this word. The context will always tell which is intended.

18 10 *duās*: the eleventh and twelfth legions.—*trēs*: the seventh, eighth, and ninth. These together with *ēd legiōne quam sēcum habēbat* (p. 16, l. 21), which was already on the field of action, made up the six legions of Cæsar's army.

18 15 *Complūribus . . . pulsīs*: *pulsīs* agrees with *hīs* (abl. abs.) (§ 117. b).

18 21 CHAP. 11. *angustiās*: the pass between the Jura Mountains and the Rhone, described in chap. 6.

19 1 *rogātum*: supine (§ 226. *a* and note). A word of saying is implied in *rogātum* which accounts for the following indir. disc. The dir. form was *Ita omni tempore . . . meriti sumus ut paene in conspectu exercitus vestri agri videri, liberi in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint* (§ 179).

19 6 *dēpopulātis*: pass., though from a deponent verb.

19 9 *sibi . . . nihil esse reliqui*: 'that they have nothing left' (lit. 'there was nothing of a remainder to themselves'). For *reliqui* see § 76; for *sibi*, § 88.

19 11 *expectandum (esse)*: impers.; transl. by the active, 'he must not' etc.

19 12 *pervenirent*: see §§ 198. III. *b*, 162.

19 13 CHAP. 12. *Flūmen est Arar*: 'there is a river (called) the Saône.'

19 14 *lēnitāte*: abl. of description (§ 116).

19 15 in . . . *fluat*: indir. question (§ 201). The clause is the subj. of *possit*.

19 16 *trānsībant*: note the continuative force of the past descr. (§ 154. *a*).

19 17 *partēs*: obj. of *dūxisse*; *flūmen* is accusative, depending on *trāns- in trādūxisse* (§ 95).

19 18 *citrā*: 'on this side of' (as viewed from Rome).

19 19 *dē tertiā vigiliā*: 'in the third watch,' i.e. between midnight and

3 A.M. See vocabulary.

19 23 *mandārun*t: contracted from *mandāvērunt*.

20 4 *quae pars . . . intulerat, ea . . . persolvit*: the normal order would be *ea pars quae* etc.; the antecedent of *quae* is *pars*, which is drawn into the rel. clause and made a part of it (§ 140).

20 5 *princeps poenās persolvit*: 'paid the penalty first'; *princeps*, though an adjective, is used with the force of an adverb (§ 126).

20 7 *eius socerī*: 'his father-in-law,' L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of chap. 6).

20 11 CHAP. 13. *pontem . . . faciendum cūrat*: 'had a bridge made' (§ 224. *d*).

20 13 *cum . . . intellegerent*: see § 195. — *diēbus viginti*: 'in the course of twenty days' (§ 119).

20 14 *ut . . . trānsīrent*: a result clause in apposition with *id* (§ 187. I).

20 17 *Si . . . faciet . . . ibunt . . . erunt*: a future more probable condition (§ 199. II. *a*).

20 20 *incommodī*: for gen. see § 81. *a*.

20 22 *Quod*: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. *a*).

20 23 *suīs*: see §§ 82, 132. *Suīs* is used as a subst. (§ 127).

21 1 *ut . . . contendāmus . . . nitāmur*: see § 179.

21 6 CHAP. 14. *dubitātiōnis*: part. gen. (§ 76. a).

21 8 *eō* . . . *quō*: abls. of measure of difference (§ 114); 'I am the more incensed, the less' etc.

21 9 *sī* . . . *fuisse*: a past condition contrary to fact (§ 199. III. b). Transl. *quī sī* 'if it'. The subj. of *fuisse* is *quī*, which refers to the Roman people. Note the accent of *alicuius*.

21 11 *quā rē timēret*: *quā rē* is equivalent to *propter quod* with *quicquam* understood for the antecedent; 'the Roman people did not know that anything had been done by them to cause them to fear' (lit. 'on account of which they' etc.). *Timēret* is thus a subjv. of description (§ 177); observe that the collective noun *populus Rōmānus* takes a singular verb (§ 65. a).

21 12 *Quod sī*: 'but if' etc.

21 13 *contumēliae*: see § 81. a. — *volō*: see § 199. I. a.

21 14 *quod* . . . *temptāstis* . . . *vexāstis*: 'the fact that' etc. These clauses are in apposition with *iniūriarum* (§ 182).

21 17 *Quod* . . . *glōriāminī* . . . *admīrāminī*: 'the fact that' etc. These *quod* clauses are the subjects of *pertinet* (§ 182); for the singular verb see § 67.

21 19 *Cōnsuērunt*: emphatic position (see note on p. 11, l. 3); 'it is the custom of the gods to grant' etc. (lit. 'the gods are wont'). — *quō gravius* . . . *doleant*: see § 176. Cf. also p. 17, l. 3.

21 20 *quōs*: the antecedent of this rel. is *hīs* (§ 139).

21 23 *Cum* . . . *sint*: a concessive clause (§ 192. note). *Cum* with the subjv. may mean 'when,' 'since,' or 'although'; the presence of the word *tamen*, 'nevertheless,' in the main clause is generally a sure indication of the last meaning. — *sī* . . . *dabuntur*: see § 199. II. a.

21 24 *ut* . . . *intellegam*: see § 174. — *Haeduis*: see § 84. a.

21 25 *ipsis sociisque*: see § 84.

21 26 *Allobrogibus*: cf. *Haeduīs*, l. 24.

21 28 *utī* . . . *cōnsuērīnt*: a result clause with the antecedent word *ita* (§ 179 and note). — *cōnsuērīnt*: contracted from *cōnsuēverīnt*.

21 29 *Hōc respōnsō datō*: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b).

22 2 CHAP. 15. *equitātum*: see Introd. III. 2. — *quem* . . . *coāctum habēbat*: 'which he had, collected'; more strictly 'held (had in hand) after being collected' (§ 156. b. note).

22 4 *videant*: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); transl. 'to see' (lit. 'who should see'). It is followed by the indir. question *quā* . . . *faciant* as object.

22 5 *cupīdus*: 'too eagerly' (§ 145). — *aliēnō locō*: 'on unfavorable ground' (lit. 'on another's ground'); see § 120. b.

22 10 *novissimō agmine*: 'at their rear'; abl. of place where. When an abl. of place is qualified by an adjective, the preposition is sometimes omitted; regularly so before certain words (§ 120. b).

22 12 rapinis: see § 101.

22 15 quinīs aut sēnīs: distributives; 'five or six miles each day.'—*milibus*: see § 105.

22 16 CHAP. 16. *Haeduōs frūmentum . . . flāgitāre*: 'demanded grain of the Hædui' (§ 93).

22 17 *essent . . . polliciti*: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc.; 'which (as he said) they had promised' (§ 208. b). If Cæsar had given this as a fact on his own authority, he would have written *erant . . . polliciti*.—*flāgitāre*: historical inf. Transl. as if past descr. ind. (§ 218).

22 18 *frūmenta*: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (*pābuli*) was scarce because Cæsar was following in the path of the Helvetii, whose thousands of cattle had swept the country almost bare.—*nē . . . quidem*: 'not . . . even of green fodder.' A word standing between *nē* and *quidem* is made emphatic.

22 19 *frūmentō*: abl. with *ut* (§ 107. a).

22 20 *flūmine Ararī*: see § 120. b. note 1.

22 22 *Diem*: see § 96.—*dūcere*: historical inf. (§ 218); also *dūcere*, l. 23; cf. *flāgitāre*, l. 17.—*cōferri*, *comportārī*, *adesse*: the subj. is *frūmentum*. Note the climax, 'they said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand.'

22 24 *diūtius*: 'too long'; cf. *cupidius*, l. 5.—*quō diē*: abl. of time (§ 119). Do not transl. *diē*.

23 1 *summō magistrātūī praeerat*: 'held the chief office.' For the case of *magistrātūī* see § 84.

23 2 *vergobretum*: see § 94.

23 4 *posset*: the subj. is *frūmentum* understood. For the mood see § 214.

23 5 *propinquīs hostibus*: 'with the enemy so near'; abl. abs.

23 6 *sublevētur*: Cæsar is telling why he blamed the Hædui; but, looking back to that time as he writes, he speaks of himself as some other person upon whose authority the reason is given; 'he blamed them because (as he said)' etc. (§ 188. b).

23 7 *quod sit dēstitūtus*: subjv. on the same principle as *sublevētur*; 'because (as he said) he had been left in the lurch.'

23 9 CHAP. 17. *quod*: rel. pronoun, obj. of *tacuerat*. The antecedent is *id* understood, obj. of *prōpōnit*.

23 11 *valeat*: subjv. of description (§ 177. a).

23 12 *improbā ōrātiōne*: 'shameless talk.'

23 18 *nē frūmentum cōferant*: see § 185.

23 14 *Praestāre*: 'that it is better.'—*sī . . . possint*: see § 199. II. b.

23 16 *quīn . . . sint ēreptūrī*: see § 186. The verb is an active periphrastic form (§ 222. I).

23 17 *Haeduis*: dative of separation (§ 86).

23 19 *quod . . . ēnūntiāvi*: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. *a*); cf. p. 20, l. 22 and note.

23 20 *quantō . . . fēcerim*: indir. question (§ 201).

23 23 CHAP. 18. *plūribus praesentibus*: 'in the presence of many' (§ 117. *c*).

23 24 *dīmittit*: historical present (§ 153. *a*). A number of others follow.

24 1 *esse vēra*: 'that the facts are as follows'; explained by the quotation following.—*Ipse est Dumnorix*: 'Dumnorix is the very man.'

24 2 *summā audaciā*: 'of the utmost boldness' (§ 116).

24 5 *pretiō*: abl. of value (§ 108).—*redēpta habet*: see § 156. *b*. note; cf. p. 22, l. 3.—*illō licente*: 'when he bid'; the verb is from *liceor*, not *licet*.

24 6 *rēbus*: see § 106.

24 7 *ad largiendum*: 'for bribery' (to buy political support); see § 223. *c*.

24 8 *sūptū*: see § 106.

24 9 *domī*: see § 120. *a*.

24 10 *causā*: 'for the sake' etc. This is the regular meaning of the word when following the gen. For the case see § 109 and note.

24 12 *sorōrem ex mātē*: 'sister on the mother's side,' 'half sister.'

24 13 *nūptum*: supine (§ 226. *a*). See vocabulary under *conlocō*.

24 15 *suō nōmine*: 'on his own account' (§ 109).

24 17 *Sī quid accidit*: see § 199. I. *a*.

24 19 *imperio*: 'under the rule' (§ 112).

24 21 *quod*: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. *a*).

24 22 *diēbus*: see § 114; there is a comparative idea in *ante* (lit. 'before by a few days').

24 24 *auxiliō Caesarī*: 'as an aid to Cæsar' (§ 89).

25 2 CHAP. 19. *accēderent*: see § 189; the following *quod* clauses are in apposition with *rēs* ('facts'). The verbs are in the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*); cf. p. 22, l. 17 and note.

25 3 *dandōs*: see § 224. *d*; cf. p. 20, l. 11.

25 4 *iniussū suō* etc.: 'without his authority or that of the state.'

25 5 *ipsis*: i.e. himself and the Hædui. For the case see § 117. *c*.

25 6 *causae*: part. gen. depending on *satis*, which is used as a noun (§ 76. *a*).—*quā rē . . . animadverteret*: 'should proceed against (or 'punish') him'; subjv. of description (§ 177).

25 8 *quod . . . cognōverat*: 'the fact that he knew,' the clause is in apposition with *unum*, 'only one thing, namely' (§§ 181, 182, second example); for the meaning of *cognōscō* in the perf. tenses see vocabulary.

25 9 *studium*: 'attachment,' as a partisan.

25 10 *voluntātem*: 'good will,' as a friend.

25 11 *nē*: 'that' (§ 184). — *eius*: i.e. of Dumnorix.

25 13 *prius quam* . . . *cōnārētur*: 'before he should attempt' (§ 197. *b*).

25 16 *summam* . . . *fidem*: 'full confidence.' — *eō*: refers to Diviciacus, as does *ipsō* (l. 17); while *apud sē* (l. 19), 'in his presence,' refers to Cæsar.

25 20 *ipse*: i.e. Cæsar (§ 136). The gist of the request is in *sine eius offēsiōne animī*, referring to the displeasure of Diviciacus, whose friendship he desires to retain. Cæsar's diplomacy is constantly apparent.

25 22 CHAP. 20. *complexus*: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees, falling at his feet.

25 23 *nē quid gravius*: 'that not any too severe measures' (§ 122); *gravius* is an adjective modifying *quid*.

25 24 *ex eō*: 'from that fact,' referring to *haec esse vērā*.

25 25 *grātiā*: 'on account of my influence' (§ 109). — *domī*: loc. (§ 120. *a*).

26 4 *cum* . . . *teneō*: 'while I hold.'

26 6 *voluntāte*: see § 111.

26 10 *tanti*: 'of so great account,' gen. of value (§ 78). — *utī* . . . *eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet*: 'that in deference to his wish and prayers he would overlook' etc. The clause is one of result (§ 179).

26 13 *reprehendat*: indir. question (§ 201). Two more instances follow.

26 15 *Diviciācō frātrī*: 'for the sake of his brother, Diviciacus' (§ 85).

26 19 CHAP. 21. *mīlia*: see § 96.

26 20 *cognōscerent*: the subj. is *quī*, whose antecedent is *quōsdam*, or some such word, to be supplied as the obj. of *misit* (§ 142). For the mood of the verb see § 175.

26 21 *facilem (ascēsum) esse*: subj. of *renūtiātum est*. — *Dē tertiā vigiliā*: cf. p. 19, l. 19 and note.

26 22 *prō prætōre*: the prætōr had the power to command an army; a *légātus* might be given such power temporarily, and he was then called *légātus prō prætōre*.

26 24 *cōnsili*: pred. gen. after *quid sit*, 'what his plan is' (§ 77. *a*). — *dē quārtā vigiliā*: the third watch always began at midnight; but the length of the watches varied according to the season, being shorter in the short nights of summer. This was in June, and the fourth watch began about 2.30 A.M.

26 26 *rei*: see § 80.

26 28 *in*: sc. *exercitū*.

27 2 CHAP. 22. *ipse*: '(and) he himself,' i.e. Cæsar.

27 3 *passibus*: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114), or of comparison after *longius* (§ 105. note 2).

27 4 Labiēni: sc. *adventus*.—*equō admissō*: 'at full speed.'

27 6 *armis*: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans, as may be seen by a comparison of the illustrations, pp. 31, 45, 52, 69.

27 7 *insignibus*: i.e. devices on shields, helmets, etc.—stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.

27 8 *Caesar* . . . *instruit*: the inference from the report would be that Labienus and his men had been overwhelmed. *Cæsar* in consequence falls back.

27 9 *ut*: 'since,' 'inasmuch as.'—*erat* . . . *praeceptum*: *impers.*; this verb cannot take a personal pass. construction (§ 83. a). The grammatical subj. is the clause *nē . . . committeret*, a negative subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

27 13 *Multō* . . . *diē*: abl. of time; 'late in the day' (§ 119).

27 15 *quod nōn vidisset*: 'what he had not seen'; *id* understood, the obj. of *renūtiāsse*, is the antecedent; *prō vīsō*, 'as if seen' (lit. 'for a thing seen').

27 16 *intervallō*: sc. *eōdem*, 'at the same interval as usual'; for the case see § 112.

27 21 CHAP. 23. *milibus*: for the construction cf. note on l. 3.

27 22 *prōspiciendum (esse)*: *impers.*; sc. *sibi*, dative of apparent agent (§ 87); 'he thought he ought to look out for the supply of grain.'

27 23 *avertit*: toward the north; the Helvetii were traveling westward; see campaign map, facing p. 12.

27 24 *fugitivōs*: 'runaway slaves.'

27 25 *quod . . . existimārent . . . cōfiderent*: subjv. because the reason is not given as surely the right one, but merely as the supposed one (§ 188. b).

27 26 *eō magis*: 'all the more' (lit. 'more by this'); see § 114.

27 28 *rē*: abl. of separation (§ 101).—*interclūdī*: complementary inf. (§ 217. c) after *posse*, the subj. of which is *eōs* (*Rōmānōs*) understood.

28 1 *itinere conversō*: 'facing about' (lit. 'altering their course completely'); i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, they returned and gave *Cæsar* the chance he was waiting for.

28 3 CHAP. 24. *id*: governed by *animum advertit*, as a compound verb.

28 4 *quī sustinēret*: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

28 5 *in colle mediō*: 'halfway up the hill' (§ 125).—*triplicem aciem*: see *Introductio*. III. 12.

28 6 *legiōnum*: gen. of material (§ 79). The four veteran legions (VII–X) stood side by side, each in three lines. Legions XI and XII, which he had last raised (*proximē cōscripserat*), were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle and so were set to guard the camp. See battle plan.

28 8 *sarcinās*: see *ill.*, p. 69, and *Introductio*. III. 9. d.

28 10 *cum omnibus suis carris*: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the custom of migrating peoples to go to battle with their families and carts; the former for encouragement, the latter for defense.

28 12 *phalange*: great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx.

28 14 CHAP. 25. *suō (equō remōtō)* etc.: i.e. his own and those of his officers. Cæsar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." Officers and men, sharing danger on equal terms, would be equally brave. Cæsar understood human nature thoroughly.

28 17 *pilis*: see Introd. III. 9. c, with the ill., p. xxiv.

28 18 *Gallis . . . impedimentō*: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

28 19 *plūribus*: 'several.'

28 20 *ferrum*: i.e. the long iron shank of the *pilum*.

28 21 *inflexisset*: subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).—*sinistrā impedītā*: abl. abs. denoting cause (§ 117. c); transl. 'since the left hand (which carried the shield) was hampered.'

28 22 *multi ut*: transl. as if it were *ut multī*; *multī* is made emphatic by its position. *Ut* here introduces a clause of result.

28 23 *nūdō*: 'unprotected.'—*corpore*: abl. of manner (§ 110).

29 1 *agmen . . . claudēbant*: 'brought up their rear.' The Boii and Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had formed the van of the Helvetian line of march, and consequently became the rear when the line faced about (p. 28, l. 1) to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (*latere apertō*) as they came on the field from the road (hence *ex itinere*). The right side is said to be *exposed* since the protecting shield is carried on the left arm.

29 2 *novissimis praesidiō*: see § 89, and cf. *Gallis . . . impedimentō*, p. 28, l. 18.

29 3 *adgressi*: 'having attacked.'—*circumvenire*: sc. *coepērunt* from l. 5.

29 5 *conversa signa . . . intulērunt*: 'faced about (lit. 'bore reversed standards') and charged in two divisions' (*bipartitō*). See battle plan.

29 6 *victis . . . submōtis*: i.e. the Helvetii (§ 83); *venientēs* refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

29 7 *resisteret . . . sustinēret*: see § 174.

30 1 CHAP. 26. *pugnātum est*: see § 66; transl. 'the fight was carried on' (lit. 'it was fought').

30 3 *alterī . . . alterī*: the Helvetii and the Boii and Tulingi respectively (§ 144. d).—*ut*: *as*.

30 5 *cum*: concessive (§ 192).—*hōrā septimā*: the day from sunrise to

sunset was divided into twelve equal parts (*hōrae*). The length of the hours varied, therefore, according to the length of the day. As sunset at this time was about eight o'clock, the daylight hours were equal to about an hour and a quarter of our time. This would make *ab hōrā septimā* a little past 1 P.M.

30 6 *āversum*: 'in retreat,' 'fleeing' (lit. 'turned away').—*Ad multam noctem*: 'till late at night.'

30 9 *coniciēbant . . . subiciēbant*: 'hurled' (from above), 'thrust' (from below). For the use of the past descr. see § 154. *a*.

30 11 *impedimentis castrisque*: see § 107. *a*.

30 12 *captus est*: agrees with the nearer subject (§ 67).

30 14 *tōtā nocte*: see § 119. note.

30 16 *cum . . . potuissent*: a causal subjv. (§ 189).

30 18 *nē . . . iuvārent*: '(telling them) that they should not' etc. The subjv. stands for *nōlīte iuvāre* of dir. disc. (§§ 206, 203. *a*).

30 19 *sī iūvissent*: the dir. disc. would be *sī iūveritis*, 'if you shall have aided.'—*locō*: 'estimation.'

30 22 CHAP. 27. *Quī cum*: 'when they' etc. (§ 143).

30 26 *quī . . . perfūgissent*: a subord. clause in implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*; cf. p. 22, l. 16; p. 25, l. 2). Cæsar's words might have been, "Trādite obsidēs . . . quī ad vōs perfūgerunt."

32 1 *Dum . . . conquīrantur et cōferuntur*: transl. as past (§ 198. I).

32 3 *perterriti*: although *mīlia* is n., the participle agreeing with it is m., the construction being according to sense instead of form.—*nē . . . adficerentur*: depending on the verbal idea in *timōre*, the subjv. being used as with verbs of fearing (§ 184).

32 4 *quod . . . existimārent*: the subjv. is used because the reason is not given by the author as his own, but as the supposed reason of the Helvetii (§ 188. *b*).

32 5 *occultārī*: 'be hid' from Cæsar.—*ignōrārī*: 'be unknown' to anybody.

32 8 CHAP. 28. *Quod ubi*: a rel. beginning a sentence and followed by a conjunction should be transl. by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun after the conjunction, as here *quod ubi* = *ubi hoc* (§ 143). Cf. *Quī cum*, p. 30, l. 22.—*quōrum*: the antecedent is *hīs*, indir. obj. of *imperāvī*, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause *utī . . . redūcerent*.

32 9 *sī . . . vellent*: this subord. clause is part of what Cæsar said, and depending on the clause *utī . . . redūcerent* is also subjv. (§ 214). Cæsar's words probably were, "Conquīrite et redūcite, sī mihi pūrgātī esse vultis" (or "volētis").—*sibi*: 'in his sight' or 'estimation'; dative of reference (§ 85).

32 10 *in hostium numerō habuit*: 'he treated as enemies' (lit. 'he held in the number of enemies'); i.e. he put them all to death, as a necessity of war and a warning to others.

32 15 *quō*: abl. of means (§ 106).—*tolerārent*: see § 177.

32 16 *ipsōs*: the Helvetii and their allies, as opposed to the others who were to provide food.—*quōs*: the rel. agrees with the nearer of the antecedents.

32 22 *petentibus Haëduis*: 'to the Hædui at their request' etc.; dative after *concessit*, of which the dir. obj. is *ut Bōiōs conlocārent*. The Boii would be valuable allies to the Hædui.

32 24 *parem . . . atque ipsi erant*: 'equal with their own' (lit. 'as they themselves were').

33 1 CHAP. 29. *tabulae*: 'tablets,' of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called *stilus*. See illustration, p. 56.—*litteris Graecis*: this refers merely to the letters. There was a Greek colony at Marseilles, from which they had adopted the Greek alphabet, but not the language. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, and probably written language was not used to any extent.

33 3 *ratio*: 'an account.'—*qui . . . exisset*: an indir. question.

33 4 *possent*: subjv. of description (§ 177). The antecedent of *qui* is *cōrum*.

33 8 *ad milia XCII*: 'about 92,000.'—*Summa*: 'the sum'; *fuērunt* agrees with the plur. pred. If we deduct the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other noncombatants. Probably more escaped than the record shows.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS. The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans, under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had seized a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed a decree promising favor and friendship to the Helvetii. At the same time they sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (chap. 35), recognizing his claim on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This occurred the year before, during Cæsar's consulship. However, now that the fear of the Helvetii was past, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

33 13 CHAP. 30. *grātulātum*: see § 226. a.

33 15 *populi Rōmāni*: an obj. gen. (§ 75. b).

33 16 *eam rem . . . accidisse*: 'nevertheless that event has happened not less advantageously (*ex ūsū*) to the land of Gaul than to the Roman people.'

33 17 *eō cōnsiliō*: abl. of cause (§ 109), and explained by the appositive clauses of purpose *utī . . . habērent* (§ 183, third example). — *flōrentissimis rēbus*: abl. abs. equivalent to a concessive clause (§ 117. *d*); 'although they were in prosperous circumstances.'

33 19 *imperio*: see § 107. *a*. — *domicilio*: dative of purpose (§ 89).

33 24 *voluntate*: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

34 1 *iūre iūrando . . . sānxērunt*: 'ordained by oath that no one, except (those) to whom it should have been intrusted by common consent, should make known (their meeting).'

34 4 *CHAP. 31. idem*: nominative plur. — *ante*: adv.

34 6 *dē suā omniumque salūte*: 'concerning their own safety and (that) of all.'

34 7 *Caesari ad pedēs*: dative of reference (§ 85); transl., 'at Cæsar's feet.'

34 9 *nē . . . enūntientur . . . utī . . . impetrēmus*: subst. clauses in apposition with *id*, the obj. of *contendimus* and *laborāmus* (§ 183, third example; cf. p. 33, l. 17).

34 12 *Galliae tōtius*: this does not include all of the *Gallia* defined in chap. I, but only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

34 13 *alterius . . . alterius*: 'the one . . . the other' (§ 144. *d*); gens. after *principātum*.

34 15 *utī . . . arcesserentur*: a clause of result, subj. of *factum est*, 'it came to pass' (§ 187. II).

34 16 *mercēde*: 'for pay' (§ 108).

34 24 *quī*: the antecedent is *eī* understood, subj. of *coacti sunt* (§ 142).

35 3 *sēsē . . . repetitūrōs (esse) . . . recūsātūrōs (esse)*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in *civitatē obstringere* (§ 203. *a*). The words of their oath were 'we will neither demand back hostages . . . nor refuse' etc.

35 4 *quō minus . . . essent*: a clause following a verb of refusing (§ 185). Transl. by an inf., 'refuse to be under their dominion' etc., i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

35 6 *Ūnus . . . sum*: 'I am the only one.'

35 7 *potuerim*: see § 177. *a*. — *ut iūrārem*: 'to take an oath.'

35 8 *Rōmam ad senātum*: note that the preposition is used only with *senātum*; why not with *Rōmam*? See § 97.

35 9 *postulātum*: supine (§ 226. *a*).

35 11 *peius*: n. adjective used as a noun; 'a worse fate.'

35 14 *dē alterā parte tertiā*: 'from a second third.'

35 15 *paucis mēnsibus ante*: 'a few months before' (lit. 'before by a few months'). *Ante* is an adv. followed by an abl. of measure of difference (§ 114).

35 17 *Paucis annis*: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

35 19 *neque . . . agrō*: 'neither can the Gallic land be compared with that of the Germans.'

35 20 *haec*: 'this of ours.'—*illā*: 'that of the Germans.' The Gauls regarded the Germans as savages.

35 22 *ut semel*: 'as soon as.'

35 24 *nōbilissimī cuiusque*: 'of all the noblest'; the sing. form of *quisque* when used with superlatives has the meaning of 'every,' 'all.'

35 25 *omnia exempla cruciātūsque*: lit. 'all examples and tortures'; the meaning is that he employed every kind of torture.

35 27 *barbarus, irācundus, temerārius*: 'savage, passionate, hasty'

36 1 *auxili*: part. gen. depending on the indef. pronoun *quid*, 'anything,' 'something' (§ 76. a).

36 2 *Gallis*: dative of agent (§ 87) with *est faciendum*, the subj. of which is *idem*, which in turn is explained by the appositive clause *ut . . . experiantur*.

36 4 *Haec*: emphasized by position, as if he said, 'Why! if this very conversation should be reported' etc. (cf. note on p. 11, l. 3).

36 5 *quā . . . sūmat*: see § 186.

36 7 *exercitūs*: gen.; 'that of the army.'

36 8 *nē . . . trādūcātur*: see § 185.

36 9 *Rhēnum*: depending on *trāns* in *trā(ns)dūcātur* (§ 95. note).

36 15 CHAP. 32. *quae . . . esset*: indir. question (§ 201).

36 16 *respondere*: historical inf. (§ 218). Observe that the subj. is nominative. Cf. *flāgitāre*, p. 22, l. 17.

36 20 *Hōc*: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114); freely translated, 'on this account.' It is explained by the appositive clause *quod . . . audent* (§ 182).

36 21 *nē . . . quidem*: 'not even in secret.' Cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

36 22 *absentis*: predicate; 'even when absent' (§ 220. a).

36 23 *velut . . . adsit*: see § 200.

36 24 *tamen*: 'after all' (whatever they might have to suffer).—*Sēquanis*: dative of apparent agent (§ 87).

37 2 CHAP. 33. *sibi . . . cūrae* etc.: 'that he would see to it' (lit. 'it would be for a care to him'); see § 89.

37 3 *et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte*: construe after *adductum*, 'induced by both his favors and his influence'; *beneficiō* refers to services that would inspire gratitude, *auctōritāte* to the prestige that would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

37 6 *secundum ea*: 'besides these considerations'; *secundum* is here used as a preposition.—*quā rē . . . putāret*: 'on account of which he thought'; a descriptive clause (§ 177).

37 8 *quod . . . vidēbat . . . intellegēbat*: 'the fact that he saw . . . that he knew' etc. The clauses are in apposition with *multae res* in l. 6.

37 11 quod: rel. pronoun; the antecedent is the preceding indir. disc. *Haeduōs . . . tenērī, . . . obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs*, describing the plight of the Hædui and Sequani.— *in tantō . . . Rōmānī*: 'in view of the great power of the Roman people.'

37 15 periculōsum: 'he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine' etc. *Germānōs* is the subj. of *cōsuēscere*, and *multitūdinem* is subj. of *venīre*. These two clauses are the subjs. of *periculōsum (esse)*. The whole clause is the obj. of *vidēbat* (§§ 217. b, 203).— *sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exīrent*: 'would refrain (check themselves) from going forth.' For *sibi* see § 83; for *exīrent*, see § 185.

37 17 ut . . . fēcissent: 'as the Cimbri and Teutons had done before.' The form in the dir. disc. would be *fēcērunt* (§ 208).

37 19 quibus rēbus: see §§ 143, 84.— *occurrēdum (esse)*: impers. Were the agent expressed, it would be *sibi*. Transl. freely, 'possibilities which he thought must be met at once.' Observe again that a verb which governs the dative (like *occurrēdum*) cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subj.

37 22 CHAP. 34. ut . . . mitteret: a clause of purpose, subj. of *placuit* (§ 183, fourth example).

37 23 quī . . . postulārent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).— *mediū utriusque*: 'between the two.'

37 24 conloquīō: 'for a conference.'— *velle*: depends on the verb of saying implied in *postulārent*.— *rē publicā*: here 'matters of public interest' rather than 'the state.'

37 26 Sī . . . esset: a condition contrary to fact (§ 199. I. b).

38 1 sī quid ille mē volt: *volt* takes here two objs. like verbs in § 93. Transl., 'if he wants anything of me.'

38 7 negōtī: part. gen. with *quid*.— *sit*: indir. question.

38 9 CHAP. 35. mandātis: denoting a stern command. Cæsar now lays aside the language of diplomacy and presents his ultimatum.

38 10 adfectus: a participle denoting concession (§ 220. d).

38 12 ut . . . gravētur . . . putet: a result clause explaining *hanc grātiām* (§ 187. I).

38 15 nē quam: 'that not any.'

38 17 quōs: the antecedent is *eōs* understood, the obj. of *reddere* (§ 142). The subjs. in this sentence (except *liceat*) are introduced by *nē*, or *ut* implied, and are subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with *haec*.— *illī . . . illīs*: the Sequani.

38 23 quod . . . posset: 'so far as he could do it to the advantage of the republic.'— *commodō*: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

38 26 CHAP. 36. ut . . . imperent: a subst. clause in apposition with *iūs*.

The antecedent of *quī* is *et* understood, the subj. of *imperent*. The dative *cis* is governed by *imperent* (§ 83).

38 27 *vicerint*: see § 214.—*quem ad modum*: 'in what manner.'

38 28 *victis*: dative with *imperdre* (§ 83); the participle is used as a noun.
—*ad*: 'according to.'

39 4 *mihi*: see § 90.

39 6 *quī . . . faciat*: a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190).

40 1 *sī . . . manēbunt*: 'if they will abide by the condition.'

40 3 *longē . . . aberit*: i.e. the fact that the Roman people call them brothers will do them little good (lit. 'will be far from them').

40 4 *Quod*: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. a).

40 6 *congregiātūr*: subjv. in a command (§ 172. b).—*quid . . . possint*: 'what they can do.'

40 10 CHAP. 37. *questum*: supine denoting purpose (§ 226. a).

40 11 *quod . . . populārentur*: a reason given on another's authority, which takes the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; 'because (as they said) the Harudes were devastating their fields' (§§ 188. b, 208. b).

40 12 *nē obsidibus quidem*: cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

40 13 *Trēverī*: sc. *questum veniēbant*.

40 16 *commōtus*: a participle denoting cause (§ 220. b).

40 17 *mātūrāndum sibi (esse)*: impers. with dative of apparent agent; transl., 'that he should have to hasten' (§ 222. II. note).

40 19 *resisti*: impers.; transl., 'resistance could not be so easily made' (§ 83. a).—*cēlerrimē*: for the form see comparison of *ācrit* (§ 17).

40 20 *contendit*: the general direction is north. Just where Ariovistus was is uncertain.

40 21 CHAP. 38. *tridui*: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).—*viam*: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).

40 22 *occupandum*: gerundive agreeing with *Vesontionem*. Distinguish from the gerund (§§ 224. b, 225. a).

40 23 *quod*: the antecedent is *Vesontionem*, but the agreement is with *oppidum* (§ 138).

40 24 *Id*: refers to *ad occupandum Vesontionem*.

40 25 *praecavendum (esse)*: impers.; the subj. is *nē accideret*, a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183, fourth example).

40 26 *ūsui*: dative of purpose or end (§ 89). Another dative might be looked for with this one. See § 85.

40 27 *idemque*: sc. *oppidum*.—*ut . . . facultātem*: 'that it afforded a great opportunity for protracting a war'; a clause of result.

42 2 *ut*: 'as if.'

42 4 *pedum*: pred. gen. after *est* (§ 77. a and b). For the construction

with *amplius* see § 105, note 2. The present site corresponds almost exactly to Cæsar's description. See illustration, p. 41. — *quā*: 'where.'

42 5 *altitudīne*: abl. of description (§ 116). — *rādicēs*: obj., and *ripæ* subj., of *contingant*.

42 6 *Hunc (montem)* . . . *efficit*: 'this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.'

42 7 *nocturnis . . . itineribus*: transl., 'marches by night and by day.'

42 11 *CHAP. 39. morātur*: see § 198. I. Cf. p. 32, l. 1.

42 12 *vōcibus*: 'reports' or 'talk.' — *magnitūdine . . . virtūte . . . exercitātiōne*: abls. of description (§ 116); cf. *altitudīne*, l. 5.

42 15 *congressōe*: 'having met them.'

42 17 *nōn mediocriter*: 'in no slight degree,' 'greatly.'

42 19 *Hic*: i.e. *timor*. — *ortus est ā*: 'began with' (lit. 'rose from'). — *reliquis*: young Romans of noble families often accompanied commanders in their campaigns for the sake of military experience. Cæsar probably alludes to these. See *Introd. III. 6. d.*

42 20 *urbe*: i.e. Rome. — *nōn magnum*: 'very little.'

42 21 *alius aliā causā inlātā*: 'on various pretexts' (lit. 'another, another pretext having been alleged'). Notice that in Latin this double statement is condensed, only the second half being fully expressed. This is the regular idiom when *alius* is repeated in another case, and should be remembered (§ 144. d. 1).

42 22 *quam . . . diceret*: see § 177.

42 25 *vultum fingere*: freely, 'to put on a brave face.'

42 28 *testāmenta obsignābantur*: the seal was necessary to the validity of the will. The making of the wills shows that they had given up hope of ever returning home.

43 1 *magnum . . . ūsum*: 'long experience in the service.'

43 3 *Quī*: the antecedent is *cī* understood, the subj. of *dūcēbant*.

43 6 *rem frūmentāriam*: lit. the obj. of *timēre*, 'they feared the supply of grain, that it might not' etc.; transl. it as if it were the subj. of *posset*, 'they feared that the supply of grain might not' etc. This figure of speech, which consists in placing a word *before* the clause in which a statement is made regarding it, is called "prolepsis." Compare

"Who knows the ways of the world,
How God will bring them about."

Observe the force of *ut* in *ut . . . posset* depending on *timēre* (§ 184).

43 8 *castra movērī ac signa ferrī*: 'to break camp and advance.' These are the regular military expressions. Note the idiom *signa ferrī*, 'advance.'

43 9 audientēs: used in the sense of 'obey' (i.e. 'hearken to'), and so followed by the dative (§ 83).

43 11 CHAP. 40. adhibitis centuriōnibus: the centurions were not ordinarily invited into the councils of war; hence this special assertion. In addition to all the other grave dangers and difficulties of the war with the powerful German king, Cæsar now suddenly finds himself face to face with a peril still more serious: that of a possible mutiny of his own army. The campaign was a hazardous undertaking, even with his men eager and willing to fight. With his men reluctant, and some of them even rebellious, Cæsar stands for the moment alone, and his indomitable courage is nowhere better shown. He meets the emergency with the same decision and energy that he displays on the battle field, and manifests, in addition to supreme courage, marvelous diplomacy and knowledge of human nature. This speech, one of the most remarkable of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. Skillfully glossing over the difficulties of the undertaking, masterfully meeting every one of the alleged causes for hesitation, now by reason, now by appeal, he contrives to inspire his men with the invincible spirit of Rome that conquered the world.

43 12 quod . . . putārent: a reason given on another's authority (§ 188. *b*). Here Cæsar the writer gives the reason of Cæsar the soldier, as if he were another person.

43 13 quaerendum . . . cōgitandum: sc. *esse*; an imper. construction (§§ 224. *a*, 66).

43 15 Cūr . . . quisquam . . . iūdicet: a rhetorical question; 'why should any one consider?' The question implies the answer that no one should consider (§ 172. *d*. note).

43 16 Mihi . . . persuādētur: 'I am convinced' (§ 83. *a*).

43 20 quid . . . vereāminī: cf. note on l. 15.

43 22 periculum: from the root of the verb *ex-perior*, 'try'; the word which came to mean 'danger' originally meant 'trial,' and this is the meaning here.—**Cimbris et Teutonīs:** these were a great horde of barbarians that about forty years before had crossed the Rhine, swept through Gaul, and were about to invade Italy. Their seemingly irresistible march was checked by the Romans under Marius, and they were practically destroyed.

43 24 meritus (esse) vidēbātur: 'was seen to have deserved.'

43 25 servili tumultū: 'in the uprising of the slaves,' i.e. the insurrection of slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, 73-71 B.C. These consisted, at least in part, of Germans captured by Marius. The abl. denotes time.—**quōs:** this refers to *servōs* as antecedent implied in the adjective *servili*.—**aliquid:** adverbial accusative (§ 99); transl., 'somewhat.'

43 27 boni: see § 76. *a*.

44 2 suis: 'their own' (of the Helvetii). — illōrum: 'of the Germans.'

44 4 Sī quōs: 'if any.' — adversum proelium: the defeat at Magetobriga; see p. 35, l. 23.

44 6 Ariovistum: subj. of *vēnisse* in indir. disc.

44 7 neque sui potestātem fēcisset: 'and had given them no chance at him.'

44 9 ratiōne . . . cōsiliō . . . virtūte: see § 106.

44 10 Cui ratiōnī . . . hāc: this expression is equivalent to *hāc ratiōnē cui*; the antecedent is attracted into the rel. clause (§ 140); 'by this stratagem, for which there was opportunity against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hopes that our army can be caught.'

44 12 Quī: the antecedent is *cū* understood, the subj. of *faciunt*.

44 15 mihi . . . cūrae: 'I will take care of these things' (§ 89); cf. p. 37, l. 2.

44 18 Quod etc.: 'as to its being said that the soldiers will not obey the commands or advance' (§ 182. a).

44 19 quibuscumque etc.: lit. 'to whomsoever the army has not listened to the word, to these fortune has been lacking' etc.; *dictō* depends upon *audiēns*, and the two words combined, *dictō audiēns*, are treated as a single expression equivalent to a verb of obeying, governing the dative *quibuscumque*, whose antecedent is *eis* understood, governed by *dēfuisse*.

44 22 innocentia: this disproves *avāritiam* as *fēlicitās* does *male rē gestā*. Observe the reversed order (chiasmus) of the words, a figure common in verse and oratory:

<i>male rē gestā</i>	<i>avāritiam</i>
<i>innocentia</i>	<i>fēlicitās</i>

Compare in English:

"So like they were, no mortal
Might one from other know;
White as snow their armor was,
Their steeds were white as snow."

vītā: see § 119. note.

44 24 quod . . . conlātūrus fui: sc. *id* as the antecedent of *quod* and the obj. of *repraesentābō*.

45 1 decimā legiōne: the legion especially distinguished for discipline and courage. Cf. note on p. 16, l. 6.

45 2 praetōria cohors: 'bodyguard,' made up of the bravest men.

45 7 CHAP. 41. innāta est: sing. verb agreeing with the nearest subj. (§ 67).

45 8 optimum iūdicium fēcisset: 'had expressed the very highest opinion'; a reason stated on another's authority (§ 188. b).

45 10 cum tribūnīs . . . ēgērunt etc.: 'arranged with the tribunes to apologize' (*satisfacerent*).

45 12 *neque dē summā belli* etc. : 'nor supposed that the judgment concerning the policy of the campaign was theirs (*suum*), but their general's.'

45 13 *suum . . . imperātōris* : preds. after *esse* (§ 73. a).

46 1 *itinere exquisitō . . . ut . . . dūceret* : lit. 'a route having been sought out that led' etc.; lit. 'such that it led,' rather an unusual result clause. The route lay in a northeasterly direction, and entered the valley of the Rhine near the southern part of the Vosges Mountains. See the campaign map, p. 39.

46 2 *eī* : 'in him'; dative after *fidem habēbat*, which is equivalent to a verb of trusting (§ 83).

46 3 *mīlium* : (sc. *passuum*) gen. of measure modifying *circuitū* (§ 77. b). Transl., 'by a circuit of more than fifty miles through an open country.'

46 5 *cum . . . intermitteret* : a causal clause (§ 189).

46 9 CHAP. 42. *Quod* : a rel. preceding its antecedent, *id.* — *per sē* : 'so far as he was concerned.'

46 10 *accessisset* : the subj. is *Cæsar*.

46 12 *ad sēnitātem reverti* : 'was beginning to return to his senses.'

46 13 *petenti* : 'when he (i.e. *Cæsar*) asked it.' — *ultrō pollicērētur* : 'he now promised of his own accord.' — *magnanque in spem veniēbat* : 'he began to have great hopes.'

46 15 *fore* : the lack of a fut. participle of the verb *dēsistere* is supplied by the periphrasis *fore utī . . . dēsisteret*, lit. 'that it would be that' etc.

46 16 *conloquiō* : see § 89.

46 18 *nē . . . addūceret* : a subst. clause used as obj. (§ 183). It would be a prohibition in dir. disc. (§ 172. c).

46 20 *uterque . . . veniret* : in the dir. disc. *veniat* (§ 172. b). — *aliā ratiōne* : 'on any other terms' (§ 111).

46 23 *Gallōrum equitātui* : he had no other; see Introd. III. 2. They numbered about 4000.

46 24 *commodissimum* : pred. adjective after *esse*, whose subj. is the inf. clause *eō . . . impōnere* (§ 216). — *omnibus equis . . . detrāctis* : see § 117. b. — *Gallis equitibus* : dative of separation (§ 86).

46 25 *eō* : adv.; 'on them,' i.e. the horses.

47 2 *si quid* etc. : 'if there should be any need of active service'; *quid* is adverbial accusative (§ 99). — *factō* : see § 107. c.

47 3 *nōn inridiculē* : 'not without wit.' — *ex militibus* : instead of *militum* (§ 76, exception).

47 4 *pollicitum* : sc. *esse*.

47 6 *ad equum rescribere* : 'he was making knights of them.' The wit (cf. *nōn inridiculē*) in this expression consists in the fact that it has two meanings: (1) 'to enroll in the cavalry,' and (2) 'to enroll among the *equites*'

(knights), a privileged and wealthy class in Roman society. In other words, it is a pun. It is not often that Caesar deviates from his straightforward narrative for an anecdote of any kind, and the fact that he does so here shows his keen sense of humor.

47 8 CHAP. 43. *spatiō*: see § 114.

47 10 *equis*: 'on horseback'; abl. of means.

47 13 *praeter se dēnōs*: 'besides themselves ten each'; *dēnōs* is a distributive numeral.

47 17 *amicus*: sc. *appellātus esset* (§ 94. note). — *mūnera* . . . *missa* (essent): the gifts are not mentioned but they may have included embroidered robes and jewelry.

47 18 *et . . . et*: 'both . . . and.'

47 22 *Docēbat*: 'he showed'; followed by a series of indir. questions (§ 201) introduced by *quam*, 'how'; *quamque*, 'and how' (l. 22); *quotiens* *quamque*, 'how often and how'; *ut*, 'how' (l. 24).

47 23 *ipsis cum Haeduis intercēderent*: 'existed between the Romans (*ipsis*) and the Haedui' (lit. 'to themselves with the Haedui').

47 26 *prius . . . quam . . . adpetissent*: see §§ 197. a, 208.

47 27 *ut . . . vellet*: a result clause explaining *hanc cōsuetūdinem* (§ 187, third example).

47 28 *sui nihil*: 'nothing of their own' (dignity etc.); *sui* is used substantively and is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).

47 29 *quod*: 'what they had brought to the alliance,' the rel. preceding its antecedent, *id* (§ 139).

47 30 *quis . . . posset*: the dir. form of this rhetorical question (§ 171) was *quis . . . possit*? For the mood see § 172. d and note. Transl., 'who could suffer this to be taken from them?' The thought is that the Romans would allow no one to deprive their allies of the prestige they had enjoyed before they became Rome's allies. Note that *eis* is a dative (§ 86).

48 2 *nē . . . inferret . . . redderet . . . nē . . . pateretur*: these clauses are in apposition with *eadem*.

48 5 CHAP. 44. *pauca*: in contrast with *multa* in the next line.

48 8 *magnā spē magnisque praemiis*: transl. as if it were *magnā spē magnōrum praemiōrum*.

48 12 *ad mē oppugnandum*: a gerundive expressing purpose (§ 225. a).

48 16 *pāce*: see § 107. a.

48 19 *oportet*: impers.; the grammatical subj. is *amicitiā* . . . *esse* (§ 216. b).

48 23 *Quod . . . trādūcō*: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).

48 24 *Galliae impugnandae*: see § 225. b. For *mē mūniendī* see § 224. c.

48 25 *nisi rogātus*: 'except upon invitation' (lit. 'having been asked').

48 28 *finibus*: see § 101.

48 29 *Quid tibi vis*: lit. 'what do you wish for yourself?' i.e. 'what do you mean?' (§ 85).

48 30 *haec . . . Gallia*: 'this part of Gaul.'—*Ut . . . sic*: 'as . . . so.' *Oportet* is *impers.* Freely, 'as I ought not to be given a free hand if . . . so.'

49 4 *rerum*: see § 80.

49 5 *bellō . . . proximō*: four years before.

49 7 *habuerunt*: for *indic.* see § 208. *a.* So *habēs*, l. 10.

49 9 *Dēbeō suspicārī* etc.: 'I have grounds for suspecting that the army which you, under the pretense of friendship, have in Gaul, you are keeping for the purpose of crushing me.'

49 10 *meī opprimendī*: see § 224. *c.* and cf. p. 48, l. 24.

49 12 *Quod*: 'but'; so in l. 15.—*nōbilibus . . . grātum*: *Cæsar*, as the head of the popular party at Rome, was especially obnoxious to the senate and the aristocracy. Many would have rejoiced to hear that disaster had befallen him, and it is quite possible that suggestions of this sort had come to *Ariovistus* from Rome.

49 14 *compertum habeo*: almost the same in force as *comperi* (§ 156. *b.* note); cf. p. 24, l. 5.

49 15 *tuā morte*: see § 106.

49 18 *sine ullō tuō labōre*: 'without any toil on your part.'

49 19 *CHAP. 45. in eam sententiam . . . quā rē*: 'to this effect (to show) why.'—*quā rē . . . posset*: an *indir. question*. Transl. freely, 'why he could not recede from his position.'

49 24 *quibus*: with *ignōvit* (from *ignōscō*); see § 83.

49 26 *antiquissimum quodque tempus*: see note on p. 35, l. 24.

49 29 *suīs*: 'its own,' referring to Gaul.—*voluerit*: subjv. in a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190). Transl., 'which, though conquered in war, the senate has permitted to enjoy its own laws.'

50 1 *CHAP. 46. geruntur*: see § 198. *I.*

50 2 *tumulum*: governed by *propius*, which sometimes has the force of a preposition.

50 5 *nē . . . reicerent*: *dir. obj.* of *imperāvit*; the *indir. obj.* is *suīs*.

50 7 *committendum nōn putābat ut . . . dīcī posset*: 'he thought that no ground should be given for saying'; the subj. of *committendum* is the *ut* clause (§ 187. *I.*).

50 8 *per fidem*: 'under pretense of (through) good faith.'

50 10 *omnī Galliā*: *abl.* of separation with *interdixisset*. *Rōmānīs* is the *indir. obj.*

50 11 *interdixisset*: subjv. in an *indir. question* together with *fēcissent* and *dirēmisset*: 'when it was reported what insolence *Ariovistus* had displayed (lit.

'having employed what insolence'), how he had ordered the Romans out of all Gaul, how his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that fact had put an end to the interview.' The indir. questions are subj. of *clātum est*.

50 13 *pugnandi*: gerund; obj. gen. (§ 75. b).

50 15 CHAP. 47. *coeptae*: this verb is regularly pass. in form when used with a pass. inf.

50 16 *uti* . . . *cōstitueret*: following *velle*, the idea of asking being implied (§ 183); *mitteret* is in the same construction.

50 17 *suis*: refers to Cæsar, *sē* (l. 18) to Ariovistus.

50 18 *causa visa nōn est*: 'there did not seem to be a good reason.'

50 19 *et eō magis, quod*: 'and all the more on this account, that' etc.; cf. p. 12, l. 16 and note.—*retinēri* . . . *quān*: 'be kept from' (§ 185).

50 21 *missūrum* . . . *obiectūrum*: sc. *esse*.

50 23 *Commodissimum*: pred. adjective with *mittere* (p. 51, l. 2) as subj. (§ 216. a).

50 24 *virtūte et hūmānitāte*: not 'virtue and humanity'; it is rarely safe to transl. a Latin word by the English word derived from it. Transl., 'worth and culture.'

50 25 *civitāte*: abl. of means.

50 26 *quā multā* . . . *ūtēbātur*: 'which Ariovistus spoke freely' (§ 107. a).

51 1 *quod in eō*: 'because in his case.'

51 2 *peccandi* . . . *causa*: 'grounds for committing an offense.'

51 3 *ūtēbātur*: 'enjoyed.' Cf. *ūtēbātur* in l. 1. Observe how the verb *utor* demands different translations according to the context. In every instance, however, the idea of 'use' remains fundamental.

51 7 *Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit*: 'as they were trying to speak he shut them off.'

51 18 CHAP. 48. *supportārētur*: subjv. by attraction (§ 214). So also *vellet* (l. 16).

51 15 *instrūctam habuit*: 'kept his line drawn up'; cf. *compertum habeo*, p. 49, l. 14.

51 18 *castris*: the "place where" may be expressed without a preposition when the idea of means is prominent.

51 19 *hoc*: explained by the following description.

51 21 *singuli (equitēs) singulōs (peditēs)*: i.e. one apiece.

51 23 *sī quid erat dūrius*: 'if there was unusual trouble' (lit. 'if there was anything too hard'); see § 122.

51 25 *sī quō* . . . *prōdeundum*: 'if there was need of advancing to any place.'

51 26 *ut* . . . *adaequarent*: 'that by holding on to (lit. 'supported by') the horses' manes they kept up with them in speed.'—*iubis*: abl. of means.

52 3 CHAP. 49. *castris*: dative with an adjective (§ 90). By this move Cæsar has two camps, the first and larger one about two miles east of the Germans, and the second, a smaller one, rather more than half a mile to the south of them. See map, p. 56.

52 4 *aciē triplici*: see Introd. III. 12.

52 8 *expedita*: agreeing with *milia* in form, but with *hominum* in sense.

52 9 *terrērent*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

53 1 CHAP. 50. *Institūtō suō*: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

53 13 *sortibus*: 'lots,' of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance.—*vāticinātiōnibūs*: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly prophecies arising from inner emotions.—*utrum . . . necne*: see § 170. *b. 2*.

53 14 *eās*: i.e. *mātrēs familiae*.—*Nōn esse fās*: 'it was not fated.'

53 15 *novam lūnam*: a common superstition of many people.

53 18 CHAP. 51. *quod satis esse visum est*: sc. *id*, obj. of *reliquit* and antecedent of *quod*.—*ālārīōs*: the auxiliaries, as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, *ālārīi*, from *āla*, 'wing.'

53 19 *prō*: 'in front of.' Cf. this meaning with the one in l. 20.

53 20 *prō hostium numerō*: 'in comparison with the number of the enemy'

53 21 *ad speciem*: 'for a show,' i.e. as if the two legions (p. 52, l. 12) were still there.

53 22 *necessariō*: the Germans had to come out and fight because their camp was not fortified strongly enough to withstand Cæsar's assault.

53 24 *intervallis*: see § 112.

53 27 *Eō*: 'thereon,' i.e. on the carts and wagons.

53 28 *proficiscentēs*: '(the men) as they advanced' (§ 167); obj. of *implorābant*.

54 1 CHAP. 52. *singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs*: 'a *lēgātus* in command of each legion'; however, having at this time only five *lēgātī* he appointed his quartermaster (*quaestōrem*) over one of the six legions. Read the description of a battle in the Introd. III. 12, and look at the illustration on p. 31 and the one facing p. 86.

54 3 *eam partem*: of course, the left wing of the enemy.

54 6 *pila . . . coniciendī*: the gerund with dir. obj. (§ 223. note). The gerundive construction might have been used (§ 224. *b*).

54 9 *impetūs*: accusative plur., fourth declension.

54 10 *insilirent . . . revellerent . . . vulnerarent*: subjvs. in clauses of description. The meaning is that they leaped upon the roof formed by the shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (*dēsuper*).

54 11 *Cum*: 'although.'

54 16 *tertiam aciem*: this line had been kept as a reserve for just such emergencies.

54 18 CHAP. 53. *prius . . . quam . . . pervēnerunt*: see § 197. a.

54 22 *eā*: abl. of means. It refers to *nāviculam*, obj. of *nactus* (from *nāviscor*).

54 23 *reliquōs omnēs*: said to have been 80,000 in number.

54 24 *Duae . . . uxōrēs*: among the Germans only chiefs had more than one wife, and this was for the sake of honor and alliances. — *nātiōne*: see § 115.

54 25 *dūxerat*: 'had brought.' In the next line *dūxerat* means 'had married.'

55 1 *Procillus*: see p. 50, l. 23. — *trīnis*: used instead of *tribus*. *Catēnae* is usually found in the plur., and with such nouns distributive numeral adjectives are generally used instead of cardinals.

55 3 *Quae . . . rēs*: i.e. the rescue of Procillus. Cæsar's joy in the safety of his young friend offers a pleasing contrast to his usual sternness. For the rel. see § 143.

56 4 *neque . . . dēminuerat*: 'nor had fortune by his loss detracted aught from an occasion of such joy and congratulation.'

56 5 *ter*: it was the regular custom of the Germans to consult the lots three times.

56 6 *cōsultum (esse)*: imper.

56 11 CHAP. 54. *Rhēnum*: *prope*, *propior*, and *proximus* sometimes govern the accusative. Cf. p. 50, l. 2 and note.

56 13 *mātūrius*: 'earlier.' This was in September.

56 16 *conventūs*: the governor of a province not only commanded the army, but administered justice as well.

BOOK II

Cæsar by his first campaign (58 B.C.) had made himself master of central Gaul, and had made his conquest sure by establishing the winter quarters of his legions among the Sequani. During the winter, while he was in Cisalpine Gaul, the Belgian Gauls, fearing that they should be the next victims of Roman aggression, united in a conspiracy to resist any further advance of Roman arms. This was reported to Cæsar, who, with characteristic energy, set out for the country of the Belgæ as early in the spring (57 B.C.) as there was pasture enough to support his baggage animals.

The Belgian tribes, inhabiting what is now northeastern France, Belgium, and part of the Netherlands, were remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Romans. They lived amidst forests and swamps hard to penetrate, and had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence. In his campaign

against these tribes, especially the Nervii, Cæsar met the most formidable and desperate resistance yet encountered.

57 1 CHAP. 1. *Cum esset* etc.: for the subjv. see § 194. *b.*; *esset* is emphatic by its position. The clause is closely connected with the last sentence of the first book: *in citeriorem Galliam . . . profectus est. Cum esset Cæsar in citeriore Galliâ* etc. The effect may be brought out in translation by the use of a noun: 'during Cæsar's stay in Cisalpine Gaul.'

57 2 *dēmōstrāvimus . . . dixerāmus*: In referring to himself as the writer Cæsar, like many modern writers, regularly uses the plur.—*adferēbantur*: the past descr. shows repeated action; 'kept coming in.' The force of the tense is aided by *crēbrī*.

57 4 *quam*: agrees with *partem*, though its real antecedent is *Belgæ* (§ 38). It is the subj. of *esse*.

57 5 *inter sē*: 'to one another.'

quæ *esse causæ*: 'that the following were the reasons'; explained by the following clauses.—*quod verērentur . . . sollicitārentur*: subord. clauses in apposition with *causæ* (§ 208).—*nē . . . addūcerētur*: subst. clause, obj. of *verērentur* (§ 184).—*omni pācā Galliā*: 'after the subjugation of all Gaul'; abl. abs. *Galliā* refers to central (or Celtic) Gaul.

ab nūllis Gallis: abl. of agent (§ 104).

sic . . . ita: 'just as . . . so,' correlatives.—*Germanōs . . . versāri*:

in *exercitū* *inveterāscere*: these infis. with their subj. *exercitū* are used to give the idea of thought in *molestē ferēbant*, 'they took it hard.'

57 11 *propterea*: abl. of cause (§ 109).

57 12 *novis imperiis studēbant*: 'were eager for a change of government' (lit. 'new ruling powers'); for the dative see § 83.—*ab nōn nūllis . . . quod*: 'by some also (sc. *sollicitābantur*) they were incited because.'

57 13 *ad . . . facultātēs*: 'the means for hiring soldiers.'—*condūcendōs*: see § 225. *a.*

57 15 *rem*: i. e. royal power.—*imperiō nostrō*: 'under our dominion'; abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).—*cōsequī*: complementary inf. (§ 217. *c.*). In the passage above, beginning with *Coniūrandī*, note that the subord. verbs in indir. disc., that is, those that are a part of the report of Labienus, are in the subjv. mood (§ 208). Those, on the other hand, that are in the ind. (*nōluerant, ferēbant, studēbant, habēbant, occupābantur, poterant*) are not quoted from the report of Labienus, but state facts on Cæsar's authority (§ 208. *a.*).

57 16 CHAP. 2. *nūntiis*: abl. of cause.—*duās legiōnēs*: he had already six legions, numbered VII–XII, so that the addition of these two new ones, numbered XIII and XIV, made eight legions (about 30,000 men) for the Belgic campaign.

57 17 *initā aestāte*: abl. abs. expressing time when (§ 117. b).

57 18 *quī dēdūceret*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

58 1 *cum primum*: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry horses and baggage animals could subsist.

58 2 *Dat negōtium Senonibus*: 'he enjoins on the Senones' (lit. 'he gives business to the Senones').

58 3 *utī . . . cognōscant . . . faciant*: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *negōtium* (§ 183, third example). — *gerantur*: subjv. by attraction, depending on *cognōscant* (§ 214).

58 4 *sē*: an indir. reflex., referring to *Cæsar* (§ 133). — *cōstanter*: 'consistently,' i.e. without variation.

58 5 *manūs*: accusative plur.; 'small bands,' or 'companies.'

58 6 *dubitandum (esse)*: impers. inf. in indir. disc. after *exīstimāvit*; 'he thought that he ought not to hesitate.' — *quīn . . . proficiscerētur*: 'to set out' (§ 186); *quīn* can follow only a verb with a negative.

58 7 *diēbus*: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

58 9 CHAP. 3. *Eō*: adv. — *omnium opīniōne*: 'than any one expected' (lit. 'than the opinion of all'); *opīniōne* is used after the comparative without *quam* (§ 105).

58 10 *Rēmī*: these were friendly to the Romans. — *Galliæ*: dative (§ 90). — *ex Belgis*: 'of the Belgæ'; used instead of the part. gen.

58 11 *lēgātōs*: 'as ambassadors.' What other meaning does *lēgātus* have?

58 12 *quī dicerent*: see § 175. — *Nōs . . . in fidem . . . permittimus*: 'put ourselves under the protection (good faith)' etc.

58 15 *parātī*: a participle used as an adjective. Depending on it are the complementary infinitives *dare*, *facere*, *recipere*, and *iuvare* (§ 217. c).

58 16 *oppidīs*: properly an abl. of means, but to be translated as if it were abl. of place, 'in our towns.'

58 18 *cis Rhēnum*: i.e. the west (or Gallic) side.

58 19 *tantus . . . ut . . . potuerimus*: 'so great is the frenzy of them all that we have not been able to restrain even the Suessiones' etc.; a clause of result with the antecedent word *tantus* (§ 179. note).

58 22 *quīn . . . cōsentirent*: 'from leaguings with'; subjv. clause after a negatived word of hindering (§ 185). Note that the perfect subjv. (*potuerimus*) is followed by a secondary tense.

58 24 CHAP. 4. *quæ . . . quantæque . . . essent*: indir. question (§ 201).

58 25 *quid . . . possent*: 'what strength they had in war'; *quid* is an adverbial accusative (§§ 98 and 99).

58 26 *Plēriq̄ue*: 'the most of.' — *ā Germānis*: abl. of origin with a preposition (§ 102). — *Rhēnum*: depending on *trāns* in *trā(ns)ductī* (§ 95. note).

58 28 *sōliq̄ue*: 'and . . . the only ones.'

59 1 *quī . . . prohibuerint*: a clause of description (§ 177. a).—*memoriā*: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

59 3 *quā ex rē fit utī . . . sūmant*: 'from this fact it comes about that they assume' etc. The result clause *utī . . . sūmant* is the subj. of *fit* (§ 187. II).—*memoriā*: abl. of cause (§ 109).

59 5 *omnia habēmus explōrāta*: 'have found out and possess all (the facts) about' (*dē*) etc. The expression *habēmus explōrāta* differs only slightly from *explōrdvimus* (§ 156. b. note, and cf. *compertum habēō*, p. 49, l. 14).

59 6 *propinquitātibus*: 'ties of blood.'—*adfinitātibus*: 'alliances by marriage.'

59 9 *virtūte*: abl. of respect (§ 115).

59 10 *armāta milia centum*: equivalent to *armātōrum hominum milia centum*; grammatically, *armāta* agrees with *milia*. Likewise *ēlecta* in the next line agrees grammatically with *milia*, but is translated 'picked men.'

59 11 *sibi*: dative of reference (§ 85).

59 14 *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but.'

59 17 *summa*: 'the chief command.'—*voluntāte*: see § 111.

59 18 *numerō*: see § 115.

59 19 *ferī*: pred. adjective after *habentur*, which is a copulative verb (§§ 48. II. b, 94. note). Transl. 'who are regarded as particularly savage.'—*inter ipsōs*: 'among them,' i.e. the Belgæ.

59 23 *Condrūsōs* etc.: subjs. of *posse*, which depends on *arbitrāmur*.

59 24 *Germānī*: for the case cf. *ferī*, l. 19.

59 26 *CHAP. 5. cohortātus . . . prōsecūtus*: 'after he had encouraged . . . and addressed them' etc.

59 27 *liberōs obsidēs*: 'their children as hostages'; *obsidēs* is an appositive. If faith was broken, the hostages were punished; often they were sold into slavery.

59 28 *Quae omnia*: 'and all this' etc.; for a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

60 1 *quantō opere . . . intersit*: 'how greatly it concerned'; indir. question. The subj. of *intersit* is the inf. clause, *manūs . . . distīnērī*.—*rel pūblicae . . . salūtis*: gens. with *intersit* (§ 81. c).

60 2 *nē . . . cōfigendum sit*: gerundive in a neg. clause of purpose. The verb is impers.; transl. 'that it might not be necessary to contend' etc.

60 3 *Id fierī posse*: 'this (he said) could be done.'

60 4 *intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint*: in a fut. condition. In the dir. disc. these verbs would be in the fut. perf. ind.

60 6 *Postquam . . . posuit*: 'as soon as he was aware that all the forces of the Belgæ had been gathered into one place and were advancing against him, and had learned from the scouts whom he had sent forward, as well as

from the Remi, that they were not now far away, he hastily led his army across the river Aisne, which is on the outer boundaries of the Remi, and there pitched his camp.' For ind. with *postquam* see § 193. — *coāctīs*: equivalent to a clause (§ 220. c).

60 8 *flūmen*: depends on *trāns* in *trā(ns)dūcere* (§ 95); cf. *Rhēnum*, p. 58, l. 26, and note.

60 9 *exercitum*: obj. of the transitive verb *trādūcere*. — *trādūcere*: complementary inf. with *mātūrāvit*; 'hastened to lead.'

60 10 *castra*: this camp was about twelve miles northwest of Rheims. Traces of it were discovered in 1862. — *Quae rēs*: 'this movement,' i.e. his having crossed the river and pitched his camp where he did. For *Quae* see § 143. — *et latus . . . mūniēbat et post eum . . . reddēbat, et . . . efficiēbat*: the three *et*'s are translated 'both . . . and . . . and.'

60 11 *post eum quae erant tūta . . . reddēbat*: 'made safe the country in the rear of his position' ('what things were behind him'); *tūta* is a pred. adj.

60 15 *ut . . . possent*: a subst. clause of result, obj. of *efficiēbat* (§ 187.1). The subj. of *possent* is *commēdātūs*, l. 12.

60 14 *efficiēbat*: the subj. is still *Quae rēs*.

60 15 *in alterā parte*: 'on the other side,' i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, toward the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side toward the Suessiones. See campaign map, facing p. 57, and battle plan, p. 63.

60 16 *pedum duodecim*: gen. of measure with *altitudinem* (§ 77. b).

60 17 *duodēviginti pedum*: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width.

60 18 *CHAP. 6. nōmine*: abl. of respect (§ 115).

60 19 *mīlia passuum octō*: 'eight miles'; *mīlia* is accusative of extent (§ 96). — *passuum*: part. gen. — *ex itinere*: 'on the march,' i.e. turning aside 'from' their course to attack the town.

60 20 *Aegrē . . . sustentātum est*: 'it was with difficulty that they held out'; the verb is a pass. intransitive and hence impers. (§ 83. a). In English such verbs should be given a personal subject.

60 21 *Gallōrum . . . est haec*: 'the (mode of) attack, (which is) the same for the Gauls and the Belgæ, is as follows' (*haec*).

60 22 *circumiectā multitudīne*: abl. abs. — *moenibus*: dative (§ 84).

60 23 *iacī*: complementary inf. with *coeptī sunt*. When are the forms of *coeptī* pass.? Cf. p. 50, l. 15 and note. — *dēfēnsōribus*: abl. of separation.

60 24 *testūdīne factā*: 'having made a *testūdō*'; see Introd. III. 13.

60 25 *Quod*: 'this,' i.e. the actions just described. — *multitūdō*: a sing. collective noun may have a plur. verb, as often in English (§ 65. a).

60 26 *cōsistendī*: gen. of the gerund with *potestās* (§ 223. a).

60 27 *nūlli*: dative of possession (§ 88).

60 28 *summā nōbilitāte et grātiā*: '(a man) of the highest' etc. (§ 116).

61 1 *oppidō*: dative with *praeerat* (§ 84). — *ūnus ex eis*: 'one of those'; a construction used in place of the part. gen. (§ 76, exception).

61 2 *Nisi* . . . *posse*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in *nūntium mitti*. Transl. 'unless reinforcements (he said)' etc. — *sibi*: i.e. Iccius.

61 4 CHAP. 7. *Eō*: 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax. — *isdem ducibus ūsus*: 'employing the same men (as) guides'; for the abl. see § 107. a; *ducibus* is an appositive (§ 58).

61 5 *Numidās et Crētas*: these peoples (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. *Crētas* is a Greek form.

61 6 *Baleārēs*: the inhabitants of the Balearic Isles, east of Spain, were famous slingers. — *subsidiō oppidānis*: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

61 11 *hostibus*: 'from the enemy'; dative (§ 86).

61 12 *potiundi*: gerundive. Note the less regular spelling *potiundī* instead of *potiendī*.

61 15 *morāti* . . . *dēpopulāti* . . . *viciis* . . . *incēnsis*: the first two past participles are in the nominative case agreeing with the subj., because, being from deponent verbs, they are active in meaning; *incēnsī*, however, could not be used in a similar way, because, coming from a regular verb, it is pass. and means 'having been burned.' To employ this pass. meaning the abl. abs. had to be used.

61 18 *quō*: adv.; 'to which.'

61 20 *omnibus cōpilis*: for the omission of *cum* see § 113. note. — *ā milibus passuum minus duōbus*: 'less than two miles off'; *ā* is used adverbially; *milibus* is abl. of measure of difference (§ 114). *Minus* does not affect the construction (§ 105. note 2). In the next line *milibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*. Thus we have here both of the allowable constructions.

61 24 CHAP. 8. *primō*: 'at first.'

61 25 *eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis*: 'their high reputation for valor'; *virtūtis* is an obj. gen. (see note on p. xlvī, l. 1). — *proeliō*: abl. (§ 101).

61 26 *quid* . . . *posset* . . . *quid* . . . *audērent*: indir. questions; lit. 'what they were able, what they dared.' The thought may be rendered 'the prowess of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers.' — *virtūte*: see § 115.

62 1 *locō* . . . *opportūnō* . . . *idōneō*: abl. abs. (§ 117. c).

62 4 *tantum*: correlative with *quantum* 'as much . . . as.' The rel. adjective *quantus* is used as a subst. in the same way as the rel. pronoun *quī*. In this sentence the antecedent *tantum* is accusative of extent; the rel. *quantum* is the dir. obj. of *occupāre*. — *adversus*: 'in front.' — *loci*: part. gen. with *quantum*, but more conveniently translated with *tantum*, 'over as much ground.'

62 5 *ex utrāque parte*: 'on each side.'

62 6 *dēiectūs*: accusative plur. modified by *lateris*; 'lateral slopes' (lit. 'slopes of the side').—*in fronte* etc.: 'falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain.' See battle plan, p. 63.

62 7 *trānsversam fossam*: 'an intrenchment at right angles,' i.e. to the slope of the hill.

62 8 *passuum quadringentōrum*: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).

62 9 *extrēmās*: 'the ends of' (§ 125).—*tormenta*: see *Intro.* III. 4, with the accompanying illustrations and those on pp. 104 and 120.

62 10 *quod . . . poterant*: a parenthetical clause of explanation and hence not attracted to the subjv. Transl. 'because they were so strong in numbers.'

62 14 *esset*: 'if they were needed anywhere'; a fut. more probable condition (§ 199. II. a) attracted into the subjv. by the influence of *ut . . . possent* (§ 214).

62 16 *cōpiās . . . ēductās instrūxērunt*: transl. 'led out and drew up.'

62 17 *CHAP. 9. Palūs erat*: 'there was a swamp'; i.e. in the low valley of the Mienne brook. See battle plan, p. 63.

62 18 *Hanc (paludem) sī nostrī trānsīrent*: '(to see) whether our men would cross this' (§ 201). Note the difference in translation between *sī*, 'if,' introducing a condition, and *sī*, 'whether,' introducing an indir. question.

62 19 *ut . . . adgrederentur*: a purpose clause depending upon *parātī* etc.

62 21 *contendebātur*: impers. Transl. 'a cavalry engagement was going on.'

62 22 *nostrīs*: dative (§ 90).

62 27 *eō cōsiliō*: 'with this intent.'—*ut . . . expugnārent . . . interscinderent . . . populārentur . . . prohibērent*: subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with *eō cōsiliō* (§ 183, third example).—*sī possent . . . sī . . . potuissent*: represent respectively the fut. and fut. perf. ind. of the dir. form. For the change to the subjv. see § 208. b.

63 2 *ad bellum gerendum*: is this gerund or gerundive? why? See § 223. c and note, and § 224. b.

63 5 *CHAP. 10. levis armātūrae*: see § 77, and the ill., p. 65.

63 6 *trādūcit*: with two accusatives (§ 95).

63 9 *cōnantēs*: with *reliquōs*.

63 10 *equitātū*: considered as means, and therefore no preposition.—*circumventōs interfecerunt*: 'surrounded and killed' (§ 220. c).

63 13 *spem . . . fefellisse*: 'that their expectations had failed' (lit. 'that hope had cheated them').

63 14 *pugnandī causā*: a gerund construction expressing purpose (§ 225. b).

64 1 *ipsōs*: i.e. the Belgæ.

64 2 *cōstituērunt* etc.: 'they decided that it was best for each one to return to his own home, and that they should assemble from all sides to

defend those into whose territory the Romans should first lead their army.' The two objects of *constituērunt* are (1) the inf. clause *optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti* (of which *reverti* is the subj. and *optimum esse* the pred.), and (2) the subst. purpose clause (*ut*) . . . *convenirent*. The omission of *ut* is a reversion to an earlier form of expression. For the case of *domum* see § 97.

64 4 *intrōdūxissent*: past perf. subjv., attracted from the fut. perf. ind. by being made part of the purpose clause (*ut*) . . . *convenirent* (§ 214).

64 10 *quod* . . . *cognōverant*: ind. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority (§ 188. a). The clause is in apposition with *haec ratio*.

64 13 *His persuādēri* . . . *nōn poterat*: 'these could not be persuaded' (lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these'). Verbs that take the dative in the active are impers. in the pass., the dative being retained (§ 83. a).—*ut* . . . *morārentur neque* . . . *ferrent*: subst. clauses of purpose, grammatical subjs. of *poterat* (§ 183). Cæsar has manifestly succeeded in his plan of separating the forces of the Belgæ.

64 16 CHAP. 11. *secundā vigiliā*: approximately from 9 to 12 P.M.

64 17 *strepitū* . . . *tumultū*: abls. of manner (§ 110).

64 19 *ōrdine* . . . *imperio*: abls. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

64 20 *cum* . . . *peteret* . . . *properāret*: descriptive temporal clauses expressing cause (§ 195).

64 22 *ut* . . . *vidērētur*: subst. clause of result, obj. of *fēcērunt* (§ 187. I, first example); 'they made their departure seem like a rout.'

64 23 *per*: see § 104. note.—*speculātōrēs*: 'spies.' They obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the 'scouts,' *explōrātōrēs*, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

64 24 *veritus*: 'fearing.'—*discēderent*: indir. question (§ 201).

64 25 *castris*: 'in camp'; lit. 'by camp,' the Romans regarding the relation as means rather than as place (§ 106).

64 26 *ab explōrātōribus*: abl. of agent (§ 104). Compare this construction with *per speculātōrēs*, l. 23, where Cæsar gave the *speculātōrēs* directions, and used them as a "means to an end," hence the preposition *per* (§ 104. note); here the *explōrātōrēs* are "voluntary agents," hence *ab* with the abl.—*qui* . . . *morārētur*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

64 27 *His*: dative with *præfēcit* (§ 84).

65 1 *multa milia*: see § 96.

65 2 *cum*: cf. note on p. 64, l. 20.

65 3 *ab extrēmō agmine*: 'in the rear.'—*quōs*: the antecedent is *ei* understood, subj. of *cōsistērent* and *sustinērent*.

65 4 *priōrēs*: sc. *ei*, 'and those that were in the van.'—*quod* . . . *vidērentur* . . . *continērentur*: the verbs are in the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

65 8 *sibi*: dative of reference (§ 85).

65 10 *tantum . . . quantum fuit diēi spatium*: 'killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed' (lit. 'as great a number as the space of the day was'). Cf. p. 62, l. 4 and note.

65 15 CHAP. 12. *priusquam . . . reciperent*: 'before the enemy should recover themselves' (§ 197. b).

65 17 in *finē Suessionum . . . dūxit*: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other. "Divide and conquer" was a famous Roman proverb.

65 19 *magnō itinere*: see Introd. III. 11, and the ill., p. 45.

65 20 *ex itinere*: i.e. as soon as he arrived, without waiting to construct the usual works preliminary to storming.

65 22 *esse*: supply *id (oppidum)* for subject.

65 23 *paucis defendentibus*: abl. abs. denoting concession (§ 117. d); 'though there were few defenders.'—*expugnāre*: 'to take' (by storm); cf. *oppugnāre* (l. 20), 'to attack.'

65 24 *vineās*: see Introd. III. 13.—*quaeque*: the antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *comparāre*.

65 27 *aggere . . . turribus*: see Introd. III. 13.

66 1 *magnitudine . . . celeritate*: abls. of cause (§ 109), modifiers of *permōti*.

66 4 *ut cōservārentur*: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of *petentibus* (§ 183).

66 5 CHAP. 13. *obsidibus*: in apposition with *primis* and *filii*.

66 8 *Qui cum*: 'and when they'; cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.

66 10 *maiores nātū*: 'the older men' (lit. 'greater in respect to birth'); *nātū* is abl. of respect (§ 115).

66 11 *vōce significāre*: 'show by the tones of their voices'; of course they could not speak Latin.

66 12 in *eius fidem ac potestatem venire*: 'placed themselves under his protection and submitted to his commands' (lit. 'came into his faith and power').

66 18 *cum . . . accessisset . . . pōneret*: 'when he had approached and was pitching his camp.' Mark the difference in tenses; the clauses denote time and circumstance (§ 194. b).

66 15 *passis manibus*: 'with hands outstretched' (in supplication); *passis* is from *pandō*.—*suō mōre*: 'according to their custom' (§ 111).

66 22 CHAP. 14. *Qui*: '(those) who,' subj. of *fuerant*; *principēs*, pred. noun.

66 23 *quantam . . . intulissent*: indir. question.

66 25 *ut . . . ūtāris*: a subst. clause, obj. of *petunt* (§ 183).

66 26 *Quod*: a connecting rel., referring to the idea in the preceding sentence; cf. *Qui*, l. 8.

66 28 *qua*: indef. pronoun with *bella*. For the form see § 28, footnote 1.

67 1 CHAP. 15. *honōris Diviciāci . . . causā*: 'out of respect for Diviciacus' (lit. 'for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus').

67 2 *receptūrum*: sc. *esse*. The omission of *esse* is very common.

67 3 *auctōritāte*: abl. of description (§ 116).

67 4 *multitūdine*: abl. of respect (§ 115).

67 10 *mercātoribus*: dative (§ 88).—*vīni*: part. gen. with *nihil*.

67 13 *virtūtis*: see § 77.

67 14 *quī . . . dēdiderint . . . prōiēcerint*: 'for having surrendered' etc.; a descriptive causal clause giving the reason for *inreptant* and *incūsant* (§ 190).

67 17 CHAP. 16. *eōrum*: i.e. of the Nervii.—*triduum*: '(marched) for three days'; accusative of duration of time (§ 96).

67 18 *nōn amplius millia*: *mīlia* is accusative of extent of space and is not affected by *amplius*; cf. p. 61, l. 20, and see § 105. note 2.

67 22 *utī . . . experirentur*: a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

67 24 *quique*: equals *quī plus que*, 'and those who.' The antecedent of *quī* is *eōs* understood, the obj. of *coniēcisse*.

67 25 *quō*: rel. adv., equivalent to *in quem* referring to *locum*.

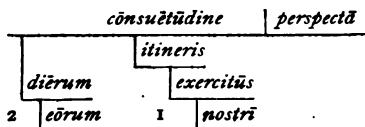
67 26 *esset*: this would be in the subjv. also in the dir. disc., being a descriptive rel. clause (§ 177).

68 2 CHAP. 17. *quī . . . dēligant*: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175). Cf. p. 57, l. 18.

68 3 *ūnā*: an adv. 'along (with him).'

68 4 *quīdam ex hīs*: for abl. with *ex* instead of part. gen. see § 76, exception.

68 5 *eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine . . . perspectā*: the following diagram shows the relation of the words:



Cōsuētūdine is modified by group 1 and the whole phrase is modified by group 2; lit. 'the custom of the march of our army of those days having been observed,' freely 'after they had observed the usual order of march of our army during those days.'

68 6 *inter singulās legiōnēs*: 'between the several legions.' For the usual order of the line of march see Introd. III. 11.

68 8 *negōtī*: part. gen. depending on *quicquam*. Cf. p. 67, l. 10.—*cum . . . vēnisset . . . abessent*: subjvs. in indir. disc., representing the fut. perf. and fut. ind. respectively of the dir.

68 10 *hanc . . . quā*: both refer to *prima legiō*. — *sarcinis*: see Introd. III. 9. d, and the illustrations, pp. 45 and 69.

68 11 *ut . . . nōn audērent*: subst. clause of result, subj. of *futūrum (esse)* (§ 187. II); lit. 'it would come to pass that they would not dare.'

68 12 *Adiuvābat*: the subj. is the subst. clause of fact *quod Nervii . . . effecerant* (§ 182, first example), and the obj. is *cōsilium*.

68 13 *Nervii* etc.: this sentence is a good example of the Latin "periodic structure," in which, by holding the leading verb in abeyance, the thought is kept in suspense until the period is completed. *Nervii*, the subject in the nominative case, indicates that those people are the *doers* of an act that remains unexpressed until the reader has been informed of the circumstances attending the act. Holding the subj. *Nervii* in mind, he finds first *when* the act was performed (*antiquitus*); then *why* it was done (*cum . . . possent*); next *for what purpose* (*quō facilius . . . impedirent*); then *by what means* (*teneris arboribus . . . interiectis*); lastly, all is locked together into a completed whole by the *act itself* (*effecerant ut . . . praebērent*). — *nihil possent*: 'had no strength'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§ 99).

68 14 *quicquid possunt* etc.: cf. *nihil* (l. 13), and transl. 'all the strength they have is in infantry.'

68 15 *quō facilius . . . impedirent*: a clause of purpose with a comparative (§ 176).

68 16 *vēnissent*: attracted into the subjv. from the fut. perf. ind. because of its position in the purpose clause (§ 214).

68 17 *in lātitudinem*: i.e., when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang out on all sides and made a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. Traces of such hedges still exist.

68 18 *ut . . . praebērent*: an obj. clause of result depending on *effecerant* (§ 187. I). — *instar*: an indeclinable noun, regularly followed by the genitive. Transl. 'like a wall' (lit. 'the image of a wall').

68 19 *quō*: 'into which'; a rel. adv. followed by *posset* in a clause of description (§ 177). Cf. *quō*, p. 67, l. 25.

68 20 *cum*: 'since' (§ 189).

68 21 *omittendum (esse)*: a pass. periphrastic denoting obligation, followed by *sibi*, a dative of agent (§ 87).

68 24 CHAP. 18. *aequāliter dēclivis*: 'with even downward slope.'

68 26 *pari acclivitate*: see § 116. The description proceeds from the high ground northwest of the Sambre *downward (dēclivis)* to the stream; then across the river up the *ascent (acclivitate)* on the other side. — *adversus huic et contrārius*: 'opposite this and facing it.' See map, p. 71.

69 1 *passūs . . . apertus*: 'open at the base for about two hundred paces'; for *passūs* see § 96. — *infimus*: see § 125. — *ab superiōre parte*: 'along the upper portion.'

69 2 *silvestris*: an adjective modifying *collis*.—*ut nōn . . . posset*: a neg. clause of result. What would *nē posset* express?

69 3 in *apertō locō*: the open space of two hundred paces mentioned above.

69 4 *secundum*: a preposition governing *flūmen*.

69 5 *pedum . . . trium*: see § 77. *b*.

69 6 CHAP. 19. *cōpiis*: see § 113. note.

69 7 *aliter . . . dētulerant*: 'was different from what the Belgæ had reported' (lit. 'held itself otherwise than' etc.).

70 1 *cōnsuētūdine suā*: 'according to his custom' (§ 111).—*legiōnēs expeditās*: see Introd. III. 11.

70 2 *conlocārat*: contracted from *conlocāverat*.

70 3 *proximē cōscriptae*: 'most recently levied.' These were legions XIII and XIV (see p. 57, l. 16 and note), which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.

70 7 *reciperent . . . facerent*: 'kept retiring' etc.; the continuous action, indicated by the past tense, is emphasized by *identidem*.

70 8 *neque . . . audērent*: 'and our men dared not follow them further than to the line to which the open space extended.'—*quem ad finem*: translated as if it were *ad finem ad quem*.

70 9 *cēdentēs*: agrees with *cōs*, the obj. understood of *insequi*. The omission of the pronoun in cases like this is the rule.

70 10 *opere dimēnsō*: see Introd. III. 10, and the ill., p. 52.

70 13 *quod tempus . . . convēnerat*: 'the time that had been agreed upon' (lit. 'which time had' etc.). *Tempus* is in apposition with the clause *ubi . . . vīsa sunt*. An antecedent in apposition with something preceding is always placed in the rel. clause.

70 15 *atque (ita ut) ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant*: 'and just as they had determined to do.'

70 20 *adversō colle*: 'straight up the opposite hill'; abl. of the way by which (§ 120. note 1).

70 22 CHAP. 20. *Caesari*: see § 87.—*vēxillum*: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to show that a battle was impending; see Introd. III. 7.

70 23 *prōpōnendum*: sc. *erat*; so with the several periphrastics that follow, the proper form of *sum* must be supplied.

70 24 *tubā*: the signal to take their places in the ranks; see Introd. III. 8.—*ab opere*: i.e. the work of fortification.

70 25 *quī*: the antecedent (*eī*) is the subj. understood of *arcessendī* (*erant*).—*aggeris*: 'material for a mound.'

70 26 *signum dandum*: the last signal for immediate action (§ 224. *a*).

72 1 *difficultātibus . . . subsidiō*: see § 89, and cf. p. 61, ll. 6 and 7.—*scientia . . . ūsus*: 'theoretical knowledge and experience.' The words are

in part. apposition with *duae rēs*, and name only the first of the two helpful circumstances; the second is stated in the clause *quod . . . vetuerat* below.

72 2 *quid . . . oportēret*: indir. question, obj. of *praescribere*.

72 4 *quod . . . vetuerat*: 'the fact that he had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.'

72 7 *nihil iam*: 'no longer'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§ 99).—*per sē*: 'on their own responsibility.'—*quae vidēbantur*: 'what seemed best.' The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *administrābant*.

The battle with the Nervii, one of the most critical episodes in Cæsar's career, is referred to by Longfellow, in "The Courtship of Miles Standish," in the following lines:

Now, do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.

72 10 CHAP. 21. *quam in partem*: equivalent to *in eam partem in quam* (§ 140).

72 11 *decimam*: this was Cæsar's favorite legion; cf. p. 45, ll. 1 ff.

72 12 *utī . . . retinērent . . . perturbārentur . . . sustinērent*: obj. clauses of purpose, expressing indirectly the commands given in his address (*orātiōne cohortātus*).

72 14 *quam quō*: introducing a rel. clause of description; transl. 'than the distance to which' (lit. 'than whither').

72 16 *pugnantibus*: sc. *suīs* or *militibus*, dative with *occurrit* (§ 84).

72 18 *ut . . . tempus defuerit*: a clause of result. Observe that in such clauses there is usually some antecedent word meaning 'so,' 'such,' 'so great,' 'to such a degree,' etc., on which the result clause depends; the words here are *tanta* and *tam* (§ 179. note).—*ad insignia accommodanda*: see § 225. a; 'for fitting on the decorations' (of the helmets etc.). See Intro. III. g. b., and the ill., p. 74.

72 19 *scūtis*: dative (§ 86). See Intro. III. g. b.

72 20 *Quam . . . constitit*: 'into whatever place chance took him, and whatever standards he saw first, there each took his stand.' So well were the soldiers drilled that each could fight well even among troops not his own.

72 23 CHAP. 22. *magis ut . . . quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulābat*: 'rather as . . . demanded than as the theory and practice of warfare did.'

72 25 cum . . . resisterent . . . impedirētur: see § 189.—*aliae aliā in parte*: see note on p. 42, l. 21.

73 8 neque quid . . . prōvidēri (poterat): 'neither could the necessities (lit. 'what was necessary') in each part be foreseen.'—quid . . . esset: see § 201.

73 6 ēventūs varii: subj. of *sequēbantur*; modified by *fortūnae*.

73 7 CHAP. 23. In this chapter three sets of encounters, occurring at practically the same time, are described in order, (1) that of the Atrebatēs with the ninth and tenth legions, (2) that of the Viromandui with the eighth and eleventh, and (3) that of the Nervii with the seventh and twelfth. Study carefully the lower battle plan, p. 71.—ut . . . cōstitierant: 'from their position' etc. (lit. 'as they had taken their position').

73 8 aciō: a genitive form.—pīlis ēmissis: see Introd. III. 9 and 12.

73 9 his: i.e. the Atrebatēs; dative with *obvenerat* (§ 84).

73 11 cōnantēs: sc. *eds* (§ 167), obj. of *insecūtī*; 'while they were trying to cross.'

73 12 Ipsī: 'they themselves.'

73 13 prōgressi: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill from which the enemy had rushed to the attack.

73 18 nūdātis: 'being exposed.' The only legions left near the camp were the seventh and twelfth on the right wing.—cum . . . cōstitisset: see § 189.

74 1 intervāllō: abl. (§ 114).

74 2 duce Boduōgnātō: abl. abs.; 'under the leadership of Boduognatus.'

74 4 apertō latere: 'on the exposed flank'; i.e. on the right, not protected by shields.

74 6 CHAP. 24. *levisque armātūrae*: gen. (§ 77). See Introd. III. 3.

74 7 ūnā: adv.

74 8 pulsōs: sc. *esse*; subj. *quos*.—*dixeram*: 'have said,' p. 70, l. 17. When this is read, the writing is past; hence the past perf. for an earlier page.

74 10 decumānā portā: see Introd. III. 10 and the ill., p. xxxv.

74 13 praecipitēs: adjective agreeing with *cālōnēs*, but with the force of an adv., 'pell-mell,' 'in utter confusion' (§ 126). Concerning *cālōnēs* see Introd. III. 5.

74 14 qui etc.: this refers to the baggage train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as rear guard; see p. 70, ll. 1-4.—*clāmor*: the shouts of the men; *fremitus*, the confused noise of the train.

74 15 oriēbātur: sing. because of the single idea conveyed by *clāmor fremitusque* (§ 68).

74 16 quōrum . . . virtūtis opiniō: 'whose reputation for valor' (lit. 'opinion of valor'; obj. gen., § 75. b).

75 1 complēri . . . premī . . . tenēri . . . fugere: indir. disc. after *vidissent*. These present tenses represent what they saw going on.

75 4 *pulsōs superatōsque . . . potitōs*: sc. *esse*.

75 7 CHAP. 25. *Caesar*: subj. of *processit* (l. 27). This is another instance of the periodic sentence; see note on p. 68, l. 13. In translating such long sentences it is desirable to make several short ones, each complete in itself. This example illustrates well how much more freely the absolute construction is used in Latin than in English. As a rule, it is well to avoid transferring it literally into English, as, 'the standard bearer having been killed' etc. However, a sparing use is permissible.

75 9 *ubi*: construe with *vidit* (§ 193).—*signis*: see the illustrations, pp. 73 and 75.

75 11 *sibi . . . impedimentō*: 'hindered one another in fighting' (§ 89).

75 17 *primipilō*: in partial apposition with *centuriōnibus*. For the office see Introd. III. 6. *a*. *Baculus* was one of *Cæsar's* best centurions.

75 22 *ab novissimis*: 'in the rear.'—*dēsertō locō*: 'deserting their post.'

75 25 *in angustō*: 'in a difficult situation,' or 'at a crisis.'—*vidit*: repeated from l. 12, on account of the length of the sentence.

75 26 *posset*: see § 177. The rear guard had not yet arrived.—*scūtō . . . militi dētrāctō*: 'snatching a shield from a soldier.' For the dative *militi* cf. *hostibus*, p. 61, l. 11, and see § 86. For a description of the *scūtum* see Introd. III. 9. *b*.

75 29 *possent*: a purpose clause introduced by *quō* with a comparative (§ 176).

76 2 *etiam . . . rēbus*: 'even in his own extreme peril.'

76 5 CHAP. 26. *cōstitērat*: from *cōsistō*; 'had taken its position.'

76 6 *monuit*: with two accusatives, *tribūnōs* and the subst. clause *ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent* (§§ 93, 183), which represents one accusative.

76 7 *conversa* etc.: 'should face about and charge the enemy (in opposite directions)' (lit. 'bear turned standards against').

76 8 *alius alii* etc.: 'one was helping another'; see § 144. *d*. 1.

76 11 *legiōnum duārum*: i.e. XIII and XIV. See battle plan.

76 13 *colle*: i.e. the site of the Roman camp.

76 14 *Labiēnus*: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the *Atrebatēs*; see the first lines of chapter 23 and the battle plan.

76 16 *Qui*: i.e. the soldiers of legion X. How should *Qui cum* be translated?

76 17 *quō . . . esset quantōque . . . versārētur*: indir. questions after *cognōvisent*; 'in what condition matters stood' etc.

76 19 *nihil . . . fēcērunt*: 'left nothing undone in the way of speed' (lit. 'made nothing of remainder'); *reliqui* is a part. gen. (§ 76. *a*).

76 21 CHAP. 27. *qui*: the antecedent is *cū* understood, in partial apposition with *nostrī*.—*prōcubissent*: see § 177.

76 22 redintegrarent: result, depending on *tantā* (§ 179. note), as are also *occurrerent* (l. 23) and *praesferrent* (l. 25).

77 2 ut . . . insisterent . . . pugnarent . . . conicerent . . . remitterent: result clauses dependent on the antecedent word *tantam*. Cf. p. 76, l. 20. — *iacentibus insisterent*: 'stood on the fallen.'

77 3 his: refers to *proximī*; transl. 'these too.'

77 4 quī: the antecedent is *cū* understood, subj. of *conicerent* and *remitterent*. — *ut ex tumulō*: 'as if from a mound.'

77 5 pīla . . . remitterent: i.e. they picked up and hurled back the Roman javelins.

77 6 ut . . . dēberet: 'so that we may consider that not without good hope of success did men' etc. (lit. 'so that it ought to be judged that not in vain did men' etc.). The subj. of *dēberet* is the inf. clause *hominēs . . . ausōs esse* (§ 216. b). The *ut* clause expresses the result of the entire preceding description.

77 8 quae: the antecedents are the infs. *trānsire*, *ascendere*, and *subire*; transl. *quae* 'deeds which.' *Facilia* is pred. adjective. — The battle with the Nervii was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Only the steadiness of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence at the critical moment saved the day.

77 12 CHAP. 28. dixerāmus: see p. 67, ll. 24–26. Cf. note to p. 74, l. 8.

77 13 cum . . . arbitrarentur: a causal clause (§ 189). — *impeditum (esse)* etc.: 'there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing impassable to') the conquerors.'

77 14 victis: dative (§ 85).

77 18 quī . . . possent: this is a descriptive clause and would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.

77 21 finitimis: dative (§ 83). — *ut . . . prohiberent:* a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of *imperavit* (§ 183).

77 23 CHAP. 29. suprā: in p. 67, l. 23, the Aduatuci were said to be on the way to reinforce the Nervii. — *diximus:* tense as in English; contrast *dixerāmus*, l. 12. — *cum . . . venirent:* 'while they were on their way.'

77 27 Quod: transl. as a demonstrative pronoun, and cf. note on p. 32, l. 8. — *cum . . . haberet:* a concessive clause (§ 192).

78 2 pedum: gen. (§ 77. b). For the case used after *amplius* see § 105. note 2.

78 4 conlocābant: the past descr. tense often denotes an action in progress (§ 154. a).

78 6 impedimentis: refers to cattle as well as to portable baggage.

78 8 custodiam: 'a guard' for booty etc. — *praesidium:* 'a garrison' to hold the place.

78 9 *ūnā*: adv.; 'with it.'—*HI*: i.e. the six thousand.—*eōrum*: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.—*obitum*: 'destruction.' The Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ.

78 10 *cum aliās . . . aliās . . . dēfenderent*: 'while sometimes they were waging war (aggressively) and sometimes were defending themselves when attacked' (lit. 'were warding off war brought against them').

78 14 CHAP. 30. *parvulisque proeliis*: 'skirmishes' (lit. 'small battles').

78 16 *oppidō*: abl. of means, hence the omission of *in*; but transl. 'in the town.'

78 17 *vineis . . . aggere . . . turrim*: see *Intro.* III. 13.

78 18 *inridēre . . . increpitāre*: historical infinitives (§ 218).—*quod . . . instituerētur*: subjv. in a causal clause stating a reason on another's authority; 'because (as they said)' etc.; see § 188. *b*.

78 19 *Quibusnam . . . cōfidunt*: *-nam* thus used with an interrogative word denotes extreme inquisitiveness. The early writers agree that the Gauls and Germans were tall and large as compared with the Romans. The Aduatuci, unused to Roman methods of warfare, supposed that their assailants, who in their eyes seemed puny, intended to *lift* on their wall the tower that they were building; hence their jeering question: "Pray, by what strength of hand do you—especially being such puny little fellows—expect to set a tower of such weight on our wall?"

79 1 CHAP. 31. *quī . . . possitis*: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

79 8 *trādītis armīs*: abl. abs. (§ 117. *a*).—*sī . . . dēdūcāmur*: a future less probable condition (§ 199. II. *b*).

79 9 *quāvis*: from the pronoun *quīvis*.

80 1 CHAP. 32. *cōsuētūdine . . . meritō*: see § 111.

80 3 *ariēs*: see *Intro.* III. 13. *b* and accompanying illustrations.

80 4 *nisi armīs trādītis*: 'except on the condition of the surrender of your arms' (lit. 'except your arms having been surrendered').—*in*: 'in the case of.'

80 5 *nē . . . inferant*: a subst. clause, obj. of *imperābō*. The indir. obj. is *finitimis* (§ 83).—*quam*: an indef. adjective pronoun modifying *iniūriam*.

80 7 *facere*: sc. *sē* as subj. We should expect *factūrs (esse)*.

80 8 *ut prope . . . adaequarent*: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep chasm between the wall and the end of the *agger* almost to the top. The clause is one of result.

80 12 *eō diē pāce sunt ūsi*: 'for that day they enjoyed peace.' For the case of *pāce* see § 107. *a*.

80 14 CHAP. 33. *quam*: cf. I. 5.

80 15 *ante initō . . . cōsiliō*: abl. (§ 111); *ante* is an adv. modifying *inīlā*.

80 20 *quā*: 'where.'

80 23 *ignibus*: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watchtower.

80 24 *concursum est, pugnatum . . . est*: *impers. use of the pass.*

80 25 *ita acriter . . . ut*: correlatives; 'as bravely as.'

80 26 *qui . . . iacerent*: see § 177.

80 27 *pugnāri debuit*: *impers.*; transl. as if *virīs* (L 25) were the subj., 'as brave men ought to fight.' — *in unā virtūte*: 'in valor alone.'

81 1 *ad*: adv.; 'about.'

81 3 *sectionem . . . universam*: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions were sold as slaves.

81 5 *millium*: pred. gen. after *esse* understood (§ 77. a; see also § 116. a. 1).

82 CHAP. 35. The student is urged to try to read the Latin manuscript of this chapter as it appears on page 81.

82 3 *incolerent*: subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

82 4 *qui . . . pollicerentur*: a rel. clause of purpose. — *datūras*: takes the f. gender from *nātiōnibus*.

82 5 *in Italiam Illyricumque*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, which formed part of Cæsar's province. He went there, however, only during the winter.

82 6 *in Carnutēs*: to be taken with *dēductis*, l. 9.

82 10 *supplicatīō*: 'a public thanksgiving.' Ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. — *quod*: the antecedent is the whole idea in the preceding clause.

BOOK III

The events recorded in Book III belong chiefly to the campaign of the year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, described in the opening chapters, occurred in the latter part of 57 B.C., beginning upon Cæsar's return to Italy after the subjugation of the Belgæ.

83 1 CHAP. 1. *Cum in Italiam proficisceretur*: connected in thought with *in Italiam profectus est*, p. 82, l. 9. — *Galbam*: this officer later became one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general.

83 6 *portōriis*: these Alpine tribes subsisted largely by mining, grazing, and the levying of tolls on the goods of travelers.

83 8 *arbitrāretur*: subjv. of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b). — *utī . . . conlocāret*: a subst. clause, obj. of *permisit*.

83 10 *secundis aliquot proeliis factis* etc.: expand this series of abls. abs. into clauses; cf. § 117, second paragraph.

83 16 *hic*: refers to *vīcus*.

83 18 *vacuum*: pred. adjective after *relictam*. — *ab his*: 'by these,' i.e. the Gauls.

84 6 CHAP. 2. *ut . . . caperent*: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with *id*, 'it.'

84 8 *neque eam plēnissimam*: 'and that not entirely full.' This legion (the twelfth) had suffered severe losses in the battle with the Nervii (Book II, chap. 25), and was below normal strength before these detachments were sent off.

84 11 *cum ipsī . . . dēcurrerent*: 'when they should charge down from the hills into the valley.'

85 1 *Accēdēbat quod*: 'and besides' (lit. 'it was added that'). The subj. of *accēdēbat* is the clause *quod . . . dolēbant* (§ 182). A subst. clause with *ut* and the subjv. might have been used (§ 187. II).

85 2 *abstrāctōs*: sc. *esse*.

85 3 *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere*: indir. disc. after *sibi persuāsum habēbant*, 'they were convinced' (lit. 'they had it persuaded to themselves'). With *persuāsum habēbant* cf. *coāctum habēbat*, p. 22, l. 3; *compertum habēō*, p. 49, l. 14; *habēmus explorāta*, p. 59, l. 5; and notes.

85 7 CHAP. 3. *perfectae*: agrees with the nearer subj., *mūnitiōnēs*, but belongs to *opus* as well.

85 8 *esset prōvisum*: impers., 'arrangements had been made.'

85 9 *timendum (esse)*: a pass. periphrastic (§§ 38. II, 224. a). Transl. 'that there need be no fear of war.'

85 14 *venīrī*: depends on *posset*, understood from *possent*, l. 15. *Posset* is used impersonally, lit. 'neither could it be come for aid'; freely, 'and since no one could come to help them.'

85 15 *nōn nullae . . . sententiae*: 'several opinions' (or 'votes'), given by the officers in council.

85 16 *ut . . . contenderent*: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *eius modī*.

85 18 *Maīōrī . . . placuit*: 'the majority decided' (lit. 'it pleased the majority'). — *tamen*: 'nevertheless'; i.e. in spite of other *sententiae*.

85 20 CHAP. 4. *ut . . . darētur*: a result clause.

85 22 *dēcurrere, conicere, prōpugnāre, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superārī*: historical infinitives (§ 218); as usual, describing the situation.

85 23 *gaesaque*: Gallic javelins of unknown form.

85 26 *eō*: adv.

85 27 *quod . . . excēdēbant . . . succēdēbant*: subst. clauses explaining *hōc* (§ 182).

86 1 *nōn modo . . . sed nē . . . quidem*: 'not only not, but not even,' etc.

We should expect another negative after *modo*, but the Latin regularly omits it in this expression where both parts have the same predicate.

86 3 *sui recipiendī*: 'of recovering himself' (§ 224. c).

86 4 CHAP. 5. *Cum . . . pugnārētur*: 'when the fight had been going on.'

86 8 *Baculus*: see p. 75, ll. 17-18 and note.

86 11 *virtūtis*: gen. of description.

86 12 *ūnam esse spem salūtis*: 'that there was only one hope of safety' etc. — *sī . . . experirentur*: a conditional clause in apposition with *spem*. Note that *docent*, a historical present ind. (§ 153. a), allows secondary sequence, *experirentur* (§ 164). — *extrēmum auxilium*: 'the last resource.'

86 14 *intermitterent, exciperent, reficerent, ērumperent, pōnerent*: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205), following *certiōrēs facit* in the sense of 'instructs.'

86 15 *tēla missa exciperent*: 'should (merely) catch (on their shields) the weapons that were hurled'; i.e. they should throw none back.

86 16 *post*: adv.

86 18 CHAP. 6. *Quod iussī sunt faciunt*: 'they did as (what) they were ordered.' *Faciunt* and the other presents that follow are historical.

86 19 *sui conligendī*: see § 224. c; 'of collecting their wits' (lit. 'of collecting themselves'); cf. l. 3.

86 21 *undique circumventōs interficiunt*: 'they surrounded on all sides and killed.'

86 24 *tertiā parte interfectā*: abl. abs.; *plūs* does not affect the case (§ 105. note 2).

86 26 *armis*: abl. of separation. — *exūtis*: belongs with *cōpiis*. The enemy threw down their arms as they fled.

87 2 *aliō . . . meminerat, aliis . . . viderat*: 'remembered that he had come with one plan (i.e. to open a way into Italy) . . . but saw that he had encountered other conditions.'

The episode of the uprising of the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni is concluded with chapter 6. With the following chapter begins the account of the main campaign of 56 B. C. against the hardy coast tribes, particularly the Veneti. Cæsar's courage and resourcefulness are nowhere more strikingly shown.

87 12 CHAP. 7. *Crassus*: see p. 81, ll. 7 ff.

87 13 *mare*: accusative after *proximus*; cf. p. 56, l. 11.

87 15 *complūrēs*: modifies *civitatēs*.

87 17 *Coriosolitas*: accusative plur. of *Coriosolitēs*.

87 19 CHAP. 8. *Huius . . . civitātis*: i.e. of the Veneti.

87 21 in *Britanniam . . . cōnsuērunt*: i.e. for the purposes of trade. — *cōnsuērunt*: contracted from *cōnsuēverunt*, 'are accustomed.' The present would mean 'grow accustomed.'

87 22 *scientiā* . . . *ūsū* : abls. of respect (§ 115).

88 1 *vectigālēs* : adjunct accusative with *omnēs* (§ 94).

88 2 *se* : subj. of *recuperātūrōs* (*esse*); *suōs* agrees with *obsidēs*.

88 5 *subita* . . . *repentina* : 'sudden . . . unexpected.'

88 10 *quam* . . . *perferre* : 'than to endure,' *quam* following the comparative idea in *mālint*.

88 13 *remittat* : subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in *lēgatiōnem* . . . *mittunt*. The dir. disc. would be *sī vīs tuōs recipere, obsidēs nobīs remitte* (§ 205).

88 14 CHAP. 9. *Caesar* : observe again how *Caesar* has stated the difficulties and set the stage for action, and then personally appears as the chief actor.

88 15 *aberat longius* : 'was too far off'; i.e. to take immediate command in person. — *nāvēs* . . . *longās* : 'war galleys'; see Introd. III. 14. a, and the illustrations, pp. 92, 94, 117. The Gallic ships used sails alone and had no oars. — It will be remembered that *Caesar*, at the close of the previous year (57 B.C.), had set out for Illyricum and Italy (p. 82, ll. 5–9). In April, 56 B.C., before his return to Gaul, he had a conference with the other triumvirs, Pompey and Crassus, and arrangements were made whereby the latter were to be consuls for the year 55 B.C., and *Caesar*'s term as governor of Gaul was to be extended for five years after the expiration of his first term (54 B.C.). Plans were also made to increase *Caesar*'s legions from eight to ten, and to provide pay for them from the public treasury. *Caesar* seems thus to have been planning for future military support when he should finally return to Rome.

88 21 *quantum* . . . *admisissent* : transl. freely, 'how great a crime they had committed' (lit. 'how great a crime they had brought upon themselves').

88 22 *lēgātōs* . . . *retentōs* : explanatory of *facinus*. — *quod nōmen* : transl. as if the order were *nōmen quod*, with *nōmen* in apposition with *lēgātōs*, and cf. p. 70, l. 13 and note.

88 25 *hōc maiōre spē* : 'their hope being greater on this account.'

89 2 *inscientiam* : i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance.

89 4 *diūtius* : 'very long' (lit. 'longer,' i.e. than they desired); see § 145.

89 5 *ut* . . . *acciderent* : 'although everything should turn out contrary to their expectations' (§ 192).

89 6 *posse* and the following infinitives depend on *perspiciebant* (l. 10).

89 7 *gestūrī essent* : an active periphrastic (§ 222. I) and a subjv. in indir. disc.

89 8 *longē aliam* . . . *atque* : 'very different . . . from.'

89 9 *conclūsō* : i.e. like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were familiar.

89 12 *ubi* . . . *cōstābat* : 'where it was evident that *Caesar* would first wage war.'

89 13 *Sociōs*: pred. accusative with *Osismōs* etc.

89 18 CHAP. 10. *multa*: in part. apposition with this word are the nouns *iniūria*, *rebelliō*, *dēfectiō*, *coniūrātiō*, and the neg. purpose clause *nē . . . arbitrārentur*. This relation may be represented as follows:



89 21 *neglēctā*: i.e. left unpunished.

89 22 *sibi idē licēre*: 'that the same opportunity was open to them' (lit. 'the same thing was permitted to them').

89 25 *ōdisse*: 'hate'; perf. in form, but present in meaning (§ 46).—*priusquam . . . cōspirārent*: see § 197. *b*.

90 3 CHAP. 11. *adeat . . . contineat . . . prohibeat*: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205).

90 4 *arcessitī (esse)*: depends upon *dūcēbantur* and agrees with its subj. in case; 'were said to have been invited.'

90 10 *distinendam cūret*: cf. *pontem faciendum cūrat*, p. 20, l. 11 and note; *cūret* is subjv. in a rel. clause of purpose.

90 16 CHAP. 12. *eius modī . . . ut . . . habērent*: 'of such a sort that they had' etc. (§ 179).

90 17 *lingulis*: some of these narrow tongues of land are several miles long.

90 18 *cum . . . incitāvisset*: 'when the tide had risen.'

90 20 *minuente*: 'at the ebb'; intransitive.

90 21 *utrāque rē*: 'in either case' (lit. 'by each circumstance'), i.e. by land or by sea.

90 23 *his . . . adaequātis*: 'when these (i.e. *agger ac mōlibus*) were brought level with the walls of the town.' The towns, being at the ends of the tongues of land, were inaccessible by land during high tide. The Romans, by extending dikes along the sides of the promontories, shut off the water and were thus enabled to extend the *agger* in each case up to the walls of the town. (For the *agger* see Introd. III. 13. *b*.) As soon as the Romans were in a position to take a town, the inhabitants escaped in ships to the next town.

91 1 *cuius rei*: i.e. *nāvīs* taken collectively.

91 3 *Haec . . . faciēbant*: 'this they continued to do'; past descr. of repeated action (§ 154. *c*). There is the same force in *dēportābant* and *recipiēbant* above.

91 4 *partem*: accusative of duration of time (§ 96).

91 5 *summa*: with *difficiliās*. — *vāstō* . . . *marī* etc.: abl. abs. In each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

91 8 CHAP. 13. *Namque*: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti; '(but the Veneti had less trouble) for.' — *ipsōrum*: 'their own.'

91 9 *aliquantō*: abl. of measure of difference. — *quam nostrārum nāvium*: 'than (those) of our ships.'

91 10 *quō facilius* . . . *possent*: purpose with a comparative word (§ 176).

91 13 *quamvis*: from *quivis*.

91 14 *trānstra* etc.: 'the cross beams of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a (man's) thumb.'

91 15 *crassitudīne*: abl. of description. — *prō*: 'instead of.'

91 16 *pellēs*: the Romans used sails made of flax; the Veneti of skins, untanned (*pellēs*) or tanned (*alutae*).

91 20 *tanta onera nāvium*: 'ships of so great weight.'

91 22 *nostrae classī*: dative of possession (§ 88), but transl. 'the encounter of our fleet with' etc.

91 23 *ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum*: 'only in swiftness and the power of the oars'; abl. of respect. — *reliqua*: '(but) everything else.'

91 25 *nostrae*: sc. *nāvīs*. — *rōstrō*: abl. of means; for a description of the *rōstrum* see Introd. III. 14. a.

91 27 *cōpulis*: 'grappling hooks.'

91 28 *Accēdēbat ut*: 'there was this additional advantage, that,' followed by the subst. result clauses *ut* . . . *ferrent* . . . *cōsisterent* . . . *timērent*. — *sē ventō dedissent*: 'ran before the wind.'

92 1 *cōsisterent*: 'rode at anchor.'

92 2 *nihil*: see § 99.

92 3 *nāvibus*: see § 87.

92 6 CHAP. 14. *neque eis nocērī posse*: 'nor could they be harmed'; only the impers. construction can be used with the pass. of verbs of this sort; see § 83. a, and note on p. 64, l. 13.

92 7 *primum* . . . *vīsa est*: 'as soon as it was seen.'

92 10 *neque satis Brūtō* . . . *cōstābat quid agerent*: 'and it was not clear to Brutus . . . what they should do.'

92 14 *turribus autem excitātis*: the word *tamen* following shows that this abl. abs. has adversative force (§ 192. note); though towers had been erected (on the Roman ships), nevertheless' etc.

93 1 *ex barbaris nāvibus*: 'of (lit. 'from') the barbarians' ships.'

93 4 *magnō ūsuī*: 'of great service'; dative of the end (§ 89); in fact, it turned threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint of possible defeat. — *falcēs*: in apposition with *rēs*.

93 6 *mūrālium falcium*: 'wall hooks,' long poles with sickle-shaped hooks, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see *Introd.* III. 13. *b*). The gen. limits *fōrmæ* understood, dative after *absimilī* (§ 90); 'of a shape not unlike (the shape) of wall hooks.' *Fōrmā* is abl. of description.—**His . . . prærumpēbantur**: 'whenever the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts had been seized and drawn tight by these, the ship was driven forward by the oars and (in consequence) the ropes were torn off.'

93 7 *adductī erant . . . prærumpēbantur*: note the distinction in tenses and see § 196.

93 9 *Gallicis nāvibus*: dative of reference (§ 85).

93 13 *in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs*: they had an audience that was calculated to inspire their best efforts. Cæsar does not forget the dramatic setting of his narrative.

93 14 *paulō fortius*: 'a little braver (than usual).'

93 17 *CHAP. 15. cum . . . circumsteterant . . . contendēbant*: the same use of tenses as in ll. 7–8, to express repeated action in past time.—*binae ac ternae*: distributives; 'when two or three ships (of the Romans) had surrounded each ship (of the Veneti).'

93 24 *Quae . . . rēs*: i.e. the sudden calm.—*ad negōtium cōficiendum*: 'for finishing the business.'

93 27 *ad terram pervēnerint*: 'came to land.' For the exception to the rule of sequence see § 163. *c*.—*cum . . . pugnārētur*: 'although the battle had been going on.'

93 28 *hōrā ferē quārtā*: about 10 A.M.

94 2 *CHAP. 16. cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also.'

94 4 *nāvium quod*: 'all the ships' (lit. 'what of ships'); part. gen.

94 5 *neque quō sē recipere . . . dēfenderent habēbant*: 'had no place to which they could flee (for refuge) nor any way to defend their towns.' The subjunctive clauses are descriptive (§ 177). Cf. *quō . . . tolerārent*, p. 32, l. 15.

94 8 *eō gravius . . . quō*: abls. of measure of difference. Transl. 'the more severely . . . that.'—*vindicandum (esse)*: impers., but transl. 'punishment should be inflicted.'

94 10 *sub corōnā vēdidit*: 'sold at public auction' (lit. 'under the wreath'); captives in war, when being sold for slaves, wore wreaths. The custom arose from the crowning of animals intended for sacrifice. The selling of captives by their conquerors was common in antiquity, and Cæsar's act must not be judged by modern standards.

95 1 *CHAP. 17. Q. Titūrius Sabīnus . . . in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit*: see p. 90, ll. 8–11.

95 7 *nōlēbant*: i.e. the senate. Plur., referring to *senātū*, a collective. noun (§ 65. *a*).

95 9 *perditōrum*: 'desperate.'

95 12 *idōneō* . . . *locō*: 'in a place suitable in all respects.'

95 13 *cum* . . . *cūnēdisset*: concessive.

95 15 *hostibus* etc.: equivalent to *in contemptiōnem* . . . *hostium*; dative of reference.

95 19 *eō* *absente*: i.e. *Cæsar*.

95 21 *līgātō*: dative of agent with *dīmīcandum* (*esse*).

95 25 CHAP. 18. *quid fieri velit ēdocet*: 'he tells him what he wants done.'

96 1 *prō* *perfugā*: 'in the character of a deserter.'

96 3 *neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte*: an expression amounting to 'and that not later than the following night.'

96 7 *irī*: *impers.*, depending on *oportere*.

96 8 *superiōrum diērum*: depends on *Sabinī cunctātiō* taken together. In apposition with *rēs* are *cunctātiō*, *cōfirmātiō*, *inopia*, *spēs*, and the clause *quod* . . . *crēdunt*.

96 12 *nōn prius* . . . *quā*: 'not . . . until.'

96 13 *sit concessum*: see § 197. *b.*

96 15 *ut explōratā victōriā*: 'as if victory were already assured.'—*quibus* . . . *compleant*: a rel. clause of purpose.

96 18 CHAP. 19. *passūs mille*: accusative of extent of space. *Mille* is here an indeclinable adjective.

96 19 *quā minimum spatī*: 'as little time as possible'; subj. of *darētur*.

96 20 *exanimātique pervēnerunt*: 'and they arrived all tired out.'

96 26 *Quōs*: a connecting rel. equivalent to *eōs* and obj. of *cōsecūtī* (§ 143).

97 2 *equitēs*: nominative.—*paucōs*: 'only a few,' the regular meaning of this word.—*quī* . . . *ēvāserant*: 'who had escaped from the fleeing crowd.'

97 6 *ut*: correlative with *sic*.—*ad bella suscipienda* etc.: they were eager and ready for undertaking war, but lacked grit in enduring reverses.

97 9 CHAP. 20. The third campaign of the year 56 B.C., that against the Aquitani, begins at this point. It seems to have been quite unnecessary, as well as difficult and dangerous.—*P. Crassus*: see p. 90, ll. 5-8.

97 12 *Praecōninus* . . . *Mānlius*: these defeats were twenty-two years before (78 B.C.), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for ten years against Rome (82-72 B.C.).

97 17 *Galliae provinciæ*: 'of the province of Gaul.'

97 18 *his regiōnibus*: dative after *fīnilimæ*, which agrees with *civitatīs*.—*nōminātīm evocātis*: 'having been called to the colors' or 'having been drafted.'

98 1 CHAP. 21. *superiōribus victōriis*: see § 107. *b.*

98 3 *quid* . . . *possent*: indir. question, subj. of *perspici*.—*sine imperātōre* . . . *adulescentulō dūce*: an *imperātor* is the commander in chief of an army; *dux* refers to any person holding a command.

98 8 vineās turrēsq̄ egit: see Introd. III. 13. A, and the ill., pp. xxxviii, xl.

98 9 cuniculis: 'mines' (lit. 'rabbits'), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. These were intended to run under the Roman *agger*. The roof was propped up with wooden posts, and when these were set on fire and burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

98 11 diligentīā: abl. of cause. The Romans doubtless destroyed the enemy's mines by countermines.

98 14 faciunt: 'they do (so).'

98 18 CHAP. 22. commēdis: with *fruantur* (§ 107. a). The clause is in apposition with *condiciō*.

98 19 quōrum . . . amicitiae: 'to whose friendship.'

98 20 sibi mortem cōneciscunt: 'commit suicide.' Cf. p. 14, l. 9.

98 22 quī . . . recūsāret: a rel. clause of description.

98 23 cum his: repeated from *cum* . . . *dēvōis* on account of the long parenthesis; 'with these (I say).'

99 3 CHAP. 23. paucis diēbus . . . erat: 'within only a few days after he had arrived there' (lit. 'within which it had been come there').

99 5 quōquoversus: 'in every direction.'

99 7 citiōris Hispāniae: pred. gen. This was northern Spain.—*finitimae Aquitāniae*: 'bordering on Aquitania'; *finitimae* is a pred. adjective after *quae sunt*.

99 11 Q. Sertōriō: see note on p. 97, l. 12.

99 12 cōsuētūdine populi Rōmāni: because of their service under Sertorius they were familiar with Roman methods of warfare.

99 15 Quod: explained by the four appositive clauses *suis cōpīs* . . . *augēri*.

99 19 nōn . . . dēcertāret: 'he thought a battle should not be delayed.' What is the literal translation?

99 23 CHAP. 24. duplici: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three divisions (*triplex acies*).

99 24 in mediam aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by the legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.—*quid* . . . *cōselli*: 'what plan' (lit. 'what of plan'); part. gen.

100 1 victōriā: abl. with *potiri* (§ 107. a).

100 2 sēsē recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

100 3 infirmiorēs animō: 'dispirited'; for the case of *animō* see § 115.

100 5 prōductis cōpīs: concessive; 'although' etc. (§ 117. d).

100 6 opiniōne timōris: 'the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.'

100 8 expectāri . . . quā . . . irētur: freely, 'that they should go to the camp without further delay.'

100 10 ad hostium castra: this is the only instance in the "Commentaries" of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a carefully chosen level stretch between the hostile camps.

100 18 CHAP. 25. quibus: abl. with *cōfidebat* (§ 107. b).—**lapidibus . . . comportandis:** 'by supplying (the regular soldiers) with stones and javelins and fetching turf for (building) an *agger*.' The gerundives express means.

100 15 opiniōnem pugnantium: i.e. they gave the impression of being actually engaged in fighting (§ 221).

100 17 ex locō etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

100 19 ab decumānā portā: i.e. 'in the rear,' where this gate was situated; see Introd. III. 10 and the illustration on p. xxxv. The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps. Cf. note on p. 99, l. 12.

100 26 CHAP. 26. omnium oculis . . . intentis: 'while the eyes and minds of all were bent on the battle.'

100 28 prius . . . cōstitērunt . . . quam . . . posset: equivalent to *cōstitērunt priusquam posset* (§ 197. b).

101 2 quod plērumque . . . cōsuēvit: '(a thing) which usually happens.' The antecedent of *quod* is the idea contained in *redintegrātis vīribus*. For the tense cf. note on p. 87, l. 21.

101 4 per: 'over.'

101 6 quae: accusative plur., subj. of *convēnisse*. It takes its gender from the antecedent *mīlium*.

101 13 CHAP. 27. tempore: cf. *quibus*, p. 100, l. 13, and see § 107. b.

101 17 CHAP. 28. quī . . . essent . . . misissent: subjv. clauses of description.

101 18 arbitrātus: 'thinking'; the past participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a present. Cf. *veritus*, p. 64, l. 24.

101 19 aliā . . . ac: 'other . . . than' or 'different . . . from.'

101 22 continentēs: 'continuous': i.e. far-stretching.

101 23 eō: 'thither'; i.e. to the *silvās* and *palūdēs*.

102 6 CHAP. 29. deinceps: i.e. in the days next following.

102 9 conversam: 'fronting'; i.e. with the boughs turned toward the enemy.—**prō vāllō:** 'as a palisade.'

102 11 cōfectō: 'cleared' (of timber); lit. 'finished.'

102 12 tenērentur: 'were being seized.'

102 13 eius modī . . . utī . . . intermitterētur: 'such that the work was necessarily interrupted.'

102 14 sub pellibus: the tents were of leather.

BOOK IV

In Book IV the scene shifts to the German frontier. In the winter of 56-55 B.C. two of the lesser German tribes, the Tencteri and Usipetes, crowded by the powerful Suebi, crossed the Rhine into Gaul. At the earliest moment Cæsar concentrated his forces in this quarter for the defense of Gaul, drove the Germans back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territory, and thus assured the supremacy of the Roman arms.

103 1 CHAP. 1. **Pompēiō . . . Crassō**: i.e. the year 55 B.C. The year was defined by naming the consuls in office (§ 228). The Triumvirate had decided that Cæsar should hold the government of Gaul while the other two members kept control of affairs at Rome.

103 4 **quō**: adv., equivalent to *in quod*.

103 11 **Hī . . . illī**: 'the latter . . . the former' (§ 134. a). — **annō post**: 'the following year.' For the case of *annō* see § 114.

103 12 **ratio**: 'theory' (theoretical knowledge); **usus**, 'practice' (knowledge derived from experience).

103 13 **privāti**: there was no private ownership, but all lands were held as common property. Further, no community remained in one place longer than a year, probably that they might not become too much attached to one place.

103 15 **frumentō**: abl. of means. — **maximam partem**: see § 99. Transl. 'for the most part.'

103 17 **quæ res**: i.e. the mode of living just described. *Rēs* is subj. of *alit* and *efficit*.

103 18 **nūllō officiō . . . adsuēfactī**: 'accustomed to no service' (lit. 'trained by no service'; see § 106). The clause *quod . . . faciunt* is parenthetical.

104 2 **locis frigidissimis**: 'even in their extreme climate' (§ 117. d). — **neque**: correlative with *et*, l. 4.

104 3 **vestitūs**: part. gen. with *quicquam*.

104 6 CHAP. 2. **eō ut . . . habeant**: 'on this account, that they may have (persons) to whom' etc.

104 8 **quam quō . . . dēsiderent**: 'than because they want' etc. A reason given as supposable but not real is expressed by the subjv. (§ 188. b).

104 15 **impēnsō . . . pretiō**: 'at high cost.'

104 17 **importātis nōn utuntur**: 'do not import for use.'

104 22 **labōris**: pred. gen. of description (§ 77. a).

104 27 **mōribus**: abl. of accordance.

104 29 **quamvis pauci**: 'however few.'

105 1 **Vinum omnīnō . . . importāri nōn patiuntur**: 'wine they do not allow to be brought into their country at all.'

105 4 CHAP. 3. *Pūblicō*: 'as a community.'

105 7 *ūnā* . . . *Suēbis*: 'extending from (the territory of) the Suebi in one direction.'

105 9 *ut est captus Germānōrum*: 'according to the standard of the Germans.'

105 10 *paulō* . . . *hūmāniōrēs*: 'somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race' (i.e. Germans).

105 13 *cum*: concessive, as shown by the following *tamen* (§ 192. note).

105 15 *vectigālēs sibi fecērunt*: 'have rendered them tributary to themselves.'

105 23 CHAP. 4. *trāns flūmen*: i.e. on the east side; *cis Rhēnam* (l. 24), the west side.

106 1 *Illī*: i.e. the *Germānī*.

106 4 *viam*: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).

106 5 *cōnfectō*: with *itinere*.

106 11 *partem*: accusative of duration of time.

106 14 CHAP. 5. *veritus*: transl. as if present, 'fearing.' Cf. p. 64, l. 24.

106 15 *nihil* . . . *committendum (esse)*: 'no confidence should be placed in them.'

106 16 *Est* . . . *cōnsuētūdinis*: 'for it is a Gallic custom' (lit. 'for there is this (point) of Gallic custom'); the following subjv. clauses are in apposition with *hoc*.

106 17 *etiam invītōs*: 'even though they are unwilling.'

106 21 *rēbus atque auditiōnibus*: 'facts and rumors.'

106 22 *quōrum eōs* . . . *paenitēre*: see § 81. *b.* — in *vēstigiō*: 'on the spot.'

106 23 *plērique*: i.e. the *viātōrēs* and *mercātōrēs*. — *ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant*: 'give answers fashioned according to the wish of their questioners' (*eōrum*).

106 25 CHAP. 6. *graviōri bellō*: 'too serious a war' (§ 122).

106 26 *cōnsuerat*: contracted from *cōnsueverat*. — *ad exercitum*: in winter quarters among the Aulerci and Lexovii; see p. 102, l. 17.

106 27 *ea* . . . *facta (esse)*: *ea* is explained by the inf. clauses *missās (esse) lēgatiōnēs* and *invitatōesque (esse) eōs*.

107 2 *omnia* . . . *fore parāta*: used for the fut. pass. inf. depending on some word of promising implied in *invitatōs*; '(with the promise that) all things would be made ready.'

107 8 *equitatū imperātō*: 'cavalry being levied'; observe the meaning of *imperō* here.

107 10 CHAP. 7. *equitibus dēlēctis*: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

107 16 *quicumque*: the antecedent is *eis* understood as indir. obj. of *resistere*.

107 17 *Haec tamen dicere*: 'that this, however, they did say'; supply *sē* as the subj. of *dicere* and the following inf.

107 19 *eis*: i.e. to the Romans. — *attribuant*: subjv. for the impv. of dir. disc. (§ 205).

107 20 *eōs*: i.e. *agrūs*.

107 21 *concedere*: 'yield,' as inferior.

107 22 *reliquum* etc.: 'there was no one *else* on earth' etc. Observe the emphatic position of *reliquum*; cf. p. 21, l. 19; p. 36, l. 4; and notes.

107 23 *possint*: subjv. in a clause of description (§ 177).

107 24 CHAP. 8. *quae visum est*: 'what it seemed proper (to answer).' Cæsar gives us only the last part of his speech, but we may imagine that it was after the fashion of his words to Ariovistus (Book I, chap. 43).

107 26 *quī . . . potuerint*: the verb in this clause of description would be subjv. in the dir. disc. also; likewise *quī . . . possint*, l. 28.

108 2 *quōrum sint* etc.: 'whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him and complaining.'

108 6 CHAP. 9. *post diem tertium*: i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually included in the Roman reckoning (§ 227. g).

108 7 *propius sē*: 'nearer them,' *sē* being an indir. reflex. For the case see note on p. 56, l. 11.

108 10 *trāns*: i.e. westward.

108 13 CHAP. 10. *Vosgō*: 'the Vosges.' Cæsar is wrong here; the Meuse really rises a considerable distance west of the Vosges Mountains.

108 14 *parte . . . receptā*: the Rhine branches in these regions; one branch, the Vacalus, unites with the Meuse about eighty miles from its mouth. See the map.

108 20 *multis . . . effectis*: transl. actively, 'making many' etc.

108 26 CHAP. 11. *ut erat cōstitutum*: 'as had been arranged.'

109 2 *praemitteret*: used without an obj.; transl. 'send word.'

109 3 *sibique ut potestatem faceret*: 'give them an opportunity.'

109 4 *quōrum si . . . fecisset*: 'and if their leading men and senate should give them an oath-bound pledge'; *fecisset* represents a fut. perf. ind. in the dir. disc. (§§ 208, 209. note). The verb is singular because it agrees with the nearest subject (§ 67) or because the two subjects form a single idea (§ 68).

109 5 *condiciōne*: abl. with *ūsurūs* (*esse*); see § 107. a.

109 7 *daret*: subjv. in an indir. command or request (§ 205).

109 8 *eōdem illō pertinere*: 'tended the same way'; *eōdem* and *illō* are advs. — *ut . . . reverterentur*: a purpose clause explaining *eōdem illō*.

109 14 *quī nūntiarent*: a rel. clause of purpose. The antecedent of *quī*

is the omitted obj. of *mittit*. — *nē . . . lacescerent . . . sustinērent*: commands in indir. disc. (§§ 205, 206).

109 16 *accessisset*: see § 198. III. *b*.

109 18 CHAP. 12. *amplius*: as usual, this word has no effect on the construction (§ 105. note 2).

109 22 *indūtiis*: dative of purpose.

109 23 *resistentibus*: sc. *nostris*, *his* being the indir. obj.

109 24 *subfossis* etc.: 'after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men.'

109 26 *ut . . . vēnissent*: note that *dēsisterent* is subjv. of result with *ut*, and that *vēnissent* depends on it (§ 214); otherwise the clause with *prius . . . quam* would be in the ind. (§ 197. *a*).

110 3 *genere*: see § 102.

110 6 *quoad*: see § 198. II; compare this use of *quoad* with that on p. 109, l. 15.

110 11 CHAP. 13. *ab eis qui . . . intulissent*: 'from men who' etc.; a clause of description.

110 13 *dum . . . augērentur*: see § 198. III. *b*.

110 14 *dēmentiae*: descriptive gen. in the pred. after *esse* (§ 77. *a*); the subj. is *expectāre*. Transl. 'he thought it was the height of madness to wait.'

110 15 *quantum . . . auctōritātis*: 'how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle'; for *auctōritātis* see § 76. *a*.

110 17 *quibus*: i. e. the enemy; a connecting rel., indir. obj. of *dandum* (*esse*).

110 19 *nē quem . . . praetermitteret*: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *cōsiliō*. *Quem* is an indef. pronominal adjective, 'any.'

110 20 *quod . . . vēnērunt*: explanatory of *rēs*.

110 23 *simul . . . simul*: 'partly . . . partly.' — *pūrgandī suī causā*: 'for the purpose of excusing themselves' (§§ 224. *c*, 225. *b*). — *quod . . . commississent*: see § 188. *b*.

110 25 *ut . . . impetrārent*: 'that they might obtain through treachery whatever they could in the way of truce.'

110 26 *Quōs . . . oblātōs (esse) gāvīsus*: 'delighted that they were put in his power'; *gāvīsus* is from *gaudeō*.

111 3 CHAP. 14. *Acīē triplici*: see Introd. III. 12.

111 6 *et . . . et*: correlative; *celeritatē* and *discessū* explain *omnibus rēbus*.

111 7 *perturbantur, cōpiāsne . . . an . . . an . . . praestāret*: 'they were confused as to whether it was better' etc. (§§ 201, 170. *b*. 1).

111 9 *Quōrum timor cum*: equivalent to *cum timor eōrum* (§ 143).

111 11 *quī*: the antecedent is the subj. understood of *restitērunt*.

111 16 *ad quōs cōnsectandōs*: 'to hunt them down.' This action of Cæsar's seems cruel. When thanksgivings were proposed in the senate for

Cæsar's victory, Cato, Cæsar's inveterate enemy, moved that he should be surrendered to the barbarians for this butchery. Such justification as can be found for the act rests on Cæsar's conviction that to secure the Roman power the Germans on the west side of the Rhine must be destroyed and that river kept as the boundary of the Roman possessions.

111 17 CHAP. 15. *Germānī* etc.: i.e. the Germans who were fighting heard the cries of those who were being massacred.

111 23 *ad ūnum*: 'to a man.'

111 24 *ccccxxx milium*: pred. gen.; cf. p. 109, l. 18.

111 27 *veritī*: see p. 106, l. 14 and note.

111 28 *libertātem*: '(this) privilege.'

112 3 CHAP. 16. *iūstissima*: 'the most important.'

112 7 *Accessit . . . quod . . . recēperat . . . coniūxerat*: the *quod* clause is the subj. of *accessit*. Transl. 'a further reason was' etc. (lit. 'it was added that'). A subst. clause with *ut* often follows *accidō*.

112 8 *quam . . . trānsisse*: see p. 108, ll. 8 ff.

112 13 *dēderent*: a subst. clause without *ut* after *postulārent*.

112 15 *sui . . . imperī*: pred. gen. after *esse*; 'under his power' (§ 73. a).

112 17 *Ubii autem*: 'moreover the Ubii' etc. This introduces the third of Cæsar's reasons (*multis de causis*, l. 1) for crossing the Rhine. The first is introduced by *illa fuit iūstissima* (l. 2), the second by *Accessit etiam quod* (l. 7).

112 20 *premerentur*: see § 188. b.

112 21 *id sibi . . . satis futurum (esse)*: '(saying that) that would be enough for them.'

113 3 CHAP. 17. *neque suae neque populi Rōmāni dignitātis* etc.: 'and he decided that it was in keeping neither with his own dignity nor with that of the Roman people'; for *dignitātis* see § 77. a.

114 3 *Ratiōnem*: 'plan.' A good idea of the structure of this bridge can be gained by a careful comparison of the text with the diagram on p. 113. Any pupil handy with tools will find it interesting and helpful to make a wooden model of a section of this bridge. The site of the bridge was probably near Bonn, where there is to-day a magnificent structure, bearing a Latin inscription stating that Cæsar built a bridge there in the year 55 B.C.—*bīna*: 'in pairs.'

114 4 *dīmēnsa ad altitudinem*: 'measured (and cut) according to the depth of the river.'

114 5 *pedum duōrum*: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.

114 7 *nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendicularum*: 'not perpendicularly, like a pile' (lit. 'in the fashion of a pile').

114 8 *ut . . . prōcumberent*: 'so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.'

114 10 *ab inferiøre parte*: 'downstream.' — *contrā . . . conversa*: 'slanting against'; *conversa* agrees with *duo (igna)*.

114 11 *Haec utraque . . . distinēbantur*: 'these two sets were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal (in thickness) to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (*quantum . . . distābat*), with a pair of clamps at each end.'

114 12 *bipedālibus trabibus*: compare with *pedum duōrum*, l. 5. The timbers were just wide enough to fit in between the piles forming each pair.

114 14 *quibus (ignis) . . . revinctis*: 'after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions,' i.e. by the horizontal beams.

114 15 *rērum*: 'structure.'

114 16 *quō maior . . . hōc artius*: 'the greater . . . the more closely'; *abls.* of measure of difference. A model constructed according to this description will readily illustrate how the whole structure is the more tightly locked together the greater the pressure exerted against the sloping *igna* from above or below.

114 17 *Haec . . . contēbantur*: 'these (the framework of timber) were covered with beams placed lengthwise.'

114 19 *sublicae . . . agēbantur*: 'piles were driven also on the lower side in a slanting direction' (so as to stay the bridge against the current).

114 20 *prō ariete subiectae*: 'serving as a buttress.'

114 21 *aliae item*: other piles a little way above, to serve as a break-water. These were probably independent of the bridge.

114 24 *neu . . . nocērent*: 'and that they (*trunci* etc.) might not harm the bridge.'

114 26 CHAP. 18. *Diēbus*: see § 119. — *coepta erat*: *pass.*; cf. p. 60, l. 23; also p. 115, l. 3.

115 4 *hortantibus eis quōs*: 'at the instigation of those whom.'

115 10 CHAP. 19. *premerentur*: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*).

115 18 *utī . . . dēmigrārent . . . dēpōnerent . . . convenirent*: *obj.* clauses of purpose following the verbal phrase *nūntiōs . . . dīmīsisse*, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice.

115 15 *hunc* etc.: 'this had been selected about the middle.'

115 19 *ut . . . iniceret . . . ulciscerētur . . . liberāret*: substantive clauses of purpose in apposition with *rēbus* (§ 183, third example).

115 22 *satis . . . prōfectum (esse)*: 'enough had been done.'

115 23 *arbitrātus*: transl. as present, 'thinking'; cf. p. 106, l. 14 and note.

116 1 CHAP. 20. Cæsar's brief expedition to Britain described in the following chapters marks the beginning of the national history of England. Cæsar was the first Roman who entered Britain, and the first author who wrote about it from personal knowledge.

116 2 ad septentrionē: 'toward the north'; cf. p. 12, l. 4 and l. 9.

116 4 bellis: abl. of time (§ 119). — inde: i.e. from Britain.

116 6 et . . . cognovisset: a fut. condition in indir. disc. changed from the fut. perf. ind. (§§ 208, 209. note, 210). The clauses are subj. of *fore*.

116 9 illis: adv.

116 12 quanta . . . poterat: the indir. questions are objs. of *replevit*.

116 15 qui: with *portūs*, 'what harbours.'

116 18 CHAP. 21. nāvi longā: see the illustrations, pp. 92, 117.

116 28 quāta . . . classem: lit. 'what fleet he had built'; transl. as if the order were *classem quam fecerat*. For the attraction of the antecedent into the rel. clause see § 140.

116 27 qui polliceantur: a rel. clause of purpose, but transl. by the pres. participle.

117 6 magni: gen. of indef. value (§ 78).

117 7 adeat: a subst. clause without *ut*, obj. of *imperat*.

117 9 quantum: sc. *tantum* as the antecedent word; 'so far as opportunity could be given to him' etc.

117 10 qui . . . auderet: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

117 14 CHAP. 22. superioris temporis: 'of the season before'; see Book III, chap. 18.

118 1 cōsuētūdinis: see § 80.

118 2 fēcissent: the reason is given on the authority of the *Legis*, hence the verb is in the subjv.

118 6 his . . . antepōmendis: 'that occupation about these trifling matters should take precedence of (the invasion of) Britain.'

118 8 imperat: 'demands,' with accusative of dir. and dative of indir. obj.

118 9 Nāvibus . . . onerāriis: see Intro. III. 14. b, and the ill., p. 117. — quot: sc. *tot* as the antecedent; '(as many) as he thought' etc.

118 10 quod: the antecedent is *id* understood, the obj. of *distribuit*; 'what galleys he had besides' (lit. 'what of galleys,' part. gen.).

118 13 ā: adv., 'away,' 'off.' — *tenēbantur quō minus*: 'were detained from'; the usual construction after verbs of hindering (§ 185).

118 16 in Menapiōs . . . in eōs pāgōs: with *dūcendum*, which agrees with *exercitum*, obj. of *dedit*. The gerundive here expresses purpose (§ 224. d).

118 20 CHAP. 23. nactus: from *nanciscor*.

118 21 tempestātem: 'weather.' — *tertiā vigiliā*: probably soon after midnight. — *solvit*: 'cast off' the ropes; i.e. weighed anchor. — *alteriorem portum*: the port eight miles away (l. 13). See the map.

118 23 hōrā . . . quārtā: about 10 A.M. The distance across is about thirty miles. He sailed from a port at or near Boulogne, and his approach to Britain was near Dover. There he lay at anchor till half past three.

118 26 *montibus angustē* etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore. See the ill., p. 119.

119 2 *dum* . . . *convenirent*: when is *dum*, 'until,' followed by the ind.? See § 198. III. a.

119 5 *Volusēnō*: cf. p. 116, l. 18, and p. 117, l. 8. — *monuitque* . . . *administrarentur*: 'and enjoined upon them that everything should be done promptly (lit. 'at the nod and at the time') as military science and particularly control of ships demand, since the latter have a swift and unsteady motion' (lit. 'as things which have' etc.). The obj. of *monuit* is the subst. clause (*ut*) . . . *administrarentur*.

119 6 *postularent*: see § 214.

119 7 *habērent*: see § 190.

119 9 *His dimissis* etc.: the first *et* connects *dīmissis* and *nactus*, the second *ventum* and *aestum*. Why are *dīmissis* and *nactus* not in the same construction? See note on p. 61, l. 15.

119 11 *prōgressus*: toward the north.

120 2 CHAP. 24. *essedāriis*: the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war chariot. — *quō* . . . *genere*: 'a kind (of fighting) which'; refers to the fighting both on horseback and with the chariots. *Genere* is attracted into the rel. clause.

120 3 *ēgredī*: the inf. is common after *prohibeo* instead of the subjv. with *nē*, *quān*, or *quō minus* (§ 185. a).

120 5 *cōstitutū*: 'to ride,' 'to be anchored.'

120 6 *militibus*: dative of agent with the impers. pass. periphrastics *dēsiliendum* . . . *cōsistendum* . . . *pugnandum erat*; *pressis* modifies *militibus*, 'weighted as they were.'

120 9 *cum illi* etc.: 'while they' (the Britons) etc.; a *cum* clause of description.

121 1 *generis*: see § 80.

121 2 *pedestribus*: 'on land,' where the main strength lay in infantry.

121 4 CHAP. 25. *nāvēs longās*: subj. of *removērē*, *incitārē*, and *cōstitutū*; the whole clause is the obj. of *iussit* (§ 183. note).

121 5 *barbaris inūsitiōr*: 'more unfamiliar to the barbarians,' i.e. than ordinary ships.

121 8: *latus apertum*: i.e. the right, unprotected by shields; cf. p. 74, l. 4.

121 9 *inde*: i.e. from the ships.

121 10 *tormentis*: see Introd. III. 4.

121 19 *quī*: the antecedent is the subj. understood of *inquit*. For other conspicuous actions of the tenth legion cf. p. 45, l. 2; p. 76, l. 15. — *aquilam*: see Introd. III. 7.

121 20 *obtestātus* etc.: 'appealing to the gods that the action might result favorably to the legion.'

121 28 *ego certō*: 'I, at any rate.' The nominative of personal pronouns is not used except for emphasis. See colored plate, facing p. 120.

121 26 *inter se*: 'one another.'—*nē* . . . *admitteretur*: a subst. clause, obj. of *cohortāti*.

121 29 *adpropinquāvērunt*: the subj. is *mīlitēs* implied.

122 1 CHAP. 26. *tamen*: 'nevertheless,' i.e., in spite of the fact that they fought fiercely.

122 3 *alius aliā ex nāvi*: see § 144. d. 1. Transl. 'men from different ships rallied about whatever standards they happened on.'

122 4 *signis*: dative, depending on *occurrerat* (§ 84).

122 5 *ubi* . . . *cōspexerant*: 'whenever they saw'; cf. similar clauses introduced by *cum* meaning 'whenever,' p. 93, ll. 6 and 17 (§ 196).

122 6 *singulārēs*: 'scattered soldiers.'

122 8 *latere apertō*: see p. 121, l. 8.

122 10 *speculātōria nāvigia*: swift, light boats for reconnoissance.—*quōs*: the antecedent is *hī*, 'whomsoever he saw hard pressed, to these' etc.

122 11 *simul (atque)*: 'as soon as' (§ 193).

122 13 *longius*: 'very far.'

122 14 *equitēs*: concerning these see chap. 23, first sentence.

122 15 *fortūnam*: Cæsar's belief in *fortūna* was real. Cf. p. 44, ll. 18–23.

122 20 CHAP. 27. *Commius*: cf. p. 117, l. 3.

122 22 *ōrātōris modō*: 'in the character of an envoy.'

122 24 *remisērunt*: sc. *cum*, i.e. *Commium*.

122 26 *ignōsceretur*: impers. (§ 83. a).

122 27 *cum* . . . *petissent*: concessive.

123 6 CHAP. 28. *post diem quārtum*: 'three days after,' according to our reckoning (§ 227. g).—*quam*: after the comparative idea implied in *post*.

123 11 *aliae* . . . *aliae*: 'some . . . others.'

123 13 *propius*: adv. with the force of a preposition. Cf. p. 50, l. 2, and p. 56, l. 11.

123 14 *tamen*: i.e. though Britain was so near.—*ancoris iactis*: concessive; 'since they, though the anchors had been cast, began to fill.'

123 15 *adversā nocte*: 'in the face of the darkness.'—*in altum prōvectae*: 'putting out to sea' (lit. 'into the deep').

123 17 CHAP. 29. *ut esset*: a result clause, subj. of *accidit* (§ 187. II).—*quī diēs*: why does *diēs* stand in the rel. clause?

123 18 *aestūs maximōs*: 'very high tides'; the ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were strange to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

123 20 *nāvēs*: obj. of *complēbat*.

123 25 *id quod*: *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*.

123 27 *quibus . . . possent*: a result clause; *quibus* = *ut cū*.

124 1 *quod . . . cōstābat*: see § 188. a; 'because it was clear to all.' The subj. of *oportere* is *hincārī*, and the whole clause is subj. of *cōstābat*.

124 7 CHAP. 30. *paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent*: 'inferred the fewness of soldiers from the small size of the camp.'

124 8 *hōc*: 'on this account'; correlative with *quod*.

124 10 *factū*: see § 226. b. — *dūxerunt*: 'they considered.' What does *dūcō* usually mean?

124 11 *prohibere . . . prōducere*: subj. of *cūc*. — *his . . . interclūsis*: 'if these should be overcome or cut off from return'; abl. abs. expressing condition.

124 15 *dēficere*: f. a. from their farms; cf. p. 123, ll. 3-4.

124 16 CHAP. 31. *At*: regularly introduces a new scene or a new speaker.

124 17 *ex eventū nāvium*: 'from what had befallen the ships.' — *quod . . . intermiscent*: the clause explains *cū*.

124 18 *fore . . . suspiciābāt*: 'began to suspect that what actually happened would happen.' For this use of the past destr. tense see § 154. t.

124 20 *quae . . . nāvēs, eārum*: transl. as if *eārum nāvium quae*.

124 21 *aere*: the Romans used the word *aer* for both copper and bronze. These metals were more commonly used than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust.

124 22 *quae*: the antecedent of *quae* is *ea*, the subj. understood of *comportārī*.

124 24 *reliquis . . . effecit*: 'he managed so that they could sail tolerably well with the rest' (lit. 'it could be sailed').

125 1 CHAP. 32. *Dum . . . geruntur*: see § 198. I. — *frumentū*: supine (§ 226. a).

125 5 *statione*: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.

125 6 *quam cōsuētūdō ferret*: 'than usual.'

125 8 *aliquid . . . initum (esse)*: inf. clause in apposition with *id*.

125 9 *cōsili*: part. gen.

125 11 *armārī*: 'to arm themselves.'

125 15 *ūna*: 'only one.' — *suspiciāti*: as present; 'supposing.' Cf. *arbitrātus*, p. 101, l. 18 and note.

125 17 *dispersōs . . . occupātōs*: agreeing with *nostros* understood, the obj. of *adorī*.

125 20 CHAP. 33. *ex essedis*: these chariots held several men each besides the driver.

125 21 *equōrum*: obj. gen.; 'the very terror that the horses cause.'

125 26 *expeditum . . . receptum*: 'a ready retreat.'

126 3 *incitātōs equōs sustinēre*: 'to check their horses in full-gallop.'

126 5 *iugō*: 'the yoke,' resting on the necks of the horses and supporting the end of the pole or tongue (*tēmō*).

126 7 CHAP. 34. *Quibus rēbus*: 'by means of these tactics.'—*perturbātis nostris*: dative of indir. obj. after *tulit*.

126 13 *qui*: i.e. the Britons; the antecedent is the subj. understood of *discesserunt*.

126 16 *continērent . . . prohibērent*: subjs. of description.

126 19 *suī liberandi*: 'of setting themselves free' (§ 224. c).

126 23 CHAP. 35. *idem . . . fore*: 'that the same thing would happen'; explained by the result clause *ut . . . effugerent*.

126 25 *Commīus*: cf. p. 117, l. 3, and p. 122, l. 20.

127 1 *tantō spatiō . . . quantum*: 'over as much ground as'; *spatiō* is abl. (§ 106. a).

127 10 CHAP. 36. *propinquā diē aequinōcti*: 'since the time of the equinox (in September, usually a stormy season) was near.'

127 11 *infirmis . . . subiciendam*: 'that unseaworthy ships should be exposed to storms' (lit. 'that with unseaworthy ships the voyage should be exposed to storms'). *Nāvibus* is the abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

127 19 *quōs reliquae*: obj. and subj. respectively of *capere potuerunt* understood.

127 21 CHAP. 37. *Quibus ex nāvibus*: the *onerariae duae* mentioned in l. 18.

127 22 *in castra*: i.e. of which Sulpicius Rufus had command (p. 118, ll. 17 ff.).

127 24 *primō*: adv.

127 25 *si . . . nōllent*: attracted into the subjv. from the present ind. (§ 214).

128 1 *orbe factō*: 'forming a circle.' The arrangement was somewhat like that of the modern hollow square.

129 3 CHAP. 38. *siccitātēs*: the plur. is used because many swamps are referred to.

129 4 *quō sē reciperent*: a rel. clause of description (§ 177).—*quō per-fugiō*: i.e. *palūdum*.—*superiōre annō*: cf. p. 101, ll. 22–23.

129 13 *supplicatiō*: cf. p. 82, ll. 9 ff., where the *supplicatiō* of fifteen days was said to exceed in time any ever granted before.

BOOK V

131 2 CHAP. 40. *pertulissent*: for the fut. perf. (§ 199. II. a); it is subjv. to imply indir. disc. (§ 208. b).

131 12 *praeustae sudēs*: heavy stakes of wood, sharpened at the end, and charred to harden the point. They were hurled by the *tormenta*.

131 14 *contabulantur*: 'are built up with a series of floors.'—*attexuntur*: 'are attached' (to the towers).

131 15 *cum*: see § 192.

131 16 *ut*: 'so that.'—*ultrō . . . vōcibus*: 'when the soldiers ran to him voluntarily and pleaded with him.'

131 17 *sibi parcere*: see § 83.

131 19 CHAP. 41. *sermōnis aditum*: 'right to claim an interview.'—*causamque amicitiae*: 'ground for friendship.'

131 25 *Errāre . . . spērent*: see §§ 199. I. a, 210.—*eōs*: Cicero and his men.—*quicquam . . . praesidi*: see § 76. a.—*ab eis . . . quī . . . diffidant*: *eīs* refers to the Romans in the other camps.

131 26 *hōc . . . animō*: see § 116.

131 27 *ut . . . recūsent*: they are willing to be friends, but not subjects; they merely refuse to admit a standing military force.

131 28 *cōsuētūdinem*: the custom of having winter quarters in Gaul.

132 1 *incolumibus*: agreeing with *illīs*.

132 5 *sē adiūtore ūtantur*: 'they may use him as an advocate.' His direct words were *mē adiūtore ūtiminī* (§ 205).

132 6 *spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā*: 'that he (Cicero) hopes that in accordance with his (Caesar's) sense of justice.'

132 7 CHAP. 42. *spē*: of betraying Cicero.

132 10 *nūllā . . . cōpiā*: 'having no supply' (lit. 'there being no supply').

132 11 *quae essent*: see § 177.

132 12 *exhaurire*: 'to dig out (with their hands) and carry away (in their cloaks).' The one verb does the work of two. An example of what is called "zeugma," a yoking.

132 14 *xv*: probably an error; the distance seems incredible.

132 18 CHAP. 43. *fervētes . . . glandēs*: 'red-hot, soft balls of clay.'

132 20 *casās*: the thatched huts of the encampment.

132 26 *ut . . . dēcēderet . . . respiceret . . . pugnārent*: see § 179.—*cum*: see § 192.

133 5 *hunc . . . ut*: 'had this result, that.'

133 6 *ut*: 'inasmuch as.'

133 7 *primis*: 'to those in front' (next to the wall).—*ultimi*: 'those in the rear.'

133 11 *hostēs . . . coep̄erunt*: 'they began to invite the enemy (to come in) if they wanted to come in.'—*vellent*: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b); their direct words were *si vultis, introite* (§ 205).

133 15 CHAP. 44. *qui . . . primis ordinibus adpropinquarent*: see § 177. a. The men would soon be centurions of the first rank.

133 18 *dē locō*: 'for rank,' 'for promotion.'

133 21 *locum*: 'opportunity.'

133 26 *Mediocri spatiō relictō*: i.e. between him and the enemy.

133 30 *Pullōnī*: see § 85.—*Āvertit . . . vāginam*: 'this mishap turned the scabbard aside.'

134 1 *cōnantī*: *cōnantī* (§ 85).

134 7 *in locum . . . concidit*: 'plunging (lit. 'plunged') into a hollow, he fell.'

134 14 CHAP. 48. *eius*: Labienus's.—*opiniōne . . . dēiectus*: 'cut off from the expectation' (§ 101).

134 15 *reciderat*: 'he had been reduced.'

135 12 *biduō*: 'for two days' (§ 119. note).

135 18 *Ille perlēctam . . . recitat*: 'Cicero, having perused it, reads it aloud.'

135 19 CHAP. 49. *Gallum . . . repetit*: 'asks for the Gaul'; Vertico's slave, who carried Cicero's letter to Cæsar (chap. 45).

135 20 *qui . . . dēferat*: see § 175.

135 21 *admonet . . . faciat*: see § 183. In such cases the subjv. is often used without *ut*.

135 23 *eum*: Cæsar.

135 25 *animō*: see § 115.

136 1 *aequō animō . . . existimābat*: 'he thought that he might with composure slacken his speed.'

136 3 *haec*: referring to *castra*, and obj. of *contrahit*.—*erant . . . hominum*: see § 77. a.

136 5 *angustis viarum*: 'by narrowing the streets (of the camp)'; *angustis* is an abl. of means (§ 106).

136 6 *hostibus*: see § 85.

136 10 CHAP. 52. *neque . . . locum relinqui*: 'that no opportunity was left.'—*dētrimentō illōrum*: 'to do them harm' (§§ 89, 75).

136 14 *decimum quemque*: 'one man in ten.'

136 17 *meritō*: in the face of overwhelming odds Cicerō had acted with great ability and courage.

136 19 *clāu Sabīnī et Cottae*: these lieutenants of Cæsar had been slain.

137 2 *rem gestam (esse)*: the destruction of Sabinus and Cotta.

137 3 *quod dētrimentum*: *dētrimentum quod* (§ 140).—*līgātī*: Sabinus.

137 4 *hōc . . . quod*: 'for this reason, that'; *hōc* is abl. (§ 114).

137 5 *beneficiō . . . virtūte eōrum*: see § 106; *eōrum* refers to Cæsar's soldiers. — *expiatō incommodō*: see § 117.

BOOK VI

139 4 CHAP. 9. *Ambiorix*: the treacherous chief of the Eburones, whom Cæsar had vowed to destroy.

139 6 *Nōtā . . . ratiōne*: 'on the plan already tried and approved'; cf. Book IV, chap. 17.

140 1 *pūgandi sui causā*: 'for the sake of clearing themselves.'

140 6 *Cognitā*: 'having inquired into.'

140 9 CHAP. 10. *paucis post diēbus*: see § 114.

140 18 *quaeque*: *quae* is the subj. of *gerantur*; *-que* connects *mittant* and *cognōscant*.

140 20 *Suēbōs omnēs . . . cōstituisse*: indir. disc. after *referunt*.

140 24 *prō nātivō mūrō*: 'as a natural wall.'

140 26 *prohibēre*: 'protects.'

141 1 CHAP. 11. *ad hunc locum*: 'to this point' (of the narrative).

141 2 *quō*: adv., 'how.'

141 7 *eōrum iūdicīō*: 'according to their (the Gauls') judgment' (§ 111). — *existimantur*: merely explanatory, and hence the ind. (§ 178).

141 8 *quōrum*: the antecedent is *principēs*.

141 9 *redeat*: 'is referred' (§ 177). — *īnstitūtum*: sc. *esse*.

141 10 *nē quis . . . egēret*: subst. clause in apposition with *eius rei*.

141 13 *Haec . . . Galliae*: 'this same state of affairs exists in general throughout Gaul.'

141 15 CHAP. 12. *Cum . . . vēnit*: see § 194. a.

141 16 *Hī*: 'the latter' (§ 134. a).

141 19 *iactūris*: 'sacrifices.'

141 24 *iūrāre*: i.e. the Hædui. — *nihil . . . cōnsili*: 'no plan' (§ 76).

142 3 *īfectā rē*: 'without having accomplished his purpose.'

142 5 *novīs*: sc. *clientēlīs*.

142 6 *eī*: subj. of *vidēbant*.

142 8 *reliquis rēbus*: see § 115.

142 10 *quōs . . . intellegēbātur*: 'because it was perceived that these (the Remi) were equal (to the Hædui) in the favor of Cæsar.'

142 11 *grātiā*: see § 115.

142 13 *dicābant*: 'gave up'; distinguish from *dicēbant*.

142 21 *cum*: 'whenever,' 'as often as' (§ 196).

142 23 *quibus . . . in servīs*: 'who possess over them all the same rights that masters have over slaves'; for *quibus* and *dominīs* see § 88.

142 24 *hīs . . . generibus*: i.e. the *genera duo* in l. 19.

- 143 1 *intersunt*: 'participate in,' 'occupy themselves with.'
- 143 8 *hī*: i.e. the druids.
- 143 4 *eōs*: i.e. the Gauls.
- 143 5 *quod . . . facinus*: 'any crime.'
- 143 7 *īdem*: 'they also.'
- 143 8 *quī . . . privātus . . . populus*: *quī* is the indef. adjective, 'any.'—*eōrum . . . stetit*: 'has not abided by their decision.'
- 143 9 *sacrificiis (eōs) interdicunt*: abl. of separation (§ 101).
- 143 11 *hīs*: dative after *dēcēdunt* (§ 84).
- 143 12 *quid . . . incommodī*: see § 76. a.
- 143 16 *sī quī*: 'whoever.'
- 143 22 *Disciplīna*: 'system of training.'
- 143 25 *illō*: adv., 'there.'
- 144 5 CHAP. 14. *ea*: neuter plur. referring to *numerus versusum*.—*cum . . . ūtantur*: concessive (§ 192).
- 144 6 *ratīōnibus*: 'transactions.'
- 144 8 *neque . . . studēre*: 'nor do they wish that those who are learning should, through dependence on written words, give less attention to the memory.'
- 144 10 *praesidiō litterārum*: 'because of the reliance on written form.'
- 144 12 *animās . . . trānsire ad aliōs*: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions.
- 144 14 *metū mortis neglēctō*: 'by disregarding the fear of death' (§ 117).
- 144 18 CHAP. 15. *Alterum genus*: cf. *alterum equitum*, p. 142, l. 25.—*ūsus*: a noun.
- 144 22 *ut . . . amplissimus, ita plūrimōs*: 'the more powerful . . . the greater number.'
- 145 5 CHAP. 16. *habent institūta*: this differs from *instituērunt* in denoting that the custom, established in the past, still continues; cf. p. 49, l. 14.
- 145 6 *simulācra*: wooden figures resembling human beings.
- 145 11 *dēscendunt*: 'resort to' (lit. 'descend to').
- 145 12 CHAP. 17. *Mercurium*: 'a Mercury.' Cæsar does not mean that these gods had actually the same names as those of the Romans; he discovers rather a similarity in their attributes and functions.
- 145 13 *ferunt*: 'they call.'
- 145 21 *cum*: cf. p. 142, l. 21.
- 145 22 *cēperint*: subjv. of implied indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir.; *dēvovent* looks to the future.
- 145 25 *neglēctā . . . religiōne*: 'in violation of his vow' (§ 117).
- 145 26 *aut capta . . . aut . . . audēret*: 'has dared either to conceal booty at his house or to carry it away when consecrated' (lit. 'laid down').

146 3 CHAP. 18. *spatia . . . finiunt*: as emblematical of the darkness of the underworld, the home of Dis, or Pluto. This use is common to many primitive peoples. The English word "fortnight" is a relic of it. The custom apparently arose from keeping time by the changes of the moon.

146 5 *diēs subsequātur*: i.e. they count from the first night instead of from the first day.

146 7 *cum adolēverunt*: cf. p. 145, l. 21; p. 142, l. 21.

146 9 *filiumque . . . dūcunt*: 'they consider it disgraceful' etc.

146 11 CHAP. 19. *Virī . . . commūnicant*: i.e. they set aside from their own resources a sum equal to the dower brought by the wife, and the total amount is maintained as a common fund.

146 14 *fructūsque*: 'revenues,' 'profits.' — *vītā*: see § 115.

146 19 *sī . . . vēnit*: i.e. if there are suspicious circumstances. — *in servilē modum*: among the Romans slaves were tortured to extort confession of crime.

146 20 *compertum est*: i.e. that there has been foul play.

146 22 *prō cultū*: 'considering the degree of civilization.'

146 23 *cordī*: 'dear'; dative of *cor*, 'heart.'

146 24 *suprā hanc memoriā*: 'before our time.'

146 25 *iūstis*: 'regular.'

147 1 CHAP. 20. *Quae civitatēs*: equivalent to *cae civitatēs quae*.

147 2 *habent . . . sānctum*: 'have it established by law.'

147 4 *nēve*: 'and that . . . not.' — *quō*: indef.

147 7 *quae visa sunt*: 'what seems best' (to conceal).

147 13 CHAP. 21. *Deōrum . . . Lūnam*: Tacitus, on the contrary, speaks of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules also. But Cæsar's knowledge of the religion of the Germans may have been incomplete, or some new deities may have been introduced in the century and a half between Cæsar and Tacitus. In other particulars there is a striking agreement in the accounts.

147 17 *ā parvis*: 'from childhood.'

147 20 CHAP. 22. *finēs . . . propriōs*: 'private lands.'

147 21 *in annōs singulōs*: 'each year.'

147 22 *quantum . . . agrī*: see § 76.

147 23 *aliō*: adv.

147 24 *nē . . . commūtent*: this and the following clauses are in apposition with *causās*.

148 1 *agrī culturā*: 'for agriculture'; abl. of price (§ 108).

148 5 *ut . . . contineant*: 'that they may keep the common people in a contented frame of mind.'

148 9 CHAP. 23. *propriū virtūtis*: 'significant of their valor' (§ 73. a).

148 16 *iūs dicunt*: 'administer justice.'

148 19 *ea*: refers to *latrōcinia*.

148 21 *qui . . . profiteantur*: 'that those who are willing to follow are to give in their names.' *Profiteantur* represents an impv. (§ 205).

148 25 *omniumque . . . dērogātur*: 'and thereafter confidence is withdrawn from them in everything.'

BOOK VII

150 3 CHAP. 1. P. Clōdī: Publius Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party. He was a bitter enemy of Cicero (the orator), whom he had succeeded in driving into exile. Clodius was killed in a street brawl on the twentieth of January of this year, by Milo, a ruffian of the aristocratic party. For a while all orderly government was at an end, and the Gallic leaders hoped that a new uprising might be successful.

150 7 *quod . . . vidēbātur*: the antecedent of *quod* is *retinēri . . . posse*. It naturally seemed to the Gauls impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis.

150 9 *qui . . . dolērent*: 'being indignant' (§ 177); the characteristic subjv. often approaches a relation of cause. — *ante*: adv., modifying *dolērent*.

150 11 *principēs Galliae*: subj. of *queruntur*.

150 12 *locīs*: see § 120. b.

150 18 *Accōnis*: the leader of the recent rebellion among the Senones; Cæsar had him put to death.

150 15 *qui . . . faciāt . . . vindicent*: purpose (§ 175); sc. *eōs*, the antecedent of *qui*.

150 16 *sui capitis periculō*: 'at the risk of their lives' (§ 108).

150 18 *ut . . . interclūdātur*: depends on *rationem esse habendam*.

151 5 CHAP. 2. *principēs . . . fāctūrōs*: 'that they will be the first of all to make war.'

151 7 *obsidibus*: see § 106. — *cavēre inter sē*: 'take security from each other.' — *nē rēs efferātur*: the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.

151 8 *conlātīs . . . signīs*: by placing their standards together they pledged themselves to support each other.

151 15 CHAP. 3. *negōtiandī*: their business was money lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were controlled by Roman citizens.

151 16 *cōstitērant*: 'had settled.'

151 19 *quae*: 'any.' — *maior atque inlūstrior*: i.e. than usual.

151 20 *clāmōre*: by this means news was carried with great rapidity.

151 22 *quae . . . gesta essent*: see § 177. — *Cēnabī*: see § 120. a.

152 1 CHAP. 4. *tōtius Galliae*: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

152 8 *incendit*: sc. *eōs*.

152 6 *Prohibētur*: 'an attempt is made to prevent him.'

153 1 *quodque ante tempus*: 'and before what time'; *quod* is interrogative (§ 201).

153 4 *dubitantēs*: 'those who hesitated.'

153 16 CHAP. 5. *dē cōsiliō*: 'on the advice.'

153 17 *Qui*: meaning the *cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque*.

153 20 *quibus . . . cognōverint*: 'who they knew had this plan' (§ 88).

153 22 *ipsī*: the Bituriges. — *Id eāne dē causā quam . . . fēcerint*: 'whether they did this for the reason which.'

153 28 *quod . . . cōnstat*: 'because it is not at all clear to us.'

154 1 *nōn . . . pōnendum*: Cæsar refuses as a historian to make a positive statement of what he does not know.

154 4 CHAP. 6. *virtūte . . . Pompēi*: 'by the energy of Pompey.' Pompey had been made dictator.

154 6 *quā . . . posset*: indir. question (§ 201) depending on the idea of doubt in *difficultāte*.

154 8 *sē absente*: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army. — *dīmīcātūrās (esse)*: sc. *edēs*, i.e. the legions.

154 9 *si ipse . . . vidēbat*: the most submissive Gauls were not at such a time to be depended on, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.

154 10 *eīs*: indir. obj. of *committī*, the subj. of which is *salūtem*.

154 12 CHAP. 7. *Lucterius*: an officer of Vercingetorix; see p. 153, l. 9.

154 16 *cōsiliis antevērtendum (esse)*: see § 84; the subj. of *antevērtendum* is *ut . . . proficiscerētur*.

154 18 *Rutēnis prōvinciālībus*: a part of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.

154 24 CHAP. 8. *quod . . . putābat*: 'because he (Lucterius) thought.' — *periculōsum*: sc. *esse*.

154 26 *proficiscitur*: 'he (Cæsar) sets out.'

155 1 *dūriissimō tempore annī*: Pompey was put in authority on February 25 (by the old calendar, which was now about six weeks ahead of the true time); Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cévennes about the middle of January.

155 5 *nē singulārī quidem . . . hominī*: 'not even to a solitary wayfarer,' to say nothing of an army.

155 14 *fortūnis cōsulat*: see § 85.

155 19 CHAP. 9. *ūsū . . . praecepērat*: 'he had suspected would come to pass.' — *per causam*: 'on the pretext'; his real motive was to join his main force.

155 21 *Brūtum*: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterwards one of Cæsar's assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti (p. 90, l. 12).

155 22 *datūrum* . . . *absit*: this was a mere pretense; his real design was to reach his army, but he fears to let his own men know his plans.

155 25 *recentem*: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

155 28 *ubi* . . . *hiemābant*: his route would lie due north up the Saône, along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was not far from three hundred miles. — *quid* . . . *cōnsili*: see § 76. *a*.

155 29 *dē suā salūte*: 'affecting his own safety'; opposed to any design on his forces.

156 1 *reliquās legiōnēs*: two legions were somewhere near the Treveri, and six at Agedincum, about one hundred and forty miles apart.

156 2 *priusque* . . . *quam* . . . *posset*: see § 197. *b*.

156 6 *Haeduisque attribuerat*: see p. 32, ll. 22–25.

156 8 CHAP. 10. *difficultātem*: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, *sī* . . . *continēret*, *nē* . . . *dēficeret*, and *sī* . . . *ēdūceret*, *nē* . . . *labōrāret*.

156 10 *stipendiāriis*: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.

156 11 *quod* . . . *vidēret*: 'since it (Gaul) would see that friends found no protection in him (Cæsar).'

156 13 *ab rē frumentāriā*: 'in respect to his supply of corn.'

156 14 *tantā* . . . *acceptā*: 'by such reproach' (§ 117).

156 16 *praemittit* . . . *quī* . . . *doceant*: see § 175.

158 2 CHAP. 63. *circummittuntur*: i.e. by the Hædui.

158 4 *suppliciō*: 'by threats of punishment'; cf. p. 153, ll. 4–8.

158 6 *ratiōnēsque* . . . *commūnicet*: not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.

158 12 *illī*: i.e. the Remi (see Book II, chap. 5) and the Lingones.

158 17 *requirunt*: 'recall with regret.'

158 18 *summae spei*: 'of high ambition.'

158 21 CHAP. 64 *Ipse*: i.e. Vercingetorix. — *eī rei*: i.e. for bringing the hostages.

158 22 *Hūc*: at Bibracte, the capital of the Hædui.

158 23 *peditātū* . . . *contentum*: *contentus* takes the abl.

158 25 *perfacile* . . . *factū*: see § 226. *b*.

159 1 *aequō* . . . *animō*: 'without complaint.' — *modo* . . . *corrumpant*: 'only let them destroy'; for *corrumpāmus* ('let us destroy'), a hortatory subjv. (§ 172. *a*) in indir. disc.

159 2 *quā* . . . *iactūrā* . . . *videant*: 'since they see (§ 190) that by this loss.'

159 5 *hūc*: 'to these.'

159 7 *Alterā ex parte*: i.e. from the west.

159 11 *superiōre bellō*: the war eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued (p. 15, ll. 3, 4).

159 14 CHAP. 65. *cohortium*: not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province.

159 15 L. *Caesare*: a cousin of Julius, consul in 64 B.C.

159 16 *ad omnēs . . . oppōnēbantur*: 'were arrayed against the enemy in every quarter.'

159 19 *mūrōsque*: 'strongholds'; not simply the walls of the *oppida*.

159 22 *interclūsīs . . . poterat*: from this we see how much Cæsar was hampered by the plan of campaign that Vercingetorix employed.

159 25 *equitēsque*: the German cavalry were far superior to the Gallic.

159 26 *quī . . . cōsuērant*: see p. 51, ll. 19–27.

159 27 *minus idōneīs equīs*: these are described in Book IV, chap. 2.

160 2 CHAP. 66. *equitēsque quī . . . imperātī*: see p. 158, ll. 22, 23.

160 4 *per . . . finēs*: bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, chap. 62) toward the east, and thus leaving the hostile Hædui to the south. This movement, checked by the attack of Vercingetorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see the map facing p. 150).

160 9 *Id*: i.e. the flight of the Romans.

160 11 *parum prōfici*: 'that little advantage was gained.'—*reversūrōs (esse)*: i.e. *Rōmānōs*.

160 18 *adōriāntur*: for *adoriāmur* ('let us charge on them'; § 172. a), in indir. disc.—*Sī peditēs . . . nōn posse*: the attack was to be made on the baggage train, which was guarded by cavalry. Vercingetorix knew Cæsar's weakness in this arm, and did not suspect the German reënforcement. If the infantry stopped to assist the cavalry (*suis*), the march would be delayed.

160 14 *magis futurum*: 'is more likely.'

160 16 *dignitāte* etc.: by the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage.—*spoliātum iri*: fut. inf. pass.—*Nam dē equitibus hostium*: i.e. even the Gauls whom he was addressing could not suppose that the Roman cavalry would wish an engagement.

160 17 *quīn . . . audeat, nē ipsōs . . . dubitāre*: 'even they themselves ought not to doubt that' etc.

160 18 *Id quō . . . animō*: 'that they (i.e. the Gauls) may do so (i.e. attack the Romans) with greater courage' (§ 176).

160 19 *prō castrīs*: 'in front of the camp,' by way of defiance, to support by a demonstration the attack of the cavalry.

160 21 *cōfirmārī oportere*: 'that they ought to bind themselves.'

160 26 CHAP. 67. *ā primō agmine*: 'at the front of the (Roman) line of march.'

162 5 *aclemque converti*: by a change of front, turning the line of march into a line of battle.

162 14 *proximis comitiīs*: i.e. of the Hædui, for chief magistrate.

162 19 CHAP. 68. *Alesiam*: "Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Vercingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible."—Froude's "Cæsar."

162 23 *quantum*: 'as far as.'

164 2 CHAP. 69. *locō*: in apposition with *colle* (§ 54. note).

164 6 *pari altitudinis fastigiō*: 'of equal height.'

164 7 *quae pars . . . hunc omnem locum*: 'all that part of the hill which.' *Pars*, the antecedent of *quae*, is put in the rel. clause (§ 140); *hunc omnem locum* takes the place of *hanc omnem (partem)*; cf. p. 68, l. 23, where the antecedent noun appears in both clauses (*Locī . . . quem locum*).

164 10 *mūnitiōnis*: Cæsar constructed a line of contravallation, that is, a series of works surrounding the town, to resist a sortie.

164 11 *tenēbat*: 'extended.'

164 13 *stationēs*: In the daytime a mere picket guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (*excubitōribus*) on their walls.

164 17 CHAP. 70. *intermissam collibus*: 'lying between (lit. 'broken by') hills.'

164 20 *castris*: 'camps,' plur.; on the high ground south of the city.

164 23 *angustioribus*: 'too narrow,' either from unskillful construction or more easily to prevent the entrance of the enemy.

164 24 *acrius*: 'with all the more vigor.'

165 1 *veniri . . . existimantēs*: 'thinking that an immediate attack is to be made on them'; for *veniri* see § 66.

165 4 *portās*: the gates of the town; these were closed to prevent those who manned the exterior defenses from rushing into the town in a panic.

165 11 CHAP. 71. *suas . . . sē*: referring to Vercingetorix (§ 133).—*neu*: 'and not,' the regular way of continuing a neg. purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of *neu*.

165 14 *Ratiōne initā*: 'having made a calculation.'

165 17 *nostrum opus (erat) intermissum*: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.

165 21 *cōpiās omnēs*: not those holding the fortification east of the town (p. 164, ll. 7–10), but all the outlying pickets elsewhere.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Before beginning an analysis of the passages in indirect discourse study carefully §§ 202-213 in the Grammar.

NOTES ON THE PASSAGES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

In general, in analyzing constructions in indirect discourse, first be sure to get the meaning of the passage; next consider what the direct quotation would be; and then determine the reasons for the changes in mood and tense.

In the analysis of the following passages it will be well for the pupil to compare carefully the passages in indirect discourse with the corresponding passages of the direct as given in the first two books of this text.

BOOK I

199 1 CHAP. 13. **Si . . . voluisset:** in the dir. disc. of this statement (p. 20, l. 17), the subj. of the main clause is *Helvëtiî* and the preds. are *ibunt* and *erunt*. These verbs become fut. inf. (§ 204), while *Helvëtiî* becomes accusative, *Helvëtiôs* (§ 92), with which the fut. participles in the inf. (*itûrôs, futûrôs*) agree.

The first subord. verb, *faciet*, becomes subjv. (§ 208); and the tense is past (§ 209 and note), because the main verb on which the whole passage depends is the perf. *egit*, a secondary tense (§§ 161, 162). On the same principle the other subord. verbs, *cônstitueris* and *volueris*, are changed to the subjv. mood (§ 208) and the past perfect tense (§ 209 and note).

199 4 *sîn bellô . . . Helvëtiôrum:* in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 20), the main verb is the impv. *reminiscere*, which becomes subjv. (§ 205), and takes the past by the rules of sequence.

199 6 **Quod . . . dēspiceret:** in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 22), the main verb is *nōlî*, with the inf. *tribuere* and *dēspicere*. These expressions are changed to past subjvs., *tribueret* and *dēspiceret*, with *nē* (§§ 162, 206). The subord. verbs *adortus es* and *trānsierant* are changed regularly to the past perfect subjv.; *possent*, being already subjv. (§ 194. b), remains in the same form.

199 9 *ipsōs . . . sē*: both these pronouns were *nōs* in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24); for their equivalence to each other see § 136. *a*. *Ipsōs* is essentially emphatic, *sē* not especially so; hence *ipsōs* is appropriate to the emphatic contrast with *suae*; moreover, *sē* referring to the Helvetii could not without confusion have been used in the same sentence with *suae* referring to Cæsar. — *sē . . . nīterentur*: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24), the main verb is *didicimus*, which is changed regularly to the inf. *didicisse*. The subord. verbs, *contendāmus* and *nīlāmur*, are already subjvs. (§ 179) and remain in the same mood, but are changed from the present to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 11 *Quā rē . . . prōderet*: in the dir. disc. (p. 21, l. 2), the main verb is *nōlī*, which with *committere* is changed to *nē committeret* (cf. note on l. 6). The subord. verb *cōstitimus* becomes past perfect subjv. regularly; while *capiat* and *prōdat*, being already in the subjv. (§ 187. I), remain in the same mood, but are changed to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 18 CHAP. 14. *fuisse*: this represents the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in past time, and stands for *fuit* in the dir. disc. If the dir. form had been *fuisset*, as we might have expected (§ 199. III. *b*), we should have had *futūrum fuisse* in the indir. (§ 213. *a*). — *dēceptum*: sc. *esse*.

199 19 *commissum*: sc. *esse*. This depends on *intellegeret*, a verb of thinking, and is thus in indir. disc. within indir. disc.

199 24 *posse*: a main verb in a rhetorical question (§ 207. II. *a*).

200 4 *doleant*: we might have expected *dolērent*; see § 162 and § 163. *a*. The same principle applies to *velint*, which might have been *vellent*; it applies also to the remaining subord. verbs in the chapter.

200 14 CHAP. 17. Note that most of the subord. verbs in this chapter would be in the subjv. in the dir. disc. All these, of course, simply remain in the subjv., subject to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

201 12 CHAP. 18. *Sī quid accidat*: a less probable fut. condition (§ 199. II. *b*) in indir. disc. In indir. disc. the more probable and the less probable fut. condition have the same form and cannot be distinguished (§§ 210, 211).

201 23 CHAP. 20. *Quod sī . . . accidisset*: do not mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. form was *acciderit*, 'if anything shall have happened' (§ 199. II. *a*).

201 25 *futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur*: see § 212.

202 6 CHAP. 31. *Nōn minus* etc.: the verb of saying is easily understood (§ 203. *a*).

203 7 *Futūrum esse . . . utī . . . pellerentur*: see § 212.

203 32 CHAP. 32. *velut sī cōram adesset*: be careful not to mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. disc. was *velut sī . . . adsit* (§ 200 and note).

204 5 CHAP. 34. *ipsī*: for *mihī* of the dir. disc. For this use of the intensive pronoun for the reflexive see note on p. 199, l. 9, and § 136. *a*.

204 6 *ventūrum fuisse*: the regular form for the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in indir. disc. (§ 213. a).

204 14 CHAP. 35. Throughout this chapter Cæsar is speaking to the ambassadors. The references to Ariovistus, therefore, are in the third person.

204 26 *Si . . . fēcisset*: a more probable fut. condition representing the fut. perf. ind. in dir. disc.

205 9 CHAP. 36. *quī . . . faceret*: note that this would be *faciat* in the dir. disc. (§ 190).

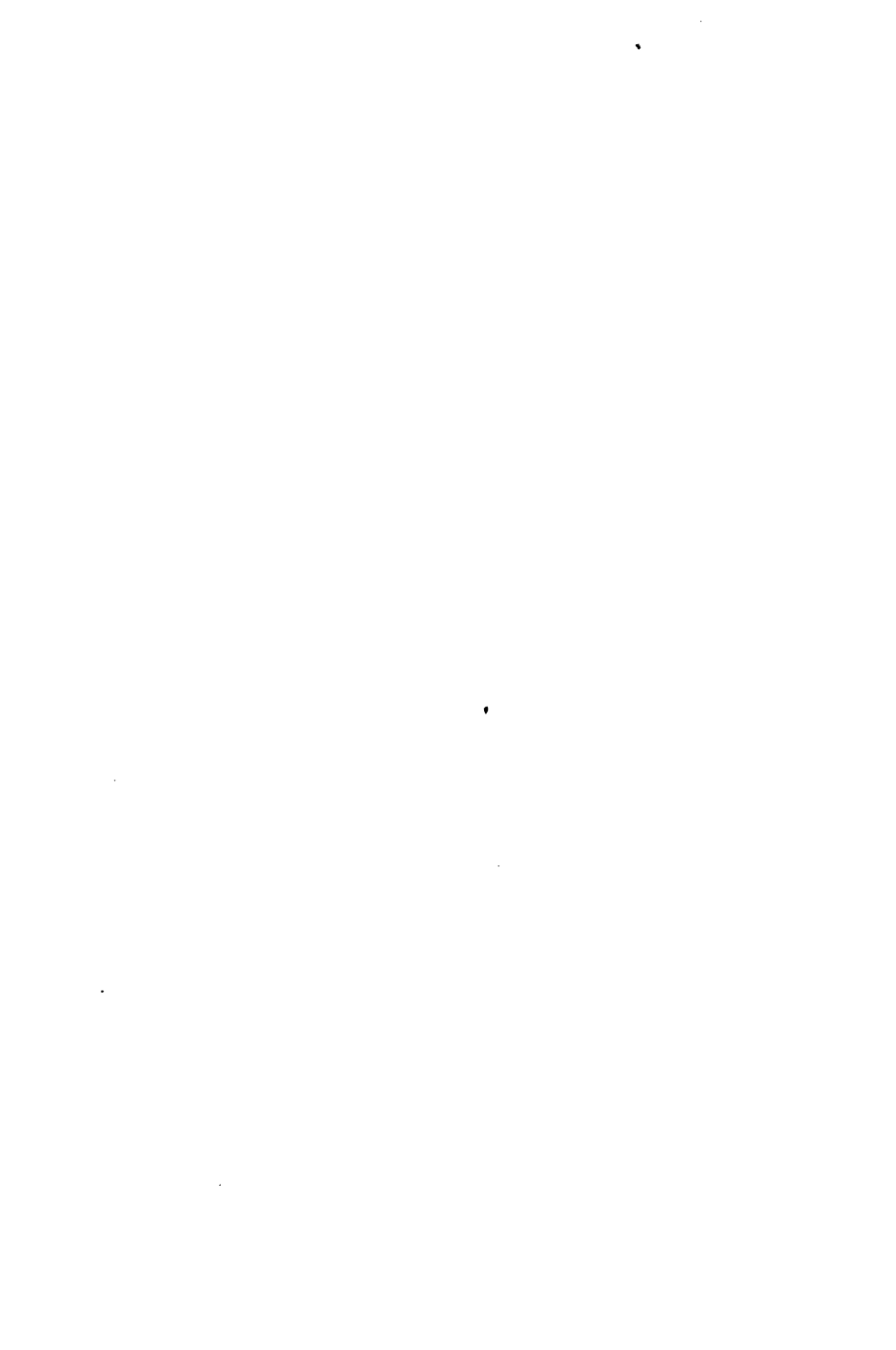
205 26 CHAP. 40. *iūdicāret*: a deliberative question in the dir. disc. (§ 172. d and note); *verērentur* and *dēspērārent* following are in the same construction; for the change to indir. disc. see § 207. II. b.

206 12 *Si . . . commovēret*: a non-committal condition in indir. disc. (§§ 199. I. a, 210).

BOOK II

210 28 CHAP. 14. *inciderint*: in dir. disc. this would be *incidērunt* in a past non-committal condition (§ 199. III. a).

211 8 CHAP. 15. *dēdidissent*: this would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.; so also *prōiēcissent* (§ 190).





From the painting by Sir Edward Poynter
THE IDES OF MARCH
(See page 8)

ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION — *Ā*-stems, Gen. Sing. *-ae*

SECOND DECLENSION — *O*-stems, Gen. Sing. *-ī*

THIRD DECLENSION — Consonant stems and *I*-stems, Gen. Sing. *-is*

FOURTH DECLENSION — *U*-stems, Gen. Sing. *-ūs*

FIFTH DECLENSION — *Ē*-stems, Gen. Sing. *-ī*

a. The *base* of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. The *stem* is formed from the base by adding to it the distinguishing vowel of the declension. Observe below the *base* and *stem* of *domina*.

2. FIRST DECLENSION. *Ā*-STEMS

domina, lady STEM *dominā-* BASE *domin-*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
		TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domina</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>dominae</i>		<i>-ae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dominae</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>dominārum</i>		<i>-ārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dominae</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>dominis</i>		<i>-is</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dominam</i>	<i>-am</i>	<i>dominās</i>		<i>-ās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dominā</i>	<i>-ā</i>	<i>dominīs</i>		<i>-īs</i>

a. *Dea* and *filia* have the termination *-abus* in the dative and ablative plural.

3.

SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

a. MASCULINES IN -us

	dominus, master	STEM domīno-	BASE domin-	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
Nom.	dominus	-us	dominī	-ī
Gen.	dominī	-ī	dominōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	dominō	-ō	dominīs	-īs
Acc.	dominum	-um	dominōs	-ōs
Abl.	dominō	-ō	dominīs	-īs

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as *domine*.

2. Proper names in -ius, and *filius*, end in -ī in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as *Vergī'li*, *filī*.

b. NEUTERS IN -um

	pīlum, spear	STEM pīlo-	BASE pīl-	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
Nom.	pīlum	-um	pīla	-a
Gen.	pīlī	-ī	pīlōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	pīlō	-ō	pīlīs	-īs
Acc.	pīlum	-um	pīla	-a
Abl.	pīlō	-ō	pīlīs	-īs

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -um end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -īi, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

	puer, boy	ager, field	vir, man
STEMS	puero-	agro-	viro-
BASES	puer-	agr-	vir-
	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puer	ager	vir
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō

		PLURAL		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

4.

THIRD DECLENSION

CLASSIFICATION	I. CONSONANT STEMS	1. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only. 2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: <i>a.</i> masculines and feminines; <i>ē.</i> neuters.
	II. <i>I</i> -STEMS	Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

5.

I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. *Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only*

	princeps, m., chief	mīles, m., soldier	lapis, m., stone	
BASES OR STEMS	} princip-	milit-	lapid-	
SINGULAR				
			TERMINATIONS	
Nom.	prīnceps	mīles ¹	lapis ¹	-s
Gen.	prīncipis	militis	lapidis	-is
Dat.	prīncipī	militī	lapidī	-ī
Acc.	prīncipem	militem	lapidem	-em
Abl.	prīncipe	militē	lapide	-e
PLURAL				
Nom.	prīncipēs	militēs	lapidēs	-ēs
Gen.	prīncipum	militum	lapidum	-um
Dat.	prīncipibus	militibus	lapidibus	-ibus
Acc.	prīncipēs	militēs	lapidēs	-ēs
Abl.	prīncipibus	militibus	lapidibus	-ibus

¹ In the nominative a final -t or -d of the stem is dropped before -s.

	<i>rēx</i> , m., <i>king</i>	<i>iūdex</i> , m., <i>judge</i>	<i>virtūs</i> , f., <i>virtue</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<i>rēg-</i>	<i>iūdic-</i>	<i>virtūt-</i>	
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēx</i> ¹	<i>iūdex</i> ¹	<i>virtūs</i> ¹	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>iūdicis</i>	<i>virtūtis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>iūdicī</i>	<i>virtūtī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>iūdicem</i>	<i>virtutem</i>	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>iūdice</i>	<i>virtute</i>	-e
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>iūdicum</i>	<i>virtutum</i>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	-ibus

2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

	<i>cōsul</i> , m., <i>consul</i>	<i>legiō</i> , f., <i>legion</i>	<i>ōrdō</i> , m., <i>row</i>	<i>pater</i> , m., <i>father</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<i>consul-</i>	<i>legiōn-</i>	<i>ōrdin-</i>	<i>patr-</i>	
	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōsul</i>	<i>legiō</i> ²	<i>ōrdō</i> ²	<i>pater</i>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōsulis</i>	<i>legiōnis</i>	<i>ōrdinis</i>	<i>patris</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōsuli</i>	<i>legiōnī</i>	<i>ōrdinī</i>	<i>patrī</i>	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōsulem</i>	<i>legiōnem</i>	<i>ōrdinem</i>	<i>patrem</i>	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōsule</i>	<i>legiōne</i>	<i>ōrdine</i>	<i>patre</i>	-e
	PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>ōrdinēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>legiōnum</i>	<i>ōrdinum</i>	<i>patrum</i>	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>ōrdinibus</i>	<i>patribus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>ōrdinēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>ōrdinibus</i>	<i>patribus</i>	-ibus

¹ In the nominative a final -c or -g of the stem unites with -s and forms -x; and a final -t or -d is dropped.

² Stems in -in and -en drop -a and end in -ēs in the nominative.

b. NEUTERS

BASES OR STEMS		<i>flūmen</i> , n., <i>river</i>	<i>tempus</i> , n., <i>time</i>	<i>opus</i> , n., <i>work</i>	<i>caput</i> , n., <i>head</i>
		flūmin-	tempor-	oper-	capit-
SINGULAR					
					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminis	temporis	operis	capitis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminī	temporī	operī	capitī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmine	tempore	opere	capite	-e
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminum	temporum	operum	capitum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus

NOTE. Most stems in -er and -or have -us in the nominative singular.

6.

II. I-STEMS

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

		<i>caedēs</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i>	<i>hostis</i> , m., <i>enemy</i>	<i>urbs</i> , f., <i>city</i>	<i>cliēs</i> , m., <i>retainer</i>
STEMS		caedi-	hosti-	urbi-	clienti-
BASES		caed-	host-	urb-	client-
SINGULAR					
					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostis	urbs	cliēs	-s, -is, or -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedis	hostis	urbis	clientis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	caedī	hostī	urbī	clientī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	caedem	hostem	urbem	clientem	-em (-im)
<i>Abl.</i>	caede	hoste	urbe	cliente	-e (-ī)
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostēs	urbēs	clientēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedium	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	caedis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	clientis, -ēs	-is, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

1. *Avis*, *civis*, *finis*, *ignis*, *nāvis*, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -e.
2. *Turris* has accusative *turrim* and ablative *turrī* or *turre*.

b. NEUTERS

	insigne, n., decoration	animal, n., animal	calcar, n., spur
STEMS	insigni-	animāli-	calcāri-
BASES	insign-	animāl-	calcār-

	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	insigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
<i>Gen.</i>	insignis	animālis	calcāris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	insignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	insigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
<i>Abl.</i>	insignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī

	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	insignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	insignium	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	insignibus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	insignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	insignibus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus

7. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

	adventus, m., arrival		cornū, n., horn	
STEM	adventu-	BASE advent-	STEM cornu-	BASE corn-
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
			MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	adventuī (ū)	cornū	-uī (ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

8.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION. *Ē*-STEMS

<i>diēs, m., day</i>		<i>rēs, f., thing</i>	
STEM	<i>diē-</i>	STEM	<i>rē-</i>
BASE <i>di-</i>		BASE <i>r-</i>	
		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>-ēī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>-em</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

9.

SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	<i>deus, m., god</i>	<i>domus, f., house</i>	<i>vis, f., strength</i>	<i>iter, n., way</i>
STEMS	<i>deo-</i>	<i>domu-</i>	<i>vī-</i> and <i>virī-</i>	<i>iter-</i> and <i>itiner-</i>
BASES	<i>de-</i>	<i>dom-</i>	<i>v-</i> and <i>vir-</i>	<i>iter-</i> and <i>itiner-</i>

SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dei</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>vīs</i> (rare)	<i>itineris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>domui, -ō</i>	<i>vī</i> (rare)	<i>itinerī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>deum</i>	<i>domum</i>	<i>vīm</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>domō, -ī</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>itinerē</i>
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dei, dī</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>virēs</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>deōrum, deum</i>	<i>domuum, -ōrum</i>	<i>virium</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>deīs, dīs</i>	<i>domibus</i>	<i>viribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>deōs</i>	<i>domōs, -ūs</i>	<i>virīs, -ēs</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>deīs, dīs</i>	<i>domibus</i>	<i>viribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

a. The vocative singular of *deus* is like the nominative.

b. The locative of *domus* is *domī*.

ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O-STEMS AND Ā-STEMS

a. ADJECTIVES IN -us

bonus, good STEMS *bono-* m. and n., *bonā-* f. BASE *bon-*

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

b. ADJECTIVES IN -er

liber, free STEMS *libero-* m. and n., *liberā-* f. BASE *liber-*

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberō</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>	<i>liberārum</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberōs</i>	<i>liberās</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>

pulcher, pretty STEMS **pulchro-** m. and n., **pulchrā-** f. BASE **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

11. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, another STEMS **alio-** m. and n., **aliā-** f. BASE **ali-**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aliū	aliā	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

ūnus, one, only STEMS **ūno-** m. and n., **ūnā-** f. BASE **ūn-**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

a. So also **ūllus, nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, alter (altera, alterum), uter (utrum), neuter (neutra, neutrum).**

12. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

	acer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen, eager</i>			STEM ācri-	BASE ācr-		
	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria	
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	

II. TWO ENDINGS

	omnis, omne, <i>every, all</i>		STEM omni-	BASE omn-
	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	omnem	omne	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

III. ONE ENDING

	pār, <i>equal</i>		STEM pari-	BASE par-
	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pār	pār	parēs	paria
<i>Gen.</i>	paris	paris	parium	parium
<i>Dat.</i>	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
<i>Acc.</i>	parem	pār	parīs, -ēs	paria
<i>Abl.</i>	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.

13. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

amāns, *loving* STEM amanti- BASE amant-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantis, -ēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus

iēns, *going* STEM ienti-, eunti- BASE ient-, eunt-

<i>Nom.</i>	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
<i>Gen.</i>	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
<i>Dat.</i>	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
<i>Acc.</i>	euntem	iēns	euntis, -ēs	euntia
<i>Abl.</i>	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

14. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE		COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE	
MASC.		MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM. NEUT.
altus (alto-)		altior	altius	altissimus	-a -um
liber (libero-)		liberior	liberius	liberrimus	-a -um
pulcher (pulchro-)		pulchrior	pulchrius	pulcherrimus	-a -um
audāx (audāci-)		audācior	audācius	audācissimus	-a -um
breviſ (breſi-)		brevior	brevius	brevissimus	-a -um
ācer (ācri-)		ācior	ācius	ācerrimus	-a -um

15. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

altior, *higher*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

		<i>plūs, more</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūris (-ēs)	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

16. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	mellor, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	senior	maximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>similar</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>dissimilar</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i>	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i>	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, <i>outer, exterior</i>	extrēmus } <i>outermost,</i> extimus } <i>last</i>
īferus, <i>below</i>	īferior, <i>lower</i>	īnfimus } <i>lowest</i> īmus }
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus } <i>last</i> postumus }
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus } <i>highest</i> summus }
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i>]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i>]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior, <i>further</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest</i>

17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (cārus), <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser), <i>wretchedly</i>	miserius	miserrimē
ācritē (ācer), <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis), <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
bene (bonus), <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male (malus), <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum (multus), <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saeppissimē

19. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ūnus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

CARDINALS (How many)	ORDINALS (In what order)
1, ūnus, -a, -um <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um <i>first</i>
2, duo, duae, duo <i>two</i>	secundus (or alter) <i>second</i>
3, trēs, tria <i>three,</i>	tertius <i>third,</i>
4, quattuor <i>etc.</i>	quārtus <i>etc.</i>
5, quīque	quīntus
6, sex	sextus
7, septem	septimus
8, octō	octāvus
9, novem	nōnus
10, decem	decimus
11, ūndecim	ūndecimus
12, duodecim	duodecimus
13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)	tertius decimus
14, quattuordecim	quārtus decimus

CARDINALS

15, quīndecim
16, sēdecim
17, septēdecim
18, duodēvigintī (octōdecim)
19, ūndēvigintī (novēdecim)
20, vīgintī
21, { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī, etc.
30, trīgintā
40, quadrāgintā
50, quīnquāgintā
60, sexāgintā
70, septuāgintā
80, octōgintā
90, nōnāgintā
100, centum
101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.
120, centum (et) vīgintī
121, centum (et) vīgintī ūnus, etc.
200, ducentī, -ae, -a
300, trecentī
400, quadringentī
500, quīngentī
600, sexcentī
700, septingentī
800, octingentī
900, nōngentī
1000, mille

ORDINALS

quīntus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodēvicēsimus
ūndēvicēsimus
vicēsimus
{ vicēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vicēsimus, etc.
trīcēsimus
quadrāgēsimus
quīnquāgēsimus
sexāgēsimus
septuāgēsimus
octōgēsimus
nōnāgēsimus
centēsimus
centēsimus (et) prīmus, etc.
centēsimus vicēsimus
centēsimus (et) vicēsimus prīmus
ducentēsimus
trecentēsimus
quadringentēsimus
quīngentēsimus
sexcentēsimus
septingentēsimus
octingentēsimus
nōngentēsimus
mīllēsimus

20. Declension of *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, and *mille*, *a thousand*.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
<i>G.</i> duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mille	mīlium
<i>D.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus
<i>A.</i> duōs <i>or</i> duo	duās	duo	trīs <i>or</i> trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
<i>A.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus

NOTE. *Mille* is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of *ūnus* cf. § 11.

PRONOUNS

21.

PERSONAL

FIRST PERSON			SECOND PERSON	
SING. <i>ego, I</i> ; PLUR. <i>nōs, we</i>			SING. <i>tū, thou, you</i> ; PLUR. <i>vōs, you</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrum, -trī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrum, -trī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

a. The demonstrative pronoun *is, ea, id* is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

22.

REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON			SECOND PERSON		THIRD PERSON
SING. <i>me, myself</i>			SING. <i>thee, you, yourself</i>		SING. <i>him(her,it)self</i>
PLUR. <i>us, ourselves</i>			PLUR. <i>you, yourselves</i>		PLUR. <i>themselves</i>
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING. AND PLUR.
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

NOTE. Reflexive pronouns have no nominative.

23.

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

The possessive pronominal adjectives *my, mine, your, yours*, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR

<i>1st Pers. meus, mea, meum</i>	<i>my, mine</i>
<i>2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum</i>	<i>your, yours</i>
<i>3d Pers. suus, sua, suum</i>	<i>his (own), her (own), its (own)</i>

PLURAL

<i>1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum</i>	<i>our, ours</i>
<i>2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum</i>	<i>your, yours</i>
<i>3d Pers. suus, sua, suum</i>	<i>their (own), theirs</i>

NOTE. *Meus* has the irregular vocative singular masculine *mī*; as, *mī fili*, *O my son*.

24. *Suus* is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject; as, *puer patrem suum videt*, *the boy sees his (own) father*; *agricolae agrōs suos amant*, *the farmers love their (own) fields*.

When not reflexive, *his*, *her*, and *its* are usually expressed by *eius*, the genitive singular of *is*, *ea*, *id*; and *their* by *eōrum* (masculine and neuter) and *eārum* (feminine), the genitive plural of *is*, *ea*, *id*. Thus:

puer patrem eius videt, *the boy sees his (not his own) father*
agricolae agrōs eōrum amant, *the farmers love their (not their own) fields*

25.

INTENSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE

These pronouns belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings *-ius* and *-i* in the genitive and dative singular.

<i>ipse, self</i>						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsī'us</i>	<i>ipsī'us</i>	<i>ipsī'us</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

<i>hic, this (here), he</i>						
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

<i>iste, this, that (of yours), he</i>						
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>istī'us</i>	<i>istī'us</i>	<i>istī'us</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>

ille, that (yonder), he

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

is, this, that, he

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

Idem, the same

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	idem	{ iī'dem eī'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
<i>Dat.</i>	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem
<i>Acc.</i>	eun'dem	ean'dem	idem	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem	{ iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem

NOTE. In the plural the two i's in *iīdem* and *iīsdem* are pronounced as one, and the forms are sometimes written *īdem* and *īsdem*.

26.

RELATIVE

quī, who, which, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

27.

INTERROGATIVE

quis, substantive, *who*, *what*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

The interrogative adjective *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, is declined like the relative.

28.

INDEFINITES

quis and *quī*, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (*some*, *any*). The other indefinites are compounds of *quis* and *quī*.

quisque, *each*

SUBSTANTIVE			ADJECTIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quisque</i>	<i>quidque</i>	<i>quisque</i>	<i>quaeque</i>	<i>quodque</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>	<i>cuius'que</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>	<i>cuique</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quemque</i>	<i>quidque</i>	<i>quemque</i>	<i>quamque</i>	<i>quodque</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quōque</i>	<i>quōque</i>	<i>quōque</i>	<i>quāque</i>	<i>quōque</i>

29.

quīdam, *a certain one*, *a certain*

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has *quoddam* and the substantive *quiddam*.

SINGULAR		
	MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quoddam</i> <i>quiddam (subst.)</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius'dam</i>	<i>cuius'dam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quendam</i>	<i>quoddam</i> <i>quiddam (subst.)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>

¹ *qua* is generally used instead of *quae* in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrun'dam	quārun'dam	quōrun'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam

30. *quisquam*, substantive, *any one* (at all)

MASC. AND FEM.

NEUT.

<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'quam	cuius'quam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quōquam

31. *aliquis*, substantive, *some one*. *aliqui*, adjective, *some*

SINGULAR

SUBSTANTIVE

ADJECTIVE

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliqui	aliqua	aliquod
<i>Gen.</i>	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'iusq
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

a. quis (quī), *any one, any*, is the least definite of these. *aliquis (aliqui)*, *some one, some*, is more definite than *quis*. *quisquam*, *any one* (at all), and its adjective *ullus*, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.

REGULAR VERBS

32. FIRST CONJUGATION. *A*-VERBS. **AMŌ**PRINCIPAL PARTS **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**PRES. STEM **amā-** PERF. STEM **amāv-** PART. STEM **amāt-**

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris, -re	amāmini
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris, -re	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

FUTURE

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis, -re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT

*I have loved, loved, did love, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī	amāvimus	amātus, -a, -um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	amātī, -ae, -a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
amāvisti	amāvistis				
amāvit	amāverunt, -re				

PAST PERFECT

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus, -a, -um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	amātī, -ae, -a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
amāverās	amāverātis				
amāverat	amāverant				

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō	amāverimus	amātus, -a, -um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	amātī, -ae, -a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
amāveris	amāveritis				
amāverit	amāverint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem	amēmus	amet	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

PAST

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus, { sim	amāti, { simus
amāveris	amāveritis	essis	sitis
amāverit	amāverint	-a, -um { sit	-ae, -a { sint

PAST PERFECT

amāvíssem	amāvíssemus	amātus, { essem	amāti, { essēmus
amāvísseis	amāvíssetis	essēs	essētis
amāvísset	amāvíssetint	-a, -um { esset	-ae, -a { essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, <i>love thou</i>	amāre, <i>be thou loved</i>
amāte, <i>love ye</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved</i>

FUTURE

amātō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>
amātō, <i>he shall love</i>	amātor, <i>he shall be loved</i>
amātōte, <i>you shall love</i>	_____
amantō, <i>they shall love</i>	amantor, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. amāre, <i>to love</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>
Perf. amāvísse, <i>to have loved</i>	amātus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been loved</i>
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	amātum irī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>

PARTICIPLES

Pres. amāns, -antis, <i>loving</i>	Pres. _____
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to love</i>	Gerundive ¹ amandus, -a, -um, <i>to be loved</i>
Past _____	Past amātus, -a, -um, <i>having been loved, loved</i>

GERUND

Nom. _____
Gen. amandī, <i>of loving</i>
Dat. amandō, <i>for loving</i>
Acc. amandum, <i>loving</i>
Abh. amandō, <i>by loving</i>

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. amātum, <i>to love</i>
Abl. amātū, <i>to love, in the loving</i>

¹ Sometimes called the future passive participle.

33. SECOND CONJUGATION. *Ē*-VERBS. *MONEŌ*PRINCIPAL PARTS *moneŏ, monēre, monuī, monitus*PRES. STEM *monē-* PERF. STEM *monu-* PART. STEM *monit-*

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

<i>moneŏ</i>	<i>monēmus</i>
<i>monēs</i>	<i>monētis</i>
<i>monet</i>	<i>monent</i>

<i>moneor</i>	<i>monēmur</i>
<i>monēris, -re</i>	<i>monēmini</i>
<i>monētur</i>	<i>monentur</i>

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

<i>monēbam</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>
<i>monēbās</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>
<i>monēbat</i>	<i>monēbant</i>

<i>monēbar</i>	<i>monēbāmur</i>
<i>monēbāris, -re</i>	<i>monēbāmini</i>
<i>monēbātur</i>	<i>monēbantur</i>

FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

<i>monēbō</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>

<i>monēbor</i>	<i>monēbimur</i>
<i>monēberis, -re</i>	<i>monēbimini</i>
<i>monēbitur</i>	<i>monēbuntur</i>

PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

<i>monuī</i>	<i>monuimus</i>
<i>monuistī</i>	<i>monuistis</i>
<i>monuit</i>	<i>monuerunt, -re</i>

<i>monitus, -a, -um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	<i>monitī, -ae, -a</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
-------------------------	--	------------------------	--

PAST PERFECT

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

<i>monueram</i>	<i>monuerāmus</i>
<i>monuerās</i>	<i>monuerātis</i>
<i>monuerat</i>	<i>monuerant</i>

<i>monitus, -a, -um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	<i>monitī, -ae, -a</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
-------------------------	--	------------------------	---

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

<i>monuerō</i>	<i>monuerimus</i>
<i>monueris</i>	<i>monueritis</i>
<i>monuerit</i>	<i>monuerint</i>

<i>monitus, -a, -um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	<i>monitī, -ae, -a</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
-------------------------	---	------------------------	---

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, -re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātūr	moneantur

PAST

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētūr	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus, -a, -um	sim	monitū, -ae, -a	sīmus
monueris	monueritis		sis		sītis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

PAST PERFECT

monuissē	monuissēmus	monitus, -a, -um	essem	monitū, -ae, -a	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, advise thou	monēre, be thou advised
monēte, advise ye	monēmini, be ye advised

FUTURE

monētō, thou shalt advise	monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētō, he shall advise	monētor, he shall be advised
monētōte, you shall advise	
monentō, they shall advise	monentor, they shall be advised

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre, to advise	monērī, to be advised
Perf. monuisse, to have advised	monitus, -a, -um esse, to have been advised
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise	monitum iri, to be about to be advised

PARTICIPLES

Pres. monēns, -entis, advising	Pres. ———
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise	Ger. monendus, -a, -um, to be advised
Past ———	Past monitus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised

GERUND

Nom. ———
Gen. monendī, of advising
Dat. monendō, for advising
Acc. monendum, advising
Abl. monendō, by advising

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. monitum, to advise
Abl. monitū, to advise, in the advising

34. THIRD CONJUGATION. *Ē*-VERBS. *REGŌ*PRINCIPAL PARTS *regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus*PRES. STEM *rego-* PERF. STEM *rēx-* PART. STEM *rēct-*

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

regō regimus
regis regitis
regit regunt

re'gor re'gimur
re'geris, -re regimini
re'gitur reguntur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

*I was ruling, etc.**I was ruled, etc.*

regēbam regēbāmus
regēbās regēbātis
regēbat regēbant

regē'bar regēbā'mur
regēbā'ris, -re regēbā'mini
regēbā'tur regēban'tur

FUTURE

*I shall rule, etc.**I shall be ruled, etc.*

regam regēmus
regēs regētis
reget regent

re'gar regē'mur
regē'ris, -re regē'mini
regē'tur regen'tur

PERFECT

*I have ruled, etc.**I have been ruled, etc.*

rēxī rēximus
rēxistī rēxistis
rēxit rēxērunt, -re

rēctus, { sum rēctī, { sumus
-a, -um { es -ae, -a { estis
est sunt

PAST PERFECT

*I had ruled, etc.**I had been ruled, etc.*

rēxeram rēxerāmus
rēxerās rēxerātis
rēxerat rēxerant

rēctus, { eram rēctī, { erāmus
-a, -um { erās -ae, -a { erātis
erat erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled, etc.**I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēxerō rēxerimus
rēxeris rēxeritis
rēxerit rēxerint

rēctus, { erō rēctī, { erimus
-a, -um { eris -ae, -a { eritis
erit erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, -re	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

PAST

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus, {	rēcti, {
rēxeris	rēxeritis	sim	simus
rēxerit	rēxerint	sis	sitis
		sit	sint

PAST PERFECT

rēxissem	rēxissemus	rēctus, {	rēcti, {
rēxisseās	rēxisseātis	essem	essemus
rēxisset	rēxisseent	essēs	essētis
		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rege, rule thou¹	regere, be thou ruled
regite, rule ye	regimini, be ye ruled

FUTURE

regitō, thou shalt rule	regitor, thou shalt be ruled
regitō, he shall rule	regitor, he shall be ruled
regitōte, ye shall rule	
reguntō, they shall rule	reguntor, they shall be ruled

INFINITIVE

Pres. regere, to rule	regī, to be ruled	[ruled
Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled	rēctus, -a, -um esse, to have been	ruled
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be	rēctum iri, to be about to be ruled	
about to rule		

PARTICIPLES

Pres. regēs, -entis, ruling	Pres. ———
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to	Ger. regendus, -a, -um, to be
rule	ruled
Past ———	Past rēctus, -a, -um, having been
	ruled, ruled

GERUND

Nom. ———	
Gen. regendī, of ruling	
Dat. regendō, for ruling	
Acc. regendum, ruling	
Abl. regendō, by ruling	

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. rēctum, to rule	
Abl. rēctū, to rule, in the ruling	

¹ The corresponding imperative forms for the four verbs *dicō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō* are *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*.

35. FOURTH CONJUGATION. *Ī*-VERBS. **AUDIŌ**PRINCIPAL PARTS **audiŏ, audĭre, audĭvĭ, audĭtus**PRES. STEM **audĭ-**PERF. STEM **audĭv-**PART. STEM **audĭt-**

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiŏ	audimus
audis	auditis
audit	audiunt

au'dior	audĭ'mur
audĭ'ris, -re	audĭ'mini
audĭ'tur	audiun'tur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

*I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiĕbam	audiĕbāmus
audiĕbās	audiĕbātis
audiĕbat	audiĕbant

audiĕ'bar	audiĕbā'mur
audiĕbā'ris, -re	audiĕbā'mini
audiĕbā'tur	audiĕban'tur

FUTURE

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

au'diar	audiē'mur
audiē'ris, -re	audiē'mini
audiē'tur	audien'tur

PERFECT

*I have heard, etc.**I have been heard, etc.*

audĭvĭ	audĭvimus
audĭvistĭ	audĭvistis
audĭvit	audĭvērunt, -re

audĭtus, {	sum	audĭtĭ, {	sumus
-a, -um	es	-ae, -a	estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audĭveram	audĭverāmus
audĭverās	audĭverātis
audĭverat	audĭverant

audĭtus, {	eram	audĭtĭ, {	erāmus
-a, -um	erās	-ae, -a	erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audĭverŏ	audĭverimus
audĭveris	audĭveritis
audĭverit	audĭverint

audĭtus, {	erŏ	audĭtĭ, {	erimus
-a, -um	eris	-ae, -a	eritis
	erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

PAST

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, -re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus, {	auditi, {
audiveris	audiveritis	-a, -um {	-ae, -a {
audiverit	audiverint	sis	sitis
		sit	sint

PAST PERFECT

audivissem	audivissemus	auditus, {	auditi, {
audivissēs	audivissētis	-a, -um {	-ae, -a {
audivisset	audivissent	essem	essēmus
		essēs	essētis
		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, hear thou	audire, be thou heard
audite, hear ye	audimini, be ye heard

FUTURE

auditō, thou shalt hear	auditor, thou shalt be heard
auditō, he shall hear	auditor, he shall be heard
auditōte, ye shall hear	
audiuntō, they shall hear	audiuntor, they shall be heard

INFINITIVE

Pres. audire, to hear	audiri, to be heard
Perf. audivisse, to have heard	auditus, -a, -um esse, to have been heard
Fut. auditurus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear	auditum iri, to be about to be heard

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, -entis, hearing	Pres. ———
Fut. auditurus, -a, -um, about to hear	Ger. audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard
Past ———	Past auditus, -a, -um, having been heard, heard

GERUND

Nom. ———	
Gen. audiendī, of hearing	
Dat. audiendō, for hearing	
Acc. audiendum, hearing	
Abl. audiendō, by hearing	

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. auditum, to hear	
Abl. auditū, to hear, in the hearing	

36. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. CAPIŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS capiŏ, capere, cēpi, captus

PRES. STEM cape- PERF. STEM cēp- PART. STEM capt-

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

capiŏ	capimus	ca'pior	ca'pimur
capis	capitis	ca'peris, -re	cap'i'minī
capit	capiunt	ca'pitur	capiu'n'tur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiē'bar	capiēbā'mur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbā'ris, -re	capiēbā'minī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbā'tur	capiēban'tur

FUTURE

capiam	capiemus	ca'piar	capie'mur
capies	capietis	capie'ris, -re	capie'minī
capiet	capient	capie'tur	capien'tur

PERFECT

cēpi, cēpisti, cēpit, etc.	captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.
----------------------------	------------------------------------

PAST PERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.	captus, -a, -um eram, erās, erat, etc.
---------------------------------	--

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.	captus, -a, -um erō, eris, erit, etc.
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.	capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

PAST

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.	caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------

PERFECT

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc.	captus, -a, -um sim, sis, sit, etc.
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------

PAST PERFECT

cēpissem, cēpiassēs, cēpisset, etc.	captus, -a, -um essem, essēs, esset, etc.
-------------------------------------	---

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d Pers. cape	capite	capere	capimini
---------------	--------	--------	----------

FUTURE

<i>2d Pers.</i> capitō	capitōte	capitor	—
<i>3d Pers.</i> capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um esse	captum irī

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns, -ientis	<i>Pres.</i> —
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i> capiendus, -a, -um
<i>Past</i> —	<i>Past</i> captus, -a, -um

GERUND

Gen. capiendi
etc.

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. captum
Abl. captū

37.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS	I.	hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, <i>urge</i>
	II.	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
	III.	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
	IV.	partior, partīrī, partitus sum, <i>share, divide</i>

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortor	vereor	sequor	partior
hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partiris, -re
hortātur	verētur	sequitur	partitur
hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	partimur
hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partiminī
hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
<i>P.D.</i> hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
<i>Fut.</i> hortābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partitus sum
<i>P.P.</i> hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partitus eram
<i>F.P.</i> hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	sequar	partiar
<i>Past</i>	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	partīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
<i>P.P.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortātūrus esse	*veritūrus esse	*secūtūrus esse	*partitūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	*hortāns	*verēns	*sequēns	*partiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortātūrus	*veritūrus	*secūtūrus	*partitūrus
<i>Past</i>	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
<i>Ger.</i>	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

*hortandī, etc.	*verendī, etc.	*sequendī, etc.	*partiendī, etc.
-----------------	----------------	-----------------	------------------

SUPINE

*hortātum, -tū	*veritum, -tū	*secūtum, -tū	*partitum, -tū
----------------	---------------	---------------	----------------

38. I. Active Periphrastic Conjugation :

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
<i>Past Descr.</i>	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fui, <i>I have been, was, about to love</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sim
<i>Past</i>	amātūrus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuisset

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love</i>

II. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation :

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
<i>Past Descr.</i>	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fui, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sim
<i>Past</i>	amandus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amandus fuisset

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS

39.

sum, am, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS sum, esse, fui, futūrus

PRES. STEM es- PERF. STEM fu- PART. STEM fut-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR
 sum, *I am*
 es, *thou art*
 est, *he (she, it) is*

PLURAL
 sumus, *we are*
 estis, *you are*
 sunt, *they are*

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

eram, *I was*
 erās, *thou wast*
 erat, *he was*

erāmus, *we were*
 erātis, *you were*
 erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*
eris, *thou wilt be*
erit, *he will be*

erimus, *we shall be*
eritis, *you will be*
erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fui, *I have been, was*
fuisti, *thou hast been, wast*
fuit, *he has been, was*

fuius, *we have been, were*
fuistis, *you have been, were*
fuērunt, } *they have been, were*
fuere, }

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*
fuerās, *thou hadst been*
fuerat, *he had been*

fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuero, *I shall have been*
fueris, *thou wilt have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*

fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	simus
sis	sitis
sit	sint

PERFECT

fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

PAST

SINGULAR	PLURAL
essem	essēmus
esses	essētis
esset	essent

PAST PERFECT

fuissem	fuissemus
fuissets	fuissetis
fuisset	fuisSENT

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d Pers. Sing. es, *be thou*
2d Pers. Plur. este, *be ye*

FUTURE

2d Pers. Sing. estō, *thou shalt be*
3d Pers. Sing. estō, *he shall be*
2d Pers. Plur. estōte, *ye shall be*
3d Pers. Plur. suntō, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, *to be*
Perf. fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futurus, -a, -um esse or fore,
to be about to be

PARTICIPLE

futurus, -a, -um, *about to be*

40.

possum, be able, canPRINCIPAL PARTS **possum, posse, potui, —**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	possum	pos'sumus		possim	possī'mus
	potes	potes'tis		possis	possī'tis
	potest	possunt		possit	possint
<i>Past</i>	poteram	poterāmus		possem	possē'mus
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	poterimus		—	—
<i>Perf.</i>	potui	potuimus		potuerim	potuerīmus
<i>P. P.</i>	potueram	potuerāmus		potuissem	potuissēmus
<i>F. P.</i>	potuerō	potuerimus		—	—

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse*Perf.* potuisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns, *gen.* -entis, (adjective) *powerful*

41.

prōsum, benefitPRINCIPAL PARTS **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfuturus**PRES. STEM **prōdes-** PERF. STEM **prōfu-** PART. STEM **prōfut-**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	prōsum	prō'sumus		prōsim	prōsī'mus
	prōdes	prōdes'tis		prōsis	prōsī'tis
	prōdest	prōsunt		prōsit	prōsint
<i>Past</i>	prōderam	prōderāmus		prōdessem	prodessē'mus
<i>Fut.</i>	prōderō	prōderimus		—	—
<i>Perf.</i>	prōfui	prōfuiimus		prōfuerim	prōfuerīmus
<i>P. P.</i>	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus		prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
<i>F. P.</i>	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		—	—

IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste*Fut. 2d Pers.* prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

Pres. prōdesse*Perf.* prōfuisse*Fut.* prōfuturus, -a, -um esseFUTURE PARTICIPLE **prōfuturus, -a, -um**

42.	PRINCIPAL PARTS	volō, velle, voluī, —, <i>be willing, will, wish</i>
		nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, <i>be unwilling, will not</i>
		mālō, mälle, mālūī, —, <i>be more willing, prefer</i>

Nōlō and mālō are compounds of volō. Nōlō is for *ne (not) + volō*, and mālō for *mā (from magis, more) + volō*. The second person *vīs* is from a different root.

INDICATIVE

		SINGULAR	
<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	volt	nōn volt	māvolt
		PLURAL	
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>P. D.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	mālūī
<i>P. P.</i>	voluēram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>F. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

		SINGULAR	
<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
		PLURAL	
	velī'mus	nōlī'mus	mālī'mus
	velī'tis	nōlī'tis	mālī'tis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Past</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>P. P.</i>	voluissē	nōluissē	māluissē

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	———	nōlī	———
		nōlite	
<i>Fut.</i>	———	nōlitō, etc.	———

INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nölle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nöluisse

PARTICIPLE		
<i>Pres.</i>	volēns, -entis	nölēns, -entis

43. ferō, bear, carry, endure

PRINCIPAL PARTS ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

PRES. STEM *fer-* PERF. STEM *tul-* PART. STEM *lāt-*

		INDICATIVE	
		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror
	fers	fertis	ferimur
	fert	ferunt	ferimini
			feruntur
<i>P. D.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		lātus, -a, -um sum
<i>P. P.</i>	tulcrām		lātus, -a, -um eram
<i>F. P.</i>	tulcrō		lātus, -a, -um erō

		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.	
<i>Past</i>	ferrem	ferrer	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sim	
<i>P. P.</i>	tulissem	lātus, -a, -um essem	

		IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres. 2d Pers.</i>	fer	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut. 2d Pers.</i>	fertō	fertor	
<i>3d Pers.</i>	fertō	fertor	feruntor

		INFINITIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse	
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	_____	

		PARTICIPLES	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns, -entis	<i>Pres.</i>	_____
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i>	ferendus, -a, -um
<i>Past</i>	_____	<i>Past</i>	lātus, -a, -um

GERUND				SUPINE (Active Voice)	
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī	<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum	<i>Acc.</i>	lātum
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō	<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō	<i>Abl.</i>	lātū

44. eō, go

PRINCIPAL PARTS eō, ire, ii (īvī), itum (n. perf. part.)

PRES. STEM ī- PERF. STEM ī- or īv- PART. STEM it-

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
					SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i>	eō	imus	eam		<i>ad Pers.</i> ī	ite
	īs	itis				
	it	eunt				
<i>Past</i>	ībam		īrem			
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō		—		{ <i>ad Pers.</i> itō <i>3d Pers.</i> itō	itōte
<i>Perf.</i>	ii (īvī)		ierim (īverim)			euntō
<i>P. P.</i>	ieram (īveram)		issem (īvissem)			
<i>F. P.</i>	ierō (īverō)					

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
<i>Pres.</i>	ire	<i>Pres.</i>	iēns, <i>gen.</i> euntis
<i>Perf.</i>	isse (īvisse)	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um esse	<i>Ger.</i>	eundum

GERUND		SUPINE	
<i>Gen.</i>	eundī	<i>Acc.</i>	itum
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō	<i>Abl.</i>	itū

a. The verb eō is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as itur, itum est, etc.

b. In the perfect system the forms with v are very rare.

45. fiō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen

PRINCIPAL PARTS fiō, fieri, factus sum

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fiō	—	fiam		<i>ad Pers.</i> fi	fite
	fis	—				
	fit	fiunt				
<i>Past</i>	fiēbam		fierem			
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam, fiēs, etc.		—			

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um	sum	factus, -a, -um	sim
<i>P. P.</i>	factus, -a, -um	eram	factus, -a, -um	essem
<i>F. P.</i>	factus, -a, -um	erō		
INFINITIVE			PARTICIPLES	
<i>Pres.</i>	fierī		<i>Past</i>	factus, -a, -um
<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um	esse	<i>Ger.</i>	faciendus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	factum irī			

46.

I. DEFECTIVE VERBS

INDICATIVE			
<i>Perf.</i>	coepī, <i>began</i>	meminī, <i>remember</i>	ōdī, <i>hate</i>
<i>P.P.</i>	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
<i>F.P.</i>	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Perf.</i>	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
<i>P.P.</i>	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem
IMPERATIVE			
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
mementō		mementōte	
INFINITIVE			
<i>Perf.</i>	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse
PARTICIPLE			
<i>Past</i>	coeptus		ōsus
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus		ōsūrus

II. IMPERSONAL VERBS

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	licet, <i>is permitted</i>	liceat
<i>Past</i>	licēbat	licēret
<i>Fut.</i>	licēbit	
<i>Perf.</i>	licuit (licitum est)	licuerit (licitum sit)
<i>P. P.</i>	licuerat (licitum erat)	licuisset (licitum esset)
<i>F. P.</i>	licuerit (licitum erit)	
INFINITIVE		
licēre, licuisse, licitūrum esse		

B. SYNTAX

SENTENCES

47. A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

Kinds of Sentences. Sentences are declarative, interrogative, or imperative :

a. A declarative sentence is one that makes a statement :

Caesar venit, Caesar is coming

b. An interrogative sentence is one that asks a question :

venitne Caesar ? is Caesar coming ?

c. An imperative sentence is one that expresses a command :

veni, Caesar, come, Caesar

48. Parts of Sentences. Every sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate :

I. Subject. The subject of a sentence is a noun, or some expression used as a noun, about which something is said :

Caesar respondit, Caesar made answer ; responditne Caesar ? did Caesar make answer ?

In both of these sentences *Caesar* is the subject.

a. In Latin the subject is often not expressed by a separate word, but is contained in the termination of the verb :

scribit, he writes ; scribunt, they write ; scribimus, we write

b. The subject may be some word or group of words used as a noun :

haec perficere est facile, to accomplish these things is easy ; accidit ut plena luna esset, it happened that the moon was full

II. *Predicate.* The predicate is that part of the sentence which says something about the subject:

lūna est plēna, the moon is full

a. The predicate may be a verb, or it may consist of a noun, pronoun, or adjective combined with some form of the verb *sum* or its equivalent, and describing or defining the subject:

Pisō erat cōsul, Piso was consul; tū es ille, you are he; oppidum erat magnum, the town was large

b. The verb *sum*, combined with a noun, pronoun, or adjective as above, is called the *copula*, that is, the connective. When an intransitive or passive verb is used in the same way, it is called a copulative verb:

Dīviciācus appellātur amicus, Diviciacus is called friend

49. **Transitive Verb.** A transitive verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātōrem vidēo, I see the general

50. **Intransitive Verb.** An intransitive verb does not admit of a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātor venit, the general is coming

51. **Phrase.** A phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A phrase is often used as an adjective or an adverb:

vir erat magnae virtūtis, he was a man of great courage; omnibus precibus orābant, they implored with all (manner of) entreaties

In these sentences *magnae virtūtis* and *omnibus precibus* are respectively adjective and adverbial phrases.

52. **Direct Object.** The person or thing directly affected by the action of a verb is called the direct object:

Caesar eum incūsat, Caesar upbraids him

Helvētīi aciem instrūxerunt, the Helvetii drew up a line of battle

53. Indirect Object. The person toward whom or the thing toward which an action or feeling is directed, is called the indirect object:

agrōs Hædvis dat, he gives fields to the Hædvi

54. Appositive. A noun or pronoun used to describe or explain another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, without the use of a verb, is called an appositive:

Ariovistus, rex Germānōrum, vēnit, Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, came

NOTE. A noun or pronoun used as above is said to be in apposition with the word it describes or explains, and agrees with it in case.

55. Forms of Sentences. In their form sentences are simple, compound, or complex:

a. A simple sentence is a sentence containing but one subject and one predicate:

Caesar venit, Cæsar comes

b. A compound sentence consists of two or more independent sentences:

Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgerunt, Cæsar came, and the enemy fled

c. A complex sentence consists of at least one independent sentence and one or more dependent sentences:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgerunt, when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled

56. Clause. A clause is a group of words that forms part of a sentence and that contains a subject and a predicate.

In the last two Latin sentences above, each group of words, *Caesar vēnit*, *hostēs fūgerunt*, *cum Caesar vēnisset*, is a clause.

a. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be subordinate, and the clause modified is called the main clause:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgerunt, when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled; here cum Caesar vēnisset is the subordinate clause and hostēs fūgerunt is the main clause

5. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be coördinate. They are usually connected by a coördinating conjunction (§ 151. a):

Cæsar vēnit et hostēs fugērunt, Cæsar came and the enemy fled;
here both clauses are coördinate

57. Modifiers. A subject or a predicate may be modified by a word, a phrase, or a clause:

miles fortis ācriter pūgnat, the brave soldier fights fiercely; the words *fortis* and *ācriter* modify the subject and predicate respectively

imperātor bonō animō in urbem vēnit, a general of great courage has come into the city; the phrases *bonō animō* and *in urbem* modify the subject and predicate respectively

imperātor quem nōmināvi pontem aedificāvit ut flūmen trānsiret, the general whom I have named built a bridge that he might cross the river; the clauses *quem nōmināvi* and *ut flūmen trānsiret* modify the subject and predicate respectively

AGREEMENT

NOUNS

58. Predicate or Appositive. A noun used as predicate or appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains or describes:

Ariovistus erat rēx, Ariovistus was king

Labiēnum, legātum, misit, he sent Labienus, the lieutenant

ADJECTIVES

59. General Rule. Adjectives and words used as adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

iter est longum, the journey is long

mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung

Gallia est divisa, Gaul is divided

60. Predicate Adjective. When an adjective forms a part of the predicate with the verb *sum* or its equivalent (§ 48. II. *a*), it is called a *predicate* adjective :

Suëbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium,
the tribe of the Suebi is by far the greatest and most warlike of
all the Germans

61. Attributive Adjective. When an adjective immediately describes a noun without the use of a copulative verb, it is called an *attributive* adjective :

prīma legiō in castra vēnit, the first legion came into camp

AGREEMENT WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS

62. Number. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque (ac)*, a *predicate* adjective is in the plural number, and an *attributive* adjective agrees in number with the nearest noun :

dominus et servus sunt dissimīles, master and slave are unlike
bonus rēx et rēgina, the good king and queen

63. Gender. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns of different genders, a *predicate* adjective is usually masculine if the nouns denote living beings, neuter if they denote things without life ; and an *attributive* adjective agrees with the nearest noun :

pater et māter sunt cārī, father and mother are dear
gladius et scūtum sunt magna, the sword and shield are large
cārus pater et māter } *the dear father and mother*
pater et māter cāra }

NOTE. If the nouns denote both persons and things, a predicate adjective is usually neuter plural, but may follow the gender of the persons and be either masculine or feminine :

rēx et libera civitās sunt inimīca, a king and a free state are incompatible
rēx et classis sunt tutī, the king and the fleet are safe

PRONOUNS

64. Pronouns used as nouns (substantively) have the construction of nouns; used as adjectives they agree with their nouns in the same way as adjectives (§ 59):

*hī sunt extrā prōvinciam primī, these are the first beyond the province
hoc prōelium factum est, this battle was fought*

a. Note, however, that a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that its case depends on its construction in the clause in which it is used:

*lēgātī quī convocātī erant convēnērunt, the envoys who had been
summoned assembled*

*lēgātī quōs convocāverat convēnērunt, the envoys whom he had
summoned assembled*

NOTE. When the relative clause contains a predicate noun, the relative pronoun agrees with this noun rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number:

Rhēnus, quod est flūmen Gallicum, the Rhine, which is a Gallic stream

VERBS

65. General Rule. Finite verbs agree with their subjects in person and number:

Orgetorix dēligitur, Orgetorix is chosen

Helvētīī oppida incendunt, the Helvetii burn their towns

NOTE. A finite verb is one having person and number.

a. A verb is usually singular if it has for its subject a collective noun, — that is, a noun singular in form but referring to more than one person or thing, — but it may be plural if individuals are thought of:

senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this

magna multitūdō vērunt, a great multitude came

66. Impersonal Verbs. When a verb is used impersonally, that is, without a personal subject, it is put in the third person singular, and a perfect participle or gerundive ends in -um:

pugnātur, fighting is carried on; pugnātum est, fighting was carried on

67. Agreement with Two or More Subjects. With two or more subjects connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque (ac)* the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural:

summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, very great eagerness and desire for waging war were inspired
oppidum et vicus incenduntur, the town and village are burned

68. With two or more subjects forming a single idea the verb may be singular:

Matrona et Sēquana dividit etc., the Marne and Seine divide etc.,
 B. G. I. 1

69. With two or more singular subjects connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor* the verb is in the singular number:

neque imperātor neque lēgātus erat timidus, neither the general nor the lieutenant was afraid

CASES OF NOUNS

NOMINATIVE

70. The nominative case is used as the subject of a finite verb or as the predicate after a copulative verb:

Caesar respondit, Caesar replies
Labiēnus erat lēgātus Labienus was a lieutenant

71. The nominative case is used as the subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218):

cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flagitare, Caesar daily demanded grain.
 B. G. I. 16

GENITIVE

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

72. General Rule. The genitive is used to limit or define another noun not meaning the same person or thing.

This general rule includes all the varieties of the genitive with nouns mentioned below.

73. Possessive Genitive. A noun may be modified by a genitive denoting the possessor or owner:

inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, between the territories of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, B. G. I. 6

a. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate:

duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, Ariovistus had two wives, B. G. I. 53

74. Possessive pronominal adjectives are used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns:

nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō (instead of mei) iūre impediri, it is not proper that I should be hindered in my rights by the Roman people, B. G. I. 36

75. Subjective and Objective Genitive. A noun that suggests action or feeling may be modified by a genitive. The context will generally tell whether the genitive is the *subject* or the *object* of the action or feeling denoted by the noun:

a. *timor militum tantus erat ut fugerent, the fear of the soldiers was so great that they fled*

Here the phrase *timor militum* means that the soldiers fear; hence *militum*, as the subject of the feeling expressed by *timor*, is a subjective genitive.

Cf. *patrum nostrorum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers, B. G. II. 4*

b. *timor militum hostēs dēterrui, the (their) fear of the soldiers kept the enemy back*

Here the phrase *timor militum* means that the soldiers are feared; hence *militum*, as the object of the feeling expressed by *timor*, is an objective genitive.

Cf. *prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī, for the ancient wrongs of (inflicted by) the Helvetii upon the Roman people, B. G. I. 30*

In this sentence *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* is an objective genitive.

76. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part of an object or group are followed by a genitive denoting the whole object or group:

trēs partēs cōpiarū trādūxērunt, they led across three quarters (parts) of their forces

a. The partitive genitive may be used not only with nouns, but also with neuter singular adjectives and pronouns used substantively (§§ 127, 128):

quantum habeat in eō bonī cōstantia, how much advantage (of good) firmness has, B. G. I. 40

nisi quid erit auxili, unless there shall be some (of) aid, B. G. I. 31
satis esse causae arbitrābātur, he thought there was sufficient reason
(enough of reason), B. G. I. 19

EXCEPTION. Cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) and the indefinite pronoun *quidam* usually take the ablative with *e* (*ex*) instead of the partitive genitive:

ūnus ex eis, one of those; quidam ex militibus, one of the soldiers

77. Genitive of Description or Quality. The genitive of a noun is used to denote quality or kind. Such a genitive is regularly accompanied by an adjective (cf. Ablative of Description, § 116. *a*):

vir et cōsili magni et virtutis, a man of (both) great discretion and courage, B. G. III. 5

a. Genitive of Description as Predicate. The descriptive genitive is often used as the predicate of a sentence:

est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuetudinis, for this is a Gallic custom, B. G. IV. 5

fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium, the depth of the river was about three feet, B. G. II. 18

b. The descriptive genitive is often used with numerals to denote measure (Genitive of Measure):

fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentorum, he extended a ditch of about four hundred paces, B. G. II. 8

78. Genitive of Value. The adjectives *tanti*, *quantī*, *plūris*, and *minōris* are used substantively in the predicate to denote indefinite value:

tanti eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, he pointed out that his good will was of so great value in his sight (apud sē), B. G. I. 20

79. Genitive of Material. The genitive may denote the substance, or material, of which anything consists:

aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor, he drew up a line of battle of four legions, B. G. I. 24

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

80. Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fullness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites, also participles in *-ns* used as adjectives, are followed by the genitive:

hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuetūdinis imperitī, men uncivilized and unacquainted with our customs, B. G. IV. 22

rei militāris peritissimus, thoroughly skilled in military practice, B. G. I. 21

vir amāns rei pūblicae, a man fond of the republic

GENITIVE WITH VERBS

81. The genitive is used with the following verbs:

a. Verbs of Memory. With *reminiscor*, *remember*, and *obliscor*, *forget*:

quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci velim, but if I should be willing to forget the old affront, B. G. I. 14

reminiscere veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni, remember the former misfortune of the Roman people, B. G. I. 13

b. Verbs of Feeling. With *paenitet*, *repent*, and some others. These take the accusative of the person with the genitive of the thing:

cōsiliōrum eōs paenitet, they repent of their plans (lit. it repents them of their plans), cf. B. G. IV. 5

c. With the verb *interest*, *it concerns* :

docet quantō opere rei publicae intersit, he shows how greatly it concerns the common welfare, B. G. II. 5

d. Sometimes with the verb *potior*, *get possession of*, which, however, commonly takes the ablative (§ 107. a) :

tōtius Galliae potiri, to get possession of the whole of Gaul, B. G. I. 3

DATIVE

82. Dative of Indirect Object. The dative is the case of the indirect object, and denotes that *to which* or *for which* anything is or is done.

It is used not only with intransitive verbs, but also with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object :

ei filiam suam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B. G. I. 3

83. Dative with Special Verbs. The dative of the indirect object is used with many intransitive verbs meaning *to favor, please, help, trust*, and their contraries ; also *to believe, persuade, threaten, injure, envy, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon*, and *spare* ; also with *temperō* meaning *to refrain* :

civitātī persuāsit, he persuaded the state, B. G. I. 2

prima aciēs victis resistit, the first line resists the vanquished,

cf. B. G. I. 25

NOTE. Most of these verbs are transitive in English, take a direct object in the objective case, and are usually translated as if transitive. But in Latin the real idea is *to give a command to, to grant pardon to, to be obedient to*, etc., and the dative of the indirect object follows as a natural consequence.

a. In the passive voice these verbs are used impersonally (§ 66), and the dative follows as with the active voice :

mihi quidem persuādētur, I am indeed persuaded (lit. it is persuaded to me), B. G. I. 40

84. Dative with Compounds. The dative of the indirect object is found after many verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, de, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super*, and sometimes *circum* :

Iccius, qui tum oppidū praeerat, Iccius, who was then in command of the town, B. G. II. 6

NOTE. Some of these verbs are transitive and some intransitive, the former taking both a direct and an indirect object:

pars civitatis calamitatem populo intulerat, part of the state had brought disaster on the people, B. G. I. 12

a. The dative of the indirect object is used also with several compounds of *bene* and *satis*:

si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, if you will make amends to the Allobroges, B. G. I. 14

85. Dative of Reference. The dative is used to denote the person or thing for whose benefit, or to whose injury, the action is performed:

omnes in fugā sibi praesidium ponebant, all sought safety for themselves in flight, cf. B. G. II. 11

tōtius belli imperium sibi postulant, they demand for themselves the command of the entire war, B. G. II. 4

86. Dative of Separation. Some verbs signifying to take away from, particularly compounds of *ab*, *dē*, and *ex*, take the dative:

scūtō militi detractō, the shield being snatched from a soldier, B. G. II. 25

Rōmāni Haedūis libertātem eripient, the Romans will take away liberty from the Haedui, cf. B. G. I. 17

NOTE. This dative differs from the ablative of separation (§ 101) in the fact that there is almost always an idea of *advantage* or *disadvantage* to the person concerned. It is thus closely connected with the dative of reference.

87. Dative of Apparent Agent. The dative is sometimes used to denote *agency*; regularly with the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II):

Siquandō omnes cruciātūs sunt perficiendī, all tortures must be endured by the Sequani, B. G. I. 32

omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls, B. G. I. 31

88. Dative of Possession. The dative is used as a predicate with the verb *sum* to denote *possession* :

in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī, no one was able to keep his footing on the wall (lit. the possibility was to no one), B. G. II. 6
nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus, traders have no access to them (lit. no access to them is to the traders), B. G. II. 15

Notice that the idea of motion (*to them*) is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, while the idea of possession (*to the traders*) is expressed by the dative.

89. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote *purpose* or *end*, often with another dative denoting the person benefited or injured (§ 85) :

pollicitus est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram, he promised that he would look out for that matter (lit. that matter should be for a care to himself), B. G. I. 33
novissimīs praesidiō erant, they were (for) a protection to the rear, B. G. I. 25

90. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives or adverbs denoting *nearness*, *likeness*, *fitness*, *service*, and their opposites :

finitimī Belgīs erant, they were adjacent to the Belgæ, B. G. II. 2
castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, he chose a place suitable for the camp, B. G. I. 49
proximī Galliae sunt, they are nearest to Gaul, cf. B. G. II. 3

ACCUSATIVE

91. Direct Object. The *direct object* of a transitive verb is put in the accusative :

lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt, they sent envoys in regard to peace, B. G. IV. 27

92. Subject of Infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative :

nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, he found that our men were not inferior, B. G. II. 8

NOTE. The subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly in the nominative (§ 71).

93. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Secondary Object. Some verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, and *teaching* may be followed by two accusatives — one (the direct object) of the person and the other (the secondary object) of the thing:

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, Caesar demanded grain of the Haedui, B. G. I. 16

NOTE. This construction is found with *ōrō*, *poscō*, *rogō*, *flāgitō*, *doceō*, and a few other verbs.

a. With the passive of *rogō* and of verbs of *teaching* and a few others the accusative of the *person* becomes the subject, and the accusative of the *thing* is retained:

ACTIVE: *agrōs Gallōs rogāvit, he asked the Gauls for territory*

PASSIVE: *Gallī agrōs rogāti sunt, the Gauls were asked for territory*

94. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *regarding*, *showing*, etc. often take a second accusative referring to the same person or thing as the direct object. This second object is called the *adjunct accusative*:

eum vergobretum appellat Haeduī, the Haedui call him vergobretus, cf. B. G. I. 16

Ariovistum amicum appellat, they call Ariovistus friend

NOTE. In the passive the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the adjunct accusative becomes the predicate nominative:

Ariovistus amicus appellātur, Ariovistus is called friend

95. Accusative with Compounds. Transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* may take, in addition to the direct object, a secondary object depending on the preposition:

trēs partēs cōpiarum Helvētīī id flūmen trādūxerant, the Helvetii had led three fourths of their forces across that river, cf. B. G. I. 12

NOTE. In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object:

Belgae Rhēnum trāductī sunt, the Belgæ were led across the Rhine, cf. B. G. II. 4

96. Accusative of Duration and Extent. The accusative denotes *duration of time* and *extent of space*:

haec magnam partem aestatis faciēbant, they continued to do this during a great part of the summer, B. G. III. 12

finēs in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL patēbant, the territories extended in length two hundred and forty miles, cf. B. G. I. 2

97. Accusative of Place Whither. Place *whither* is regularly expressed by the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*; but with names of towns and the word *domus*, *home*, the preposition is omitted:

in Italiam profectus est, he set out for Italy, B. G. II. 35

Rōmam ad senātum vēnī, I came to Rome to the senate

Bibracte ire contendit, he hastened (to go) to Bibracte, B. G. I. 23

domum suam quisque revertitur, each returns to his home, cf. B. G. II. 10

NOTE. *Ad* is used with names of towns after verbs of motion when the meaning is *to the neighborhood of* instead of *to*:

ad Genāvam pervēnit, he came to (the vicinity of) Geneva, B. G. I. 7

98. Accusative of Kindred Meaning. An intransitive verb may be used with the accusative of a noun, or of a neuter pronoun or adjective of indefinite meaning, which has or suggests the same meaning as the verb:

id eis persuāsit, he persuaded them to this course (lit. he persuaded this (course) to them), B. G. I. 2

In this sentence *id*, the object of *persuāsit*, represents the persuasion itself, and so repeats the idea of the verb.

99. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is often used with the force of an adverb:

nihil saxa timēbant, they did not fear the rocks at all, cf. B. G. III. 13

maximam partem lacte vivunt, they live for the most part on milk,

B. G. IV. 1

In these sentences *nihil* and *partem* are used adverbially.

VOCATIVE

100. The word denoting the person called or addressed is put in the vocative case. This has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, which have the vocative in *-e* :

ibi erunt Helvētīi ubi eōs tū, Caesar, esse volueris, the Helvetii will be
(in the place) where you, Caesar, shall have wished them to be,
 B.G. I. 13
et tū quoque, Brūte! and thou too, Brutus!

ABLATIVE

101. Ablative of Separation. The ablative, with or without *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*, is used to denote *separation* :

hostem ā pugnā prohibēbant, they kept the enemy from battle, cf. B.G.
 IV. 34
proeliō supersedēre statuit, he decided to hold aloof from battle,
 B.G. II. 8

a. When the *place from which* is the name of a town or the word *domus*, *home*, the ablative is used without a preposition :

erant itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent, there were two
routes by which they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

NOTE. When the idea is not directly *out of* or *from* a town, but *from the neighborhood of* it, the preposition *ab* is used :

ab Ocelō in finēs Vocontiorum pervēnit, he came from (the vicinity of)
Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontii, B.G. I. 10

102. Ablative of Origin. The ablative is used, with or without *ab* or *ex*, to denote the *origin* from which anything is derived :

initium ortum est ab Ambiorige, the beginning was made by (lit. arose
from) Ambiorix, B.G. V. 25
Pisō amplissimō genere nātus est, Piso was born of most distin-
guished family, cf. B.G. IV. 12

103. Ablative of Material. The ablative is used with **ex** or **dē** to denote the *material* of which anything consists :

nāvēs factae sunt ex rōbre, the ships were made of oak, cf. B. G. III. 13

104. Ablative of Agent. The *agent* or *doer* of an act is expressed after passive verbs by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** :

ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitābantur, they were incited by some (of the) Gauls, cf. B. G. II. 1

NOTE. When the agent is considered as a *means to an end*, the accusative with **per** is used :

per trēs potentēs populōs Galliae potiri posse spērant, through three powerful nations they hope to be able to get possession of Gaul, cf. B. G. I. 3

105. Ablative of Comparison. The comparative degree without **quam** is regularly followed by the ablative :

celerius omnium optiōne vēnit, he came more quickly than any one had expected (lit. *than the expectation of all*), cf. B. G. II. 3

NOTE 1. The comparative may, however, be followed by **quam**, and the two things compared are then put in the same case :

iūstitia est melior quam laus, justice is better than praise

NOTE 2. After the comparatives **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius**, and **longius**, without **quam**, a word of measure or number is often used in the case it would have if there were no comparative :

aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinqūbātur, an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left (lit. *an approach of two hundred feet — not more*), B. G. II. 29

In this sentence **pedum** is the genitive of measure (§ 77. b), the construction it would have if **amplius** were not used.

106. Ablative of Means. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action :

equitātum suō sūmptū alit, he maintains the cavalry at (by means of) his own expense, cf. B. G. I. 18

a. The ablative of means is used to denote the *way by which* :

eōdem itinere contendit, he hastened by the same route, B. G. I. 21

107. Ablative with Special Words. The ablative is used :

a. With the verbs *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vāscor*, and their compounds :

Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus est, Caesar employed the same guides, cf. B. G. II. 7

castris nostrī potītī sunt, our men got possession of the camp, B. G. I. 26
commodis fruuntur, they enjoy advantages, cf. B. G. III. 22

NOTE. *Potior* may take the genitive (§ 81. *d*).

b. With the verbs *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *nitor*, and the verbal adjective *frētus* :

et Crassus nōn multum cōfidēbat, Crassus placed little reliance in these, cf. B. G. III. 25

Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriis frēti sunt, the Sotiates relied on their former victories, cf. B. G. III. 21

c. With *opus est* and *ūsus est*, *there is need* :

opus factō est, there is need of action, cf. B. G. I. 42

NOTE. *Opus* may be used as a predicate with the thing needed as subject nominative. The person needing is in the dative :

si quid mihi opus est, if I need anything

108. Ablative of Value or Price. With verbs of *buying* and *selling* the *price* is expressed by the ablative :

parvō pretiō redēpta, bought in at a low price, B. G. I. 18

NOTE. For the genitive of value see § 78.

109. Ablative of Cause. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express *cause* :

Dumnorix grātiā plūrimum poterat, Dumnorix had great power because of his influence, B. G. I. 9

NOTE. The ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake*, regularly follow a noun in the genitive :

huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this power, B. G. I. 18

110. Ablative of Manner. The *manner* of an action is expressed by the ablative, either with an adjective modifier or with *cum*, sometimes with both :

nūdō corpore pugnant, they fight with body unprotected, cf. B.G. I. 25
magnō cum strepitū ēgressi sunt, they went forth with great din, cf.
 B.G. II. 11

111. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative may express that *in accordance with* which anything is, or is done, often with **ex** or **dē** :

īstitūtō suō Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit, Caesar led out his forces according to his custom, B.G. I. 50

112. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. The *circumstance* or situation under which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative :

eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi nōn poterant, they could not accomplish that under our sway, cf. B.G. II. 1

113. Ablative of Accompaniment. The ablative is used to denote *accompaniment*, regularly with **cum** :

intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcērim, I know with how great danger I did that, B.G. I. 17

cum pueris mulieribusque, with children and women, B.G. II. 28

NOTE. With some military expressions **cum** may be omitted ; the noun is then regularly modified by an adjective :

Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis, Caesar followed with all his forces, B.G. II. 19

a. Verbs of *contention* and the like require **cum** :

cum Germānis contendunt, they fight with the Germans, B.G. I. 1

114. Ablative of Measure of Difference. With words that express or imply comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference* :

alterum iter erat multō facilius, the other route was much easier (lit. *easier by much*), cf. B.G. I. 6

ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum expectābant, about two miles away they were awaiting the arrival of the Romans (lit. *off (ā) by two miles*), B.G. V. 32. The preposition **ā** is here used as an adverb

115. Ablative of Respect. The ablative denotes *in what respect* something is true:

linguā inter eō differunt, they differ from one another in language,

B. G. I. 1

infirmiōrēs animō, dispirited (lit. *weaker in respect to courage*),

B. G. III. 24

116. Ablative of Description or Quality. The ablative with an adjective modifier is used to denote quality or kind:

hominēs inimicō animō, men of unfriendly disposition, B. G. I. 7

a. Either the genitive (§ 77) or ablative may be used in description, but in general:

1. Statements of *measure, number, time, and space* are in the genitive.

2. Physical qualities are in the ablative.

mūrum pedum sēdecim perducit, he extended a wall (of) sixteen feet,

B. G. I. 8

Germāni ingentī magnitudīne corporum sunt, the Germans are of great size of body, cf. B. G. I. 39

b. The ablative of description, like the genitive of description, may be used as the predicate of a sentence; cf. *magnitudīne* in the last example.

117. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle expressed or understood in agreement may be used absolutely, that is, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

While grammatically independent, the ablative absolute has a logical relation to the rest of the sentence. This relation is best expressed in translation by changing the ablative absolute into a clause introduced by *if, when, since, though*, etc.

The ablative absolute may express the following relations:

a. Condition:

ā quibus nōs dēfendere, traditis armīs, nōn poterimus, from these we cannot defend ourselves if we surrender our arms (lit. *our arms having been surrendered*), B. G. II. 31

b. Time:

initā aestāte Q. Pedium mīsit, *in the beginning of summer* (lit. *summer having been begun*) he sent Quintus Pedius, B.G. II. 2

c. Cause:

Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, *depopulātis agris, nōn facile ab oppidiis vim hostium prohibēre, they inform Cæsar that, since their fields have been laid waste, they cannot easily ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns* (lit. *their fields having been laid waste*), B.G. I. 11

d. Concession:

turribus excitātis, tamen hās altitudō puppium ex barbariis nāvibus superābat, *even though towers had been erected, nevertheless the height of the sterns of the barbarian ships rose above them* (lit. *towers having been erected*), B.G. III. 14

e. Circumstance:

ea omnia, īnscientibus īpsīs, fēcerat, *he had done all those things without their knowledge* (lit. *they being unaware*), cf. B.G. I. 19

f. Means:

nāvibus iūncctis, cōnāti sunt, *they tried by means of joining boats* (lit. *boats having been joined*), cf. B.G. I. 8

118. Special Constructions of the Ablative Absolute. A noun (or pronoun) with an adjective, or a noun (or pronoun) with a noun, may form an ablative absolute construction without an accompanying participle. This occurs when the sense demands the present participle of *sum*, which is lacking in Latin:

Sēquanīs invītīs, ire nōn poterant, if the Sequani should be unwilling, they could not go (lit. *the Sequani (being) unwilling*), B.G. I. 9

ea omnia, mē invītō, fēcisti, *you have done all those things against my will* (lit. *I (being) unwilling*), cf. B.G. I. 19

is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, cōnūratiōnem fēcit, *he made a conspiracy in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso* (lit. *Messala and Piso (being) consuls*), B.G. I. 2

119. Ablative of Time. The time *at which* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative:

eō tempore principātum in civitate obtinēbat, at that time he held the chief position in the state, B.G. I. 3

paucis annis omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur, within a few years all will be driven from the territories of Gaul, B.G. I. 31

NOTE. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative instead of by the accusative (§ 96):

eā tōtā nocte continenter iērun, they marched uninterruptedly during that entire night, B.G. I. 26

120. Ablative of Place Where. Place *where* is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition *in*. Names of towns omit the preposition:

in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerunt, they wage war in the territories of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 1

proellum Philippi factum est, the battle was fought at Philippi

a. The so-called *locative case* is used instead of the ablative of place in the singular of the names of towns of the first and second declensions; also *domi, at home*. The locative case ends in *-ae* in the first declension, and in *-i* in the second, being just like the genitive singular:

conciliō Gallōrum Samarobrivae peractō, after a council of the Gauls had been brought to an end at Samarobriva, B.G. V. 24

Caesar Avaricā complūrēs diēs commorātus, Caesar after tarrying several days at Avaricum, B.G. VII. 32

domi nihil erat, there was nothing at home, B.G. I. 28

b. The preposition is regularly omitted with the ablatives *locō, locis, parte, partibus*, when they are modified by an adjective or a genitive:

aliēnō locō proellum committunt, they join battle in an unfavorable place, B.G. I. 15

NOTE 1. The *way by which* is put in the ablative case without a preposition:

frumentum flumine Ararī subvexerat, he had brought grain up the river Saône, cf. B.G. I. 16

NOTE 2. For expressions denoting the *place from which* see § 101. *a.*

ADJECTIVES

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

121. Adjectives have in general the same distinctions of meaning for the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative* degrees as in English:

altus, high; altior, higher; altissimus, highest

122. The comparative of an adjective sometimes denotes merely a high degree of the quality:

sī quid erat dūrius, if there was any uncommonly hard (task),
B. G. I. 48

123. The superlative of an adjective sometimes denotes simply a very high degree of the quality:

mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung, B. G. I. 6

124. The superlative of an adjective with *quam* preceding denotes the highest degree possible of the quality:

quam maximum numerum coemēbant, they purchased the largest number possible, B. G. I. 3

SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

125. The adjectives *medius*, *imus*, *summus*, and *reliquus* may denote a part of the object described:

in colle mediō aciem instrūxit, he drew up a line of battle in the middle of the hill, B. G. I. 24

summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, the top of the mountain was held by Labienus, cf. B. G. I. 22

126. An adjective in regular agreement with a noun sometimes has the meaning of an adverb:

animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs tristēs terram intuēri, Caesar noticed that the Sequani sadly kept their eyes upon the ground, B. G. I. 32

127. Adjectives are often used *substantively*, that is, like nouns:

nostrī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt, our (men) slew a large number of them, B. G. II. 10

PRONOUNS

128. Pronouns in general may be used either as substantives or as adjectives, and the rules for nouns and adjectives apply to them accordingly. In their substantive use they are properly called pronouns. In their adjective use they should be called pronominal adjectives.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

129. Nominative Use. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns, *ego*, *tū*, *nōs*, and *vōs*, are not used except for emphasis.

ego certē meum officium praestiterō, I, at least, will have done my duty, B.G. IV. 25

130. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. There are no regular personal pronouns of the third person, their place being supplied by a demonstrative, generally is (§ 135):

lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, they sent envoys to Caesar and surrendered to him, B.G. II. 28

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

131. The possessive pronominal adjectives, *meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, *vester*, *suus*, agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify, not with the word denoting the possessor:

puella librōs meōs habet, the girl has my books

Here the possessive, *meōs*, agrees with *librōs*, the things possessed, although this is plural masculine accusative, while the possessor, *puella*, is singular feminine nominative.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

132. Direct Reflexives. The reflexive pronoun, *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, and its possessive adjective, *suus*, *-a*, *-um*, regularly refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand:

sē suaque dēdidērunt, they surrendered themselves and their property, B.G. II. 15

133. Indirect Reflexives. In a subordinate clause the reflexive and its possessive adjective often refer back to the subject of the main clause. They are then called *indirect* reflexives:

dat negotium Gallis uti se certiorem faciant, he directs the Gauls to inform him, cf. B. G. II. 2

NOTE. The reflexive, *sui, sibi, se*, refers to the *third person* only. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives, thus:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>laudō me, I praise myself</i>	<i>laudāmus nos, we praise ourselves</i>
<i>laudās te, you praise yourself</i>	<i>laudātis vos, you praise yourselves</i>
<i>laudat se, he praises himself</i>	<i>laudent se, they praise themselves</i>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

134. Hic and Ille. *Hic* refers to something near; *ille* to something remote. Their most common meaning is conveyed by the words *this* and *that*:

mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra, this (part of) Gaul is mine, just as that (part) is yours, cf. B. G. I. 44

a. When *hic* and *ille* are used together, *hic* generally refers to the *latter* of two objects, and *ille* to the *former*:

hi rursus in vicem annō post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent, the latter (just mentioned) again in their turn are in arms the year after, the former (mentioned previously) remain at home, B. G. IV. 1

135. Is. *Is* as a demonstrative pronoun may mean either *this* or *that*.

Is is often used as a personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, her, him, them*):

ei filiam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B. G. I. 3

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

136. The intensive pronoun, *ipse*, standing either alone or in agreement with another word, expresses emphasis or contrast. Its use must be carefully distinguished from that of the reflexive, particularly as we use the word *self* in translating both. The following examples illustrate the difference:

se laudat, *he praises himself*; *ipse* puerum laudat, *he himself praises the boy*

a. *Ipse* is sometimes used in place of the indirect reflexive (§ 133):

si quid *ipsi* à Caesare opus *esset*, (he said) *if he needed anything from Caesar* (lit. *if any need was to himself*), B.G. I. 34

b. *Ipse* is often used in the genitive case with a possessive pronoun to strengthen the possessive idea:

suā ipsōrum linguā ūtuntur, *they employ their own language*
suum ipsius exercitum habet, *he has his own army*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

137. General Rule. Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on their construction in the clause in which they are found:

Sabinus, cum eis cōplīs quās à Caesare accēperat, Sabinus, with those forces which he had received from Caesar, B.G. III. 17

138. Agreement with a Predicate Noun or Appositive. A relative pronoun regularly agrees with a predicate noun or appositive in its own clause, rather than with its antecedent:

Vesontio, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani, B.G. I. 38

139. Relative Clause preceding. A relative clause when emphatic precedes the clause containing the antecedent:

quōrum per finēs ierant, his imperāvit, he ordered these through whose territories they had gone, B.G. I. 28

140. Antecedent in the Relative Clause. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes placed in the relative clause:

quam fēcerat classem iubet convenīre, he ordered the fleet which he had built up to assemble (lit. what fleet he had etc.), B.G. IV. 21

141. Repetition of the Antecedent. The antecedent is sometimes repeated with the relative:

erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent, there were two ways by which (ways) they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

142. Omission of the Antecedent. The antecedent may be omitted if it is a pronoun or an indefinite word:

quī cognōscerent mīsit, he sent (men) to reconnoiter, B.G. I. 21

143. Relative beginning a New Sentence. A relative pronoun, referring to an antecedent in the preceding sentence, often stands at the beginning of a new sentence. In such cases the relative is best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun:

quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent etc., when these had met him on the way etc., B.G. I. 27

nostrī nōn eādē alacritatē utēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās removērī iussit, our men did not exert themselves with the same eagerness. When Caesar noticed this, he ordered the ships of war to be removed, B.G. IV. 24, 25

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

144. The indefinite pronouns and adjectives are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is meant without designating *which one*; some of the most common and their uses are:

a. *Quis, some one, any one, some, any*, is the least exact of the indefinites, and stands generally after *sī, nisi, nē*, or *num*; *quīdam, a certain one, a certain*, is the most definite:

sī quis dicit, if anybody says

verētur nē quis veniat, he fears that some one may come

quīdam ex militibus dixit, a certain one of the soldiers said, B.G. I. 42

b. Aliquis, *some one, some*, is more definite than **quis** :

aliquis dicat, some one may say

c. Quisquam, *any one*, and the indefinite adjective **ullus**, *any*, are used commonly in negative sentences, and in sentences implying a negative :

cūr quisquam iudicāret ? why should any one judge ? B. G. I. 40

neque ullā necessitatē continēbantur, nor were they restrained by any necessity, B. G. II. 11

d. Alius, *another*, and **alter**, *the other* (of two), when used in pairs have the following meanings :

alius . . . alius, one . . . another

alii . . . alii, some . . . others

alterī . . . alterī, the one party . . . the other

1. Alius used twice in different cases in the same clause expresses just half the meaning conveyed :

*alius aliā ex nāvi sē adgregābat, they gathered, (one from one ship,)
another from another ship,* B. G. IV. 26

*aliū aliam in partem ferēbantur, they rushed, (some in one direction,)
others in another direction,* B. G. II. 24

ADVERBS

145. Adverbs in the comparative degree, like adjectives (§§ 122, 123), may indicate merely a high degree of what they express without denoting real comparison. The superlative also may express a very high degree, instead of the highest :

sē diūtius dūci intellēxit, he realized that he was being put off too long, B. G. I. 16

plūrimū domī poterat, he was very powerful at home, cf. B. G. I. 20

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

146. The usual negative adverb is **nōn** ; this is regular with the indicative mood.

a. Nōn combined with another negative word, as **nūllus**, makes an indefinite affirmative :

nōn nūllī, some

147. *Nē* is used with the subjunctive denoting negative purpose, will, or desire; this includes commands in indirect discourse:

ad haec cōstitit nē tempus dīmitteret, he took his stand by these that he might not lose time, B.G. II. 21

quā rē nē committeret, (he told him) that he should therefore not bring it to pass, B.G. I. 13

PREPOSITIONS

148. Prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative cases.

149. **Prepositions with the Accusative.** The prepositions used with the accusative are *ad*, *adversus*, *ante*, *apud*, *circā*, *circum*, *circiter*, *cis*, *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *in*, *infra*, *inter*, *intrā*, *iūxtā*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *sub*, *super*, *suprā*, *trāns*, *ultrā*, *versus*.

NOTE. The adjectives *propior*, *proximus*, and the adverbs *propius*, *proximē*, sometimes govern the accusative like prepositions:

proximī Rhēnum, next to the Rhine; propius tumulum, nearer the mound

150. **Prepositions with the Ablative.** The prepositions used with the ablative are *ā* (*ab*, *abs*), *cōram*, *cum*, *dē*, *ē* (*ex*), *in*, *prae*, *prō*, *sine*, *sub*, *tenu*.

a. Cum is attached to the ablative of the personal, reflexive, interrogative, and relative pronouns as an enclitic:

nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit, no one has striven with me without his destruction, B.G. I. 36

hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōstituerat, him especially he had decided to keep with him, B.G. V. 6

proximī sunt Germānis, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt, they are nearest to the Germans, with whom they continually wage war, B.G. I. 1

NOTE. *In* and *sub* govern both cases. With the accusative they denote motion toward a place; with the ablative rest in a place:

exercitum sub iugum mittit, he sends the army under the yoke in oppidō manet, he remains in the town

CONJUNCTIONS

151. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses of the same rank, or main clauses with subordinate clauses.

a. Coördinating Conjunctions. Coördinating conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank) are such words as *et, atque, ac, -que, enim, sed, autem*, etc.

b. Subordinating Conjunctions. Subordinating conjunctions (connecting dependent clauses with the clauses upon which they depend) are such words as *cum, antequam, quod, si, etsi, quamvis*, etc.

VERBS

152. Terms. The terms transitive, intransitive, impersonal, voice (active and passive), mood, tense, etc. are used in general as in English.

TENSES AND MOODS

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

153. Present Tense. The present tense represents an action or state as now taking place or existing :

hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, the Belgæ are the bravest of all these, B.G. I. 1

a. Historical Present. The present is sometimes used instead of a past tense to describe a past action more vividly :

ad Galbam accurrunt atque docent etc., they rush up to Galba and point out etc., B.G. III. 5

NOTE. The historical present may be translated by either a present or a past tense.

154. Past Descriptive¹ Tense. The past descriptive tense is used :

a. To denote an action going on in past time :

Helvētī agrōs populābantur, the Helvetii were devastating the fields, B.G. I. 11

¹ The past descriptive is often called the imperfect.

b. In description :

mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung, B.G. I. 6

c. To denote an action as attempted, as customary, or as begun :

nostrōs prohibēbant, they tried to keep back our men, B.G. V. 9

es in proxima oppida recipiēbant, they (regularly) retreated to the nearest town, B.G. III. 12

suspiciābātur, he was beginning to suspect, B.G. IV. 31

NOTE. In narration the forward steps of the action are in the perfect tense, descriptive passages in the past descriptive.

155. Future Tense. The future tense denotes an act or state that will take place in the future :

vōbiscum pācem faciam, I will make peace with you, B.G. I. 14

156. Perfect Tense. The perfect tense has two uses. It may represent :

a. An action as now completed (present perfect). It is then translated with the English auxiliary *have* :

utī suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, as I have shown above, B.G. II. 1

b. An action or state as a fact in past time (past absolute):

eo exercitum dūxit, he led his army thither, B.G. III. 28

NOTE. The past participle with *habēō* has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the *continued effect* of the action of the verb :

vectigālīa redēpta habet, he has bought up the revenues, B.G. I. 18

157. Past Perfect¹ Tense. The past perfect tense represents an action as completed in past time :

Helvētīi iam suās cōpiās trādūxerant, the Helvetii had already led their troops across, B.G. I. 11

158. Future Perfect Tense. The future perfect tense represents the action as completed in the future :

ubi cōstitueris, where you shall have determined, B.G. I. 13

¹ The past perfect is often called the pluperfect.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

In Independent Clauses

159. When the subjunctive is used independently, its tense values are as follows:

a. The present and perfect subjunctive refer to future time:

eāmus (§ 172. *a*), *let us go*

nē dēspexerīs (§ 172. *c*), *do not despise*

NOTE. Exhortations, wishes, commands, etc., from their very nature, refer to the future. *Eāmus* and *dēspexerīs* above imply that the acts are not yet performed.

b. The past¹ subjunctive generally refers to present time, but sometimes to past time:

utinam scriberet (§ 172. *e. 2*), *O that he were writing* (now). This implies that the act is *not now going on*

quid facerem? (§ 172. *d*), *what was I to do?*

tum viderēs (§ 172. *f*), *then you might have seen*

c. The past perfect¹ subjunctive refers to past time:

utinam scripsisset (§ 172. *e. 3*), *O that he had written* (then). This implies that the act was *not then performed*

In Dependent Clauses

160. In dependent clauses the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the tenses of the main verb, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

161. Sequence of Tenses. The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are classified as *primary* and *secondary*. The primary tenses are those referring to present or future time; the secondary tenses are those referring to past time.

¹ The past subjunctive is often called the imperfect, and the past perfect the pluperfect.

The following table represents this division, the primary tenses being marked (1) and the secondary tenses (2):

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
(1) Present	(1) Present
(2) Past descriptive	(2) Past
(1) Future	
(2) Perfect (past absolute, § 156. b)	(1) Perfect
(2) Past perfect	(2) Past perfect
(1) Future perfect	

I. The present and past subjunctive denote incomplete action (that is, present or future with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below :

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>I ask</i>	(1) <i>quaerō</i>	<i>quid dicat</i> (1) <i>what he says</i>
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaerēbam</i>	<i>quid diceret</i> (2) <i>what he said</i>
<i>I shall ask</i>	(1) <i>quaeram</i>	
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesivī</i>	
<i>I had asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesiveram</i>	
<i>I shall have asked</i>	(1) <i>quaesiverō</i>	

II. The perfect and past perfect subjunctive denote completed action (that is, past with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below :

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>I ask</i>	(1) <i>quaerō</i>	
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaerēbam</i>	
<i>I shall ask</i>	(1) <i>quaeram</i>	
<i>I asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesivī</i>	<i>quid dixerit</i> (1) <i>what he said</i>
<i>I had asked</i>	(2) <i>quaesiveram</i>	<i>quid dixisset</i> (2) <i>what he had said</i>
<i>I shall have asked</i>	(1) <i>quaesiverō</i>	

From this use of tenses follows the rule :

162. Primary tenses in the indicative are followed by primary tenses in the subjunctive, and secondary by secondary.

163. Exceptions. Occasional exceptions to sequence occur, especially in long passages:

a. Sometimes a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive:

respondit si obsidēs dentur scēse pācem esse factūrum, he replied that he would make peace if hostages should be given, B.G. I. 14

b. The perfect indicative, when past absolute (§ 156. *b*), is regularly a secondary tense; but when used as a present perfect (§ 156. *a*) it may be followed by the primary sequence:

ita didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus, we have been so trained that we strive more by courage, B.G. I. 13

c. A perfect subjunctive, particularly in clauses of result (§ 179), may follow a secondary tense:

temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut tempus defuerit, so short was the time that there was no opportunity, B.G. II. 21

164. Historical Present. The historical present (§ 153. *a*) allows either primary or secondary sequence:

diem dicunt quā diē convenient, they appoint a day on which (day) they shall assemble, B.G. I. 6

esse spem docent, si extrēmum auxilium experirentur, they showed that there was hope, if they should try a last resource, B.G. III. 5

165. Historical Infinitive. The historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly followed by a secondary tense:

interim cotidie Caesar Haeduōs frumentum, quod essent polliciti, flagitare, meanwhile Caesar demanded of the Haedui every day the grain which they had promised, B.G. I. 16

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

166. *a.* Not in Indirect Discourse. Except in indirect discourse (§ 203) only the present and perfect infinitives are used; the present represents the action of the verb as in progress with no distinct reference to time, the perfect as completed.

bellum gerere debet, he ought to be waging war
pudet mē hoc fecisse, I am ashamed to have done this

b. In Indirect Discourse. In indirect discourse the tenses of the infinitive denote a time that is *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the time denoted by the verb of *saying* etc. by which the indirect discourse is introduced. Thus:

1. The present infinitive expresses *the same time* as that of the verb of *saying*:

dicit esse spem, he says that there is hope

dicebat esse spem, he said that there was hope

dicitur esse spem, he will say that there is hope

2. The perfect infinitive expresses *time before* that of the verb of *saying*:

dicit fuisse spem, he says that there was hope

dicebat fuisse spem, he said that there had been hope

dicitur fuisse spem, he will say that there was hope

3. The future infinitive expresses *time later* than that of the verb of *saying*:

dicit futuram esse spem, he says that there will be hope

dicebat futuram esse spem, he said that there would be hope

dicitur futuram esse spem, he will say that there will be hope

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

167. The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 166. b), express a time *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the verb with which it is used:

haec flens à Caesare petiit, weeping he asked this from Caesar,
B. G. I. 20

dē his rēbus certior factus, transeuntēs adgressus est, when he had been informed of these matters, he attacked them as they were crossing
(lit. *having been informed, he attacked (them) crossing*)

MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

THE INDICATIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

168. The indicative mood is used to state a real or an assumed fact or to ask a question.

169. **Statement of Facts.** Any form of the indicative may be used to state a real or an assumed fact :

est aliud iter, there is another road

Ariovistus fuit rēx, Ariovistus was king

Caesar veniet, Caesar will come

170. **Questions.** A question may be asked, as in English, by the use of an interrogative pronoun or adverb :

quis hoc fēcit ? who did this ?

ubi est puer ? where is the boy ?

a. Questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no" have no introductory interrogative in English, but in Latin are regularly introduced by the interrogative particles **-ne**, **nōne**, or **num**.

1. If information only is sought, and no particular answer suggested, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the first word :

scribitne epistulam ? is he writing the letter ?

2. **Nōne** expects an affirmative answer :

nōne epistulam scribit ? he is writing the letter, is he not ? or, is he not writing the letter ?

3. **Num** expects a negative answer :

num epistulam scribit ? he is not writing the letter, is he ?

b. A double, or alternative, question asks which of two supposed cases is true.

1. The first member of a double question is generally introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** (neither of which is to be translated); the second member by **an**, or :

utrum scribet, an veniet ? will he write, or come ?

scribetne, an veniet ? will he write, or come ?

NOTE. Frequently the first member has no introductory word:

scribet, an veniet? *will he write, or come?*

2. If the second member means simply *or not*, *annōn* is used in direct questions, *neque* in indirect questions (§ 201):

scribitne annōn? *is he writing or not?*

quaerō scribatne neque, *I ask whether he is writing or not*

dēclārābant utrum ex ūsū esset neque, *they announced whether it was advantageous or not,* cf. B. G. I. 50

171. **Rhetorical Questions.** A rhetorical question is one that is asked simply for effect, and seeks no information:

tālēne iniūriās perferre possum? *can I endure such injuries?*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

172. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express:

a. EXHORTATION, in the first person plural, present tense; the negative is *nē*:

nē hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, *let us not kill these robbers,* cf. B. G. VII. 36

b. COMMAND, in the third person, present tense:

obsidēs reddat, *let him return the hostages,* B. G. I. 35

c. NEGATIVE COMMAND, or PROHIBITION, with the negative *nē*:

nē dēspexeris or *nē dēspiciās,* *do not despise*

NOTE 1. Negative command is generally expressed, however, by *nōli, nōlite*, with the present infinitive. See § 173. note.

NOTE 2. The uses under a, b, and c are often called volitive (from *volō, will*) subjunctives, since they express an act of the will.

d. DELIBERATION, in questions implying doubt, perplexity, or indignation:

quam ratiōnem pugnae insistam? *what plan of battle shall I adopt?*

cf. B. G. III. 14

cūr dēspērētis? *why should you despair?* B. G. I. 40

NOTE. Such questions are usually rhetorical (§ 171) in character.

e. WISH (Optative Subjunctive), often with **utinam**. The negative is **nē**. The three forms of wishes and their expression in Latin are as follows:

1. A future wish regarded as possible of fulfillment; present (less frequently perfect) subjunctive, with or without **utinam**:

(utinam) *scribat*
(utinam) *scripserit* } *may he write*

2. A wish unfulfilled in present time; past subjunctive with **utinam**:

utinam scriberet, *would (or I wish) that he were writing*

3. A wish unfulfilled in past time; past perfect subjunctive with **utinam**:

utinam scripsisset, *would (or I wish) that he had written*

f. POSSIBILITY (Potential Subjunctive), to express what may be or might be. The negative is **nōn**:

aliquis dicat, *some one may say*
tum viderēs, *then you might have seen*

NOTE. The subjunctive denoting possibility is often used as the conclusion of an expressed or implied condition:

laudētur (si hoc faciat), *he would be praised* (if he should do this)
laudārētur (si hoc faceret), *he would be praised* (if he were doing this)
laudātus esset (si hoc fecisset), *he would have been praised* (if he had done this)

THE IMPERATIVE

173. The imperative is used to express a command or entreaty:

"*dēsillite*," inquit, "*commilitōnēs*," "*leap down, fellow soldiers*,"
he said, B. G. IV. 25

NOTE. A negative command, or prohibition, is regularly expressed by **nōli**, **nōlite**, with the infinitive (§ 172. c. note 1):

nōli committere, *do not bring it to pass*, cf. B. G. I. 13

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

174. Clauses denoting the purpose of an action are usually introduced by *ut*, *that (in order that)*, affirmative; and *nē*, *that not, lest*, negative; and stand in the subjunctive mood:

nōn nullī ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent remanēbant, some remained that they might avoid the suspicion of fear, B.G. I. 39
nē graviōrī bellō occurreret ad exercitum proficiāctur, he set out for the army that he might not meet with too serious a war, B.G. IV. 6

175. Relative Clauses of Purpose. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

lēgātōs mittunt quī dicerent, they sent envoys to say (lit. who should say), B.G. I. 7

176. Relative Purpose Clauses containing a Comparative. Purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by *quō*, which is equivalent to *ut eō*:

manipulōs laxāre iussit quō facilius gladiis utī possent, he gave orders to open the ranks that they might be able to use their swords more easily, B.G. II. 25

NOTE. For substantive clauses of purpose see (§ 183). Purpose may be expressed also by the gerund (§§ 223, 225), the gerundive (§§ 224, 225), or the supine (§ 226. a).

CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION OR CHARACTERISTIC

177. A relative clause that describes an antecedent by telling *what kind* of person or thing it is, is called a clause of *description* or *characteristic*, and takes the subjunctive:

domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, there was nothing at home whereby they could allay hunger, B.G. I. 28

a. Relative clauses of description are especially common after such expressions as *est qui*, *sunt qui*, *ūnus est qui*, *sōlus est qui* :

erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent, there were in all two ways by which they could go out from home, B. G. I. 6

ūnus sum qui addūci nōn potuerim, I am the only one who could not be influenced, B. G. I. 31

178. A relative clause that simply tells *what* person or thing the antecedent is, instead of *what kind* it is, or one that only *adds a fact* without which the antecedent clause would still be complete, takes the indicative :

ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, negat sē posse etc., when the day which he had decided upon with the envoys came, he said that he could not etc., B. G. I. 8

Quam cōstituerat tells *what* day, not *what kind* of day.

auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eas regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt, they summoned reënforcements from Britain, which is situated opposite to those regions, B. G. III. 9

The antecedent clause makes complete sense without the *quae* clause.

For relative clauses of description denoting cause see § 190.

CLAUSES OF RESULT

179. Clauses that express the result of some act or state mentioned in the main clause are introduced by *ut*, *so that*, and take the subjunctive mood. The negative in clauses of result is *nōn* :

mōns impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent, a mountain towered above, so that a very few (men) could easily keep (them) back, B. G. I. 6

collis nāscēbātur silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset, a hill rose, wooded, so that a view within could not easily be gained, B. G. II. 18

NOTE. A result clause may often be recognized by the presence in the main clause of some word meaning *so, so great, such*, etc., like *ita, sic, tantus, talis*, etc.:

ita Helvētīl institūtī sunt ut obsidēs accipere cōsuērīnt, the Helvetii have been so trained that they are accustomed to take hostages, B.G. I. 14

180. Relative Clauses of Result. A clause of result may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

nēmō est tam senex quā sē annum nōn putet posse vīvere, no one is so old that he does not think (lit. who does not think) that he can live for a year

NOTE. Relative clauses of purpose or result may often be tested by noting whether *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun can be substituted for the relative. In the last sentence *ut* might have been used instead of *quī*.

For substantive clauses of result see § 187.

SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN, CLAUSES

181. A substantive clause is one that is used like a noun, that is, as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive or predicate.

182. Quod Clauses of Fact. Substantive clauses introduced by *quod*, *that*, take the indicative to state a fact:

quod glōriāminī, eōdem pertinet, (the fact) that you boast, amounts to the same thing, B.G. I. 14

The *quod* clause is the subject of *pertinet*.

hōc est miserior fortūna, quod nē in occultō quidem querī audent, their lot is the more pitiful in this, that they do not dare to complain even in secret, B.G. I. 32

The *quod* clause is in apposition with *hōc*.

a. *Quod* at the beginning of a sentence often has the meaning *as to the fact that*:

quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es etc., as to the fact that you attacked one canton unexpectedly etc., B.G. I. 13

183. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Substantive clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive are used after verbs of *commanding, persuading*,

requesting, urging, wishing, and similar verbs whose action is directed toward the future:

his ut conquīrent imperāvit, he ordered these to hunt (them) up
(lit. *that they should hunt (them) up*), B.G. I. 28

persuādet Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret, he persuades Casticus to seize
the supreme power (lit. *that he should seize*), B.G. I. 3

In these sentences the *ut* clause is used as object.

dat negōtium Senonibus ut ea cognōscant, he employs the Senones to
find this out (lit. *he gives employment to the Senones etc.*), B.G. II. 2

Here the *ut* clause is in apposition with *negōtium*.

erat eī praeceptum nē proelium committeret, it had been enjoined on
him that he should not engage in battle, B.G. I. 22

Here the *nē* clause is the subject of *erat praeceptum*.

NOTE. *Cōnor, iubeō, patior, volō, nōlō*, and *mālō* take the infinitive:

nāvēs longās paulum removērī iussit, he ordered the ships of war to be
withdrawn a little, B.G. IV. 25

184. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing. After verbs of *fearing* substantive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by *nē*, rendered *that, lest*, or by *ut*, rendered *that not*:

verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur, they feared that our
army would be led against them, cf. B.G. II. 1

verēbantur ut exercitus noster ad eōs addūcerētur, they feared that our
army would not be led against them

185. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Hindering and Opposing. Verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive, introduced by *nē*, *quīn*, or *quō minus*. *Nē* is used when the main verb is affirmative, *quīn* when it is negated, *quō minus* in either case:

dēterrere potes nē maior multitūdō trādūcātur, you are able to prevent
a larger number from being brought over, B.G. I. 31

Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla conicerent, the Germans could
not be prevented from hurling their weapons, B.G. I. 47

neque recūsābunt quō minus sub Germānōrum imperiō sint, nor will
they refuse to be under the sway of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 31

a. Some of these verbs also allow the infinitive :

nostrōs nāvibus egredi prohibēbant, they kept our men from going forth from the ships, B. G. IV. 24

186. Substantive Clauses after *nōn dubitō*, etc. Negated expressions of doubt (*nōn dubitō*, *I do not doubt*; *nōn dubium est*, *there is no doubt*) are followed by *quīn* (*that*) and the subjunctive :

nōn dubitō quīn supplicium sūmat, I do not doubt that he will exact punishment, B. G. I. 31

nōn est dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētīī possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetii are the most powerful (tribe) of all Gaul, B. G. I. 3

187. Substantive Clauses of Result. I. Substantive clauses of result with *ut* and the subjunctive are used as the subject or object of verbs of *accomplishing*, *effecting*, etc., especially *faciō*, *efficiō*, *perficiō*, etc. They may be used also as appositives :

obsidēs utī inter eō dent perficit, he brings it about that they give hostages to one another, B. G. I. 9 (object)

factum est utī Germānī mercēde arcesserentur, it was brought about that the Germans were invited for pay, B. G. I. 31 (subject)

hanc grātiā refert, ut gravētur, he makes this return, (namely) that he objects, B. G. I. 35 (appositive)

II. Substantive clauses of result with *ut* and the subjunctive are used as the subject of certain impersonal verbs, such as *it happens*, *it remains*, *it is added*, etc., as *fit*, *accidit*, *accēdit*, etc. :

accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened that there was a full moon, B. G. IV. 29

NOTE 1. Substantive clauses with *ut*, substantive clauses with *quod* (§ 182), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative (§§ 216, 217) are constructions so nearly equivalent that any one of the three may at times be used with relatively little difference in meaning.

NOTE 2. Indirect questions (§ 201), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative after verbs of *saying* etc. (§ 203), are also substantive clauses.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

188. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, etc. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō*, *because*, take:

a. The *indicative* when the reason given is that of the speaker or writer:

fortissimī sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt, the Belgae are the bravest because they are farthest away, B.G. I. 1

Here Cæsar gives *his own reason* why the Belgæ are the bravest.

b. The *subjunctive* when the reason given is not that of the speaker or writer, but is simply *alleged* as the reason of some one else:

Hæduī (veniēbant) questum quod Harūdēs finēs populārentur, the Hædui came to complain because (they said) the Harudes were devastating their fields, B.G. I. 37

Here Cæsar gives, not his own reason, but the reason *alleged* by the Hædui.

189. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Causal clauses introduced by *cum*, *since* or *because*, take the subjunctive:

his cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, since they could not persuade these of their own accord, they sent envoys, B.G. I. 9

praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit queritur, he complains especially because influenced by their entreaties he has undertaken the war, B.G. I. 16

190. Relative Clauses of Cause. Cause may be denoted by a relative clause with the subjunctive:

magnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī vectigālīa dēteriōra faciat, Caesar does a great wrong in making (lit. who makes, i.e. because he is making) the revenues lower, B.G. I. 36

NOTE. In this use the relative is equivalent to *cum* is etc. It is often preceded by *ut*, *utpote*, or *quippe*. Cf. B.G. IV. 23, *ut quae . . . habērent*.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

191. Concessive Clauses with the Indicative. Concessive clauses with the indicative are introduced by *quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, *although* :

quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt hūmāniōrēs, although they are of the same race, they are more civilized, B. G. IV. 3

nam etsi vidēbat, tamen nōn putābat etc., for although he saw, nevertheless he did not think etc., B. G. I. 46

NOTE. *Quamquam* often introduces a *principal* clause to mark a transition to a new subject of discussion. It is then translated *and yet*.

192. Concessive Clauses with the Subjunctive. Concessive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by *cum*, *ut*, *quamvis*, *although* :

cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs dabuntur, pācem faciam, although these things are so, nevertheless, if hostages shall be given, I will make peace, B. G. I. 14

ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen perspiciebant etc., and although now all things should fall out contrary to their expectation, nevertheless they were well aware etc., B. G. III. 9

NOTE. *Cum* is used in temporal clauses (*when*, § 194) and in causal clauses (*since*, § 189) as well as in concessive clauses (*although*). When *tamen* (*nevertheless*) occurs in the main clause, the *cum* clause is concessive; if *praesertim* (*especially*) precedes, the *cum* clause is probably causal.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

193. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, etc. Temporal clauses introduced by *postquam*, *after*, *ut*, *ubi*, *when*, *cum*, *primum*, *simul*, *simul atque* (*ac*), *as soon as*, take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present :

postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad eē venīre vidit, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, after he saw that all the forces of the Belgæ were coming toward him, he hastened to lead his army across, B. G. II. 5

Caesar ubi suōs urgērī vidit, prōcessit, when Cæsar saw that his men were hard pressed, he advanced, B. G. II. 25

194. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, *when*, and referring to the present or future, take the indicative; but referring to the past they have two uses:

a. Definitive: to define or fix the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. The mood is indicative:

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Hæduī,
when Cæsar came into Gaul, the Hædui were at the head of one
faction, B. G. VI. 12

b. Descriptive: to describe the situation or circumstances under which the action of the main verb took place. The mood is subjunctive (past or past perfect):

cum ab his quæreret, sic reperiebatur, when he made inquiries from these,
he gained the following information, B. G. II. 4

cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt, when he had come
unexpectedly, the Remi sent envoys, B. G. II. 3

In the sentence (§ 194. *a*) *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Hæduī*, the time of the Hæduan supremacy is merely *dated*, or *fixed*, by the *cum* clause, and is true independently of Cæsar's coming. They were at the head of one faction whether he came or not.

In the sentence (§ 194. *b*) *cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt*, the fact *Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt*, *the Remi sent envoys*, is not true independently of his coming. They sent them under the circumstances occasioned by his coming. They would not have sent them if he had not come.

NOTE. Temporal clauses of description with *cum* correspond closely with relative clauses of description (§ 177).

195. Cum Clauses denoting Time and Cause. Sometimes the idea of *time* is combined with that of *cause*. In such cases *cum* with the subjunctive is always used:

Helvētīi, cum id intellerent, lēgātōs misērunt, the Helvetii sent envoys
when (since) they learned that, cf. B. G. I. 13

NOTE. This use corresponds with the relative clause of cause (§ 190).

196. Cum meaning whenever. *Cum*, *whenever*, denoting a repeated action, is generally followed by the indicative:

ad eos se, cum usus est, recipiunt, *they retreat to these whenever it is necessary*, cf. B. G. IV. 2

cum funes adducti erant, praerumpēbantur, *whenever the ropes were drawn tight, they were broken off*, B. G. III. 14

197. Temporal Clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*. Temporal clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*, *before*, have the following uses :

a. When they denote an *actual fact* they take the indicative :

neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnerunt, *nor did they cease to flee, before they reached the river Rhine*, B. G. I. 53

b. When they denote something *anticipated*, but not sure, they take the subjunctive :

priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad se vocārī iubet, *before undertaking anything, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to him*, B. G. I. 19

198. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*. I. *Dum*, meaning *while*, takes the indicative in the historical present (§ 153. *a*), even though the time is past :

dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūtiātum est, *while this was going on, word was brought to Caesar*, B. G. I. 46

II. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, meaning *as long as*, take the indicative :
quoad potuit, fortissimē resistit, *he resisted bravely as long as he was able*, B. G. IV. 12

III. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, meaning *until*, have two uses :

a. The indicative, to denote an *actual fact* :

neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad praecipitēs hostēs ēgerunt, *nor did they cease pursuing until they routed the enemy*, B. G. V. 17

b. The subjunctive, to denote something *anticipated* :

dum nāvēs convenirent expectāvit, *he waited until the ships should arrive*, B. G. IV. 23

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

199. Definition. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence containing an independent clause and a subordinate clause introduced by *si*, *if*, or *nisi*, *si nōn*, *unless*, *if not*. The subordinate clause is called the *condition* (or *protasis*) and the main clause the *conclusion* (or *apodosis*).

Conditional clauses are divided as to time into the following three classes :

I. PRESENT CONDITIONS :

a. Non-Committal Conditions (that is, those in which nothing is implied as to the truth or falsity of the case supposed); these take the present indicative :

si hoc facit, laudātur, if he is doing this, he is praised

b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past (imperfect) subjunctive :

si hoc faceret, laudārētur, if he were doing this (but he is not), he would be praised (at the present time)

II. FUTURE CONDITIONS :

a. More Probable Conditions; these take the future or future perfect indicative :

si hoc faciet, laudābitur, if he does (shall do) this, he will be praised

si hoc fecerit, laudābitur, if he shall have done this, he will be praised

b. Less Probable Conditions; these take the present or perfect subjunctive :

si hoc faciat (fecerit), laudētur, if he should do this, he would be praised

III. PAST CONDITIONS :

a. Non-Committal Conditions; these take the past descriptive (imperfect) or perfect indicative :

si hoc faciēbat, laudābātur, if he was doing this, he was praised

si hoc fecit, laudātus est, if he did this, he was praised

b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past perfect (pluperfect) subjunctive:

sī hoc fēcisset, laudātus esset, if he had done this (but he did not), he would have been praised

NOTE. The conditional clause, not the conclusion, determines the class to which a conditional sentence belongs. Although both parts are usually in the same mood and tense, yet the conclusion may be in any form of the verb that the sense requires; for example:

sī hoc facit, eum laudāte, if he is doing this, praise him

Because of the form of the conditional clause this conditional sentence must be classed as present non-committal.

200. Clauses of Comparison with *velut*, *velut sī*. A conditional clause of comparison introduced by *velut*, *velut sī*, *as if*, takes the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses (§ 162):

absentis Ariovistī crūdēlītātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, they stand in fear of the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence (absentis) just as (they would) if he were (should be) present, B. G. I. 32

NOTE. Such a condition has the future less probable form in the Latin, though in English it has the form of a condition contrary to fact. The sentence above, thrown back into past time, reads *velut sī adesset, horrēbant*.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

201. Indirect questions are substantive interrogative clauses used, generally as object, after verbs of *inquiring, asking, knowing, telling*, etc. The verb in indirect questions is in the subjunctive.

quae in eō reprehendat ostendit, he points out what he censures in him, B. G. I. 20

intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcērim, I know with how great danger I did that, B. G. I. 17

NOTE. The same interrogative words that introduce direct questions (§ 170) are used with indirect; but questions answered by "yes" or "no" are introduced without distinction by *num* or *-ne*, translated *whether*.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

202. A direct quotation is a statement made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer. Such a statement is said to be in the *direct discourse*:

his Caesar respondit, "Minus mihi dubitātiōnis datur," *to these Caesar answered, "I entertain less (of) doubt,"* B.G. I. 14

"dēsilitē," inquit, "commilitōnēs," *"leap down, comrades," he said,* B.G. IV. 25

203. An indirect quotation is a reported statement, not made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer, but adapted to the form of the sentence used by the person quoting them. Such a statement is said to be in *indirect discourse*, and is used after verbs of *saying* and *thinking*:

his Caesar respondit sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, *to these Caesar answered that he entertained less (of) doubt,* B.G. I. 14

a. Sometimes the verb of *saying* is not expressed, but is understood from the context:

eōs incūsāvit: Ariovistum populū Rōmānī amicitiam adpetisse, *he upbraided them (saying) that Ariovistus had sought to gain the friendship of the Roman people,* B.G. I. 40

b. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to *imply* that the quotation is indirect. This is called *implied indirect discourse* (§ 208 and b):

Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre, *Caesar demanded the grain which (as he said) they had promised,* B.G. I. 16

Independent Sentences in Indirect Discourse

204. Declarative Sentences. In declarative sentences the six tenses of the indicative, on becoming indirect, pass into the three corresponding tenses of the infinitive with subject accusative, as shown by the following table:

INDICATIVE	INFINITIVE
Present	Present
Past descriptive	Perfect
Future	
Perfect	
Past perfect	Future
Future perfect	

a. The subject accusative (§ 92) of the infinitive is regularly expressed in indirect discourse, even if it was not used in the direct. Pronouns of the first and second person are changed to those of the third (if the verb of saying is in the third person), the reflexive forms (§ 132) being used to refer to the subject of the verb of *saying*:

DIRECT: (ego) *trānsiī nōn meā sponte*, *I did not cross of my own free will*

INDIRECT: *Ariovistus respondit trānsisse sēsē nōn suā sponte*, *Ariovistus replied that he had not crossed of his own free will*, B.G. I. 44

205. Imperative Sentences. An imperative in the direct discourse is changed in the indirect to the subjunctive; the present being used after a primary tense, the past after a secondary tense:

respondit sī quid vellent, reverterentur, *he answered that if they wanted anything, they should return*, B.G. I. 7

This sentence in the direct form would be

sī quid vultis, revertimini, *if you want anything, return*

206. Prohibitions. In a prohibition having *nōlī*, *nōlite*, and the infinitive in the direct discourse (§ 173. note), the infinitive is changed to the present or past subjunctive with *nē* in the indirect according to the sequence of tenses, and *nōlī* disappears:

nōlī committere, *do not bring it to pass*, B.G. I. 13

This prohibition when changed to indirect discourse becomes

nē committeret, (*Divico said*) *that he should not bring it to pass*

207. Questions. I. *Real Questions* (§ 170) on becoming indirect change their verbs from the indicative to the subjunctive, the tenses conforming to the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: *cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs? why do you come into my possessions?* B.G. I. 44

INDIRECT: *Ariovistus respondit . . . cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret, Ariovistus answered (asking) why he came into his possessions*

II. *a. Rhetorical Questions* (§ 171) that have the indicative in the direct discourse, change the indicative to the infinitive in the indirect:

DIRECT: *num recentium iniuriarum memoriam depōnere possum? can I put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs?* B.G. I. 14

INDIRECT: *Caesar respondit . . . num recentium iniuriarum memoriam depōnere posse, Caesar answered (asking) whether he could put aside the recollection etc.*

b. Rhetorical Questions that have the deliberative subjunctive (§ 172. *d*) in the direct, retain the subjunctive in the indirect; the tense follows the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: *cūr dē vestrā virtūte dēspērētis? why should you be diffident of your own courage?* B.G. I. 40

INDIRECT: *(quaesivit) cūr dē suā virtūte dēspērarent, (he inquired) why they should be diffident of their own courage*

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

208. General Rule; Mood. Verbs in the subordinate clauses of complex sentences are changed to or remain in the subjunctive:

DIRECT: *hī sunt idem Germānī quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn potuerunt, these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army,* B.G. I. 40

INDIRECT: *(Caesar dicit) hōs esse eōdem Germānōs quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn potuerint, (Caesar says) that these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army*

a. If the statement made in the subordinate clause is true independently of the words of the speaker or writer, the indicative may be retained:

certior factus est, ex eā parte vici quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctū discessisse, he was informed that all had departed by night from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls, B.G. III. 2

δ. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to *imply* that the quotation is indirect. This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 203. δ):

Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flagitare, Caesar demanded the grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

209. Tense. The tense of verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb of *saying*, according to the rule for the sequence of tenses; for example, **dicit, he says**, will be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive; **dixit, he said**, by the past or past perfect subjunctive:

DIRECT: id quod in Nervii feci, faciam, I will do that which I did in (the case of) the Nervii, B.G. II. 32

**INDIRECT: dicit se id quod in Nervii fecerit, facturum esse, he says that he will do that which he did in (the case of) the Nervii
dixit se id quod in Nervii fecisset, facturum esse, he said that he would do that which he had done in (the case of) the Nervii**

DIRECT: veremur angustias itineris quae intercédunt, we fear the difficulties of the way which intervene, cf. B.G. I. 39

**INDIRECT: dicunt se vereri angustias itineris quae intercédant, they say that they fear the difficulties of the way which intervene
dixerunt se vereri angustias itineris quae intercéderent, they said that they feared the difficulties of the way which intervened**

NOTE. As a rule the same verb stem will be used in the subjunctive as was used in the indicative; for example, a present or future indicative will become a present or past subjunctive; a perfect or future perfect indicative will become a perfect or past perfect subjunctive.

EXCEPTION: Sometimes for the sake of vividness a primary tense is used in the subjunctive after a secondary tense of a verb of *saying*:

respondit ita Helveticis institutos esse uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint, he replied that the Helvetii had been so trained that they were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them), B.G. I. 14

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse

210. All conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative (§ 199. I. *a*, II. *a*, III. *a*) are treated in indirect discourse as ordinary complex sentences, the verb in the main clause (conclusion) being changed to the infinitive, and the verb in the subordinate clause (condition) to the subjunctive:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gerunt, vincunt*, if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

INDIRECT: *dicit hostēs, sī bellum gerant, vincere*, he says that if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

211. In future less probable conditions (§ 199. II. *b*) the verb in the conclusion (which, of course, is the main verb) is changed to the *future infinitive*; the verb in the condition, being in a subordinate clause, remains in the subjunctive, though the tense may have to be changed to accord with the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gerant, vincant*, if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

INDIRECT: *dicit hostēs, sī bellum gerant, victūrōs esse*, he says that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

dixit hostēs, sī bellum gererent, victūrōs esse, he said that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

212. In future conditions, either more or less probable (§ 199. II. *a*, *b*), a passive verb in the conclusion of the direct discourse is expressed by *fore* (*futūrum esse*) *ut* with the present subjunctive after a primary tense, past subjunctive after a secondary tense:

DIRECT: *sī bellum gerent, vincantur*, if they shall wage war, they will be conquered (more probable)

sī bellum gerant, vincantur, if they should wage war, they would be conquered (less probable)

INDIRECT (both more probable and less probable): *dicit sī bellum gerant fore ut vincantur*, he says that if they shall (should) wage war, they will (would) be conquered

dixit sī bellum gererent fore ut vincerentur, he said that if they should wage war, they would be conquered

213. In conditions contrary to fact (§ 199. I. *b*, III. *b*) the verb in the *condition* (past or past perfect subjunctive) remains unchanged. The verb in the *conclusion* (past or past perfect subjunctive) undergoes the following changes:

a. If it is in the active voice, it is changed to the proper form of the future participle in *-ūrus* with *fuisse*:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gererent, vincerent, if the enemy were waging war (now), they would be conquering*

INDIRECT: *dīcit (or dīxit) hostēs, sī bellum gererent, victūrōs fuisse, he says (or said) that if the enemy were waging war, they would be conquering*

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gessissent, vīcissent, if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

INDIRECT: *dīcit (or dīxit) hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, victūrōs fuisse, he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

b. If the verb in the conclusion is in the passive voice, the form *futūrum fuisse ut* is used, followed by the past subjunctive of the verb to be changed:

DIRECT: *hostēs sī bellum gessissent, victī essent, if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered*

INDIRECT: *dīcit (or dīxit) futūrum fuisse ut hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, vincerentur, he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered.*

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

214. A subordinate verb that would regularly be in the indicative is sometimes attracted to the subjunctive by another subjunctive (or equivalent infinitive), on which it depends:

monuit, ut maritimae rēs postulārent, omnēs rēs administrārentur, he directed that all things should be executed as naval tactics demanded, B. G. IV. 23

dat negotium Senonibus uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant, he employs the Senones to find out those things which are going on among them, B. G. II. 2

THE INFINITIVE

215. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it has tense and voice, and may be transitive or intransitive, but expresses neither person nor number. As a noun it has certain case constructions.

216. The Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as subject:

a. With *esse*:

perfacile est cōnāta perficere, it is easy to accomplish the undertakings, B. G. I. 3

b. With impersonal verbs:

nōn oportet mē impedīrī, it is not proper that I should be hindered, B. G. I. 36

217. The Infinitive as Object. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as object:

a. With subject accusative; after verbs of *wishing, ordering, permitting, allowing*, and the like:

liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit, he ordered the children to be brought to him (as) hostages, B. G. II. 5

b. With subject accusative; after verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, and the like. This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse (§§ 203, 204):

Caesar certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās coniūrāre, Cæsar was informed that all the Belgæ were conspiring, B. G. II. 1

c. Without subject accusative; to complete the predicate of verbs meaning *to be able, be accustomed, decide, begin, dare, try*, and the like, which require another action of the same subject. Such verbs are called verbs of incomplete predication, and the accompanying infinitive is called the *complementary infinitive*:

cōpias parāre coepērunt, they began to prepare forces, B. G. III. 23
cōstituērunt ea comparāre, they decided to prepare those things,
B. G. I. 3

218. Historical Infinitive. In vivid narration the infinitive with subject *nominative* may be used for the past descriptive indicative:

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, Caesar demanded grain of the Haedui, B.G. I. 16

PARTICIPLES

219. Participles are verbal adjectives; as adjectives they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case; as verbs they have tense and voice, and may take an object. For tense distinctions see § 167.

220. The present and past participles are often used predicatively where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be employed:

a. Time:

patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, within the memory of our fathers, when all Gaul was ravaged (lit. all Gaul having been ravaged), B.G. II. 4

b. Cause:

quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, because he was greatly disturbed by these facts, Caesar thought that he ought to hasten, B.G. I. 37

c. Condition:

damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, punishment was to follow, if he was condemned (lit. having been condemned), B.G. I. 4

d. Concession:

beneficiō adfectus hanc grātiā refert, though he has been treated with kindness, he makes this return (lit. having been treated), cf. B.G. I. 35

e. Simple Relative Clause:

submōtis restitērunt, they resisted those who had been routed, cf. B.G. I. 25

221. Participles used as Nouns. The present and past participles are often used as nouns:

opiniōnem pugnantium praebēbant, they gave the impression of (men) fighting, cf. B.G. III. 25

222. The Periphrastic Conjugations. I. The future participle in **-ūrus** is used with the verb **sum** to form what is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*. This denotes future, or intended, action:

praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, except what they were going to carry with them, B.G. I. 5

II. The future passive participle, or gerundive in **-ndus** (§ 224), is used with the verb **sum** to form what is called the *passive periphrastic conjugation*. This is used to denote *what must be, or ought to be, done*.

The word representing the person upon whom the duty or obligation rests is put in the dative of apparent agent (§ 87):

omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all (kinds of) cruelties have to be endured, cf. B.G. I. 32

Caesari omnia unō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time (lit. all things had to be done by Caesar etc.), B.G. II. 20

NOTE. Intransitive verbs in the passive periphrastic conjugation are regularly used impersonally:

concedendum esse nōn putābat, he did not think that he ought to comply (lit. that it ought to be complied)

GERUND

223. The gerund is an active verbal noun with stem like that of the gerundive. It is found only in the neuter gender, and in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of the second declension. It is governed in general as a noun, and may have the modifiers of a verb:

a. Genitive:

hominēs bellandī cupidī, men eager for warfare (lit. desirous of warring), B.G. I. 2

b. Dative; the dative of the gerund is rare except with a few adjectives.

c. Accusative; the accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions and does not take an object:

Caesar respondit diem sē ad deliberandum sūptūrum (esse), Caesar answered that he would take time for deliberating, B.G. I. 7

d. Ablative:

reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar, Caesar found on inquiry (lit. *in inquiring*), B.G. I. 18

NOTE. The gerund with a direct object is found as a rule only in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

GERUNDIVE

224. The gerundive (ending in *-ndus*) is a passive verbal adjective, declined like an adjective of the first and second declensions. It is used as follows:

a. The gerundive as a predicate adjective in the *passive periphrastic conjugation* (§ 222. II) denotes *what must be, or ought to be, done*.

Caesari omnia unō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time (lit. *all things had to be done by Caesar etc.*), B.G. II. 20

b. The gerundive is generally used instead of the gerund with a direct object (§ 223, note). The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have:

praedae faciendae facultās dabātur, an opportunity for securing (lit. *of securing*) *plunder was afforded*, cf. B.G. IV. 34

The equivalent gerund construction would be *praedam faciendī facultās*, with *praedam* as object of the gerund *faciendī*. The translation in both constructions is the same.

ab his fit initium retinendī Sili, these take the initiative in detaining Silius, B.G. III. 8

in petendā pāce culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, in seeking peace they attributed the fault to the multitude, B.G. IV. 27

ad eas res conficiendās, for accomplishing these measures, B.G. I. 3

c. With the personal and reflexive forms *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, a form in *-ndi* is commonly used without change in gender or number:

neque sui conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, neither do they leave to the enemy an opportunity of recovering themselves, B.G. III. 6

As *sui* is plural, we might here expect *conligendōrum* to agree with it.

d. The gerundive may be used as an attributive adjective. In this use it often expresses purpose after verbs like *cūrō*, *to care for*, *see to*, etc.:

pontem faciendum cūrat, *he causes a bridge to be built* (lit. *he sees to a bridge to be built*), B.G. I. 13

Gerund and Gerundive expressing Purpose

225. Both gerund and gerundive are used to express purpose:

a. In the accusative with *ad*:

respondit diem sē ad deliberandum sūptūrum (esse), *he replied that he would take time to deliberate*, B.G. I. 7

ad eas rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur, *Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish these measures*, B.G. I. 3

b. In the genitive with *causā* or *grātiā*:

venisne speculandī causā? *do you come for the sake of spying?*
cf. B.G. I. 47

id nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō, *I am not doing that for the sake of attacking Gaul*, B.G. I. 44

SUPINE

226. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, found only in the accusative (*-um*) and ablative (*-ū*):

a. The supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:

vēnī auxilium postulātum, *I came to ask aid*, B.G. I. 31

b. The supine in *-ū* is used with adjectives like an ablative of respect (§ 115):

optimum factū esse dūxērunt, *they considered it the best thing to do*
(lit. *best with respect to doing*), B.G. IV. 30

NOTE. The supine in *-um* may take an object; the supine in *-ū* never does:

lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, *they send envoys to ask aid*, B.G. I. 11.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

227. Dates were reckoned by the Romans as follows:

a. By the Roman calendar, as reformed by Julius and Augustus Cæsar, the year had 365 days, divided into months as at present, February having 29 days every fourth year.

b. The names of the months, used as adjectives, were as follows:

Iānuārius, -a, -um	Māius, -a, -um	September, -bris, -bre
Februārius, -a, -um	Iūnius, -a, -um	Octōber, -bris, -bre
Mārtius, -a, -um	Quīntilis, -e	November, -bris, -bre
Aprīlis, -e	Sextilis, -e	December, -bris, -bre

NOTE. The seventh month (Quīntilis) was later called **Iūlius** in honor of Julius Cæsar, and the eighth (Sextilis), **Augustus**, in honor of that emperor.

c. The year was formerly regarded as beginning with March, which made July the *fifth* (quīntilis) month, August the *sixth* (sextilis), September the *seventh* (september), etc.

d. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month, namely, the *Calends* (Kalendæ, -ārum), the first day of the month; the *Nones* (Nōnæ, -ārum), the fifth day; and the *Ides* (Īdūs, Īduum), the thirteenth.

However, in March, May, July, and October the Nones fell on the seventh day, and the Ides on the fifteenth.

Kalendae					Nōnae										Idūs															Kalendae
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	...	27	28	29	30	31	1								

e. An event occurring at any one of these points was said to occur *on the Calends, on the Nones, on the Ides*, and the date was expressed by the simple ablative of time. The noun denoting the date was modified by the adjective representing the month in question:

Kalendis Februāriis, on the first of February
Nōnis Aprīlibus, on the fifth of April
Nōnis Octōbribus, on the seventh of October
Īdibus Iānuāriis, on the thirteenth of January
Īdibus Mārtiis, on the fifteenth of March

f. From the Calends, Nones, and Ides the dates in the month were reckoned *backwards*. The date immediately preceding any one of them was expressed by the word *pridie*, used as a preposition followed by the accusatives *Kalendās*, *Nōnās*, *Idūs*, modified by the adjective form of the word denoting the month :

pridie Kalendās Februāriās, *the thirty-first of January*

pridie Nōnās Iānuāriās, *the fourth of January*

pridie Idūs Mārtiās, *the fourteenth of March*

pridie Idūs Septembres, *the twelfth of September*

g. The dates intervening between any two points were counted as so many days *before* the second point. The Romans, however, in reckoning a series, counted both extremes; for example, the eleventh day of April was counted as the *third* day before the Ides (that is, the thirteenth), the tenth of April as the *fourth* day before the Ides.

h. In expressing dates the phrase *ante diem* (translated *the day before*) was used with the accusatives *Kalendās*, *Nōnās*, *Idūs*, the word *diem* being modified by the proper ordinal numeral :

ante diem tertium Kalendās Octōbrēs, *the third day before the Calends of October (September 29)*

ante diem quartum Kalendās Octōbrēs, *the fourth day before the Calends of October (September 28)*

ante diem sextum Idūs Mārtiās, *the sixth day before the Ides of March (March 10)*

ante diem quintum Nōnās Māiās, *the fifth day before the Nones of May (May 3)*

NOTE. These expressions were generally abbreviated as follows :

(*a. d.*) III. Kal. Oct., (*a. d.*) VI. Id. Mārt., etc.

i. To find the equivalent in English for a date given in Latin, observe the following rule :

If the given Latin date is counted from the Calends, add *two* to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given date; if from the Nones or the Ides, add *one* to the day on which they fall, and from the number thus obtained subtract the given date

j. The whole expression denoting a date was sometimes treated as a single substantive governed by a preposition; compare the following:

in a.d. V. Kal. Nov., *to the fifth day before the Calends of November*
(October 28)

opus contulit in ante diem III. Īd. Oct., *he postponed the work to the*
13th of October

NOTE. Before Julius Cæsar reformed the calendar (46 B.C.), the Roman year consisted of 355 days. All the months had 29 days except March, May, July, and October, which had 31 days, and February, which had 28. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, a month of varying length (*mēnsis intercalāris*) was inserted after February 23 every other year.

228. The Roman year was designated either by the names of the consuls (as, **M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus**, B.G. I. 2) or by the number of the year reckoned from the founding of the city (**ab urbe conditā** abbreviated to **A. U. C.**). The founding of the city is assigned to the year 753 B.C. In order, therefore, to find the year of the Christian era corresponding to a given Roman date A.U.C., the number of the Roman year must be subtracted from 754, 1 being added to 753 to allow for the Roman custom of including both extremes when reckoning the difference between two numbers. For example, Caesar was killed in 710 A.U.C., or 44 (754-710) B.C.

LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. **Order of Words.** In English the words of a sentence stand in a more or less fixed order. Emphasis is indicated *when speaking* by stress of voice, and in a *written* sentence by the use of italics or by underscoring the emphatic words. In Latin, on the other hand, emphasis and the relative importance of words are shown by their position in the sentence.

2. The most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the middle.

3. As the most important word in the sentence is normally the *subject*, and the second in importance is normally the *verb*, the tendency is to place these respectively *first* and *last*. Their respective modifiers stand next these according to their relative emphasis. This may be represented as follows:

Strong

Weak

Strong



Subject followed by its modifiers

Modifiers followed by Verb

4. For convenience this is called the *normal order*. Departure from the normal order is frequent, however, from the fact that in Latin, just as in English, other words or groups of words may be regarded as of more importance than the subject or the verb. This importance may be indicated:

- a. By placing words to be emphasized *first*, more rarely *last*:

*Gallōs Garumna flūmen dividit, the Gauls are separated by the
Garonne river* (lit. *the Gauls the Garonne river separates*)
*magna dīs immortalibus habenda est grātia, great gratitude is due
the immortal gods*

b. By reversing the normal order, especially of nouns with attributive adjectives (§ 61) and nouns with modifying genitives. The normal position of demonstrative pronouns, cardinal numerals, and adjectives of quantity and place (for example, *ulterior*, *citerior*, *inferior*, etc.) is *before* the nouns they modify; the normal position of other adjectives, ordinal numerals, possessives, indefinites, and genitives is *after* their nouns:

ille imperātor, that general (normal order)
imperātor ille, that famous general (normal order reversed)
mors frātris tui, the death of your brother (normal order)
tui frātris mors, your brother's death (normal order reversed)

- c. The appositive (§ 54) normally follows its noun; when emphatic it precedes:

Caesar imperātor, Caesar, the general
imperātor Caesar, the general, Caesar

- d. The subject may stand last, or the verb first, to indicate unusual emphasis:

dēlectat mē ōrātiō, the speech delights me

- e. The copula *sum* (§ 48. II. b) ordinarily stands last, or between the subject and predicate; but when it emphasizes *existence* (there *was*, there *is*, etc.), it stands first, or at any rate before the subject:

erat nūllum aliud iter, there was no other way

EXERCISE

5. Translate the following sentences, so arranging the words as to show the importance of those italicized:

1. Orgetorix, who was the *richest* of the Helvetii, made a *conspiracy*.
2. *The Helvetii were hemmed in* on all sides. 3. The Helvetii excel¹

² *the rest of the Gauls.* 4. There is a river, the Rhone by name,³ which separates *our* province. 5. The territories of the *Belgæ* are farthest away. 6. They keep the Germans away from *their* territories by almost daily battles.⁴ 7. Many of the *Helvetii* were *noble*, but *Orgetorix* excelled¹ the rest. 8. A very high mountain hems them in⁵ on one side. 9. *Orgetorix* persuaded *certain ones*⁶ of the *Helvetii*⁷ who were desirous of power. 10. *The Sequani* are nearest to the province, *the Belgæ* are farthest away.

NOTE. A superior figure standing *after* a word (for example, *so*¹) refers to *that word only*; placed *before* a word (for example, *so*¹), it refers to two or more following words.

¹ Followed by the dative, § 84. ² *reliqui*, agreeing with its noun in gender, number, and case, means *the rest of*. ³ Ablative of respect, § 115. ⁴ Ablative of means, § 106. ⁵ *in* *ex parte*. ⁶ Dative, § 83. ⁷ Ablative with *ex*, § 76. Exc.

LESSON II

6. General Rules for Agreement.

- a.* Agreement of Adjectives, § 59.
- b.* Agreement of Relatives, § 64. *a.*
- c.* Agreement of Appositives, § 58.
- d.* Agreement of Verbs, § 65.

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xli-xliii)

NOTE. From now on the Exercises are divided into two parts. The sentences in the first part are sufficiently easy to be used for oral work, if desired, and illustrate how the text may be used as a basis for similar sentences. By changing case and number, mood, tense, voice, person, and the like, the teacher may extend the practice at will. For example, "Pelias was the brother of Æson, who held the kingdom in Thessaly"; "The kingdom in Thessaly had been held by Æson, the brother of Pelias."

- 1. Æson, the brother of Pelias, held the kingdom in Thessaly.
- 2. The brother whom Pelias had driven out was named Æson.
- 3. The friends who went to Delphi consulted the oracle.
- 4. Jason was the man whom the oracle pointed out.
- 5. The golden fleece which h-

left there was intrusted to the king. 6. The task which he had undertaken was most difficult. 7. The brothers do not wish to set out alone. 8. The messengers whom the king had sent out returned the next day. 9. The ship that he built was wider than ours. 10. A great number of men had gathered from all the regions of Greece.

II. There was once a king in Thessaly who was called Æson. When¹ he had held the kingdom (for) a few years,² he was driven out by Pelias, his brother. Jason, the son of Æson,³ would have been put to death, if he³ had not been snatched out of danger by the friends of his father.⁴ After a few years Jason was sent⁵ to get possession of the fleece.

¹ cum. ² § 96. ³ § 199. III. b. ⁴ pater. ⁵ Latin, *that he might get possession of*, § 174.

LESSON III

7. Predicate and Attributive Adjectives defined, §§ 60, 61.

8. Agreement of Adjectives with Two or More Nouns, §§ 62, 63 and note.

EXAMPLES

multi pueri et puellae or pueri et puellae multae, many boys and girls

bonus puer et puella, the good boy and girl

pueri et puellae erant boni, the boys and girls were good

rēx et rēgīna capti sunt, the king and queen were captured

virtūs et studium militum erant magna, the valor and zeal of the soldiers were great

nāvēs captivique restitūti sunt or nāvēs captivique restitūta sunt, the ships and the captives were restored

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlv, xlv)

I. 1. Hercules and Orpheus were most famous. 2. Jason and his ship will be famous. 3. He was driven back to the same part of the island¹ from which he had set out. 4. The night was dark, and the danger was great. 5. The nymph attempted to persuade the boy. 6. Hercules and the nymph followed the boy. 7. The Argonauts and

the Harpies were unfriendly. 8. These birds were sent by Jupiter. 9. The birds had been named Harpies. 10. The Argonauts and Phineus rejoiced greatly.

II. ² Of all the companions whom Jason had chosen I think that Hercules and Orpheus were the most famous. But there were many others whose names were noted. They set sail with the applause of all.

¹ unde. ² Partitive genitive with *most famous*, § 76.

LESSON IV

9. Special Rules for the Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. *a.* note.

EXAMPLES

puerī et puellae quī erant bonī, *the boys and girls who were good*
 rēx et rēgīna quī capti sunt, *the king and queen who were captured*
 virtūs et studium militum, quae erant magna, *the valor and zeal of*
the soldiers, which were great
 nāvēs captivique quae restitūta sunt, *the ships and the captives*
which were restored
 Corinthus, quod erat clārum oppidum, *Corinth, which was a famous*
city

NOTE. When the antecedents represent both persons and things, the relative pronoun (like the predicate adjective, cf. § 63 and note) may be masculine:

nāvēs captivique quī restitūtī sunt

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlvī, xlvii)

I. 1. The messengers whom the king had sent came to the ship. 2. The messenger who came to the ship called Jason to the palace. 3. The rewards that he promised were great. 4. There was a huge rock that had been placed by Jupiter. 5. The rocks that had been placed there were large. 6. This is the large rock that Jupiter had placed there. 7. These are the doves that he sent forth. 8. You will come to the Phasis, which is a river in the territory of the Colchi.

II. When the Argonauts had come to the river Phasis, which is in the territory of the Colchi, Jason demanded of¹ the king² that he should hand over the fleece. But the king replied, "I will hand the fleece over if you accomplish³ two most difficult tasks." Jason replied, "I am ready⁴ to undergo all dangers."

¹ ab. ² ut, § 183. ³ Latin, *shall have accomplished*, § 199. II. a. ⁴ ad with gerundive, § 224. b.

LESSON V

10. Agreement of Verbs, §§ 65 and a, 67, 68, 69.

EXAMPLES

nūntius mittitur, *a messenger is sent*

nūntiī mittuntur, *messengers are sent*

cōsul et lēgātus veniunt, *the consul and the envoy are coming*

neque cōsul neque lēgātus venit, *neither the consul nor the envoy is coming*

senātus haec intellegit, *the senate knows this*

senātus haec intellegunt, *the senate know this*

NOTE. When subjects are of different *persons* the verb is in the *first person* rather than in the *second* or the *third*, and in the *second* rather than in the *third*:

ego et tū scrībimus, *you and I are writing*

ego et Mārcus scrībimus, *Marcus and I are writing*

tū et Mārcus audiēbātis, *you and Marcus heard*

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlviii, xlix)

I. 1. Jason and his companions had betaken themselves to the appointed place. 2. Jason with his companions betakes himself to the king. 3. The bulls were inclosed in a huge stable. 4. Medea and her brother had escaped at midnight. 5. Medea will escape with her brother by night. 6. The woman and the boy went to the ship. 7. Neither the woman nor the boy will go to the king. 8. Medea and I went to the ship. 9. You and your brother will be left at the ship. 10. You and I were hurrying into the forest.

II. Jason accomplished with¹ the greatest difficulty the two tasks that had been proposed by the king. Medea, the daughter of the king, who had given aid to Jason, was now in great danger. She went to the place where the Argonauts were and ² begged them not to forsake her.³

¹ cum, § 110. ² obsecrō nē, § 183. ³ nē, § 133.

LESSON VI

11. Tenses of the Indicative.

- a.* The Present Indicative, § 153.
- b.* The Past Descriptive Indicative, § 154. *a, b, c.*
- c.* The Future Indicative, § 155.
- d.* The Perfect Indicative, § 156. *a, b.*
- e.* The Past Perfect Indicative, § 157.
- f.* The Future Perfect Indicative, § 158.

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages 1, li)

I. 1. The tree was being guarded by a dragon. 2. Jason and Medea had approached the tree. 3. The dragon that had been guarding the tree was overcome by sleep. 4. The Argonauts await in vain the return of their leader. 5. A light was seen among the trees. 6. Jason and Medea are received with great joy. 7. It will not be safe to remain in this place. 8. The king of the Colchians pursues the Argonauts. 9. Jason, with the Argonauts, will soon arrive at a river. 10. Jason will return with Medea to Pelias.

II. Jason and Medea went to the tree where the dragon was guarding the golden fleece. The Argonauts, who were waiting in vain at the ship, began to despair of their safety; for¹ they did not doubt that² this task was (one)³ of the greatest danger.

¹ enim (does not stand first in its clause). ² quin, § 186. ³ § 77. *a.*

LESSON VII

12. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.

13. The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse, § 217. b.

EXAMPLES

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī pācem faciunt (fēcērunt, facient), the Romans are making
(made, will make) peace

pācem faciō (fēcī, faciam), I am making (made, shall make) peace

occāsiō nōn omittenda est, the opportunity ought not to be neglected

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcō Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrōs esse), I say that the
Romans are making (made, will make) peace

dīcō mē pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrum esse), I say that I am making
(made, shall make) peace

dīcō occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, I say that the opportunity
ought not to be neglected

dixit Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrōs esse), he said that the
Romans were making (had made, would make) peace

dixit sē pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrum esse), he said that he was
making (had made, should make) peace

dixit occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, he said that the opportunity
ought not to be neglected

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages lii-liv)

I. 1. They handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 2. They said that they had handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 3. His last day is at hand. 4. We saw that his last day was at hand. 5. We shall do this. 6. I said that we should do this. 7. They said that he would do this. 8. He says that they will do this. 9. They see that their father is an old man. 10. We did not think that he would send Medea away. 11. They had hoped that they should receive the kingdom. 12. Medea does not think that this opportunity ought to be neglected.

II. When Jason returned to¹ Thessaly with the golden fleece, Pelias did not wish to hand over the kingdom to him. Medea, Jason's wife, who had hoped that she should be queen,² persuaded the daughters³ of the king to⁴ kill their father. But when the citizens had learned that Pelias had perished, they drove Jason and Medea out of the kingdom.

¹ in, § 97. ² rēgina. ³ Dative, § 83. ⁴ ut, § 183.

LESSON VIII

14. Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160; 161. I, II; 162.

15. Clauses of Pure Purpose,* § 174.

16. Relative Clauses of Purpose, §§ 175, 176.

EXAMPLES

explōrātōrēs praemittit ut (or quī) locum dēligant, *he sends forward scouts to choose a place*

explōrātōrēs praemisit ut (or quī) locum dēligerent, *he sent forward scouts to choose a place*

pontem facit quō facilius trānseat, *he builds a bridge that (by which) he may cross the more easily*

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 1-3)

I. 1. We do not doubt that¹ the Romans are most powerful. 2. We did not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 3. He does not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 4. I did not doubt that the Romans had been most powerful. 5. Roman envoys came to the king² to learn of his plans. 6. Soldiers will be sent³ to take the city by storm. 7. Hannibal set out for Spain² that he might get an army together and take Saguntum by storm. 8. He set out⁴ from Carthage immediately⁵ that he might the earlier lead his forces across into Italy.

* The terms "pure purpose" and "pure result" are used to distinguish *adverbial* clauses of purpose or result from *relative* or *substantive* clauses of this character.

9. He sent lieutenants ⁸ to collect an army. 10. He built roads ⁶ that he might the more easily lead his army into Italy.

II. Hannibal, the most famous commander of the Carthaginians, collected an army that he might conquer the Romans; but he was weakened by the envy of his (fellow) citizens. When Hamilcar, his father, was setting out for Spain, he bade ⁷ his son swear that he ⁸ would never be ⁹ on terms of friendship with the Romans. Hannibal gave his father this oath and kept (it).

¹ *quī*, § 186. ² Express by an *ut* clause, § 174. An infinitive often expresses purpose in English, but it must not be so used in Latin. ³ Use a relative clause of purpose. ⁴ § 101. *a.* ⁵ *quō mātūrius*, lit. *by which the earlier*, § 176. ⁶ Cf. note 5. ⁷ *iubeō*, with infinitive, § 217. *a.* ⁸ § 217. *b.* ⁹ in *amicitiā*.

LESSON IX

17. Relative Clauses of Description (Characteristic), § 177 and *a.*

18. Clauses of Pure Result, § 179 and note.

19. Relative Clauses of Result, § 180.

EXAMPLES

a. Relative Clauses of Description :

mīles quī fugiat est timidus, a soldier who runs away is cowardly
nēmō fuit militum quī (= quī nōn) volnerārētur, there was not one
of the soldiers who was not (lit. but was) wounded

In these sentences the clauses *quī fugiat* and *quī volnerārētur* describe, or tell *what kind* of soldier it is, and hence take the subjunctive. Compare these sentences with the following :

ille mīles, quī fugit, est timidus, that soldier, who is running away,
is cowardly

Here the clause *quī fugit* does not describe the soldier, but simply states a *fact* about him, and the fact is expressed by the indicative (§ 178).

Notice also the following forms of descriptive clauses :

sunt quī maledicant, there are some who slander
nēmō est quī hoc nōn crēdat, there is no one who does not believe this

b. Clauses of Pure Result :

Affirmative clauses of purpose and result are alike in form ; but *negative* clauses of purpose are introduced by *nē* (§ 174), *negative* clauses of result by *ut nōn* :

iter fēcit ut oppidum caperet, he marched to take the town (purpose)
iter tam celeriter fēcit ut oppidum caperet, he marched so quickly
that he took the town (result)

fūgit nē interficerētur, he fled that he might not be killed (negative purpose)

tam celeriter fūgit ut nōn caperētur, he fled so swiftly that he was not captured (negative result)

c. Relative Clauses of Result :

nēmō est tam timidus quī fugiat, no one is so cowardly that he (lit. *who*) *runs away*

nēmō est tam fortis quin (= quī nōn) rei novitāte perturbētur, no one is so brave as not to be (lit. *but that he is*) *disturbed by the unexpected occurrence*

These sentences are equivalent to *nēmō est tam timidus ut fugiat* and *nēmō est tam fortis ut nōn perturbētur*. The word *tam* in the antecedent clause shows that the relative clause expresses result rather than description, but the two constructions are closely related. (See § 179. note.)

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 4-6)

I. 1. This disease of the eyes was so¹ severe that he did not afterwards use his right eye.² 2. He is so³ afflicted by this infirmity that he is carried in a sedan. 3. This battle was fought so quickly that they immediately set out for Rome. 4. He inspires so great terror in the Romans that they do not dare to go outside the rampart. 5. So great was Hannibal that nobody desired to oppose him in line of battle. 6. The consuls who oppose him in line of battle are brave. 7. Brave is the soldier who now desires to carry on war. 8. There are many soldiers who are most brave. 9. This commander is so brave that he desires to oppose Hannibal in line of battle. 10. The resources of his country were so⁴ exhausted that he desired to settle the war

II. When Hannibal had defeated ⁵ Scipio, he crossed the mountains that he might arrive quickly in ⁶ Etruria and Apulia. ⁷ It would be tedious to recount all his battles; but ⁸ so long as he was in Italy, he defeated all the commanders who opposed him in line of battle. If he had set out for Rome, he would have taken the city by storm.

¹ adeō. ² Omit. ³ sic. ⁴ tam. ⁵ pellō. ⁶ Latin, *into*. ⁷ longum est enumerāre. ⁸ quam diū.

LESSON X

20. Substantive Clauses, § 181.

21. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod*, *ut*, and *nē*, §§ 182, 183 and note.

EXAMPLES

accessit quod exercitum habuerat, there was added the fact that he had had an army

hortor ut veniat, I urge him to come (lit. that he come)

imperat nē eant, he commands them not to go

Gallī Rōmānōs expellere cōnātī sunt, the Gauls tried to drive out the Romans

NOTE 1. Among the common verbs that regularly take the subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose are the following:

hortor, cohortor, urge, exhort
imperō, order, command
mōneō, advise

ōrō, petō, rogō, ask
persuādeō, persuade
postulō, demand

NOTE 2. The following verbs take the infinitive:

cōnor, attempt
iubeō, command

patior, allow
vetō, forbid

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 7-10)

I. 1. They ask that the captives be returned. 2. They commanded¹ him to return the hostages. 3. They had demanded that the hostages should be returned. 4. I advise that the money be put back in the treasury. 5. They will persuade him² to set out with these armies. 6. He was ordered to conduct the ships to³ Asia. 7. He urges them

to guard this temple. 8. There was added the fact that they had attempted to carry on war. 9. He urged them not to carry on war. 10. They ordered him not to guard the temple. 11. There is added the fact that they are guarding this temple.

II. After the Carthaginian ambassadors had thanked the Romans because⁴ they had made peace with them, they asked that their captives should be returned. The Romans did not send back the captives because⁴ Hannibal was still⁶ with⁶ the army. Hannibal was called back; but when he had returned home, he was made king.

¹ iubeō. ² Not accusative, § 83. ³ in, § 97. ⁴ quod, § 188. a, b. ⁵ etiam nunc. ⁶ apud.

LESSON XI

22. Substantive Clauses (*continued*), § 181.

23. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I, II.

24. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quā* or *quō minus*, §§ 185, 186.

EXAMPLES

<i>efficit, he brings it about</i> <i>fit, it happens</i> <i>accidit, it happens</i> <i>additur, it is added</i>	}	<i>ut obsidēs (nōn) dent, that they give (do</i> <i>not give) hostages</i>
---	---	---

eōs impedīvit quō minus (nē) flūmen trānsīrent, he hindered them from
crossing the river
eōs nōn impedīvit quā flūmen trānsīrent, he did not hinder them from
crossing the river
nōn dubitō quā Helvētīi exeant, I do not doubt that the Helvetii are
going forth

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 11-13)

1. 1. Nobody doubts that he is writing something about peace.
 2. We did not doubt that he would seek safety by flight. 3. It happened that the envoys were not at Rome. 4. He will bring it about that hostages will be given. 5. He hindered them from sending envoys¹ to Carthage. 6. They² cannot hinder us from sending our envoy

Rome. 7. I do not doubt that the Romans will surround his house with a large army. 8. Hannibal could not be hindered from taking⁸ poison. 9. Nobody doubts that Hannibal was a most brave man. 10. It is added that he devoted⁴ some time to literature.

II. The Romans sent ambassadors to Prusias, king of Bithynia, to ask that Hannibal should be surrendered. Prusias replied, "Seize him yourselves if you can; I do not doubt that you will easily find the place where he is." But Hannibal took poison, because he did not wish to lose⁶ his life⁶ at another's will.

¹ § 97. ² possum impedire. ³ sūmō. ⁴ nōn nihil temporis, § 76. ⁵ dīmittō. ⁶ aliēnō arbitriō.

LESSON XII

25. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō*, § 188. *a*, *b*.

26. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 189.

EXAMPLES

queritur quod dēstitūtus est } *he is complaining because he has been*
queritur quod dēstitūtus sit } *abandoned*

Observe that these two sentences are translated in exactly the same way; but the Latin makes it clear that in the first the speaker is giving his *own* reason (in a causal clause of *fact*, which takes the indicative), and that in the second he is giving the reason *alleged* by the person who is complaining.

cum mōns intercēderet, prōcēdere nōn poterant, *since a mountain intervened, they were not able to proceed*

cum hostēs fūgissent, castra mōvērunt, *since the enemy had fled, they moved the camp*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 1-3)

I. 1. The Belgians were brave because they were farthest away from the province. 2. The Helvetians were brave because (they said) they fought with the Germans. 3. They chose Orgetorix because he was the noblest of all. 4. They chose Dumnorix because (they said)

he held the leadership in the state. 5. The Helvetians had been greatly grieved because they thought their boundaries were narrow. 6. They will persuade Dumnorix because he is the brother of Diviciacus. 7. They had been influenced ¹by Orgetorix because his authority was very great.

II. The Helvetians, because they were the most powerful people of Gaul, decided to go out from ²their territory. Many carts and beasts of burden were purchased. Orgetorix, the noblest of the Helvetians, persuaded Casticus, the Sequanian, to seize the sovereignty in his own state; ³and he also persuaded Dumnorix, the Hæduan, to attempt ⁴the same thing. There was no doubt that they hoped they should gain possession of all Gaul.

¹ Not the simple ablative, § 104. ² *de*. ³ *itemque*. ⁴ *idem*.

LESSON XIII

27. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, etc., § 193.

28. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*.

a. The indicative in definitive clauses in past narrative, § 194. *a.*

b. The subjunctive in circumstantial clauses in past narrative, § 194. *b.*

29. Temporal Clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*, § 197. *a.*, *b.*

30. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, § 198. III. *a.*, *b.*

EXAMPLES

postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages

multōs amicōs habuit eō tempore cum ex urbe profectus est, he had many friends at the time when he set out from the city
hostēs eōs adgressi sunt cum inermēs essent, the enemy attacked them (at a time) when they were defenseless

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervēnērunt, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy arrived

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervenirent, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy should arrive

The clause **priusquam . . . pervenērunt** in the fourth sentence shows by the indicative that the enemy did in fact arrive; in the fifth sentence nothing shows certainly whether the enemy arrived or not. It is only known that the towns were burned in *anticipation* of their possible arrival.

The same difference between *fact* and *anticipation* is shown by the mood in the following sentences:

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervenērunt, the general remained in the city until the legions arrived

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervenirent, the general remained in the city until the legions should arrive

imperātor in urbe manēbit dum legiōnēs perveniant, the general will remain in the city until the legions arrive

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 4-7)

I. 1. When they were attempting to collect men from the fields, Orgetorix died. 2. They burned all their towns and villages before they went out of their territory. 3. They will burn their towns and villages before they go¹ from home.² 4. After these things were announced to Cæsar, he hurried into Gaul. 5. He will arrive at Geneva before the envoys are sent to him. 6. He waited until the soldiers assembled. 7. They did not wait until the soldiers should assemble. 8. He will not wait until the soldiers assemble. 9. They say that he will not wait until the soldiers assemble.

II. The Helvetians,³ in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius, were attempting to march through our province. They sent to Cæsar ambassadors, the noblest of the state, to say⁴ that they had no other way, and to ask⁴ that it be permitted them to do this. Cæsar did not think that⁵ the request should be granted, but he said that he should take time^{6 7} to think about (it).

¹ Present subjunctive, §§ 197. *b*, 162. ² § 101. *a*. ³ § 228. ⁴ Not infinitive. ⁵ *concédendum esse*, § 66. ⁶ *diem*. ⁷ *ad dēliberandum*.

LESSON XIV

31. Direct Questions, §§ 168, 170 and *a.* 1, 2, 3; *b.* 1, 2.

32. Indirect Questions, § 201 and note. For examples, see grammar.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 8–10)

I. 1. Which legion does Cæsar have with him? 2. I ask which legion Cæsar has with him. 3. I asked which legion Cæsar had with him. 4. Does this lake flow into the river Rhone? 5. He will ask whether this lake flows into the river Rhone. 6. Will not the ambassadors return to him? 7. He was not a friend to the Helvetians, was he? 8. Did they permit the Helvetians to go through their territory or not? 9. Will he enlist the legions which are in Italy? 10. They asked whether he would enlist the legions.

II. When¹ the ambassadors returned to Cæsar, he said that he could not give them a way through the province. The Helvetians, having attempted by night to break through, were driven back by the Roman soldiers. But the Sequanians,² through the intercession of Dumnorix the Hæduan, permitted the Helvetians to go through their territory. When this had been announced to Cæsar, he set out immediately for³ Italy that he might lead his legions out of winter quarters and hasten into Gaul.

¹ ubi. ² Latin, *Dumnorix being intercessor*, § 118. ³ in, § 97.

LESSON XV

33. Conditional Sentences.

a. Present Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. I. *a.*, *b.*

b. Future Conditions: More Probable (More Vivid Future) and Less Probable (Less Vivid Future), § 199. II. *a.*, *b.*

c. Past Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. III. *a.*, *b.*

EXAMPLES

- a. PRESENT { *sī hoc facit, fortis est, if he is doing this, he is brave*
sī hoc faceret, fortis esset, if he were doing this, he
would be brave
- b. FUTURE { *sī hoc faciet, fortis erit, if he does (shall do) this, he will*
be brave
sī hoc faciat (fēcerit), fortis sit, if he should do this, he
would be brave
- c. PAST { *sī hoc faciēbat, fortis erat, if he was doing this, he was brave*
sī hoc fēcit, fortis fuit, if he did this, he was brave
sī hoc fēcisset, fortis fuisset, if he had done this, he would
have been brave

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 11, 12)

I. 1. If the Hæduans cannot defend themselves, they will send ambassadors to Cæsar. 2. If they had not been able to defend themselves, they would have sent ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. If the fields should be laid waste, we could not ward off from the towns the violence of the enemy. 4. If the Gauls have boats, they are able to cross the river. 5. If he had not set out in¹ the third watch, they would have crossed the Rhone. 6. If he attacked them, they concealed themselves in² the neighboring forests. 7. If they had concealed themselves in the forests, would he have been able to attack them? 8. If the Helvetians should set out in the third watch, would they be able to defend themselves?

II. The Helvetians led their forces into the territory of the Hæduans. The Hæduans, who had always deserved well of¹ the Roman people, asked Cæsar to send² aid. They said that their fields had been laid waste and that their towns had been taken by storm. Cæsar attacked the Tigurini, who had not crossed the river Arar, and slew a large part of them.

¹ *dē*. ² Latin, *into*. ³ Not infinitive (see Lesson X).

LESSON XVI

34. Concessive Clauses introduced by *quamquam*, § 191.

35. Concessive Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 192 and note.

EXAMPLES

quamquam flūmen est altum, tamen trānsire possumus, although (the fact is that) the river is deep, nevertheless we can cross
iter nōn āvertit, cum hostēs sequerentur, he did not turn aside,
although the enemy were following
cum urgērentur, tamen nōn fūgerunt, although they were hard
pressed, nevertheless they did not flee

NOTE. Observe that *cum* may mean *when* (temporal), *since* (causal), and *although* (concessive). When it is *temporal*, the mood used may be indicative or subjunctive (§ 194); but when it is *causal* or *concessive*, *cum* is always followed by the subjunctive. Its concessive use is often indicated by the presence of *tamen*, *nevertheless*, in the main clause.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 23-25)

I. 1. Although it is not necessary to distribute grain to the army, he hastens to go to Bibracte. 2. Although this thing was announced to the enemy, they did not engage in battle. 3. The Helvetians began to pursue our men¹ that they might shut them off from the grain supply. 4. They pursued the Roman soldiers because they thought they were terrified. 5. ²Although this (these things) is so, nevertheless he sends the cavalry to sustain⁸ the attack of the enemy. 6. He engaged in battle although⁴ he had not encouraged his men.¹ 7. Although the mountains were about a mile distant, they began to retreat thither.

II. On the next day Cæsar hastened to Bibracte, the richest town of the Hædui, which was not more than eighteen miles distant. The Helvetians, because they thought that the Romans were terrified, began to harass them from the rear. Cæsar withdrew his forces to⁶ the nearest hill, and in the middle of the hill formed a line of battle.

The horses had been removed, that the danger of all might be made equal; the soldiers hurled their javelins and broke through the phalanx of the enemy.

¹ Omit. ² *cum ea ita sint*. ³ Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII). ⁴ *cum*.
⁵ in, § 97.

LESSON XVII

36. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.

37. Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 204.

a. Simple Sentences, § 204.

b. Complex Sentences, §§ 208, 209 and note.

38. Commands in Indirect Discourse, §§ 205, 206.

39. Interrogative Sentences (Questions) in Indirect Discourse, § 207. I.

EXAMPLES

(1) SIMPLE SENTENCES

The tense of the infinitive in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb *as it would have been used in the direct discourse, and not by the tense of the verb of saying*. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162) does not affect the infinitive.

DIRECT: *Rōmānī fortiter pugnant, the Romans fight bravely*

INDIRECT	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dicīt} \\ \text{dicēbat} \\ \text{dicet} \\ \text{dixit} \\ \text{dixerat} \\ \text{dixerit} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Rōmānōs fortiter pugnāre, he says, said, will say, etc., that the Romans fight (fought, if the verb of saying refers to past time) bravely</i>
----------	---	---

(2) COMPLEX SENTENCES

When translating complex sentences into indirect discourse, treat the main clause as a simple sentence, considering first what the form would be in the direct discourse. For the subordinate clauses, put the

verbs in the subjunctive if they are not already in that mood, observing the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162). It is the tense of the verb of *saying*, *dicit*, *dixit*, etc., which determines the sequence.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō sunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāverunt, pugnābunt),
the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dicit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō sint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvissent, pugnātūrōs esse),
he says that the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

dixit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō essent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvissent, pugnātūrōs esse),
he said that the Romans, who were in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō fuērunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāverunt, pugnābunt),
the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dicit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuerint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvissent, pugnātūrōs esse),
he says that the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

dixit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuissent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvissent, pugnātūrōs esse),
he said that the Romans, who had been in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely

DIRECT DISCOURSE

cum bellum civitās inferat, magistrātūs dēliguntur,
whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dicit cum bellum civitās inferat, magistrātūs dēligī,
he says that whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen

dixit cum bellum civitās inferret, magistrātūs dēligī,
he said that whenever a state made war, magistrates were chosen

(3) COMMANDS

DIRECT DISCOURSE

hostēs vince, conquer the enemy

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dicit (dixit) hostēs vincat (vinceret),
he directs (directed) him to conquer the enemy

(4) QUESTIONS

DIRECT DISCOURSE

cūr nōn exit? why does he not
go forth?

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(dīcit, dīxit) cūr nōn exeat (exiret),
*(he says, said) why does (did) he not go forth?***EXERCISE**

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 26-29)

I. 1. ¹The battle was fought sharply. 2. He said that the battle was fought so sharply that nobody could see an enemy ²in retreat. 3. He says that they are aiding the Helvetians with grain. 4. The Helvetians say that he will send ambassadors to ask ³for peace. 5. Send ambassadors to him to ask for peace. 6. He told ⁴them to send ambassadors to ask for peace. 7. Six ⁵thousand men hasten to the Rhine that they may not surrender their arms. 8. We said the hostages and arms were surrendered that we might not be regarded in the light ⁶of enemies. 9. Since they cannot march through the province, they will return to their own territory. 10. He said that since they could not march through the province, they would return to their own territory. 11. Before they set out, they burned their towns. Why did they do this? 12. He said that before they had set out, they had burned their towns. Why had they done this?

II. Cæsar says that the battle was fought long and sharply; that the Romans took possession of the enemy's camp; that the daughter and one of the sons of Orgetorix were captured; and that when the Helvetians had come to him to ask ³for peace, he told ⁴them to surrender the slaves who had deserted to them.

¹ Latin, *it was fought*, § 66. ² *aversus*. ³ Not infinitive. ⁴ *dicō*. ⁵ Latin, *thousands of men*. ⁶ *numerus*.

LESSON XVIII

(Before beginning this lesson review Lesson XV)

40. Indirect Discourse (*continued*): Conditional Sentences.*a.* Conditions with the Indicative in Indirect Discourse, § 210.*b.* Less Probable (Less Vivid) Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse, §§ 211, 212.*c.* Conditions Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, § 213. *a.*, *b.*

For all these cases, study carefully the examples in the grammar.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 50-54)

Change each of the following sentences into indirect discourse, first after *dicit*, and then after *dixit*:

I. 1. If Cæsar should lead his forces out of camp, he would draw up a line of battle. 2. If he led his army back into camp, Ariovistus sent soldiers to storm the camp. 3. The Germans will not conquer if they fight (shall fight) before the new moon. 4. If he had wished to use the soldiers for show, he would have stationed them before the camp. 5. If he approaches (shall have approached) to the camp of the enemy, they will lead out their forces. 6. If he were (now) approaching to the camp of the enemy, their forces would be led out. 7. If the signal had been given, the enemy would have sent the third line. 8. If he had given the signal, the third line would have been sent by the enemy. 9. If he pursues (shall have pursued) the Ubii, he will slay a great number of¹ them.

II. All the enemy turned their backs and did not cease to flee until they reached the river Rhine; among these was Ariovistus, who, having found a little boat, escaped² by (means of) it. He³ had two daughters; of whom one⁴ was slain, the other⁴ was captured.

¹ ex. ² profugiō. ³ Dative, § 88. ⁴ alter.

LESSON XIX

41. The Infinitive as Subject, § 216. a, b.
 42. The Infinitive as Object, § 217. a, b.
 43. The Complementary Infinitive, § 217. c.

EXAMPLES

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT	fās est, <i>it is right</i>	Ire, <i>to go</i> , or eum Ire, (for) him to go
	turpe est, <i>it is disgraceful</i>	
	necesse est, <i>it is necessary</i>	
	opus est, <i>it is necessary</i>	
	licet, <i>it is permitted</i>	agrōs vāstāri, <i>that</i> the fields are laid waste
	apertum est, <i>it is plain</i>	
	mīrum est, <i>it is wonderful</i>	
	vērū est, <i>it is true</i>	
INFINITIVE AS OBJECT	fāma est, <i>it is rumored</i>	
	vetō eum scribere, <i>I forbid him to write</i>	
	iubeō sociōs venīre, <i>I order the allies to come</i>	
COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE	dēbeō, <i>I ought</i>	ire, <i>to go</i>
	possum, <i>I can (am able)</i>	
	soleō, <i>I am accustomed</i>	

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 1-4)

I. 1. It is not necessary for all the Belgians to conspire against the Roman people. 2. They were unwilling for the Germans to dwell longer in Gaul. 3. Cæsar is able to enlist two new legions. 4. Cæsar said that he was able to send Labienus to lead¹ these legions into Gaul. 5. They said that the Remi were ready both to give hostages and to do (his) commands. 6. We cannot prevent² the Suessiones from^{3 4} making common cause with them. 7. The Belgians were able to prevent⁵ the Germans from entering⁶ into their territory. 8. It is true that Galba is now king.

II. The Remi were able to send ambassadors to Cæsar to say¹ that they had neither made common cause with the other Gauls nor conspired against the Roman people, and were ready to assist with grain and other supplies⁷; that all the other Gauls were in arms; and that not even the Suessiones could be prevented from making common cause with them.

¹ Not infinitive. ² *dēterreō*. ³ *quā*. ⁴ *cōsentiō*. ⁵ *prohibeō*. ⁶ Infinitive. ⁷ *rēs*.

LESSON XX

44. The Participle, § 219.

a. Tenses, § 167.

b. Adjective and Predicate Uses, §§ 220. a–c, 221.

c. The Ablative Absolute, §§ 117, 118.

45. Certain tenses and uses of the English participle are wanting in Latin, as is seen in the following comparison:

ACTIVE			PASSIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>cōgēns</i>	<i>collecting</i>	—	<i>being collected</i>
<i>Past</i>	—	<i>having collected</i>	<i>coāctus</i>	<i>having been collected</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>coāctūrus</i>	<i>about to collect</i>	—	<i>about to be collected</i>

Hence, in such a sentence as *they killed him* (as he was) *collecting the ships*, the present participle, *collecting*, since it exists also in Latin, *cōgēns*, may be translated literally, (eum) *cōgentem nāvēs occidērunt*.

But, in the absence of the present *passive* participle, we cannot translate literally *the ships* (while) *being collected were seized*, but must express the idea in some other way, as, for example, by a clause, *while they were being collected*, *dum cōguntur*.

Similarly, we cannot translate literally, by means of a past active participle, *the Romans, having collected their ships, set sail*; but must express the idea by a clause, *cum nāvēs cōgēssent*, *when they had collected their ships*, or by an ablative absolute, *nāvibus coāctis*, *their ships having been collected*, or by some other form of statement.

46. The place of the missing participles in Latin is most frequently supplied by the ablative absolute, but it is to be noted that this construction can be used only when its substantive refers to a person or thing not elsewhere mentioned in the same sentence. For example, do not translate *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned it* by *Caesar, oppidō captō, id incendit*, where *id* and *oppidō* refer to the same thing, but rather by *Caesar oppidum captum incendit*.

But in *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned the temple*, the ablative absolute may be used; as, *Caesar, oppidō captō, templum incendit*.

47. In translating English sentences into Latin, clauses of *time, cause, condition, concession*, etc. are often best rendered by a participial construction; see § 220. *a-e*.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 5-8)

Before beginning the translation of the following sentences study carefully all the examples in the grammar, § 220. *a-e*. In translating use a participle wherever possible.

I. 1. Cæsar encourages¹ the Remi, and orders that the children be brought to him as hostages. 2. ²When he had given these commands, he dismissed them from him. 3. After he saw that the Belgians ³had been collected into one place and were coming against him, he hastened to pitch camp. 4. Having stationed a guard there, he left Sabinus with six legions. 5. When they have thrown a multitude of men about all⁴ the walls, they will approach the gates. 6. After burning all their villages, they hastened against Cæsar's camp. 7. When they have laid waste the fields, they will pitch camp. 8. They ¹left two legions in camp and drew up the other legions in line of battle.

II. ²If the place in front of the camp is suitable for drawing up a line of battle, Cæsar will establish a fort on each side of the hill, so that the enemy may not surround his (men)¹ by fighting on the flanks. If he should station the legions in line of battle in front of the camp, the enemy would ¹lead their forces out of camp and draw (them) up.

¹ Use a participle. ² Not a clause. ³ Latin, *collected*. ⁴ *tôtus*.

LESSON XXI

48. The Gerundive, § 224.

49. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 224. *a.*

50. The Dative of the Apparent (Implied) Agent, § 87.

51. Intransitive Verbs in the Passive Voice, § 83. *a.*

52. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes what *must be*, or what *ought to be*, and is always passive. Therefore, if this construction is used, sentences not already passive must first be cast in the passive form; for example, to translate *Cæsar must give the signal*, we must recast the sentence to *the signal must be given by Cæsar*, *Caesari signum dandum est*.

53. Since the passive of an intransitive verb is always impersonal (§ 66), the passive periphrastic of such a verb must be used impersonally; hence the gerundive of an intransitive is always neuter singular in form. The case that the verb governs in the active is retained in the passive; for example, *they cannot be persuaded* is rendered by *eis persuādēri nōn potest* (lit. *it cannot be persuaded to them*); *they must be persuaded* is rendered by *eis persuādendum est* (lit. *it must be persuaded to them*).

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 9–12)

I. 1. He persuades them to hasten¹ to the river. 2. They² could not be persuaded to hasten¹ to the river. 3. We² must take the fort by storm. 4. We must carry this war on sharply. 5. They understand that they must take the town by storm and cross the river. 6. They ought to be persuaded to gather from all sides. 7. If they had been persuaded to delay, they could have brought aid to their (men). 8. He ought to defend the camp and lead out his soldiers.

II. The enemy waited for a long time (to see) if Cæsar would cross the swamp; but after he led his (men) back into camp, they hastened to the river to destroy³ the bridge. Since they could neither

take the city by storm nor cross the river, they decided that it was best not to wait longer, and hastened to return home. ⁴When Cæsar had learned this (thing), he pursued them many miles and slew a great number ⁵ of them ⁶ in their flight.

¹ Not infinitive (see Lesson X). ² Dative. ³ Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII). ⁴ Ablative absolute. ⁵ *multitudo*. ⁶ Participle.

LESSON XXII

54. The Gerundive (*continued*), § 224. *b*.

55. The Gerund, § 223. *a-d* and note.

a. The Gerundive and the Gerund expressing Purpose, § 225. *a, b*.

NOTE. In the genitive and the ablative without a preposition the gerund may take a direct object, as, *cupidus epistulam scribendi*, *desirous of writing a letter*. In other cases the gerundive construction is preferred, and may be used even here, as, *cupidus epistolæ scribendæ*. The translation is exactly the same as for the gerund.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 13-18)

I. 1. Cæsar came for the sake of receiving hostages. 2. They said that they had come for the sake of seeking peace. 3. They say they are prepared ¹ to endure ² all indignities and insults. 4. They did not send ambassadors to accept terms of peace. 5. You have come to us for the sake of plundering. 6. They were prepared to neglect this plan. 7. They did not think they were prepared to neglect these plans.

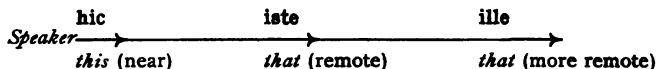
II. If Cæsar had marched across the river, he would have attacked all the Nervii and their neighbors, whom they had persuaded to await the coming of the Romans. The Belgæ thought that there would not be ³ any trouble ⁴ in attacking the Romans under their packs. "If you," they say, ⁵ "attack (shall attack) the first legion while the others are a great distance away, the other legions will not dare to make a stand."

¹ *paratus*. ² Gerundive. ³ *quicquam negotii*, § 76. *a*. ⁴ Infinitive. ⁵ *inquit*.

LESSON XXIII

56. Relative Pronouns, § 137.**57. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 134 and a, 135.**

a. *Hic, iste, and ille* point out a person or thing definitely in place or time. Their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:



The pronoun *is* is used of persons or things either far or near and makes no definite reference to place or time. As a substantive it is commonly used as a pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it*).

58. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives, § 144. a-d.**59. Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 132, 133 and note.**

a. The Intensive Pronoun *ipse*, § 136.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book III, chapters 13-16)

I. 1. He says that they made their own ships after this fashion. 2. The ships which they used were made to endure ¹any violence whatsoever. 3. They cannot ²be harmed. 4. If he had waited for the fleet, they could have been harmed. 5. Brutus, who had been in command of the fleet, adopted this plan of battle. 6. Cæsar sent soldiers ³to take these ships by storm. 7. ⁴When this⁵ war is finished,⁶ the Veneti will surrender themselves and all their (possessions) to Cæsar. 8. If Cæsar had taken the town by storm, the Veneti would have surrendered themselves and all their (possessions).

II. When Cæsar had taken several towns by storm, and had not been able to harm the enemy, he determined to wait for the fleet that had been assigned to Brutus. When this assembled, at first it was not clear to Brutus what plan of battle he should adopt, for he knew

the enemy's ships were furnished with every kind of arms, and **that** his own soldiers excelled in valor alone.⁷ But he did not doubt ⁸ **that** the Romans would take the ships by storm.

¹ *quivis*. ² Impersonal passive (see Lesson XXI). ³ Relative clause of purpose. ⁴ Ablative absolute. ⁵ *qui*. ⁶ *cōficiō*. ⁷ *ūnus*. ⁸ *quā* with the subjunctive, § 186.

LESSON XXIV

60. Expressions of Time.

- a. Time When or Within Which, § 119.
- b. Time How Long or During Which, § 96.
- c. Time Before or After an Event, § 114.

To denote the *time before* or *time after* an event the Latin uses the word **ante** or **post**, either as an adverb with the ablative of measure of difference (§ 114) or as a preposition governing the accusative:

decem ante diēbus (lit. *before by ten days*) or **ante decem diēs**, *ten days before*

decem post diēbus (lit. *afterward by ten days*) or **post decem diēs**, *ten days after*

NOTE. As prepositions, **ante** and **post** either precede the numeral or stand between it and its noun; as adverbs, they either precede or follow the noun.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 20-22)

I. 1. A few months after, ¹ when he had subdued many tribes of Gauls, he hastened to set out for Britain. 2. A few days before, he had ordered the fleet to assemble. 3. This was the fleet which he had used in the preceding summer. 4. He waited ten days ² for the fleet to assemble. 5. In a few days ambassadors will come to him to promise hostages. 6. On the tenth day messengers returned to Cæsar ³ to report ⁴ the things they had observed. 7. Cæsar will delay there a few days ² until the ambassadors come to him. 8. After a few days the ships will come to the same port.

II. Before Cæsar set out for Britain, he sent ahead Volusenus and Commius, whom he thought to be suitable for this business. Volusenus did not trust himself to the barbarians, and returned in five days. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, and whose influence in these regions was great, urged the states ⁵ to submit to the protection of the Roman people, and said that Cæsar's legions would quickly come there.

¹ Ablative absolute. ² *dum* with the subjunctive, § 198. III. *b*. ³ Relative clause of purpose. ⁴ *quæ*. ⁵ *fidem sequor* (see Lesson X).

LESSON XXV

61. Expressions of Place.

- a*. Place from Which, § 101. *a*.
- b*. Place Whither, § 97.
- c*. Place toward Which, § 97. note.
- d*. Place at or in Which, § 120.
- e*. The Locative Case, § 120. *a*.

NOTE. Apply as a general principle the rule that the relations of place are expressed by prepositions with their proper cases, but that names of towns and *domus* omit the preposition.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 23-26)

I. 1. In the third watch the cavalry will advance to the farther port and embark. 2. When he had touched Britain and seen the forces of the enemy on all the hills, he thought that he ¹ ought to wait ² for the other ships. 3. He says that ³ when the signal had been given, they moved forward from that place about seven miles. 4. The soldiers thought that they ¹ ought to leap ⁴ down from the ship and fight ⁴ with the enemy. 5. If they had advanced a little into the water, they could have thrown their javelins. 6. Cæsar says that ⁵ at this place the men-of-war were ⁶ of great service to the Romans. 7. He said that they ⁷ should leap down out of the ships unless they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy.

II. When Cæsar had noticed that his (soldiers) could not follow the standards, and that the enemy on ⁸ the exposed flank were hurling (their) weapons, he commanded that reënforcements be sent to those ⁹ who were hard pressed. The Romans now put the enemy to flight; and if they ¹⁰ had had cavalry, they could have pursued them farther.

¹ Dative. ² Gerundive. ³ Ablative absolute. ⁴ § 66 (Lesson XXI).
⁵ *hōc locō*, § 120. *b.* ⁶ § 89. ⁷ § 205 (Lesson XVII). ⁸ *ab.* ⁹ Present participle. ¹⁰ Dative, § 88.

LESSON XXVI

62. The Genitive, § 72.

- a.* The Possessive Genitive, § 73.
- b.* The Genitive of Material, § 79.
- c.* The Genitive of Description, § 77.
- d.* The Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole), § 76 and *a.*
- e.* The Subjective Genitive, § 75. *a.*
- f.* The Objective Genitive, § 75. *b.*

NOTE. With cardinal numbers and *quidam* the ablative with *ē* or *ex* is used instead of the partitive genitive:

quattuor ex Helvētiis, four of the Helvetii

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 27-32)

I. 1. A large part of the hostages whom Cæsar ordered they give immediately. 2. If this storm had arisen suddenly, ¹ not one of the ships could have held the course. 3. He said that many ships had been ² driven out (of their course) to the lower part of the island. 4. Cæsar ordered the ships of the cavalry to set sail from ³ the upper harbor. 5. The storm was so great that no opportunity of aiding was given to our (men). 6. The chiefs of Britain know that cavalry and ships are lacking to the Romans, and think they can cut them off from grain. 7. If the Romans should be conquered by them, nobody would afterwards cross to Britain for the sake of waging war. 8. A part of the soldiers were on guard before the gates of the camp.

II. After this battle had been fought,⁴ ambassadors came to Cæsar to seek peace, and said that ⁵he ought to pardon them because of (their) ignorance. Cæsar did not doubt that they had waged war without cause, but he pardoned them and ordered hostages, all of whom ⁶they gave in a few days.

¹ nullus. ² dñciō. ³ Latin, out of. ⁴ faciō. ⁵ Latin, it ought to be pardoned to them (Lesson XII). ⁶ Not a partitive genitive.

LESSON XXVII

63. The Dative.

- a. The Dative as Indirect Object, § 82.
- b. The Dative with Special Verbs, § 83 and note.
- c. The Dative with Compounds, § 84.

NOTE 1. The so-called special verbs that govern the dative do so because they have a special meaning requiring an indirect object; for example, the exact meaning of *imperat militibus* is *he gives a command to the soldiers*; of *persuadet amicis*, *he offers persuasion to his friends*.

These verbs often take a direct object along with the dative, usually a neuter pronoun or an object clause; for example, *amicis persuadet ut exeant*, *he persuades (to) his friends to go forth*. Here the clause *ut exeant* is the direct object and *amicis* the indirect object of *persuadet*.

NOTE 2. Likewise verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, etc. do not take the dative because of the preposition, but rather because their meaning requires an indirect object.

Many verbs compounded with these prepositions are transitive and take the accusative. Just what verbs are used with the dative must be learned by observing the usage of the best writers as recorded in the Latin dictionary. Some compound verbs take the accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect); for example, *Cæsar Gallis bellum infert*, *Cæsar makes war on the Gauls*.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 33-38)

I. 1. Cæsar will bring aid to our (men) ¹if they are alarmed by these things. 2. The barbarians had sent messengers into all parts to declare to their (men) the small number of the Roman soldiers. 3. He points out that the opportunity is given to them of freeing themselves.

4. You see how great an opportunity ² for taking booty is given to you. 5. He ³ demands of the barbarians a large number of hostages. 6. They persuaded Cæsar to double ⁴ the number of hostages that he had demanded of them. 7. They had been made subject to the power of the Roman people. 8. They think that he ought not to be made subject to the power of the Roman people.

II. The barbarians, having thought the opportunity was given to them for taking booty and for freeing themselves forever ⁵ from the fear of the Roman people, sent messengers in all directions to collect infantry and cavalry. Although they came to Cæsar's camp with a great multitude of men, he stationed the legions in line in front of the camp; for he did not doubt that the enemy would not be able to endure the attack of the Roman soldiers.

¹ Participle. ² Latin, *of making* (gerundive). ³ Latin, *orders to*. ⁴ Not infinitive (Lesson X). ⁵ Ablative, § 101.

LESSON XXVIII

64. The Dative (*continued*).

- a. The Dative of Possession (Possessor), § 88.
- b. The Dative of Purpose or End ("Double Dative"), § 89.
- c. The Dative of Reference, § 85.
- d. The Dative with Adjectives, § 90.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 40-43)

I. 1. ¹ Cicero had in mind to send a letter to Cæsar. 2. The towers will be a great defense ² for the camp. 3. They thought that the camp would be a great defense for themselves. 4. The towers were next to the camp. 5. The Nervii ² had no ground for ³ friendship with Cicero. 6. The Nervii say that they have ground for friendship with Cæsar. 7. He says that the Germans ⁴ who are next to the Rhine have in mind to cross this river. 8. If they hope for ⁵ any safety for themselves ² from the Nervii, they are mistaken. 9. These

days were the most severe for the Roman soldiers. 10. He does not doubt that these days were severe for all the soldiers.

II. If all Gaul had been in arms, the Germans would not have crossed the Rhine to storm the winter quarters of Cæsar and the others. The Nervii, who said that they were well-disposed ⁶ to ⁷ Cicero and the Romans, ⁸ urged them to depart from winter quarters and set out into whatsoever parts they wished. But when Cicero had replied that he could not accept terms from an enemy ⁹ in arms, and had advised them to send ambassadors to Cæsar, they began to encircle the winter quarters with a rampart and a ditch.

¹ Cf. *mihi in animō est*, *I have in mind*, § 88. ² Dative. ³ Latin, *of*.
⁴ § 208. ⁵ *quicquam præsidii*. ⁶ *bonō animō*, § 116. ⁷ *in*. ⁸ See Lesson X.
⁹ Latin, *armed*.

LESSON XXIX

65. The Accusative.

- a. The Accusative as Direct Object, § 91.
- b. The Accusative of Duration and Extent, § 96.
- c. The Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive, §§ 92, 217. a, b.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 44, 48, 49, 52)

I. 1. When Cæsar had learned in how great danger Cicero was, he persuaded one ¹ of the Gauls to carry a letter to him. 2. If this letter had been intercepted by the Gauls, they would have been able to learn Cæsar's plans. 3. Did Cicero ask for a Gaul ² to take a letter to Cæsar? 4. If Cæsar knows that Cicero has been freed ³ from the siege, he will send scouts to learn ⁴ by what route he can cross the river most advantageously. 5. Does he think that he ⁵ ought to relax ⁶ his speed? 6. ⁷ From all these things he is able to judge with what ⁸ valor Cicero defended himself from the enemy. 7. Will he praise Cicero and the legion or not? 8. Does he think that the legions of Cicero should be praised by him ⁹?

II. In this legion there were two soldiers ⁹ who were very brave, one of whom was called Pullo, the other Vorenus. While ¹⁰ a sh

fight is going on at the fortifications, Pullo says, "Vorenus, what opportunity¹¹ do you wait for¹² to prove your valor?" and immediately advances outside the fortifications and with a javelin pierces one of the enemy¹³ who runs forward. When the enemy had hurled their weapons on¹⁴ him¹⁵ and given (him) no opportunity of advancing, Vorenus¹⁶ ran to aid him.

¹ quidam. ² Relative clause of purpose. ³ Ablative, § 101. ⁴ explorō. ⁵ Dative (see Lesson XXI). ⁶ de celeritāte. ⁷ ex. ⁸ quantus. ⁹ § 177. a. ¹⁰ Acriter pugnātur, § 66. ¹¹ locus. ¹² Latin, of proving. ¹³ Participle. ¹⁴ in. ¹⁵ neque. ¹⁶ illi succurrū.

LESSON XXX

66. The Ablative.

- a. The Ablative of Separation, § 101.
- b. The Ablative of Origin, § 102.
- c. The Ablative of Cause, § 109.
- d. The Ablative of Accordance, § 111.

NOTE. The ablative of separation regularly takes a preposition if the ablative denotes persons.

EXERCISE

(Caesar, Book VI, chapters 9-12)

I. 1. Caesar¹ ought to cross the Rhine for² two reasons. 2. If reinforcements had been sent out of the state, the Ubii would not have sent ambassadors to him for the sake³ of clearing themselves. 3. He urged them⁴ to collect all their (possessions) from the fields into the towns, that the innocent might not⁵ pay the penalty for the guilty. 4. We do not doubt that this forest protects them from the wrongdoings and incursions of the enemy. 5. If they had not been driven (to it) by necessity, they would not have gone to Rome for the sake of seeking aid. 6. By the coming of Caesar a change (in the state) of affairs⁶ was made, and the hostages were given back to the Hæduans. 7. Did the Sequani lose the leadership by the coming of the Romans? 8. Did the Remi do this for the sake of obtaining the second place of dignity?

II. In Gaul there were two factions, the chiefs of which had the highest authority. When Cæsar came into Gaul, he learned that the Hædui were the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other. The latter had attached the Germans and Ariovistus to themselves, and ⁷ having killed all the nobility of the Hædui, had compelled them to swear publicly that they would enter into ⁸ no plan against the Sequani. But Cæsar compelled the Sequani to give back the hostages to the Hædui, and made other great changes of affairs.

¹ Dative, § 87. ² dē. ³ § 224. c. ⁴ See Lesson X. ⁵ pœnās pendō.
⁶ rēs. ⁷ Ablative absolute. ⁸ nihil cōsulī, § 76.

LESSON XXXI

67. The Ablative (*continued*).

- a. The Ablative of Manner, § 110.
- b. The Ablative of Agent, § 104.
- c. The Ablative of Means, § 106.
- d. The Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., § 107. a.
- e. The Ablative with *opus est*, § 107. c.

NOTE 1. The ablative of means is used without a preposition, while the ablative of agent requires *ā* or *ab*:

Galli virtūte Rōmānōrum superābantur, *the Gauls were overcome by the valor of the Romans*

Galli ā Rōmānīs superābantur, *the Gauls were overcome by the Romans*

NOTE 2. The ablative of manner is rare without *cum* or an attributive adjective.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 13-17)

I. 1. There are those ¹ who are oppressed by debt, tributes, (and) the wrongdoing of the more powerful. 2. Some went to the Druids of their own accord; others were sent by their parents and relatives. 3. If they had thought it was right to intrust these things to letters, they would not have wished to use Greek letters. 4. They think that those ² who trust in letters ³ pay less attention to memory. 5.

life of man must be paid ⁴ for the life of man. 6. They sacrifice men ⁵ because (they say) they think that for the life of man the life of man must be paid. 7. Images of a huge size are filled with living men and set on fire. 8. We do not doubt that these images were filled with living men and set on fire.

II. In all Gaul the Druids were the most powerful. They were accustomed to attend ⁶ to ⁷ matters of religion, and ⁸ were exempt from war. Cæsar says that they ⁹ decided all controversies, and that if anybody ¹⁰ did not abide by their decree, they ¹¹ prohibited (him) from (taking part in) the sacrifices. Over all these Druids one presided, who had the greatest authority among them.

¹ § 177. ² § 208. ³ minus studeō. ⁴ reddō. ⁵ § 188. ⁶ intersum, § 84.
⁷ res divīnae. ⁸ absum ab. ⁹ cōstituō dē. ¹⁰ quis. ¹¹ interdicō with ablative.

LESSON XXXII

68. The Ablative (*continued*).

- a. The Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113.
- b. The Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference, § 114.
- c. The Ablative of Respect (Specification), § 115.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 18-23)

I. 1. These states differ ¹ from one another in language, customs, (and) laws. 2. In this (respect) the Gauls differ from ² the others. 3. They will establish ³ peace and friendship with (their) neighbors. 4. If anybody has heard anything from the neighbors, he informs ⁴ the magistrates. 5. After a year the magistrates compel the Germans to go ⁵ elsewhere. 6. If a state should carry on war with (its) neighbors, magistrates would be chosen to ⁶ take charge of this war. 7. After a few years they will build (houses) ⁷ to avoid the cold ⁸ and heat. ⁸ 8. Their neighbors had been driven out of the fields many years before.

II. Cæsar said that the Germans differed much from the Gauls; that they neither had Druids to take charge of ⁹ matters of religion,

nor did they ¹⁰ pay heed to sacrifices; that their gods were the Sun and Vulcan and the Moon, by whose resources they were visibly aided; and that their whole life consisted in hunting ⁸ and the pursuits of warfare.

¹ inter sē. ² ab. ³ cōfirmō. ⁴ Latin, *shares (it) with*. ⁵ trānseō. ⁶ Not infinitive. ⁷ Gerundive. ⁸ Plural. ⁹ rēs divīnae. ¹⁰ studeō.

LESSON XXXIII

69. The Roman Calendar, §§ 227. *a-i*, 228.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 1-5)

I. 1. He said that they would set out for Gaul on the third of October. 2. ¹ When they had prepared everything, they appointed a day on which ² to assemble at Cenabum. This day was the twenty-eighth of March. 3. If this report had been carried to all the states of Gaul, great forces would have been collected on the tenth of August. 4. They say that he demanded hostages of all these states ³ on the thirteenth of April. 5. Having collected a large army, he will set out for the Hædui on the seventeenth of April. 6. On the sixteenth of March envoys had been sent to ask for a reënforcement. 7. Even if they set out on the fourteenth of July, they will cross the river many days later. 8. After Cæsar's death ⁴ Augustus ⁵ became emperor. He was born on the twenty-third of September ⁶ in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.

II. The Gauls did not doubt that Cæsar would be detained in Italy and not be able to return to the army; and so they entered into plans for ⁷ war. They thought that it would be easy to cut Cæsar off from the army, because (they said) the legions were in winter quarters and could not go out without a commander. Vercingetorix, a young man of the greatest power, tried to persuade all the Gauls to ⁸ take up arms for the sake of general freedom.

¹ Ablative absolute (cf. p. 15, ll. 10-12). ² § 175. ³ Dative. ⁴ mors. ⁵ princeps fiō. ⁶ § 228. ⁷ dē. ⁸ Not infinitive.

LESSON XXXIV

70.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 6-10, 63, 64)

I. 1. Cæsar did not summon the legions into the province because (he said) they could engage in battle on the march. 2. ¹ While these things were being prepared, Cæsar's forces gathered together in (into) the territory of the Helvetians. 3. Cæsar waited in these places a few days until the forces which he had ordered to assemble should come to him. 4. Brutus, whom he had put in command of these soldiers, he urged not to ² be away long from camp. 5. When he had come into the territory of the Lingones, he wished to collect the other legions into one place before the Arverni should be informed of his coming. 6. If he had not set out for the Boii, he would have sent envoys to them to inform ³ (them) of his coming, and to urge (them) to sustain ² with great courage the attack of the enemy. 7. When Vercingetorix had ordered hostages of the other states, ³ the cavalry urged him not to tempt ³ fortune, and persuaded him to try ² to cut off the Romans from foragings. ⁴

II. The Arverni thought that they were protected by the mountain, because at this time of year the paths had never lain open. But Cæsar crossed the mountain so quickly that he arrived at their territory before they knew he had set out for Gaul. ⁵ In their alarm they quickly gathered about Vercingetorix and begged him not to permit ² them to be plundered by the Romans.

¹ § 198. I. ² Not infinitive. ³ Dative. ⁴ pābulātiō. ⁵ Participle.

LESSON XXXV

71.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 65-71)

I. 1. The enemy were superior in infantry of light armor and in cavalry, and Cæsar knew that they were guarding their territory with great care. 2. When the forces of the enemy were gathering together,

Cæsar marched into the territory of the Sequani, ¹ that he might the more easily bring aid to the province. 3. You yourselves ought ² not to doubt that nobody will dare to advance. 4. Cæsar knew that the knights of the enemy could not be prevented ³ from advancing, and he ordered his own cavalry to go against them. 5. If he should have these soldiers in front of the camp, they would be a terror ⁴ to the enemy. 6. ⁵ When these things had been reported, Cæsar ordered the army ⁶ to halt, that the baggage might be taken back inside the legions. 7. Meanwhile pickets ought to be placed by Cæsar ⁷ in these redoubts, that no sally may suddenly be made.

II. Unless Vercingetorix had wished to march immediately to Alesia, he would not have withdrawn the forces which were stationed before the camp. Cæsar, having left two legions as a guard to the baggage, followed the enemy so quickly that on the second day he pitched ⁸ camp at Alesia. He set about investing ⁹ the town because he thought that it could not be reduced ¹⁰ except ¹¹ by siege. The circuit of the Roman fortification measured ¹² eleven miles. Vercingetorix, having received into the town all the forces which he had stationed before the town, prepared to await reinforcements.

¹ § 176. ² dēbeō. ³ § 185. ⁴ § 89. ⁵ Ablative absolute. ⁶ agmen.
⁷ Dative. ⁸ faciō. ⁹ circumvallāre. ¹⁰ expugnō. ¹¹ nisi. ¹² teneō.

LESSON XXXVI

72.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 1-7)

Cæsar says that the Belgians inhabited one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another, (and) the Gauls the third; that of all these the Belgians, who were farthest away from the Roman province and carried on war with the Germans, were the bravest; (and) that the Helvetians surpassed the other Gauls in valor because they either repelled the Germans from their own territory or carried on war in the territory of the Germans.¹

The Helvetians,² who were fond of making war, were persuaded to go out of their territory. But since they wished to march throug³

the province, Cæsar, ³ having collected a large army in Italy, hastened to set out for Gaul.

Ambassadors were sent to Cæsar by the Helvetians to ask him to permit ⁴ them to march through the province. But Cæsar, who was waiting until his soldiers should assemble, replied to them thus: "I shall take time ⁵ ⁶ to think about (it); if you wish anything, return on ⁷ the thirteenth of April. ⁸"

¹ Use a pronoun, and cf. note on p. lxiv, l. 11. ² Dative. ³ See Lesson XX.
⁴ See Lesson X. ⁵ diem. ⁶ ad dēlberandum. ⁷ ad. ⁸ § 227.

LATIN WORD LIST

(See page 448)

The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years are here reprinted

FIRST HALF YEAR

VERBS

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. amō | 32. redigō | 62. admoneō |
| 2. appellō | | 63. moveō |
| 3. audeō | 33. capiō | 64. commoveō |
| 4. cognōscō | 34. accipiō | 65. permoveō |
| 5. cōnfirmō | 35. incipiō | 66. removeō |
| | 36. intercipiō | 67. parō |
| 6. cōnsulō | 37. suscipiō | |
| 7. dēbeō | 38. discēdō | 68. comparō |
| 8. dēfendō | 39. excēdō | |
| 9. dīcō | 40. prōcēdō | 69. pugnō |
| 10. dō | 41. dūcō | 70. expugnō |
| 11. existimō | 42. abdūcō | 71. oppugnō |
| 12. exspectō | 43. addūcō | 72. scribō |
| 13. gerō | 44. ēdūcō | 73. cōnscribō |
| 14. iubeō | 45. indūcō | 74. servō |
| 15. labōrō | 46. perdūcō | 75. cōnservō |
| 16. liberō | 47. prōdūcō | 76. sum |
| 17. nāvīgō | 48. redūcō | 77. absum |
| 18. nūntiō | 49. habeō | 78. adsum |
| 19. occupō | 50. adhibeō | 79. possum |
| 20. oportet | 51. prohibeō | 80. teneō |
| 21. pācō | 52. locō | 81. contineō |
| 22. petō | 53. mittō | |
| 23. portō | 54. āmittō | 82. obtineō |
| 24. properō | 55. committō | 83. pertineō |
| 25. putō | | |
| 26. respondeō | 56. dimittō | 84. retineō |
| 27. relinquō | 57. intermittō | 85. sustineō |
| | | 86. videō |
| 28. spectō | 58. permittō | 87. prōvideō |
| 29. timeō | | 88. vocō |
| 30. agō | 59. praemittō | 89. convocō |
| 31. cōgō | 60. remittō | |
| | 61. moneō | 90. ēvocō |

ENGLISH WORD LIST

(See page 447)

The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years are here reprinted

FIRST HALF YEAR

VERBS

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. love | 32. drive back, reduce, render | 62. remind |
| 2. name, call | 33. take | 63. move |
| 3. dare, venture | 34. accept, receive | 64. alarm, excite |
| 4. learn, ascertain | 35. begin, undertake | 65. arouse, disturb |
| 5. strengthen, encourage, affirm | 36. intercept, cut off | 66. move back, remove |
| 6. consult (<i>w. acc.</i>) | 37. undertake | 67. get ready, prepare for |
| 7. owe, ought | 38. go away, depart | 68. get together, provide |
| 8. defend | 39. go out | |
| 9. say | 40. go forward, advance | 69. fight |
| 10. give | 41. lead | 70. capture by assault |
| 11. think, consider | 42. lead away | 71. attack |
| 12. expect, wait, await | 43. lead to, influence | 72. write |
| 13. carry, accomplish | 44. lead out | 73. enroll |
| 14. order | 45. lead in, induce | 74. save, protect |
| 15. labor, suffer | 46. lead through, extend | 75. save fully, preserve |
| 16. set free | 47. lead forward | 76. be |
| 17. sail | 48. lead back | 77. be away |
| 18. announce, declare | 49. have, hold | 78. be near, be present |
| 19. seize, occupy | 50. apply, employ | 79. be able |
| 20. it is fitting | 51. prohibit, prevent | 80. hold, keep |
| 21. pacify | 52. place, put, set | 81. hold together, contain, confine |
| 22. seek | 53. send | 82. obtain, hold, have |
| 23. carry | 54. send away, lose | 83. reach, extend, retain |
| 24. hurry | 55. commit, intrust (<i>w. proelium</i> , begin) | 84. hold back, retain |
| 25. think | 56. send away | 85. hold up, sustain |
| 26. answer | 57. interrupt, discontinue | 86. see |
| 27. leave behind, abandon | 58. permit, grant, intrust | 87. foresee |
| 28. look at | 59. send ahead | 88. call |
| 29. fear | 60. send back | 89. call together, summon |
| 30. drive, do | 61. advise, warn | 90. call out |
| 31. drive together, collect, compel | | |

NOUNS

91. aestās	120. frāter	149. poena
92. ager	121. frūmentum	150. populus
93. agricola	122. fuga	151. porta
94. amicitia	123. hiems	152. praemium
95. animus	124. homō	153. praesidium
96. annus	125. impedimentum	154. princeps
97. arma		155. proelium
98. auctōritās	126. iniūria	156. puella
99. auxilium	127. insula	157. puer
100. bellum	128. iūdex	158. rēgina
101. caput	129. iudicium	159. rēgnum
102. castra	130. lēx	160. rēx
103. celeritās	131. liber	161. salūs
104. cīvitas	132. libertās	162. servitūs
105. cōsiliū	133. lingua	163. servus
106. cōsul	134. locus	164. signum
107. deus	135. lūx	
108. dignitās	136. māter	165. silva
109. diligentia	137. memoria	166. socius
110. dux	138. miles	167. soror
111. eques	139. nātūra	168. supplicium
112. equus	140. negōtium	169. tempus
113. exemplum	141. nōmen	170. terra
	142. numerus	171. via
114. factum	143. officium	172. victōria
		173. villa
115. fama	144. oppidum	174. vir
116. filia	145. pater	175. virtūs
117. filius	146. pāx	176. vīta
118. flūmen	147. pecūnia	177. vōx
119. fortūna	148. periculum	

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

178. ā (ab)	185. cum (prep.)	192. in
179. ad	186. cūr	
180. ac (atque)	187. dē	193. longē
181. ante		194. -ne
	188. ē (ex)	
182. antea	189. et	195. nec (neque)
183. aut	190. etiam	196. neque . . . neque
184. certē	191. iam	(nec . . . nec)

NOUNS

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 91. summer | 120. brother | 149. penalty |
| 92. field | 121. grain | 150. people |
| 93. farmer | 122. flight | 151. gate |
| 94. friendship | 123. winter | 152. reward |
| 95. spirit, life, soul | 124. man | 153. garrison, guard |
| 96. year | 125. hindrance; <i>plur.</i> | 154. leader, chief man |
| 97. arms | baggage | 155. battle |
| 98. influence | 126. wrong | 156. girl |
| 99. aid, help | 127. island | 157. boy |
| 100. war | 128. judge, juror | 158. queen |
| 101. head | 129. trial, judgment | 159. kingdom |
| 102. camp | 130. law | 160. king |
| 103. speed, swiftness | 131. book | 161. safety |
| 104. citizenship, state | 132. freedom | 162. slavery |
| 105. advice, plan | 133. tongue, language | 163. slave |
| 106. consul | 134. place | 164. sign, signal, stand- |
| 107. god | 135. light | ard |
| 108. worth, position | 136. mother | 165. forest |
| 109. painstaking, care | 137. memory | 166. ally, comrade |
| 110. leader | 138. soldier | 167. sister |
| 111. horseman | 139. nature | 168. punishment |
| 112. horse | 140. business, trouble | 169. time |
| 113. example, prece- | 141. name | 170. land, earth |
| dent | 142. number | 171. highway, road |
| 114. thing done, act, | 143. duty, service, cour- | 172. victory |
| deed | tesy | 173. farmhouse |
| 115. reputation, report | 144. town | 174. man, hero |
| 116. daughter | 145. father | 175. manliness, courage |
| 117. son | 146. peace | 176. life |
| 118. river | 147. money | 177. voice, speech, re- |
| 119. fortune, wealth | 148. trial, danger | mark |

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 178. away from, by | 185. with | 192. in, on (<i>w. abl.</i>); |
| 179. to | 186. why | into (<i>w. acc.</i>) |
| 180. and also | 187. down from, con- | 193. far |
| 181. before (<i>prep. and</i> | cerning | 194. (sign of a ques- |
| <i>adv.</i>) | 188. out from | tion) |
| 182. before (<i>adv.</i>) | 189. and, also, even | 195. and not, nor |
| 183. or, either . . . or | 190. even | 196. neither, neither... |
| 184. certainly, at least | 191. by this time, already | nor |

197. nōn	202. prō	205. sed
198. nunc		206. trāns
199. per	203. quam	207. tum
200. post		208. ubi
201. postea	204. -que	

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

209. aequus	222. ille	235. parvus
		236. pauci
210. altus	223. inimicus	237. primus . . . decimus
211. amicus		238. publicus
	224. iniquus	
212. amplus		
213. barbarus	225. integer	239. pulcher
214. bonus	226. is	240. quis
215. certus		241. reliquus
216. creber	227. liber	
217. egregius	228. longus	242. sacer
218. finitimus	229. magnus	243. tardus
219. hic (<i>adj., pron.</i>), hic (<i>adv.</i>)	230. medius	244. timidus
	231. meus	245. unus . . . decem
	232. noster	246. tuus
220. idem	233. notus	247. verus
221. ipse	234. novus	248. vester

SECOND HALF YEAR

VERBS

249. antecēdō	261. dormiō	273. odi
250. appropinquō	262. dubitō	274. persuādeō
	263. ēripiō	275. perterreō
251. audiō	264. ignōrō	276. praecipio
252. cēdō	265. impediō	
253. coepi	266. imperō	277. praedicō
254. concitō	267. incendō	278. praesum
255. cōnfidō	268. invideō	279. premō
256. cupiō	269. legō	280. quaerō
257. dēligō	270. licet	281. rīdeō
258. dēmōnstrō		282. sciō
259. dēsum	271. mūniō	283. sentiō
260. doceō	272. noceō	284. serviō

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|------------------|
| 197. not | 202. in front of, in be-
half of | 205. but |
| 198. now | 203. than (<i>conj.</i>), how?
(<i>adv. of degree</i>) | 206. across |
| 199. through | 204. and | 207. then |
| 200. after, behind (<i>prep.</i>) | | 208. where, when |
| 201. afterwards (<i>adv.</i>) | | |

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| 209. level, even, just,
fair | 222. that (<i>adj.</i>), he
(<i>pron.</i>) | 235. small |
| 210. high, deep | 223. hostile (<i>as noun</i> ,
enemy) | 236. few |
| 211. friendly (<i>as noun</i> ,
friend) | 224. uneven, unfavor-
able, unjust | 237. first . . . tenth |
| 212. large, distinguished | 225. whole, unimpaired | 238. belonging to the
state, official,
public |
| 213. foreign, barbarous | 226. this, that (<i>adj.</i>), he
(<i>pron.</i>) | 239. beautiful |
| 214. good | 227. free | 240. who? |
| 215. fixed, certain | 228. long | 241. the rest, remaining,
remainder of |
| 216. frequent, thick | 229. large | 242. sacred |
| 217. eminent, unusual | 230. middle, middle of | 243. slow, late |
| 218. neighboring | 231. my, mine | 244. fearful |
| 219. this (<i>adj.</i>), he
(<i>pron.</i>), here
(<i>adv.</i>) | 232. our | 245. one . . . ten |
| 220. the same | 233. known | 246. your |
| 221. self, the very | 234. new | 247. true |
| | | 248. your |

SECOND HALF YEAR

VERBS

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 249. go before, precede | 261. sleep | 273. hate |
| 250. draw near to, ap-
proach | 262. doubt, hesitate | 274. persuade |
| 251. hear | 263. snatch away | 275. alarm |
| 252. go, yield | 264. be ignorant of | 276. order, instruct, ad-
vise |
| 253. begin | 265. hinder | 277. foretell |
| 254. arouse, excite | 266. command, order | 278. be in command of |
| 255. trust | 267. set on fire | 279. press, oppress |
| 256. desire | 268. envy | 280. seek, inquire |
| 257. select, choose | 269. pick, gather, read | 281. laugh |
| 258. point out, show | 270. it is lawful, per-
mitted | 282. know |
| 259. be lacking | 271. fortify | 283. feel, realize |
| 260. teach, show | 272. injure | 284. serve |

285. sūmō	310. iaciō	332. dēscendō
286. superō	311. adiciō	333. sedō
287. temptō	312. coniciō	334. obsideō
288. trahō	313. dēficiō	335. cōsistō
289. trāddicō	314. ēiciō	336. dēmitō
290. vincō	315. obiciō	337. resistō
291. vulnerō	316. prōficiō	338. spērō
292. claudō	317. reiciō	339. dēspērō
293. excludō	318. trāficiō	340. exstruō
294. intercludō	319. maneō	341. instruō
295. dō	320. permanēō	342. contendō
296. abdō	321. remaneō	343. ostendō
297. addō	322. pellō	344. veniō
298. circumdō	323. expellō	345. circumveniō
299. reddō	324. impellō	346. conveniō
300. trādō	325. repellō	347. invenio
301. faciō	326. pōnō	348. perveniō
302. cōnficiō	327. dēpōnō	349. recipiō
303. dēficiō	328. expōnō	350. submittō
304. excipiō	329. oppōnō	351. succēdō
305. interficiō	330. prōpōnō	
306. perficiō	331. ascendō	
307. praefficiō		
308. reficiō		
309. satisfaciō		

NOUNS

352. aciēs	365. diēs	376. imperātor
353. adventus	366. difficultās	377. imperium
354. aetās	367. dolor	378. inopia
355. altitūdō	368. domus (f.)	379. iter
356. beneficium	369. equitātus	380. iūs
357. cīvis	370. exercitus	381. laus
358. cohors	371. exitus	382. magnitūdō
359. cōpia	372. fidēs	383. manus (f.)
360. condiciō	373. finis	384. mare
361. cōsuētūdō	374. genus	385. mēns
362. cornū	375. hostis	386. modus
363. corpus		387. mōns
364. cupiditās		388. mors

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| 285. take, assume | 310. throw, hurl | 332. descend |
| 286. overcome, excel,
surpass | 311. throw to, add | 333. sit |
| 287. test, try, attempt | 312. hurl | 334. besiege |
| 288. drag | 313. throw down | 335. take one's place,
stop |
| 289. lead across | 314. throw out | 336. desist from, cease |
| 290. conquer | 315. throw against,
oppose | 337. resist |
| 291. wound | 316. throw forward | 338. hope |
| 292. close, confine | 317. throw back | 339. lose hope, despair |
| 293. shut out | 318. throw across,
pierce | 340. pile up, erect |
| 294. shut off, cut off,
stop | 319. remain | 341. arrange |
| 295. give | 320. remain, hold out | 342. struggle, hasten |
| 296. put away, hide | 321. stay behind, re-
main | 343. show |
| 297. add | 322. drive, defeat | 344. come |
| 298. put around, sur-
round | 323. drive out | 345. come around, sur-
round |
| 299. give back | 324. drive on, excite | 346. come together |
| 300. hand over | 325. drive back, repulse | 347. come upon, find |
| 301. do, make | 326. put, place | 348. come through, ar-
rive |
| 302. finish, exhaust | 327. put down, put aside | 349. take back (<i>zv. sē</i>
withdraw), re-
ceive |
| 303. fail, revolt, rebel | 328. set forth, explain | 350. send to the assist-
ance of, yield
to |
| 304. take, accept | 329. put against, op-
pose | 351. come up, succeed |
| 305. kill | 330. put before, pro-
pose | |
| 306. accomplish | 331. climb, ascend,
mount | |
| 307. put in charge of | | |
| 308. repair | | |
| 309. satisfy | | |

NOUNS

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| 352. line of battle | 365. day | 376. commander, gen-
eral |
| 353. a coming (to), ar-
rival | 366. difficulty | 377. command, power |
| 354. age | 367. grief | 378. need, lack |
| 355. height, depth | 368. home, house | 379. journey |
| 356. kindness | 369. cavalry | 380. justice, right |
| 357. citizen | 370. army | 381. praise |
| 358. cohort | 371. a going forth, out-
come, departure | 382. size, importance |
| 359. supply; <i>plur.</i> forces | 372. good faith, protec-
tion | 383. hand, group, force |
| 360. condition, terms | 373. end; <i>plur.</i> bound-
aries, territory | 384. sea |
| 361. custom, habit | 374. race, kind | 385. mind |
| 362. horn, wing (of army) | 375. enemy (of the state) | 386. manner |
| 363. body | | 387. mountain |
| 364. desire, greed | | 388. death |

389. multitudō	398. potestās	404. senātus
390. nāvigium		405. spatium
391. nāvis	399. ratiō	
392. nox		406. spēs
393. ōrātiō	400. rēs	407. timor
394. ōrdō	401. rēs frūmentāria	408. turris
395. pars	402. rēs militāris	409. urbs
396. passus		410. vīs
	403. rēs pūblica	
397. pōns		411. vulnus

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

412. ācritēr	420. facile	430. quidem
413. amplē	421. fortiter	
414. apud	422. graviter	
		431. quod
415. autem	423. inter	432. propter
	424. interim	433. satis
	425. magnopere	434. sī
416. bene	426. multum	435. sine
417. celeriter	427. nam	436. trāns
418. diligenter	428. nē . . . quidem	437. vērō
419. enim	429. ob	

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

438. ācer	454. immortalis	468. praesēns
439. celer		469. quadringentī
440. centum	455. incolumis	470. quī
441. commūnis	456. levis	471. recēns
442. cupidus	457. militāris	472. sescentī
443. dexter	458. mille	473. similis
444. difficilis	459. multus	474. singulāris
445. ducentī	460. necessārius	475. sinister
446. ego	461. nōbilis	476. suī
447. equester		
448. facilis	462. omnis	477. suus
449. familiāris	463. pār	
	464. pedester	478. tālis
450. fortis	465. peritus	479. trecentī
451. frūmentārius		480. tū
452. gravis	466. plēnus	481. ūndecim . . . vīgintī
453. idōneus	467. propinquus	482. vīvus

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| 389. multitude | 398. power, authority,
chance | 404. senate |
| 390. boat | 399. account, theory,
manner | 405. space of time, dis-
tance |
| 391. ship | 400. thing | 406. hope |
| 392. night | 401. grain supplies | 407. fear |
| 393. speaking, speech | 402. military affairs, act
of war | 408. tower |
| 394. rank, class | 403. commonwealth,
government | 409. city |
| 395. part | | 410. force, violence;
<i>plur.</i> strength |
| 396. pace (about five
feet) | | 411. wound |
| 397. bridge | | |

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

- | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|--|
| 412. sharply, fiercely | 420. easily | 430. (<i>postpositive</i>) in-
deed, certainly,
at least |
| 413. fully | 421. bravely | 431. because |
| 414. among, at the
home of | 422. heavily, weightily,
seriously | 432. on account of |
| 415. (<i>postpositive</i>) more-
over, on the
other hand | 423. between, among | 433. enough, quite |
| 416. well | 424. meanwhile | 434. if |
| 417. swiftly, quickly | 425. greatly | 435. without |
| 418. with care | 426. much | 436. across |
| 419. (<i>postpositive</i>) for | 427. for | 437. in truth, but |
| | 428. not even | |
| | 429. on account of | |

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 438. sharp, keen | 454. without death, im-
mortal | 468. present, in person |
| 439. swift | 455. unharmed, safe | 469. four hundred |
| 440. hundred | 456. light (in weight) | 470. who |
| 441. common | 457. military | 471. fresh, new, recent |
| 442. desirous, eager | 458. one thousand | 472. six hundred |
| 443. right (hand) | 459. much, many | 473. like |
| 444. difficult | 460. necessary, urgent | 474. single, unusual |
| 445. two hundred | 461. (knowable) noble,
famous | 475. left (hand) |
| 446. I | 462. every; <i>plur.</i> all | 476. himself, herself,
themselves |
| 447. cavalry | 463. equal | 477. his (her, its, their)
own |
| 448. easy | 464. infantry (<i>adj.</i>) | 478. such |
| 449. of the household,
intimate | 465. skilled, experi-
enced | 479. three hundred |
| 450. brave | 466. full | 480. you |
| 451. pertaining to grain | 467. near, a relative | 481. eleven . . . twenty |
| 452. heavy, serious | | 482. alive |
| 453. fit, suitable | | |

THIRD HALF YEAR

VERBS

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 483. accēdō | 517. prōnūtiō | 550. perferō |
| 484. ambulō | 518. queror | 551. referō |
| 485. arbitror | 519. recūsō | 552. fugiō |
| | 520. revocō | 553. perfugiō |
| 486. armō | 521. solvō | |
| 487. attingō | 522. tardō | 554. profugiō |
| 488. augeō | 523. tollō | 555. refugiō |
| 489. collocō | | |
| | 524. tueor | |
| 490. commemorō | | 556. adgredior |
| 491. concēdō | 525. ūtor | 557. congredior |
| 492. cōnor | 526. valeō | |
| 493. cōsuēscō | 527. vereor | 558. ēgredior |
| | 528. versor | 559. prōgredior |
| 494. cūrō | | |
| 495. dēdūcō | 529. volō | 560. hortor |
| 496. dīmicō | 530. currō | 561. cohortor |
| 497. dispergō | 531. concurrō | |
| 498. enūntiō | 532. occurrō | 562. colligō |
| 499. expediō | | 563. intellegō |
| 500. impediō | 533. prōcurrō | 564. loquor |
| 501. explōrō | 534. succurrō | 565. colloquor |
| 502. excitō | | |
| 503. incitō | 535. eō | 566. mandō |
| 504. immittō | 536. adeō | |
| 505. intericiō | 537. exeō | 567. commendō |
| | 538. ineō | 568. moror |
| 506. iūrō | 539. intereō | 569. commoror |
| 507. impetrō | 540. pereō | 570. orior |
| | 541. redeō | 571. adior |
| 508. nāscor | 542. subeō | 572. comperiō |
| 509. nōlō | 543. trānseō | 573. experior |
| 510. ōrō | 544. ferō | 574. reperiō |
| 511. pateō | 545. afferō | 575. comportō |
| 512. patior | 546. cōnferō | |
| 513. polliceor | 547. dēferō | 576. supportō |
| 514. postulō | 548. īnferō | 577. trānsportō |
| 515. potior | 549. offerō | |
| 516. proficiscor | | 578. sequor |

THIRD HALF YEAR

VERBS

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 483. go to, advance | 517. proclaim | 550. carry through, en- |
| 484. walk | 518. complain | dure |
| 485. judge, consider, | 519. refuse | 551. bring back, report |
| think | 520. recall | 552. flee |
| 486. arm | 521. loose, set sail, pay | 553. flee (through), es- |
| 487. touch, reach | 522. check | cape |
| 488. increase | 523. lift up, remove, de- | 554. flee forth, escape |
| 489. place together, | stroy | 555. flee back (from), |
| establish | 524. look at, watch over, | run away from, |
| 490. mention | maintain | avoid |
| 491. yield, give up | 525. use, make use of | 556. attack |
| 492. attempt, try | 526. be strong | 557. come together, |
| 493. become accus- | 527. fear, respect | fight |
| tomed to | 528. be engaged in, be | 558. step out, go out |
| 494. take care, care for | busy | 559. step forward, ad- |
| 495. lead away | 529. wish, desire | vance |
| 496. fight | 530. run | 560. urge, exhort |
| 497. scatter (apart) | 531. run together, rush | 561. encourage ear- |
| 498. announce | 532. run against, run to | nestly |
| 499. free from, extricate | meet, occur | 562. gather |
| 500. hinder | 533. run forward | 563. understand |
| 501. investigate | 534. rush to rescue, re- | 564. talk, speak |
| 502. stir up | lieve | 565. talk with, con- |
| 503. incite | 535. go | verse |
| 504. let in, let loose | 536. go to, visit | 566. put into the hands |
| 505. throw between, | 537. go out, go forth | of, intrust, order |
| intervene | 538. enter upon, begin | 567. intrust |
| 506. swear | 539. perish | 568. delay |
| 507. get one's request, | 540. (go through) perish | 569. delay |
| secure permis- | 541. go back | 570. arise, rise |
| sion | 542. undergo, suffer | 571. attack |
| 508. be born | 543. go across, cross | 572. find out, learn |
| 509. be unwilling | 544. bear, carry, bring | 573. try out, test |
| 510. (speak) beg, ask | 545. bring (to) | 574. find, discover |
| 511. lie open, be obvious | 546. bring together | 575. carry or bring to- |
| 512. allow, suffer | 547. carry away, refer | gether |
| 513. promise | 548. carry against | 576. bring up, furnish |
| 514. demand | 549. carry against, pre- | 577. carry across, trans- |
| 515. get possession of | sent, put in the | port |
| 516. start, set out | way of | 578. follow |

579. cōnsequor	584. cōnspiciō	588. suspicor
580. insequor	585. cōnspicor	589. tribuō
581. persequor	586. dēspiciō	590. attribuō
582. prōsequor	587. perspicīō	591. distribuō
583. subsequor		

NOUNS

592. aditus	610. gēns	627. opera
593. adulēscēns	611. grātia	628. opiniō
594. aegritūdō	612. honor	629. ops
595. agmen	613. impetus	630. opus
596. caedēs	614. labor	631. perfuga
597. calamitās	615. lēgātīō	632. perfugium
598. cāsus	616. lēgātus	633. plānitēs
599. causa	617. legiō	634. portus
600. centuriō	618. liberī	635. quaestor
601. clāmor	619. magistrātus	636. regiō
602. classis		637. sententia
603. collis	620. maiōrēs	638. summa
604. commeātus		639. suspīciō
605. cōncursus	621. metus	640. tēlum
606. cōnspectus	622. mōs	641. ūsus
607. cōnsulātus	623. mūnitiō	642. verbum
608. conventus	624. nātiō	643. viātor
609. familia	625. obses	644. vulgus
	626. odium	

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

645. audācter	652. diū	660. itaque
646. bis	653. dum	661. item
647. causā	654. eō	662. modo
648. circiter	655. etsi	663. nē
649. contrā	656. hīc	664. nisi
650. cum (α vj.)	657. ibi	665. nōn modo . . . sed etiam
651. cum . . . tum	658. inde	666. numquam
	659. ita	

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 579. follow closely, overtake, reach | 584. catch sight of, see | 588. suspect |
| 580. pursue | 585. catch sight of | 589. assign, distribute |
| 581. pursue closely | 586. look down on, despise | 590. assign |
| 582. follow forth, escort | 587. see through, understand | 591. distribute |
| 583. follow closely | | |

NOUNS

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| 592. a going to (toward), approach | 610. tribe, people, nation | 627. work, service, aid |
| 593. youth | 611. influence, favor; plur. thanks | 628. thought, reputation |
| 594. illness | 612. office, honor | 629. wealth, reputation, resources |
| 595. marching column (of an army) | 613. attack | 630. work, need |
| 596. slaughter | 614. work, trouble | 631. deserter, fugitive |
| 597. defeat, misfortune | 615. embassy, deputation | 632. place of refuge |
| 598. fall, chance, accident | 616. envoy, lieutenant | 633. plain |
| 599. cause | 617. legion, regiment | 634. harbor |
| 600. centurion | 618. children | 635. treasurer, quaestor |
| 601. shout | 619. magistracy, magistrate | 636. district |
| 602. fleet | 620. (persons greater in years) forefathers, elders | 637. thinking, thought, opinion |
| 603. hill | 621. fear, anxiety | 638. sum total, chief command |
| 604. supplies | 622. custom, habit | 639. suspicion |
| 605. a rush together, crowd | 623. fortification | 640. missile, weapon |
| 606. sight, view | 624. nation, tribe, race | 641. use, experience |
| 607. consulship | 625. hostage | 642. word |
| 608. a coming together, a meeting | 626. hatred | 643. wayfarer, traveler |
| 609. household, slaves | | 644. rabble, crowd |

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| 645. boldly | 652. long (of time) | 660. and so |
| 646. twice | 653. while, as long as, until, provided | 661. likewise |
| 647. for the sake of | 654. thither, there | 662. only |
| 648. nearly, about | 655. even if, although | 663. that not, lest |
| 649. against | 656. here | 664. if not, unless |
| 650. when, after, since, although | 657. there | 665. not only . . . but also |
| 651. not only . . . but also | 658. from there, thence | 666. never |
| | 659. so | |

667. parum	674. quā	678. saepe
668. plērumque		679. semper
669. postquam	675. quō	680. sic
670. potius	676. quōminus	681. solum
671. priusquam		682. sub
672. propterea		
673. quā	677. quoniam	683. tam
		684. tamen

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

685. aliēnus	701. maritimus	720. sextus
	702. necesse	721. singuli
686. alius	703. nocturnus	
687. alter	704. nēmō	722. solum
688. angustus	705. nihil	723. superbus
689. apertus	706. nōnullus	724. superus
690. brevis	707. nullus	
691. ceteri		725. tantus
	708. occultus	726. totus
692. commodus	709. perpetuus	727. triginta
693. complures	710. posterus	728. turpis
694. diversus	711. prior, primus	729. tūtus
695. dubius	712. prope	730. ullus
696. extrā	713. privātus	731. ultrā
697. firmus	714. quadrāgintā	732. universus
698. imperitus	715. quantus	733. uterque
	716. quinquāgintā	734. utilis
699. infrā	717. rēgius	735. vetus
	718. secundus	736. vetustus
700. iustus	719. sexāgintā	

FOURTH HALF YEAR

VERBS

737. administrō	744. cōsīdō	751. explicō
738. admiror	745. conquīrō	752. exstinguō
739. arcessō	746. crēscō	753. efficiō
740. compellō	747. dēcertō	754. fīō
741. complō		
742. conclāmō	748. dēserō	755. frūmentor
743. cōnflīgō	749. dēterreō	756. hiemō
	750. dividō	757. impōnō

- | | | |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| 667. little, too little | 674. but that (<i>w. expressions of doubt</i>) | 678. often |
| 668. for the most part | 675. whither | 679. always |
| 669. after (<i>conj.</i>) | 676. that . . . not, from | 680. thus, so |
| 670. rather, sooner | (<i>w. expressions of hindrance</i>) | 681. only |
| 671. before (<i>conj.</i>) | 677. since (<i>conj.</i>) | 682. under, beneath, at
the foot of |
| 672. for this reason | | 683. so |
| 673. where | | 684. nevertheless |

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

- | | | |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| 685. belonging to another | 701. maritime, naval | 720. sixth |
| 686. another | 702. necessary | 721. one each, one at a time |
| 687. the other (of two) | 703. at night, nocturnal | 722. alone, only |
| 688. narrow | 704. no one | 723. proud |
| 689. open | 705. nothing | 724. high (<i>summus</i> = top of) |
| 690. short | 706. (not no) = some | 725. so great |
| 691. the other, the rest of | 707. no (no one <i>in gen. and abl.</i>) | 726. all, whole |
| 692. fitting, agreeable | 708. concealed | 727. thirty |
| 693. several, very many | 709. everlasting | 728. disgraceful |
| 694. different, distant | 710. next, later | 729. safe |
| 695. doubtful | 711. earlier, first | 730. any |
| 696. outside | 712. near | 731. beyond |
| 697. strong | 713. private | 732. altogether, all |
| 698. unskilled, inexperienced | 714. forty | 733. both, each |
| 699. beneath (<i>imus</i> = bottom of) | 715. how great | 734. useful |
| 700. just | 716. fifty | 735. old |
| | 717. royal | 736. old |
| | 718. successful | |
| | 719. sixty | |

FOURTH HALF YEAR

VERBS

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 737. manage | 744. halt, encamp | 751. unfold, set forth |
| 738. wonder at | 745. search for, collect | 752. put out |
| 739. summon, invite | 746. grow (<i>intrans.</i>) | 753. bring about |
| 740. drive together, force | 747. decide, fight to a finish | 754. be made, become, happen |
| 741. fill | 748. desert | 755. get grain, forage |
| 742. shout | 749. deter | 756. spend the winter |
| 743. strike together, clash, fight | 750. divide | 757. put on, impose |

758. incolō	776. studeō	792. dēprehendō
759. iniciō		793. regō
760. interrogō	777. sublevō	794. dirigō
761. invītō		795. statuō
762. lateō	778. tegō	796. cōstituō
763. mereō	779. trucidō	
764. minuō		797. instituō
765. nancīscor	780. vāstō	
	781. vītō	798. restituō
766. occultō	782. cadō	
767. opprimō	783. accidō	799. stō
768. pābulor	784. incidō	800. cōnstō
769. perturbō	785. caedō	
770. poscō	786. occidō	
771. praebeō	787. cernō	801. īnstō
		802. vertō
772. prīvō	788. dēcernō	803. āvertō
773. proelior		804. advertō
774. quiēscō	789. adiungō	805. animadvertō
775. sollicitō	790. coniungō	
	791. comprehendō	806. convertō
		807. revertō

NOUNS

808. aedificium	824. concilium	842. funditor
809. aestus	825. contentiō	843. gener
810. agger	826. contumēlia	844. gladius
	827. cursus	845. gradus
811. angustiae	828. custōdia	846. hiberna
	829. dēditō	847. hōra
812. ancora	830. dēfēnsor	848. ignis
813. aqua	831. dētrimentum	849. iūs iūrandum
814. arbor	832. digitus	850. imperātum
815. armātūra	833. disciplīna	851. incendium
	834. ēruptiō	852. incommodum
816. auris	835. ēventus	
817. braccium	836. exercitātiō	853. industria
818. campus	837. explorātor	854. initium
819. captīvus	838. facultās	855. insidiae
820. carrus		856. institūtum
821. castellum	839. fidūcia	857. iugum
822. cliēns	840. fossa	858. iūmentum
823. colloquium	841. frōns	859. lapis
		860. lātitudō

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| 758. dwell, inhabit | 776. be eager, be zealous | 792. seize, capture |
| 759. throw into, inspire | 777. lighten, relieve, assist | 793. rule |
| 760. ask | 778. cover, protect | 794. guide, direct |
| 761. invite | 779. slaughter, massacre | 795. set up, decide |
| 762. lie hidden | 780. lay waste | 796. set up, station, decide |
| 763. deserve | 781. avoid | 797. establish, undertake, begin |
| 764. make less, lessen | 782. fall | 798. set back (in place), restore |
| 765. find, get (by chance) | 783. happen | 799. stand |
| 766. conceal | 784. fall upon, happen | 800. stand together, be agreed, be certain, cost |
| 767. overwhelm, crush | 785. slay | 801. press on, threaten |
| 768. get fodder, forage | 786. cut down, kill | 802. turn |
| 769. disturb, alarm | 787. discern, distinguish | 803. turn away |
| 770. demand | 788. decide, determine, decree | 804. turn to (toward) |
| 771. hold before, offer, furnish, display | 789. join to, add | 805. attend to, notice, punish |
| 772. deprive of | 790. join with, unite | 806. turn, change |
| 773. battle | 791. seize, arrest | 807. turn back, return |
| 774. rest, become quiet | | |
| 775. make anxious, tamper with, bribe | | |

NOUNS

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 808. building | 824. meeting, council | 842. slinger |
| 809. heat, tide | 825. struggle | 843. son-in-law |
| 810. earth wall, embankment | 826. insult, injury | 844. sword |
| 811. narrow place, critical situation | 827. a running, speed, course | 845. step, rank |
| 812. anchor | 828. guard | 846. winter quarters |
| 813. water | 829. surrender | 847. hour |
| 814. tree | 830. defender | 848. fire |
| 815. equipment, armament | 831. defect, loss | 849. oath |
| 816. ear | 832. finger | 850. order |
| 817. arm | 833. training, discipline | 851. fire, burning |
| 818. plain, field | 834. sally | 852. disadvantage, defeat |
| 819. captive | 835. outcome | 853. industry |
| 820. wagon | 836. exercise, practice | 854. beginning |
| 821. fortress | 837. scout | 855. plot, stratagem |
| 822. vassal | 838. facility, opportunity | 856. custom, institution |
| 823. a talking together, conference | 839. confidence, pledge | 857. yoke, ridge |
| | 840. ditch | 858. beast of burden |
| | 841. forehead, front | 859. stone |
| | | 860. width |

861. latus	883. pecus	905. statio
862. littera	884. pedes	906. stipendium
	885. pes	907. studium
863. litus	886. pilum	908. subsidium
864. mandatum	887. plēbs	909. tempestas
865. materia	888. praefectus	
866. mercator		910. tergum
867. mora	889. praetor	911. terror
868. munus	890. prex	912. toga
869. murus	891. profectio	
870. nobilitas	892. provincia	913. tribunus
871. nuntius	893. pugna	914. triduum
872. obsidio	894. radix	
873. occasio	895. remex	915. tumulus
874. onus	896. responsum	916. vadum
	897. ripa	917. vallēs
875. oppidanus	898. sagittarius	918. vallum
876. opportunitas	899. saxum	919. ventus
	900. scientia	920. victor
877. oppugnatio	901. scutum	921. vicus
878. os	902. sol	922. vigilia
879. os	903. species	923. vinculum
880. pabulatio		924. vinea
881. pagus	904. sponte sua	925. voluntas
882. palus		

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

926. adversus	941. omnino	956. repente
927. aegre		957. rursus
	942. paene	958. sicut (sicuti)
928. an	943. palam	959. simul
929. at	944. partim	960. statim
930. clam	945. paulatim	961. subito
931. cotidie	946. paulo	962. supra
932. deinde		963. ultra
933. eodem	947. paulum	
934. frustra	948. praesertim	964. una
935. gratis	949. praeter	
936. huc	950. praeterea	965. unde
937. iam pridem	951. pridie	966. undique
938. intra	952. primo	
939. nocte	953. primum	967. usque
940. nondum	954. procul	968. vehementer
	955. quoque	969. vix

- | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 861. side | 883. cattle | 905. outpost, picket |
| 862. letter of the alpha-
bet; <i>plur.</i> epistle | 884. foot soldier | 906. tribute, pay, service |
| 863. shore | 885. foot | 907. zeal, enthusiasm |
| 864. order | 886. javelin | 908. reserve, assistance |
| 865. timber, stuff | 887. common people | 909. season, stormy
weather |
| 866. trader | 888. governor, captain,
mayor | 910. back, rear |
| 867. delay | 889. prætor, judge | 911. dread, fright |
| 868. duty, service, gift | 890. prayer | 912. Roman outer gar-
ment, toga |
| 869. wall | 891. departure | 913. tribune |
| 870. nobility, fame | 892. province | 914. period of three
days |
| 871. messenger, message | 893. fight, battle | 915. mound |
| 872. siege | 894. root, base | 916. ford |
| 873. chance, opportunity | 895. oarsman | 917. valley |
| 874. burden, cargo,
weight | 896. answer | 918. rampart, palisade |
| 875. townsman | 897. bank | 919. wind |
| 876. advantage, oppor-
tunity | 898. Bowman | 920. victor |
| 877. siege, attack | 899. rock | 921. village |
| 878. bone | 900. knowledge | 922. watch (of the night) |
| 879. face, mouth | 901. shield | 923. chain |
| 880. fodder | 902. sun | 924. shed |
| 881. district, canton | 903. appearance, pre-
tense | 925. good will, purpose,
wish |
| 882. swamp | 904. of one's own ac-
cord | |

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 926. against | 941. on the whole, at
all, altogether | 956. suddenly |
| 927. ill, feebly, with
difficulty | 942. almost | 957. again |
| 928. (whether) . . . or | 943. openly | 958. just as, as if |
| 929. but | 944. partly | 959. at the same time |
| 930. secretly | 945. little by little | 960. at once |
| 931. daily | 946. a little (<i>cf. compara-
tive</i>) | 961. suddenly |
| 932. then, next | 947. a little | 962. above |
| 933. to the same place | 948. especially | 963. voluntarily, be-
yond |
| 934. in vain | 949. except | 964. together, in com-
pany |
| 935. freely | 950. besides | 965. whence |
| 936. hither | 951. on the day before | 966. from all sides, on
all sides |
| 937. long ago | 952. at first | 967. even till, even to |
| 938. within | 953. first | 968. violently |
| 939. at night | 954. at a distance | 969. scarcely |
| 940. not yet | 955. also | |

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

970. aeger	978. excelsus	985. quisquam
971. aliquis	979. exiguus	
972. citerior	980. infirmus	
973. cotidiānus	981. plērique	
974. cūctus		986. quisque
975. decumānus	982. prīstinus	987. quod sī
	983. quicumque	988. repentinus
976. dēfessus	984. quidam	989. sī quis
977. duplex		990. tot
		991. vacuus

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

- | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 970. sick | 978. lofty | 985. any one at all (<i>with</i> |
| 971. some one, any one | 979. small | <i>a negative ex-</i> |
| 972. on this side, nearer | 980. weak | <i>pressed or im-</i> |
| 973. daily | 981. the most, the ma- | <i>plied</i>) |
| 974. all, whole | majority | 986. each one |
| 975. pertaining to the | 982. former, old | 987. but if |
| tenth, rear (gate) | 983. whoever | 988. sudden |
| 976. tired | 984. a certain one | 989. if any |
| 977. double | | 990. so many |
| | | 991. vacant, destitute of |

WORD FORMATION

NOTE. The requirements of the Syllabus in regard to word formation for the first year are here reprinted, as this matter may be found useful for reference and review. For the second year, directions and exercises for the pupils are provided, following the requirements of the Syllabus. Teachers may continue these suggestions as they desire.

FIRST HALF YEAR

a. Prefixes : *ā* (ab, aba), *ad*, *con* (prepositional and adverbial force), *dē*, *ex* (*e*), *in-* (both prepositional and negative uses).

These prefixes are to be used in two ways: first, to form new Latin verbs from simple verbs; secondly, to form English derivatives. The simple verbs to be used in this exercise are those which occur in the required vocabularies for the different half years. The following are examples for the first half year:

<i>dūcō</i> , lead, + <i>ab</i>	= <i>abdūcō</i> , lead away
+ <i>ad</i>	= <i>addūcō</i> , lead to
+ <i>con</i>	= <i>condūcō</i> , lead together
+ <i>dē</i>	= <i>dēdūcō</i> , lead down
+ <i>e</i>	= <i>ēdūcō</i> , lead out
+ <i>in</i>	= <i>indūcō</i> , lead into
+ <i>prō</i>	= <i>prōdūcō</i> , lead forth
+ <i>re</i>	= <i>redūcō</i> , lead back
+ <i>trans</i> (<i>trā</i>)	= <i>trādūcō</i> , lead across

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: *adduce*, *conduce*, *deduce*, *educe*, *induce*, *conduct*, *deduct*, *induct*, *conducive*, *deduction*, etc.

NOTE. Attention should be called to phonetic changes in Latin compounds. For example, *ad* + *capīō* = *accipīō*; *con* + *locō* = *collocō*.

b. Suffixes. Latin words formed by means of suffixes should be observed carefully and compared with the related words. Except in the case of suffixes that have a uniform and easily defined meaning, it is advisable merely to lead the pupil to associate the words concerned. In the first half year the following types of words should be noted:

(1) *Nouns from Nouns.* For example, *virtūs* (vir), *servitūs* (servus), *cīvitās* (cīvis).

(2) *Nouns from Adjectives.* For example, *amicitia* (amicus), *celeritās* (celer), *dignitās* (dignus), *diligentia* (diligēns).

c. Derivation. Since a very large number of English words have come, directly or indirectly, from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. Accordingly, ten Latin verbs are assigned for each half year as a basis for study in derivation. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the important English derivatives. An optional list of ten verbs has been added for each half year in the belief that many teachers will wish to emphasize even more strongly this feature of the study of Latin.

The required and optional lists for the first half year are as follows:

REQUIRED		OPTIONAL	
1. servō	6. moveō	1. iūdicō	6. habeō
2. locō	7. dūcō	2. pācō	7. moneō
3. vocō	8. mittō	3. parō	8. teneō
4. putō	9. dīcō	4. pugnō	9. agō
5. videō	10. capiō	5. spectō	10. cognōscō

NOTE. A suggested form of arrangement follows:

DERIVATION NOTEBOOK (specimen page)

TYPE I (without definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus, place	locate, local, locality, location, locus, collocate, collocation, dislocate, localization, localize, locally, locative, locomotive, locomotor
---	---

TYPE 2 (with definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,	vocation: a <i>calling</i> , occupation
vocātus, call	vocational: pertaining to a vocation, or <i>calling</i>
	vocal: pertaining to the voice
	evoke: <i>call</i> out
	convoke: <i>call</i> together
	vocative: case of <i>calling</i> , case of address
	revoke: <i>call</i> back, remand
	invoke: <i>call</i> upon, ask for
	vociferous: with large <i>calling</i> power, with loud tones
	invocation: a <i>calling</i> upon, a prayer

TYPE 3 (with examples of use in English)

mittō, mittere, misi,	mission: He was sent on a mission to Europe
missus, send	missionary: He was sent as a missionary to China
	missive: The letter was a formidable missive
	missile: Stones were the missiles of early warfare
	transmit: They will transmit the message to us
	remission: He preached the remission of sins
	commit: She was committed to his care
	submit: They submitted to the inevitable
	submissive: The slave was not submissive
	omit: Omit the nonessential

SECOND HALF YEAR

a. Prefixes: *inter, per, prae, prō, sub*.

For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of this list, see the outline of work for the first half year (p. 469).

b. Suffixes. It is important to observe carefully the following typical nouns, and to associate them with the verbs from which they are derived:

adventus (adveniō), oppugnātiō (oppugnō), praesidium (praesideō), iūdicium (iūdicō).

Similarly, the following nouns derived from nouns and adjectives should be noted:

pecūnia (pecus), **cupiditās** (cupiō, cupidus), **potestās** (possum, potēs), **altitūdō** (altus).

NOTE. In the second half year both the prefixes and the simple verbs already studied are to be reviewed; the new prefixes are to be compounded with the old verbs, and the old prefixes with the new verbs.

c. Derivation. The following ten verbs and the more important English words derived from their roots:

REQUIRED		OPTIONAL	
1. nāvigō	6. vincō	1. dō	6. trahō
2. doceō	7. sūmō	2. veniō	7. pellō
3. timeō	8. faciō	3. fidō	8. cōnsulō
4. sedeō	9. iaciō	4. pōnō	9. audeō
5. scribō	10. audiō	5. terreō	10. mūniō

THIRD HALF YEAR

EXERCISES

I. Consult the general vocabulary and learn the meanings of the prefixes *ante*, *dis*, *ob*, *re*, *trans*.

For example, *ante* means *before*, *in front*. What does *ante-cēdō* mean? *ante-ferō*? *ante-pōnō*? See the general vocabulary.

Learn also that *sē* means *aside*, *by itself*. What does *sē-pōnō* mean? *sē-cēdō*?

II. From the vocabulary select and give the meanings of verbs formed with the prefixes in Exercise I.

III. What English words are derived from the words selected in Exercise II?

IV. From an examination of the following nouns and the verbs from which they are derived, what force has the suffix *tor*? or?

imperātor (imperō), **quaestor** (quaerō), **clāmor** (clāmō), **timor** (timeō).

V. Learn the following ten verbs, and make a list of the English words derived from them; show the list to your teacher; after it has been corrected and returned to you, learn the verbs and the English derivatives:

REQUIRED		OPTIONAL	
1. <i>ōrō</i>	6. <i>regō</i>	1. <i>mandō</i>	6. <i>tribuō</i>
2. <i>portō</i>	7. <i>legō</i>	2. <i>arbitror</i>	7. <i>(ad)iangō</i>
3. <i>utō</i>	8. <i>solvō</i>	3. <i>valeō</i>	8. <i>sequor</i>
4. <i>ferō</i>	9. <i>fugiō</i>	4. <i>cadō</i>	9. <i>tollō</i>
5. <i>(in)colō</i>	10. <i>expediō</i>	5. <i>currō</i>	10. <i>vertō</i>

FOURTH HALF YEAR

EXERCISES

I. Note the effect of the suffixes upon the meanings of the following words; after each word a related Latin word containing the same root is given (the small numeral indicates the half year in which the word occurred first; if there is no numeral, the word is not in the prescribed vocabulary):

1. *TERROR*⁴, *terreō*⁸; *CLĀMOR*⁸, *conclāmō*⁴.

2. *VIĀTOR*⁸, *via*¹; *DĒFĒNSOR*⁴, *dēfendō*¹; *EXPLŌRĀTOR*⁴, *explōrō*⁸; *VICTOR*⁴, *vincō*²; *PERFUGA*⁸, *fugiō*⁸; *INCOLA*, *incolō*⁴, *agricolā*¹; *ADVENA*, *veniō*².

3. *LEGIō*⁸, *legō*²; *DĒDITIō*⁴, *dēdō*; *CŌNTENTIō*⁴, *contendō*; *ĒRŪPTIō*⁴, *ērumpō*; *OBSEDIō*⁴, *obsideō*²; *OCCĀSIō*⁴, *cadō*⁴; *OPPUGNĀTIō*⁴, *oppugnō*¹; *SUSPĪCIō*⁸, *suspiciō*⁸; *MŪNITIō*⁸, *mūniō*²; *LĒGĀTIō*⁸, *lēx*¹, *lēgō*; *OPĪNIō*⁸, *opīnor*; *STRĀTIō*⁸, *stō*; *ADVENTUS*², *veniō*²; *CONVENTUS*⁸; *ĒVENTUS*⁴; *EXITUS*⁴, *ēō*⁸; *ADĪTUS*⁸; *CĀSUS*⁸, *cadō*⁴; *CONCURSUS*⁸, *currō*².

4. *CAEDĒS*⁸, *caedō*⁴; *SPECIĒS*⁴, *cōspiciō*⁸, *spectō*¹; *FIDĒS*², *fīdō*; *PRAESIDIUM*, *subsidiū*⁴, *sedeō*²; *PERFUGIUM*⁸, *fugiō*⁸; *CŌNSILIUM*¹, *cōsulō*¹; *ODIUM*⁸, *odī*²; *INCENDIUM*⁴, *incendō*; *STUDIUM*⁴, *studeō*; *INITIUM*⁴, *eō*⁸; *COLLOQUIUM*⁴, *loquor*⁸; *IUDICIUM*¹, *iūdicō*.

5. *NŌMEN*¹, *cognōscō*¹; *FLŪMEN*¹, *fluō*; *IMPEDĪMENTUM*¹, *impediō*²; *IŪMENTUM*⁴, *adiungō*⁴; *VINCULUM*⁴, *vinciō*; *AGRICULTŪRA*, *ager*¹, *colō*.

6. VICTŌRIA¹, victor; SCIENTIA⁴, sciō², sciēns; DĪLIGENTIA¹, diligō, diligēns; PRŪDENTIA, prūdēns, prōvidēns, videō¹; CELERITĀS¹, celer; LIBERTĀS¹, liber¹; NŌBILITĀS⁴, nōbilis², cognōscō¹; OPPORTŪNITĀS⁴, opportunus; VOLUNTĀS⁴, volō², volēns; FACULTĀS⁴, facilis², faciō²; SERVITŪS¹, servus¹, serviō²; VIRTŪS¹, vir; AEGRITŪDŌ³, aeger⁴; MULTITŪDŌ², multus²; LĀTITŪDŌ⁴, lātus; FORTITŪDŌ, fortis²; DISCIPLĪNA⁴, discipulus, discō.

7. FACILIS², faciō²; ŪTILIS, ūtor²; LAUDĀBILIS, laudō; CAPTĪVUS⁴, capiō¹; CUPIDUS, cupiō²; OPPIDĀNUS⁴, oppidum¹; PERĪCULŌSUS, periculum¹; NĀVĀLIS, nāvis²; CĪVĪLIS, cīvis²; HOSTĪLIS, hostis².

II. Observe the Latin suffixes. Note the forms of these suffixes in the corresponding English words, with any changes. For example, *or* is *or*; *tor* (or *sor*) is *tor* (or *sor*; *dēfēnsor* is for *dēfend-tor*); *iō* and *tiō* are *ion* and *tion* (English uses the stem of the word as shown in the genitive: with *legiō* compare *legion*; with *statiō*, *station*). The suffix *tās* becomes *ty* (as in *nobility*); *tūdō* becomes *tude* (as in *multitude*); *tus* becomes *t* (as in *event*); *tūs* becomes *tue* (as in *virtue*).

The table below gives Latin roots and their Latin and English derivatives (these words are not found in the vocabulary of one thousand words which you are studying carefully).

The following abbreviations are used:

n = noun; a = adjective; v = verb; av = adverb

LATIN ROOTS	LATIN DERIVATIVES	ENGLISH DERIVATIVES
1. spec-----	(v) spectō-----	(n) aspect
	(n) spectātor	(v) inspect
	(n) spectāculum	(n) inspection
	(v) aspiciō (ad-spiciō)	(n) spectator
	(n) aspectus	(n) spectacle
	(v) circumspecio	(a) spectacular
	(v) cōnspecio	(a) circumspect
	(v) perspecio	(n) circumspection
	(v) prōspecio	(n) species
	(v) respicio	(a) conspicuous
	(v) retrōspecio	(a) suspicious
	(v) speculor (<i>dep.</i>)	(v, n) suspect
		(n) perspective
		(n) prospect

LATIN ROOTS	LATIN DERIVATIVES	ENGLISH DERIVATIVES
		(a) prospective
		(n) prospector
		(v, n) respect
		(a) respectable
		(av) respectably
		(n) respectability
		(n) retrospect
		(n) retrospection
		(a) retrospective
		(v) speculate
		(n) speculator
		(n) speculation
2. ten	(v) teneō	(a) tenable
	(a) tenāx	(a) tenacious
	(n) tenācītās	(a) pertinacious
	(v) abstinence	(n) tenacity
	(n) abstinentia	(v) abstain
	(v) contineō	(n) abstinence
	(v) continuō	(v) contain
	(v) dētineō	(n, a) content
	(v) obtineō	(v) continue
	(v) pertineō	(a) continual
	(v) retineō	(a) continuous
	(v) sustineō	(v) detain
		(n) detention
		(v) obtain
		(v) pertain
		(v) retain
		(v) sustain
		(n) sustenance
		(v) maintain
		(v) entertain
		(a) pertinent
		(a) impertinent
		(n) tenant
3. cap	(v) capiō	(v, n) capture
	(n) captīvus	(n) captive
	(n) captivītās	(n) captivity
	(v) accipiō	(v) accept
	(v) excipiō	(a) acceptable
	(v) recipiō	(n) acceptability
	(v) incipiō	(v) except
	(v) dēcipiō	(n) exception
	(a) capāx	(n) receptacle

LATIN ROOTS	LATIN DERIVATIVES	ENGLISH DERIVATIVES
	(v) suscipiō	(n) recipient
	(v) praecipīō	(a) incipient
	(v) percipiō	(v) participate
	(n) praeceptor	(a, n) principal
	(v) intercipiō	(n) principle
		(n) recipe
		(n) deception
		(n) capacity
		(n) incapacity
		(a) capacious
		(n) precept
		(n) preceptor
		(n) perception
		(av) (im) perceptibly
		(v) emancipate
		(n) emancipation
		(a) susceptible
		(n) susceptibility
4. vid	(v) videō	(n) vision
	(v) prōvideō	(a) visible
	(a) prūdēns	(n) visibility
	(n) prūdentia	(v, n) visit
		(a) visual
		(v) provide
		(n) providence
		(n) provision
		(a) providential
		(a) evident
		(n) evidence
		(a) visionary
		(n) proviso
		(a) prudent
		(n) prudence
		(n) vista

III. Use ten of the above English words in ten English sentences, and ten of the Latin words in ten Latin sentences.

IV. Study the roots of the following words, using a Latin lexicon and an unabridged English dictionary:

cēdō, cādō, caedō, moveō, pellō, vehō, sedeō, habeo, sentiō, vertō, trahō, regō.

ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS

ă as in făt	ē as in mēte	ō as in old	ū as in ūp	o as in call
â as in senâte	ê as in êvent	ô as in ôbey	û as in fûr	ç as in çity
ǎ as in făt	ě as in mět	ǫ as in nǫt	ȳ as in rȳle	eh as in sehool
ä as in ärm	ë as in hër	ö as in cörk	ȳ as in pull	g as in go
ą as in ąll				ğ as in ege
á as in ásk	í as in íce	ü as in üse	ÿ as in bÿ	ŋ as in ink
ą as in whąt	ı as in ıt	û as in ûnite	ÿ as in babÿ	qu as in quit
				ş as in biş

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.

Ăb-syr'tús (sēr)	Ăl'ēx ăn'drī ă	Ă pöl'tò
Ă căs'tús	Alise-Sainte-Reine	Ă pū'ly ă
Ăc'cò	(ă'lēs/sănt'rēn')	Ăq'u'ly lē'ia
Ă ehă'ia	Ăl'òb'rò gēs	(g)
(y)	Ăm bār'ri	Ăq'u'ly tă'nī ă
Ă ehll'ias	Ăm'bī ă'nī	Ă'rār
Ă cū'tī-ūs	Ăm'bī lī ă'tī	Ă'rē còm'ly çī
(sh)	Ăm bī'ò rix	Ă'r'gò năp'tə
Ă'dī ă tūn'nūs	Ăm'bī văr'ly tī	Ă'r'gūs
Ăd't ăt't cà	Ăm'ly ăng	Ă'rī ò vīs'tūs
Ăd't ăt't çī	Ăm phíp'ò līs	Ă'r'pī nē'ius
Ăē-s'tēs	Ăm'pī ūs	(y)
Ăē gŷp'tūs	Ă năr'tēs	Ăr vēr'nī
Ăē mīl'ly ūs	Ă cāl'ly tēs	Ă'sī ă
Ăē'sōn	Ăn'cē brō'gī ūs	(sh)
Ă fră'nī ūs	Ăn'dēs	Ăth'ă măs
Ăf'ri cūs	Ăn'dī	Ăt'rē bā'tēs
Ăg'ē dīn'cūm	Ăn'dī	Ă'trī ūs
Ă lē'sī ă	Ăn tī'ò ehūs	Ăt'ŷī cūs
(sh)	Ăn tō'nī ūs	Ău lēr'çī

Àu/lũs	Că/iũs	Clô'di ũs
Àu rē'lĩ ũs	(y)	Côc'ô sã'têş
Àu rũn'cũ lē'iũs	Că'l'ă Is	Côl'ehĩ
Àu'scĩ (y)	Că'l'ê ti	Côl'ehĩs
Ă văr'ĩ cũm	Căm'ũ lōg'ê nũs	Côm'mĩ ũs
Ăx'ô ná	Căn'nae	Côn cõn'nê tồ dũm'nũs
	Căn'tă bri	Côn drũ'sĩ
Băç'ê nĩs	Căn'tĩ ũm	Côn sĩd'ĩ ũs
Băc'ũ lũs	(sh)	Côn vic'tồ lĩt'ă vĩs
Bae'bi ũs	Căp'ũ ă	Cõr'ĩnth
Băl vẽn'tĩ ũs	Căr'nũ têş	Cõr'ĩ ô sõi'ĩ têş
(sh)	Căr vĩl'ĩ ũs	Cõr nē'lĩ ũs
Băs'ĩ lũs	Căs'sĩ	Cõ'rũs
Băt'ă vĩ	Căs'sĩ ũs	Cõt'tă
Běl'găe	(sh)	Cõt'ũ ă'tũs
Běl'gĩ ũm	Căs'sĩ vėl lău'nũs	Cõt'tũs
Běl lõv'ă çĩ	Căs'tĩ cũs	Crăs'cũs
Bĩ brăc'te	Căs'tõr	Crăs'tĩ nũs
Bĩ'brăx	Căt'ă măn'tă loe'deş	Crē'õn
Bĩb'rồ çĩ	Căt'ũ rĩ'gêş	Crête
Bĩb'ũ lũs	Căt'ũ vól'cũs	Cũ'prũs
Bĩ gēr'rĩ ô'nêş	Çel'tae	Çũz'ĩ cũs
Bĩ-thỹ'nĩ	Çel tĩl'ũs	
Bĩ-thỹn'ĩ ă	Çen'ă bẽn'seş	Dă'çĩ
Bĩt'ũ rĩ'gêş	Çen'ă bũm	Dă nũ'vĩ ũs
Bĩ'thồ	Çen'ĩ măg'ĩnĩ	Děl'phĩ
Bõd'ũ õg nă'tũs	Çen tẽ'nĩ ũs	Dĩ'ă blĩn'teş
Bõ'ia	Çê thõ'gũs	Dĩ ă'nă
(y)	Çeũ'trồ nêş	Dĩ'õs cõr'ĩ dẽş
Bõ'ii	Çê vẽn'nă	Dĩv'ĩ cĩ ă'cũs
(y)	Cévennes (să vẽn')	(sh)
Brăt'ũ spăn'tĩ ũm	Çhê rũs'cĩ	Dĩv'ĩ cồ
(sh)	Çĩç'ê rô	Dồ mĩt'ĩ ũs
Bri tăn'nĩ	Çĩ lĩc'ĩ ă	(sh)
Bri tăn'nĩ ă	(sh)	Dõn'nồ tău'rũs
Brũn đĩs'ĩ ũm	Çĩm bẽ'rĩ ũs	Dũ'bĩs
(sh)	Çĩm'brĩ	Dũm'nồ rĩx
Brũ'tũs	Çĩn gết'ồ rĩx	Dũ'rũs
	Çĩs ăl'pĩne	Dũr ră'ehĩ ũm
Căb'ũ rũs	Çĩ'tă	
Că dũr'çĩ	Clăs tĩd'ĩ ũm	
Çăe mă'nĩ	Clău'dĩ ũs	Ëb'ũ rô'nêş
Çăe rô'sĩ	Clê'ồ pă'tră	Ëb'ũ rô vĩ'çêş
Çăe'şar		

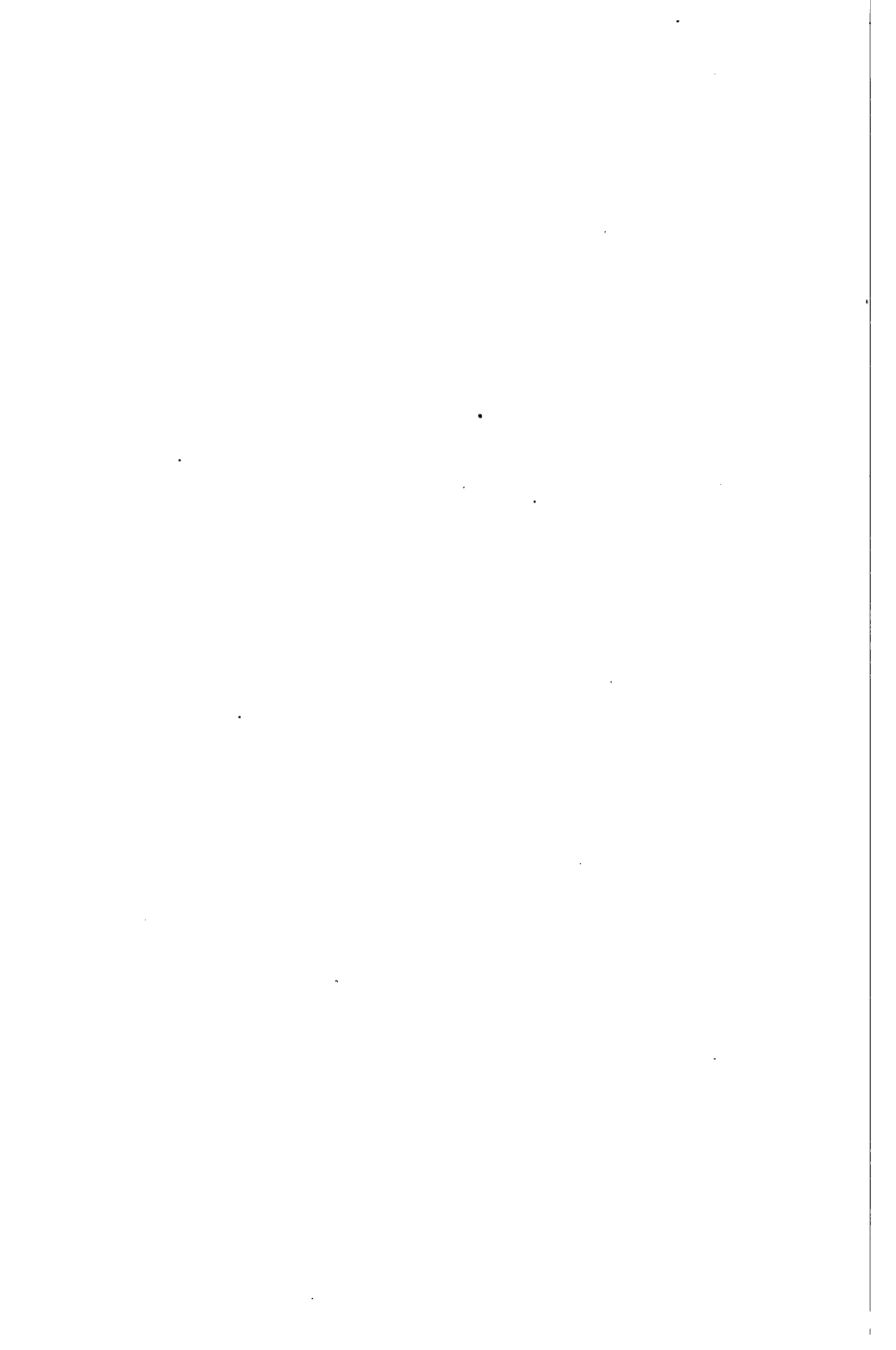
Ē'lis	Grā iōç'ē li	Lēm'ō vi'çēç
Ēl'ū sā'tēç	(y)	Lēn'tū lūs
Ēph'ē sūs		Lē ōn'ī dās
Ēp'ō rēd'ō rix	Hād'ru mē'tūm	Lē pōn'tī i
Ē rīd'ā nūs	Hæd'ū i	(sh)
Ē sū'vī i	Hān'nī bāl	Leū'çī
Ē trų'rī ā	Hā rų'dēç	Lēx ō'vī i
Ēū'mē nēç	Hās'drų bāl	Li'gēr
	Hēl'lē	Līg'ū rēç
	Hēl vē'tī i	Līp'gō nēç
	(sh)	Līs'cūs
Fā'bī'ūs	Hēl'vī i	Līt'ā vīc'cūs
Flāc'cūs	Hēr'cū lēç	Loire (lwār)
Flām'ī nī'nūs	Hī bēr'nī ā	Lū cā'nī
Flā mīn'ī ūs	Hir'rūs	Lū cā'nī ūs
Frē gēl'laē	Hir'tī ūs	Lū cī'lī ūs
Froyde	(ē) (sh)	Lū'cī ūs
Fū'fī ūs	Hīs pā'nī ā	(sh)
Fū'rī ūs	Hȳ'lās	Lūc tē'rī ūs
		Lū gōt'ō rix
Gāb'ā li	ȳc'cī ūs	Lū tē'tī ā
Gā bīn'ī ūs	(sh)	(sh)
Gā'iūs	ȳ lȳ'r'ī cūm	
(y)	ȳn dū'tī ō mā'rūs	Māç'ē dō'nī ā
Gāl'ba	(sh)	Māç'ē tōb'rī gā
Gāl'ā	ȳ tā'lī ā	Mā'gō
Gāl'ā ā	ȳt'ī ūs	Mān dū'bī i
Gāl'ūis	(sh)	Mān'dū brā'cī ūs
Gā rūm'nā	Iū'nī ūs	(sh)
Gā rūm'nī	(j)	Mān'lī ūs
Gā'tēç	Iųp'pī tēr	Mār çēl'lūs
Gaul	(j)	Mār'cō mǎn'nī
Gē't dūm'nī	Ių'rā	Mār'cūs
Gēm'ī nūs	(j)	Mā'rī ūs
Gē nā'vā	Jā'sōn	Mārç
Gēr gō'vī ā		Māt'rō nā
Gēr mā'nī ā	Lāb'ē ō	Māx'ī mūs
Gļau'çē	Lā bē'rī ūs	Mē dē'ā
Gnāē'ūs	Lā'bī ē'nūs	Mē'dī ō māt'rī çī
Gōbān nī'tī ō	Lā rī'sā	Mēl'dī
(sh)	Lā'tī ūm	Mē nā'pī i
Gōr gōb'ī nā	(sh)	Mēr cū'rī ūs
Gōr tȳn'ī i	Lā tōb'rī gī	Mēs sā'lā
Grāc'chūs	Lē mǎn'nūs	

Mê'ti ô sê'dâm (sh)	Phă'rũs	Scrí bô'nĩ ùs
Mê'ti ùs (sh)	Phă'sis	Sê dũ'ni
Mĩ nêr'vâ	Phĩ'neũs	Sê dũ'sĩ i (sh)
Mĩ nũ'ci ùs (sh)	Phrĩx'ũs	Sêg'ni
Mô'ná	Pĩc'tô nêg	Sêg'ô năx
Mô'r'i ni	Pĩ'sô	Sê gôn'tĩ á'qĩ (sh)
Mô'sá	Pô lýb'i ùs	Sê gũ'sĩ á'vi (sh)
Mỹs'i á (sh)	Pôl'ỹ phê'mũs	Sêm prô'nĩ ùs
Mỹt'i lê'nê	Pôm pê'iũs (y)	Sên'ô nêg
Năm mê'iũs (y)	Pôm'peỹ	Sêp tĩm'i ùs
Năm'nê têg	Prăc'cô nĩ'nũs	Sêq'uá nă
Năn'tũ á'têg	Prô çĩ'l'ũs	Sêq'uá nĩ
Năr'bô	Prũ'sĩ ás (sh)	Sê ră'pĩ ôn
Năs'ũ á (sh)	Ptĩ á'nĩ i	Sêr tô'rĩ ùs
Nêm'ê têg	Ptôl'ê mă'sũs	Sêr vĩl'i ùs
Nêr'vĩ i	Ptôl'ê mă'is	Sêr'vĩ ùs
Nĩt'ĩ ôb'rô gêg (sh)	Pũb'li ùs	Sêx'tĩ ùs
Nô rê'ia (y)	Pũl'ehêr	Sĩb'ũ să'têg
Nô'vĩ ô dũ'nũm	Pũl'ô	Sĩ lê'nũs
Ôç'ê lũm	Quĩn'tũs	Sĩl'i ùs
Ôç'tô dũ'rũs	Rău'ră çĩ	Sôs'i lũs
Ôr gêt'ô rĩx	Rêd'ô nêg	Sô'ĩ á'têg (sh)
Ôr'i cũm	Rê'mĩ	Spĩn'thêr
Ôr'pheũs	Rê'mũs	Suê'bi (w)
Ô sĩs'mĩ	Rhê'nũs	Suê'sĩ ô'nêg (w)
Pă rĩs'ĩ i (sh)	Rhôd'á nũs	Sũ găm'brĩ
Păr'thĩ	Rhôdeg	Sũl'ia
Pău'ũs	Rhô'dôs	Sũl pĩc'i ùs (sh)
Pê'dĩ ùs	Rũ'fũs	Sỹm'plêg'á dêg
Pê'li ás	Rũ tê'ni	Sỹr'i á
Pê lũ'sĩ ùm (sh)	Să bĩ'nũs	Tăm'ê sĩs
Pêr'gă mũm	Să'bĩs	Tăm'phĩ lũs
Pêç'rô sĩd'i ùs	Să gũn'tũm	Tăr băl'ĩ
	Săl'mỹ dês'sũs	Tă rên'tũm
	Săm'á rô brĩ'vă	Tă r'ũ să'têg
	Săn'tô nêg	Tăs gê'tĩ ùs (sh)
	Săn'tô nĩ	
	Scĩp'ĩ ô	

Tăx'í mǎg'ú lūs
 Tēc tōs'á gēg
 Tēn'c' tē rí
 Tēr'á sǐd'í ūs
 Teū'tō nēg
 Thames (tēmz)
 Thēr mǒp'ý laē
 Thē'scūs
 Thēs sǎ'ly á
 Thēs'sǎ lý
 Thrǎx
 Tí bē'rí ǎs
 Tīg'ú rí'ní
 Tí tū'rí ūs
 Tí'tūs
 Tō lō'sǎ
 Tōl'tō sǎ'tēg
 Trǎl'lēg
 Trǎns'r'hē nǎ'ní
 Trǎs'í mē'nūs
 Trē'bí á
 Trē'bí ūs
 Trē bō'ní ūs
 Trēv'ē rí

Trí á'rí ūs
 Trīb'tō cēg
 Trín'tō vǎn'tēg
 Tū lín'gí
 Tūl'í ūs
 Tūl'í ūs
 Tū'rō ní
 Ū'bí í
 Ū sǐp'ē tēg
 Ūx ǎl'tō dū'nūm
 Vǎc'á lūs
 Vá lē'rí ūs
 Vǎn g'í'tō nēg
 Vá tǐn'í ūs
 Vē lǎ'ní ūs
 Vē'ly tō cǎs'sēg
 Vēl lǎu'nō dū'nūm
 Vē nēl'í
 Vēn'ē tí
 Vē nē'tí á
 (sh)
 Vē nū'sí á
 (sh)

Vēr'á grí
 Vēr blǎ'ē nūs
 Vēr'cín gēt'tō ríx
 Vēr'tí cō
 Vēr'tō cloē'tí ūs
 (sh)
 Vē sōn'tí ō
 (sh)
 Vī ēn'nǎ
 Vingeanne (vǎn zhǎn')
 Vír'í dō mǎ'rūs
 VÍ ríd'tō vix
 Vír'tō mǎn'dū í
 Vō cǎ'tēg
 Vōc'cí ō
 (sh)
 Vō cōn'tí í
 (sh)
 Vōl'çæē
 Vōl cǎ'nūs
 Vōl'sō
 Vōl'tō sē'nūs
 Vō rē'nūs
 Vōs'ē gūs
 Zē'tēg



VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abbr.</i> = abbreviation	<i>lit.</i> = literal or literally
<i>abs.</i> = absolute or absolutely	<i>loc.</i> = locative
<i>act.</i> = active	<i>m. or masc.</i> = masculine
<i>adj.</i> = adjective	<i>n.</i> = neuter or noun
<i>adv.</i> = adverb or adverbial	<i>neut.</i> = neuter
<i>c.</i> = common, <i>i. e.</i> either <i>masc.</i> or <i>fem.</i>	<i>neg.</i> = negative or negatively
<i>cf.</i> = confer, <i>i. e.</i> compare	<i>num.</i> = numeral
<i>comp.</i> = comparative	<i>opp.</i> = opposed
<i>conj.</i> = conjunction	<i>orig.</i> = originally
<i>decl.</i> = declined	<i>p.</i> = participle
<i>dem.</i> = demonstrative	<i>pass.</i> = passive
<i>dep.</i> = deponent	<i>perf.</i> = perfect
<i>distrib.</i> = distributive	<i>plur.</i> = plural
<i>emph.</i> = emphatic	<i>p. p.</i> = perfect participle
<i>esp.</i> = especially	<i>prep.</i> = preposition
<i>f. or fem.</i> = feminine	<i>pres.</i> = present
<i>fig.</i> = figurative or figuratively	<i>pron.</i> = pronoun
<i>freq.</i> = frequentative	<i>reflex.</i> = reflexive or reflexively
<i>impers.</i> = impersonal	<i>rel.</i> = relative
<i>indecl.</i> = indeclinable	<i>sc.</i> = scilicet, namely
<i>indef.</i> = indefinite	<i>sing.</i> = singular
<i>intens.</i> = intensive	<i>subjv.</i> = subjunctive
<i>interrog.</i> = interrogative	<i>superl.</i> = superlative
<i>intrans.</i> = intransitive	<i>trans.</i> = transitive
<i>irr.</i> = irregular	<i>v.</i> = verb

†, a dagger denotes an assumed form.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to the regular conjugations of verbs.

Heavy-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For numerals see Grammar, § 19. References preceded by G. are to the Grammar; those with Roman numerals are to the Composition Lesson in which the word occurs

abide — assign

abide by, *stō*, I (*with the abl.*)
able (be), *possum*, *irr.*
about, *adv.*, *circiter*
about, *prep.*, *dē*, *with the abl.*
accomplish, *perficiō*, 3 (IV); *cōn-*
ficiō, 3 (V)
accord (of their own), *suā sponte*
accustomed (be), *cōnsuēscō*, 3, *in*
perf. tenses
added (it is), *accēdit*, 3 (X); *additur*, 3
adopt, *īnsistō*, 3 (XXIII)
advance, *prōcēdō*, 3 (XXIX); *prō-*
gredior, 3 (XXV, XXXV)
advantageously, *commodē*
advise, *moneō*, 2
afflict, *premō*, 3
after, *adv.*, *post*
after, *conj.*, *postquam*
after, *prep.*, *post*, *with the acc.*
afterwards, *adv.*, *postea*
against, *ad* (XX), *contrā*, *with the acc.*
aid, *v.*, *iuvō*, I; *auxilior*, I (XXVI)
aid, *n.*, *auxilium*, *auxilī*, *n.*; *sub-*
sidium, *subsidi*, *n.* (XXXV)
alarm, *perturbō*, I (XXVII); *perter-*
reō, 2 (XXXIV)
all, *omnis*, *omne*
almost, *ferē*

alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um
although, *cum*, *quamquam*
always, *omni tempore*
am, *sum*, *irr.*
ambassador, *līgātus*, -ī, *m.*
among, *inter*, *with the acc.*; *in*
 (XVIII)
and, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, -*que*; **and not**, *neque*
announce, *nūntiō*, I
anybody, *quis*
anything, *quid*
applause, *plausus*, -ūs, *m.*
appoint, *cōstituō*, 3; *dicō*, 3
 (XXXIII)
approach, *v.*, *adpropinquō ad*, I (VI);
accēdō (XVIII); *succēdō*, 3 (XX)
Aquitanians, *Aquitānī*, -ōrum, *m.*
plur.
Argonauts, *Argonautae*, -ārum, *m.*
arise, *coōrior*, 4
armor, *armātūra*, -ae, *f.*
arms, *arma*, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
army, *exercitus*, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, *pervenīō*, 4
ask (for), *petō*, 3 (X); *rogō*, I (XIII);
quaerō, 3 (XIV); *repetō*, 3 (XXIX)
assemble, *conveniō*, 4
assign, *attribuō*, 3

at — citizen

- at**, ad, *with the acc.*
attach, adiungō, 3
attack, *v.*, adgredior, 3; *adorior*, 4
attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, cōnor, 1
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
avoid, vitō, 1
await, exspectō, 1
away (be), absum, *irr.*

back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, proelium, proeli, *n.*; pugna, -ae, *f.*; in line of battle, in aciē; plan of battle, ratiō pugnae
beast of burden, iūmentum, -ī, *n.*
because, quod, propterea quod; *because of*, propter, *with the acc.*
before, *adv.*, ante
before, *conj.*, priusquam
before, *prep.*, prō, *with the abl.*
beg, obsecrō, 1; **beg for**, petō, 3
began, coepī, *defective*
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m. plur.*
best, optimus, -a, -um
betake one's self, sē cōferō, *irr.*
betray, prōdō, 3
bird, volucer, -cris, *f.*
boat, linter, -tris, *f.*; **little boat**, nāvicula, -ae, *f.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
born (be), nāscor, 3; **orior**, 4
both . . . and, et . . . et
boundary, finis, -is, *m.*
boy, puer, -ī, *m.*
brave, fortis, forte

break through, perrumpō, 3 (xiv); perfringō, 3 (xvi)
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, addūcō, 3 (xx); **ferō**, *irr.* (xxi); **bring about**, efficiō, 3
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
build, mūniō, 4 (viii); aedificō, 1
bull, taurus, -ī, *m.*
burn, incendō, 3 (xiii)
business, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*
but, at, sed
by, (*agent*) ā, ab

call, vocō, 1; **call back**, revocō, 1
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, *irr.*
captive, captivus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, 3
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carry, **ferō**, *irr.*; **dēferō**, *irr.* (xxix); **perferō**, *irr.* (xxxiii); **carry on**, gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
Carthage, Karthāgō, -inis, *f.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, *n.*, equitēs, -um, *m. plur.*; equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
cease, dēsistō, 3
certain, **certain one**, *pron.*, quidam, quaedam, quoddam
change, commūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.*
charge of (take), praesum, *irr.*
chief, princeps, -cipis, *m.*
children, liberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, 3
circuit, circuitus, -ūs, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *c.*

city — dragon

- city**, *urbs*, -is, *f.*
clear (*excuse*), *pūrgō*, 1; **it is clear**, *cōnstat*, 1
Colchians, *Colchī*, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
cold, *frīgus*, -oris, *n.*
collect, *cōgō*, 3; *cōnferō*, *irr.* (xxx); *comparō*, 1 (VIII)
come, *veniō*, 4
coming, *adventus*, -ūs, *m.*
command, *imperātum*, -ī, *n.*; **be in command**, *praesum*, *irr.*; **put in command**, *v.*, *praeficiō*, 3
commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, *m.*
companion, *socius*, -ī, *m.*
compel, *cōgō*, 3
conceal, *abdō*, 3
conduct, *dūcō*, 3
conquer, *superō*, 1
consist, *cōnsistō*, 3
conspiracy, *coniūratiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
conspire, *coniūrō*, 1
consul, *cōnsul*, -ulis, *m.*
consult, *cōnsulō*, 3
controversy, *contrōversia*, -ae, *f.*
country, **native land**, *patria*, -ae, *f.*
courage, *animus*, -ī, *m.* (xvi); *virtūs*, -ūtis, *f.*
course, *cursus*, -ūs, *m.*
cross (over), *trānseō*, *irr.*
custom, *īnstitutum*, -ī, *n.*
cut off, *prohibeō*, 2 (xxvi, xxxiv); *interclūdō*, 3 (xxxiii)
daily, *adj.*, *cotīdiānus*, -a, -um; *adv.*, *cotīdiē*
danger, *perīculum*, -ī, *n.*
dare, *audeō*, 2
dark, *obscurus*, -a, -um
daughter, *filia*, -ae, *f.*
day, *diēs*, -ēī, *m.*
debt, *aes aliēnum*, *aeris aliēnī*, *n.*
decide, *cōstituō*, 3
declare, *praedicō*, 1
decree, *dēcrētum*, -ī, *n.*
defend, *dēfendō*, 3
defense, *praesidium*, -ī, *n.*
delay, *moror*, 1
demand, *postulō*, 1 (iv); *imperō*, 1
depart, *discēdō*, 3
desert, *perfugiō*, 3
deserve well, *bene mereor*, 2
desire, *cupiō*, 3
desirous, *cupidus*, -a, -um
despair of, *dēspērō* *dē*, 1
destroy, *interscindō*, 3 (xxi)
detain, *retineō*, 2
determine, *statuō*, 3
devote, *tribuō*, 3
die, *moriōr*, 3
differ, *differō*, 3
difficult, *difficilis*, *difficile*
difficulty, *difficultās*, -ātis, *f.*
dignity, *dignitās*, -ātis, *f.*
direction, *pars*, *partis*, *f.* (xxvii)
disease, *morbus*, -ī, *m.*
dismiss, *dimittō*, 3
distance, *spatium*, -ī, *n.*
distant (be), *absum*, *irr.*
distribute, *mētiōr*, 4
ditch, *fossa*, -ae, *f.*
do, *faciō*, 3
double, *v.*, *duplicō*, 1
doubt, *dubitō*, 1; **there is no doubt**, *nōn est dubium*
dove, *columba*, -ae, *f.*
dragon, *dracō*, -ōnis, *m.*

draw — forsake

draw up, *instruō*, 3
 drive back, *deiciō*, 3 (III); *repellō*
 (xiv); *drive out*, *expellō*, 3; *drive*
to, *adducō*, 3
 Druids, *Druidēs*, -um, *m. plur.*
 dwell, *versor*, 1

each, *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque* (xx)
 eagle, *aquila*, -ae, *f.*
 easily, *facile*
 easy, *facilis*, *facile*
 either . . . or, *vel . . . vel*
 eleven, *undecim*
 elsewhere (*to another place*), *aliō*
 embark, *nāvem* (*nāvēs*) *cōnscendō*, 3
 encircle, *cingo*, 3
 encourage, *cohortor*, 1
 endure, *perferō*, *irr.* (xxii); *ferō*, *irr.*
 enemy, *hostis*, -is, *c.*
 engage in, *committō*, 3; *engage in*
battle, *proelium committō*, 3;
proeliō dīmicō, 1 (xxxiv)
 enlist, *cōnscrībō*, 3
 enter, *ingredior*, 3 (*with intrā*, xix);
enter into, *ineō*, *irr.*
 envoy, *lēgātus*, -ī, *m.*
 envy, *invidia*, -ae, *f.*
 equal (make), *aequō*, 1
 escape, *ēvādō*, 3
 establish, *cōstituō*, 3; *īstituō*, 3
 even if, *etsī*
 excel, *praestō*, 1; *superō*, 1 (xxiii)
 exhaust, *exhauriō*, 4
 exposed, *apertus*, -a, -um
 eye, *oculus*, -ī, *m.*

faction, *factiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
 faithful, *fidēlis*, -e

famous, *praeclārus*, -a, -um
 far, *longē*
 farther, *adj.*, *ulterior*, *ulterius*
 fashion, *modus*, -ī, *m.*
 father, *pater*, *patris*, *m.*
 favorable, *opportūnus*, -a, -um
 fear, *n.*, *timor*, -ōris, *m.*
 few, *paucī*, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
 field, *ager*, *agrī*, *m.*
 fiercely, *ācritēr*
 fifteenth, *quīntus decimus*, *quīnti*
decimī
 fifth, *quīntus*, -a, -um
 fight, *v.*, *pugnō*, 1 (ix; xx); *proeliō*
contendō, 3 (xii, xviii)
 fill, *compleō*, 2
 find, *īnveniō*, 4; *nancīscor*, 3 (xviii)
 first (at), *primō*
 flank, *latus*, -eris, *n.*; *on the flank*,
ab latere
 flee, *fugiō*, 3
 fleece, *vellus*, -eris, *n.*
 fleet, *classis*, -is, *f.*
 flight, *fuga*, -ae, *f.*; *be in flight*,
fugiō, 3; *put to flight*, *in fugam*
dō, *irr.*
 flow (into), *īnfluō*, 3
 follow, *sequor*, 3; *subsequor*, 3 (xxv)
 fond, *cupidus*, -a, -um
 for, *conj.*, *enim*, *nam*
 for, *prep.*, *ad*, *in*, *with the acc.*; *prō*,
with the abl.
 forces, *cōpiae*, -ārum, *f. plur.*
 forest, *silva*, -ae, *f.*
 forever, *in perpetuum*
 form, *draw up*, *instruō*, 3
 forsake, *dēserō*, 3
 fort, *castellum*, -ī, *n.*

fort — his

fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um
free, liberō, *i*
freedom, libertās, -ātis, *f.*
friend, amicus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*
from, ā, ab, dē, (*out of*) ē, ex, *with the abl.*; *after verbs of hindering etc.*, quō minus, *or, if the verb is negated*, quā
front of (in), prō, *with the abl.*
furnish, ōrnō, *i*

gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, gather together, conveniō, 4; **gather about**, circumsistō, 3
Gaul (the country), Gallia, -ae, *f.*; **a Gaul**, Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, commūnis, -e
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
get together, comparō, *i*
give, dō, *irr.*; **give back**, reddō, 3
go, eō, *irr.*; **go (out)**, ēgredior, 3 (IX, XXXIII); **exeō**, *irr.*
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
golden, aureus, -a, -um
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*; **grain supply**, rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um; **greater**, maior, maius; **greatest**, maximus, -a, -um; **summus**, -a, -um (V); **how great**, quantus, -a, -um; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um
greatly, magnopere
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*

Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
grieve, be grieved, dolōre adficior, 3
ground (cause), causa, -ae, *f.*
guard, v., custodiō, 4; **tueor**, 2 (XXXV)
guard, n., praesidium, praesidi, *n.*; **on guard**, in statione
guilty, nocēns, -entis

Hæduans, Haeduī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
half, dīmidium, dīmidī, *n.*
halt, cōsistō, 3
hand over, trādō, 3
hand (be at), adsum, *irr.*
happen, accidō, 3
harass, laccessō, 3
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hard pressed (be), labōrō, *i*
harm, noceō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
Harpies, Harpīae, -arum, *f.*
hasten, contendō, 3; **mātūrō**, *i* (XX)
have, habeō, 2
he, is, eius
hear, accipiō, 3 (XXXII)
heat, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
hem in, contineō, 2
her, (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um; (*not reflexive*) eius
high, altus, -a, -um; **very high**, altissimus, -a, -um (I); **higher**, superior, superius; **highest**, summus, -a, -um (XXX)
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, (*intensive*) ipse, ipsius; (*reflexive*) sē
hinder, impediō, 4
his, (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um; (*not reflexive*) eius

hold — leap

- hold**, obtineō, 2; teneō, 2 (XXVI)
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
hope, *v.*, spērō, 1; **hope for**, spērō, 1
hope, *n.*, spēs, spei, *f.*
horse, equus, equi, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *c.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how great, how large, quantus, -a, -um
huge, ingēns, -entis; immānis, -e (XXXI)
hunting, vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
hurl, coniciō, 3 (XXV, XXIX); mittō, 3 (XVI)
hurry, contendō, 3

I, ego, mei
if, si; if not, si nōn, nisi
ignorance, imprudentia, -ae, *f.*
image, simulācrum, -i, *n.*
immediately, statim; prōtinus (XXXV)
in, in, with the abl.
inclose, inclūdō, 3
incursion, incursiō, -ōnis, *f.*
indignity, indignitās, -ātis, *f.*
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
infirmary, valētūdō, -inis, *f.*
influence, *v.*, permovereō, 2
influence, *n.*, auctoritās, -ātis, *f.*
inform, nūntiō, 1, *with the dat.*; certiorē faciō, 3, *with the acc.*
inhabit, incolō, 3
innocent, innocēns, -entis
inside, intrā, *with the acc.*
inspire, iniciō, 3
insult, contumēlia, -ae, *f.*
intercept, intercipiō, 3
intercessor, dēprecātor, -ōnis, *m.*

into, in, intrā (XIX), *with the acc.*
intrust, committō, 3; mandō, 1 (XXXI)
island, insula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

Jason, Iāsōn, -onis, *m.*
javelin, pilum, -i, *n.*
joy, gaudium, gaudī, *n.*
judge, iūdicō, 1
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*

keep, teneō, 2; cōservō, 1 (VIII); **keep away**, prohibeō, 2
kill, necō, 1 (VII); interficiō, 3 (XXX)
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -i, *n.*
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
know, intellegō, 3; sciō, 4 (XXVIII)

lack, be lacking, dēsum, *irr.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um; **how large**, quantus, -a, -um
last, suprēmus, -a, -um
later, *adv.*, post
latter, hic, haec, hoc (XXX)
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay waste, vāstō, 1
lead, dūcō, 3; **lead across**, trādūcō, 3; **lead back**, redūcō, 3; **lead out**, ēdūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leadership, principātus, -ūs, *m.*
leap down, dēsiliō, 4

learn — nobody

learn, intellegō, 3 (VII); explōrō (VIII); cognōscō, 3 (*in perf. tenses, know*)

leave, relinquō, 3

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

letter, (*of alphabet*) littera, -ae, *f.*; (*epistle*) litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*; epistula, -ae, *f.*

lie open, pateō, 2

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

life, vīta, -ae, *f.*

light, *adj.*, levis, -e

light, *n.*, lūmen, -inis, *n.*

line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*

little, *adv.*, paulum

living, vivus, -a, -um

long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um; *adv.*, diū

lose, dīmīttō, 3

lower, inferior, inferiorius

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*

make, faciō, 3 (*passive fiō; see G. § 45*)

man, homō, -inis, *c.*; **man-of-war**, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, *f.*

many, multī, -ae, -a

march, *v.*, iter faciō, 3

march, *n.*, iter, itineris, *n.*; **on the march**, in itinere

meanwhile, intereā

memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*

messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*

middle (of), medius, -a, -um

midnight, media nox

mile, mille passūs; **miles**, milia passuum

mistaken (be), errō, 1

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*

month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*

moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*; **Moon**, Lūna, -ae (XXXII)

more, amplius (§ 105)

mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*

move, moveō, 2; **move forward**, prōgredior, 3

much, *adv.*, multum

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*

must, *express by the passive periphrastic* (G. §§ 38. II, 222. II)

name, *v.*, appellō, 1

name, *n.*, nōmen, -inis, *n.*

narrow, angustus, -a, -um

nearest, proximus, -a, -um

necessary (it is), oportet, 2 (XVI); necesse est (XIX)

necessity, necessitās, -ātis, *f.*

neglect, omittō, 3

neighbor, finitimus, -ī, *m.*

neighboring, proximus, -a, -um

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque

never, numquam

nevertheless, tamen

new, novus, -a, -um

next, posterus (II); proximus, -a, -um; **next day**, postridiē eius diēi

night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **by night**, *adv.*, noctū

ninth, nōnus, -a, -um

no (not any), nullus, -a, -um

nobility, nobilitās, -ātis, *f.*

noble, nōbilis, nōbile

nobody, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī; nullus, nullius

not — province

- not**, nōn; **not even**, nē . . . quidem
noted, nōtus, -a, -um
notice, animadvertō, 3
now, iam
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*
nymph, nympha, -ae, *f.*
- oath**, iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, *n.*
observe, perspicīō, 3
obtain, obtineō, 2
of, *genitive case*
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
on, in, *with the acc. or abl.*
once on a time, once, *adv.*, olim
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one . . . the other**,
alter . . . alter
opportunity, facultās, -ātis, *f.* (XXVI);
occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* (VII)
oppose, resistō, 3
oppress, premō, 3
or, aut, (*in questions*) an
oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*
order, *v.*, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2
other, alius, alia, aliud; **the other**
(*the rest*), reliquus, -a, -um; **other**
(*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; **the**
one . . . the other, alter . . . alter
our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum
out of, ex(ē), *with the abl.*
outside, *prep.*, extrā, *with the acc.*
overcome, opprimō, 3
- pack**, sarcina, -ae, *f.*
palace, rēgia, -ae, *f.*
pardon, ignōscō, 3 (*with the dat.*)
parent, parēns, -entis, *c.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
path, sēmita, -ae, *f.*
- peace**, pāx, pācis, *f.*
perish, pereō, *irr.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
permit, patior, 3; **it is permitted**,
licet, 2
persuade, persuādeō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
phalanx, phalanx, -angis, *f.*
picket, statīō, -ōnis, *f.*
pierce, trāciō, 3
pitch camp, castra pōnō, 3
place, *v.*, pōnō, 3
place, *n.*, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, loca,
-ōrum, *n.*
plan, cōnsilium, cōnsili, *n.*; **plan of**
battle, ratiō pugnae
plunder, praedor, 1 (XXII); diripiō, 3
(XXXIV)
point out, dēmōnstrō, 1
poison, venēnum, -ī, *n.*
port, portus, -ūs, *m.*
possession (gain), **get (take)** **possession of**, potior, 4 (*with the abl.*
or gen.)
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; imperium,
imperī, *n.* (XXVII); potentia, -ae, *f.*
(XXXIII); **royal power**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
powerful, potēns, -entis
praise, conlaudō, 1
preceding, superior, superius
prepare, comparō, 1 (XXXIV); parō,
1 (XXXV)
preside over, praesum, *irr.*
promise, prōmittō, 3; polliceor, 2 (XXIV)
propose, prōpōnō, 3
protect, prohibeō, 2 (XXX); mūniō,
4 (XXXIV)
prove, probō, 1
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

publicly — *seda*

publicly, *pūblicē*
purchase, *coēmō*, 3
pursue, *insequor*, 3 (VI, XVI, XVIII);
prōsequor, 3
pursuit, *studium*, *studī*, *n.*
put back, *repōnō*, 3; **put in charge**
of, *praefficiō*, 3; **put to death**,
interficiō; **put to flight**, in *fugam*
dō, *irr.*

quickly, *celeriter*

rampart, *vāllum*, *-ī*, *n.*
reach, *pervenio ad*, 4
ready, *parātus*, *-a*, *-um*
rear, *novissimum agmen*, *-inis*, *n.*
reason, *causa*, *-ae*, *f.*
receive, *accipio*, 3; *excipio*, 3 (VI);
recipio, 3
redoubt, *castellum*, *-ī*, *n.*
reënförment, *subsidiū*, *subsidi*, *n.*;
reënförments, *subsidia*, *-orum*, *n.*
plur. (XXXV); *auxilia*, *-ōrum*, *n. plur.*
(XXX, XXXV)
regard (hold), *habeo*, 2
region, *regio*, *-ōnis*, *f.*
rejoice, *gaudeō*, *semi-dep.*, 2
relatives, *propinquī*, *-ōrum*, *m. plur.*
relax, *remittō*, 3
remain, *maneō*, 2; *remaneō*, 2
remove, *removeō*, 2
repel, *prohibeo*, 2
reply, *respondeō*, 2
report, *v.*, *renūntiō*, 1; *nūntiō*, 1
(XXXV)
report, *n.*, *fāma*, *-ae*, *f.*
resources, *facultātēs*, *-um*, *f.* (IX);
opēs, *f. plur.* (XXXII) *

rest, *rest of*, *reliquī*, *-ōrum*, *m. plur.*
retreat, *mē recipio*, 3
return, *v.*, *intrans.*, *redeō*, *irr.* (II):
revertor, 3 (VI, XXI, XXIV, XXXVI);
trans., *reddō*, 3
return, *n.*, *reditus*, *-ūs*, *m.*
reward, *praemium*, *praemī*, *n.*
Rhine, *Rhēnus*, *-ī*, *m.*
Rhone, *Rhodanus*, *-ī*, *m.*
rich, (*abundant*) *cōpiōsus*, *-a*, *-um*;
(*wealthy*) *dives*, *-itis*; **richer**,
ditior, *ditius*; **richest**, *dītissimus*,
-a, *-um*
right (on the right hand), *adj.*, *dex-*
ter, *-tra*, *-trum*
right, *n.*, *iūs*, *iūris*, *n.*; *fās*, *n.* (XXXI)
river, *flūmen*, *-inis*, *n.*
road, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*
rock, *rūpēs*, *-is*, *f.*
Roman, *adj.*, *Rōmānus*, *-a*, *-um*
Rome, *Rōma*, *-ae*, *f.*
route, *via*, *-ae*, *f.*; *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*
run forward, *prōcurrō*, 3

sacrifice, *v.*, *immolō*, 1
sacrifice, *n.*, *sacrificium*, *sacrifici*, *n.*
safe, *tūtus*, *-a*, *-um*
safety, *salūs*, *-ūtis*, *f.*
sail, *set sail*, *solvō*, 3, *with or with-*
out navem
sake (for the), *causā*
sally, *ēruptiō*, *-ōnis*, *f.* (XXXV)
same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*
say, *dicō*, 3
scout, *speculātor*, *-ōris*, *m.*
second, *secundus*, *-a*, *-um*; (*of two*),
alter, *-era*, *-erum* (XXXV)
sedan, *lectica*, *-ae*, *f.*

see — sustain

- see**, videō, 2; **conspiciō**, 3 (VI, XXV)
seek, petō, 3
seize, comprehendō, 3 (XI); **occupō**,
 1 (XII)
send, mittō, 3; **submit**, 3 (XXV);
send ahead, praemittō, 3; **send**
away, dimittō, 3; **send back**,
 remittō, 3; **send forth**, ēmittō, 3;
send out, dimittō, 3
separate, dividō, 3
Sequanian, Sēquanus, -ī, *m.*
service, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
set about (begin), instituō, 3; **set**
forth, *trans.*, prōpōnō, 3; **set on**
fire, succendō, 3 (XXXI); **set out**,
 proficīscor, 3; **set sail**, solvō, 3,
with or without nāvem
settle, compōnō, 3
seven, septem
seventeenth, septimus decimus, sep-
 tima decima, septimum decimum
several, complūrēs, -ium
severe, gravis, grave
share, communicō, 1
sharply, ācriter
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
show (for a), ad speciem
shut off, intercludō, 3
side, latus, -eris, *n.*; pars, partis, *f.*;
 on all sides, from all sides, un-
 dique
siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
since, cum
six, sex
size, magnitudō, -inis, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slay, concidō, 3; occidō, 3 (XVIII)
- sleep**, somnus, -ī, *m.*
small number, paucitās, -ātis, *f.*
snatch, ēripīō, 3
so, sic, ita (*generally with verbs*),
 tam (*with adjectives*); **and so**,
 itaque; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um;
so that, ut
soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*
some, aliquī, -quae, -qua; nōn nullī,
 -ae, -a; **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī
something, aliquid, alicuius
son, filius, fili, *m.*
soon, mox
sovereignty, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
stable, stabulum, -ī, *n.*
stand, make a stand, cōnsistō, 3
standard, signum, -ī, *n.*
state, civitās, -ātis, *f.*
station, cōstituō, 3; **pōnō**, 3 (xx);
 conlocō, 1 (xxxv)
storm, *v.*, oppugnō, 1
storm, *n.*, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
subdue, superō, 1
subject, make subject, subiciō, 3
suddenly, subitō
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
summon, arcessō, 3
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.* (xxxii)
superior, superior, superius
supply, grain supply, rēs frūmen-
 taria, rei frumentariae, *f.*
surpass, praecēdō, 3 (*with the acc.*)
surrender, dēdō, 3 (xi, xxiii); **trādō**,
 3 (xvii) [4
surround, circumdō, *irr.*; circumveniō,
sustain, sustineō, 2

swamp — village

swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*swear, iūrō, *i*take (*employ*), sūmō, 3 (XII); take back, recipiō, 3; take by storm, expugnō, 1; take up, capiō, 3 (XXXIII)task, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*; labor, -ōris, *m.*temple, templum, -ī, *n.*tempt, temptō, *i*

ten, decem

tenth, decimus, -a, -um

terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

terrify, perterreō, 2

territory, territoria, finēs, -ium, *m.*
*plur.*terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*

than, quam

thank, grātiās agō, 3

that, *conj.*, ut, (*with comparatives*) quō; that not, (*purpose*) nē, (*result*) ut nōn; quīn (§§ 185, 186; IX, XI)that, *pron.*, ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id
their, (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um; (*not reflexive*) eōrum, ipsōrumthemselves, (*intensive*) ipsī, ipsae, ipsa; (*reflexive*) suī, sibithere, ibi, (*thither*) eōThessaly, Thessalia, -ae, *f.*thing, rēs, rei, *f.*

think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1 (XIII); existimō, 1 (XXII, XXXI)

third, tertius, -a, -um

this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id

thither, eō

thousand, mille; *plur.*, miliathrough, per, *with the acc.*throw, coniciō, 3; throw about, circumciciō, 3 (*with the dat.*)

thus, sic, ita

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*to, ad, in, *with the acc.*

touch, attingō, 3

tower, turris, -is, *f.*town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*treasury, aerārium, aerārī, *n.*tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*tribute, tribūtum, -ī, *n.*trust (*intrust*), committō, 3; cōfidō, 3 (*with the abl.*, XXXI)try, cōnor, 1, *with infinitive, or pronoun representing infinitive*; experior, 4, *with noun, or pronoun representing noun*

turn, vertō, 3

two, duo, -ae, -o

under, sub, *with the acc. (motion toward) or abl. (place where)*undergo, subeō, *irr.*

understand, intellegō, 3

undertake, suscipiō, 3

unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um

unless, nisi

until, dum; priusquam (XVIII)

unwilling (be), nōlō, *irr.*

upper, superior, superius

urge, hortor, 1

use, ūtor, 3

vainly, in vain, frūstrā

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*village, vicus, -ī, *m.*

violence — yourselves

violence, *vīs, vīs, f.*visibly, *apertē*Vulcan, *Volcānus, -ī, m.*wage war, *bellum gerō, 3*wait, *exspectō, I (VI, XIII, XXI); moror,**I (XXI, XXIV, XXXIV); wait for,*
*exspectō, I*walls, *moenia, -ium, n. plur.*war, *bellum, -ī, n.; carry on war,**bellum gerō, 3; make war, bellō,**I; make war on, bellum inferō,*
*irr. (with the dat.)*ward off, *prohibeō, 2; (avoid) vitō, I*
*(XXXII)*warfare, *rēs militāris, rei militāris, f.*watch, *vigilia, -ae, f.*water, *aqua, -ae, f.*way, *iter, itineris, n.*weaken, *dēbilitō, I*weapon, *tēlum, -ī, n.*what, *interrog., quid*when, *cum, ubi*where, *ubi*whether, *num, -ne; whether . . . or,**-ne . . . an, utrum . . . an*while, *dum*who, *rel., quī, quae, quod; interrog.,*
*quis, quid*whoever, *whosoever, quicumque,*
*cuiuscumque*whole, as a whole, *omnis, omne*whose, *cuius, quōrum*why, *cūr*wide, *lātus, -a, -um*wife, *coniūnx, -ugis, f.*winter quarters, *hīberna, -ōrum, n.*
*plur.*wish, *volō, irr.; not wish, nōlō, irr.*with, *cum, with the abl.*withdraw, *subducō, 3 (XVI); reducō,*
*3 (XXXV)*without, *sine, with the abl.*woman, *mulier, -eris, f.*write, *scribō, 3*wrong, *wrongdoing, iniūria, -ae, f.*year, *annus, -ī, m.*yet (*nevertheless*), *tamen*you, *tū, tui*young man, *adulēscēns, -entis, m.*your, *tuus, -a, -um*yourselves, (*intensive*) *vōs ipsī; (re-*
flexive) vōs

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A. — ac

A., *abbr. for Aulus (which see)*

a., *abbr. for ante*

ā, *see ab*

ab (**ā**, **abs**), *prep. with abl.*, away from, from. — *With expressions of measure*, off, away: **a milibus passuum duobus**, two miles off. — *With different notion in English*: **ortum est ab**, sprang from, began with; **vacuum ab**, destitute of; **capit initium a**, begins at; **ab tanto spatio**, so far off. — *Esp. with passives*, by. — *Esp. also*, **a fronte**, in front; **a tergo**, from or on the rear; **ab infimo**, at the foot; **a dextro cornu**, on the right wing; **a re frumentaria**, in respect to the grain supply. — *In composition*, off, away, apart, without, not

abditus, *p.p. of abdō*

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [**ab-do**(put)], *trans.*, hide. — *With in and acc.*, withdraw to (take refuge among). — **abditus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, hidden, remote, removed

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead away, take away

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -lectus [**ab-icio**], *trans.*, throw away, throw down, throw, hurl

abiectus, *p.p. of abicio*

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir or spruce (*tree or wood*)

abripio, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [**ab-rapio**], *trans.*, snatch away, carry away

abs, *see ab*

abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus [**abs-caedo**], *trans.*, cut off, tear off, tear away

abscisus, *p.p. of abscido*

absēns, -entis, *see absum*

absimilis, -e, *adj.*, unlike

abstistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand off, stand away, withdraw; keep aloof

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [**absteneo**], *intrans.*, refrain: **proelio** (refrain from giving)

abstrāctus, *p.p. of abstraho*

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [**abs-traho**], *trans.*, drag away

abstulī, *see auferō*

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be away, be absent: **suspicio** (be wanting). — **absēns**, *pres. p. as adj.*, absent, in one's absence

Absyrtus, -ī, *m.*, brother of Medea

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, be strong in

ac, *see atque*

Acastus — adēptus

Acastus, -ī, *m.*, son of Pelias

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [*adcedo*], *intrans.*, move toward, draw near, approach; be added: *huc accedebat ut*, there was also this (disadvantage) that

acceptus, *p.p.* of *accipio*

accessus, *p.p.* of *accedo*

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, *no p.p.* [*ad-cado*], *intrans.*, fall to, fall on; happen, occur

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [*ad-caedo*], *trans.*, cut into

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*ad-capio*], *trans.*, take, receive; suffer; learn, hear. — **acceptus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, acceptable, pleasing, welcome

acclivis, -e [*ad-clivus*, slope], *adj.*, sloping, ascending

acclivitās, -ātis [*acclivis*], *f.*, ascent, acclivity

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans; put to death by Cæsar

accommodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ad-commodo* (fit)], *trans.*, adjust. — **accommodātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, fitted, adapted

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitus, *intrans.*, lie, recline (*at table*)

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully

accurrō, -currere, -curri, *no p.p.* [*ad-curro*], *intrans.*, run to, ride up

accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, accuse, blame, find fault with

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp; capable, energetic

acerbē, *adv.*, bitterly: *ferre inopiam* (suffer severely from *etc.*)

acerbitās, -ātis [*acerbus*], *f.*, suffering **acerbus**, -a, -um [*acer*, sharp], *adj.*, bitter, hard to bear

ācerimē, *superl.* of *acriter*

acervus, -ī [*acer*, pointed], *m.*, heap, pile

aciēs, -ēi, *f.*, point, sharp edge, edge: **oculorum** (keen glance, glare). — *Esp.*, line, line of battle, array, army

ācriter, *adv.*, sharply; fiercely, violently, hotly: *acriter pugnatum est*, a fierce battle was fought, the fighting was sharp

āctus, *p.p.* of *ago*

acūmen, -inis [*acuo*], *n.*, acuteness

acuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [*acer*], *trans.*, sharpen. — **acūtus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, sharpened, sharp

ad, *prep.* with *acc.* With idea of motion toward, to, toward, against. — *Of time*, till, at, on: *ad diem*, on the day. — *With numerals*, about

adāctus, *p.p.* of *adigo*

adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, make equal to: *moles moenibus* (make as high as); *altitudinem muri* (reach up to); *cursum* (keep up with)

adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, covet, become attached to

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*ad-do* (put)], *trans.*, add

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, lead to, draw to; induce, drive

adēptus, *p.p.* of *adimo*

adeō — admiror

adeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.*
and *intrans.*, go to, visit; attack,
approach

adeō, *adv.*, to that point, thus far,
so much

adequitō, -āre, -āvi, *no p.p.* [*cf.*
eques], *intrans.*, ride up

adfectus, *p.p.* of **adfacio**

adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*,
bring to, bring; cause, bring for-
ward, allege, report, announce

adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*ad-facio*],
trans., do to, affect. — *With acc.*
and *abl.*, affect with, inflict on,
impose. — *In passive*, suffer, re-
ceive: **magno dolore adfici**, be
greatly distressed

adfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, *trans.*,
fasten to

adfigō, -figere, -finxi, -fictus,
trans., make up in addition

adfinitās, -ātis [*adfinis*, related], *f.*,
relationship: **adfinitatibus con-**
iuncti (marriages)

adfixus, *p.p.* of **adfigo**

adflctō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, dash
against, shatter

adfligō, -fligere, -flixi, -flictus, *trans.*,
dash at; overthrow, damage:
naves (shatter, damage)

adfore, *see* **adsum**

adgredior, -gredi, -gressus [*ad-*
gradior, step, go], *dep.*, *trans.*, go
toward, march against, attack

adgregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
gather: **se** (gather round, flock
to); **se ad amicitiam** (attach one's
self to)

adhaerō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesūrus,
intrans., stick (to), cling (to), get
caught (in)

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [*ad-habeo*],
trans., call in, admit; employ, use

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*,
encourage, urge

adhūc, *adv.*, up to this time

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, chief of the
Sotiates

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ad-iacio*],
trans., throw to, hurl: **aggerem**
(throw up); join to, add: **adiecta**
planitie (with the addition of)

adiectus, *p.p.* of **adicio**

adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [*ad-ago*],
trans., drive to, drive up (*of cattle*
etc.); drive in, drive home (*of*
piles), move up (*of towers*), shoot
(*of weapons*); force, bind (*by oath*)

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptus [*ad-*
emo, take], *trans.*, take away

aditus, -ūs [*adeo*], *m.*, approach, ac-
cess; means of approach

adiungō, -iungere, -iūxi, -iūctus,
trans., join to, attach, add

adiutor, -ōris [*adiuvo*], *m.*, helper,
assistant

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtus, *trans.*,
assist, help, be of advantage

adlātus, *p.p.* of **adfero**

administer, -trī, *m.*, servant: **ad**
sacrificia (priest, celebrant)

administrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
carry into execution, perform,
manage, conduct

admiror, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, be
surprised at, wonder at

admittō — adveniō

- admittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, let go: *admisso equo*, at full speed; allow: *in se facinus* (commit a crime); *dedecus* (permit to be incurred, incur)
- admodum**, *adv.*, to a degree; very, very much. — *With numerals*, fully, at least, not less than
- admoneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *trans.*, warn, urge
- adolēscō**, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultus, *intrans.*, grow up
- adorior**, -oriri, -ortus, *dep., trans.*, attack, assail
- adpāreō**, -pārere, -pārui, -pāritūrus, *intrans.*, come in sight, appear, be evident
- adparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, prepare, get ready, make preparations
- adpellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, *trans. and intrans.*, land (*ships*), bring to land
- adpetō**, -petere, -petivi, -petitus, *trans. and intrans.*, seek to gain, desire; approach
- adplicō**, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātus (-itus), *trans.*, lean against
- adpōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, put near, set before, serve
- adprobō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, approve of
- adpropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, *no p.p., intrans.*, approach, come near
- adpulsus**, *p.p. of adpello*
- adquiescō**, -ere, -ēvi [*quies*], *intrans.*, become quiet, rest; die
- adripiō**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [*ad-rapio*], *trans.*, snatch up, seize
- adroganter**, *adv.*, with presumption, with insolence
- adrogantia**, -ae, *f.*, insolence, presumption
- adsciscō**, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus, *trans.*, attach (*by formal decree*)
- adsiduus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, constant, continued
- adsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, *no p.p., intrans.*, stand by: *in conspectu patris* (appear)
- adspectus**, -ūs [*adspicio*], *m.*, appearance
- adspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, *trans.*, look at, look on, behold
- adsuēfaciō**, -facere, -feci, -factus, *trans.*, accustom, train
- adsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus, *trans. and intrans.*, accustom; become accustomed
- adsum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *irr., intrans.*, be near, be present, be at hand, appear
- Aduatuci**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ, living on the west bank of the Meuse
- adulēscēns**, -entis, *adj.*, young. — *As noun*, a youth, young man. — *With proper names*, the younger (Jr., to distinguish a son from his father)
- adulēscēntia**, -ae, *f.*, youth
- adulēscēntulus**, -i, *m. (often as adj.)*, a mere boy, very young
- adveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, *intrans.*, come to, arrive at, reach

adventus — āfuisse

adventus, -ūs [*advenio*], *m.*, arrival, approach

adversārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposed.

— *As noun*, opponent, enemy

adversus, *prep.* with *acc.*, see *adverto*

advertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, *trans.*, turn towards: **animum** (turn the attention, notice). — **adversus**, -a, -um, *p. p.* as *adj.*, in front, opposed, opposite, unfavorable: **hostibus adversus occurrebant** (right against, in their front); in **adversum os**, right in the face; **flumine** (up, *cf.* **secundum**); **res adversae**, adversity, want of success. — **adversus**, *prep.* with *acc.*, against

advolo, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fly to, fly at

aedificium, -ī [*aedifico*], *n.*, building

aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*aedes*, house, *facio*], *trans.*, build

Aeētēs, -ae (*acc.* -ēn), *m.*, Æētes, king of Colchis

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, sick, disabled

aegerrimē, *superl.* of *aegre*

aegrē [*aeger*], *adv.*, ill, feebly; with difficulty

Aemilius, -ī, *m.* 1. L. Æmilius Paulus, consul, killed at the battle of Cannæ, 216 B. C. 2. L., a Gaul, a subaltern in Cæsar's Gallic cavalry

æneus, -a, -um [*aes*], *adj.*, of copper, bronze

aequāliter, *adv.*, evenly, uniformly

aequē [*aequus*], *adv.*, equally

aequinoctium, -ī [*aequus-nox*], *n.*, the time of the equinox, the equinox

aequitās, -ātis [*aequus*], *f.*, fairness, justice. — *Esp.*, **aequitas animi**, contentment

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, make equal, equalize

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; fair, just, equitable. — *Esp.*, **aequus animus**, equanimity, contentment; **aequo Marte**, on equal terms

āēr, **āeris** (*acc.* **āera**), *m.*, air

aerāria, -ae [*aes*], *f.*, mine

aerārium, -ī [*aes*], *n.*, treasury

aes, **aeris**, *n.*, copper (*as metal for ships or as money*). Hence, money. — *Esp.*, **alienum**, debt (*another man's money*)

Aesōn, -onis, *m.*, Æson, father of Jason

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer

aestimātiō, -ōnis [*aestimo*], *f.*, valuation

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, value, estimate; regard

aestuārium, -ī [*aestus*, tide], *n.*, estuary, marsh

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; tide

aetās, -ātis, *f.*, age, time

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa (*more usually of that part of the continent near Carthage*)

Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa. — *Esp.*, *sc.* **ventus**, the southwest wind (*blowing from Africa to Italy*)

āfuisse, **āfutūrus**, see **absum**

Agēdincum — alius

Agēdincum, -i, *n.*, the chief town of the Senones, now Sens

ager, agri, *m.*, land, field, country, territory

agger, -eris [*ad-gero*], *m.* (that which is carried to a place), earth (*for a wall*), mound of earth, wall, rampart

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, propose, discuss

agmen, -inis [*ago*], *n.*, a body in motion, army, line (*of troops on the march*): **primum** (the van); **novissimum** (the rear); **claudere** (bring up the rear)

agnōscō, -gnoscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [*ad-(g)nosco*, become acquainted with], *trans.*, recognize

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *trans.*, drive: **sublicas** (drive down); **vineas**, **turres**, *etc.* (set in motion, move on, advance); act, treat, discuss, plead: **conventum** (hold); **gratias** (render, give, express); **quid agit**? what is one about? **quid agitur**? what is going on?

agricultūra, *see cultura*

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing

alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, active, eager, spirited

alacritās, -ātis [*alacer*], *f.*, eagerness, readiness

ālārius, -a, -um [*ala*], *adj.* (belonging to the wings). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, allies, auxiliaries

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white: **plumbum album**, tin

alcēs, -is, *f.*, elk

Alesia, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon, now Alise-Ste.-Reine

aliās, *adv.*, elsewhere. — *Of time*, at another time, on other occasions: **alias . . . alias**, now . . . now

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*alienus*], *trans.*, make another's, alienate, estrange

aliēnus, -a, -um [*cf. alius*], *adj.*, another's, of others, other people's: **fines** (others'). Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable, foreign to the purpose. — *Superl., m. plur. as noun*, perfect strangers

aliō, *adv.*, elsewhere

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time

aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time

aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, considerable. — *Neut. as noun*, a good deal, a considerable part. — **aliquantō** (*as abl. of measure*), considerably, a good deal

aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), *indef. adj. or pron.*, some, any; some one, any one, something, anything

aliquot, *indecl. adj.*, several, some

aliter, *adv.*, otherwise, differently. — **aliter . . . ac**, otherwise . . . than

alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other. — *Repeated (either in separate clauses or in the same clause)*, one . . . another (*plur.*, some . . . others); one one (*thing*), another another: **alius alia causa inlata**,

Allobrogēs — amplius

one giving one reason, another another, *or* alleging different reasons

Allobrogēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people, living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps

alō, alere, alui, altus, *trans.*, feed, support

Alpēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, the Alps

Alpici, -ōrum [*Alpes*], *m.*, inhabitants of the Alps

alter, -era, -erum, *adj.*, one (*of two*), the other (*of two*). — *In plur.*, the other party. — *Repeated*, one . . . the other; *in plur.*, one party . . . the other. — *Also*, the second (*of more than two*), another (*the second of three*): *diēs* (the second)

alternus, -a, -um [*alter*], *adj.*, alternate, alternating

altitūdō, -inis [*altus*], *f.*, height, depth, thickness (*of a timber*)

altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high. — *From opposite point of view*, deep. —

Neut. as noun, the sea, the deep

alūta, -ae, *f.*, leather

ambactus, -ī, *m.*, vassal

Ambarri, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called Hædui Ambarri

Ambiāni, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriua, is now called, from their name, Amiens

Ambiliāti, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe on the Somme

Ambiorix, -igis, *m.*, an able prince of the Eburones

Ambivariti, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse

ambo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, both

āmentia, -ae [*a-mens*], *f.*, madness, frenzy, insanity

āmentum, -ī, *n.*, strap, thong (attached to a spear to help in hurling it)

amicō [*amicus*], *adv.*, in a friendly manner

amicitia, -ae [*amicus*], *f.*, friendship

amicus, -a, -um [*amo*, love], *adj.*, friendly, well-disposed. — *Masc. as noun*, friend, ally

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send away, let go, let pass; lose, dismiss

amor, -ōris [*amo*, love], *m.*, love, affection

amphora, -ae, *f.*, two-handed jar

amplē, *adv.*, widely, largely. — **amplius**, *comp.*, farther, more, longer
amplificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*amplus-facio*], *trans.*, increase, enlarge, extend

amplitūdō, -inis [*amplus*], *f.*, size, extent, greatness: *cornuum* (spread)

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, wide, great: **dimissis amplioribus copiis** (the greater part of); prominent, splendid, noble, distinguished. — **amplius**, *neut. comp. as noun* (*cf. plus*), more, a greater number: **amplius obsidum**

an — antiquus

- an**, *conj.*, introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather. — Often with the first member only implied, or: *quid venirent, an speculandi causa* ((or) was it)
- Anartēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people in Dacia
- Ancalitēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a nation of Britain
- anceps**, -cipitis, *adj.*, double-headed; double: *proelium* (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways)
- ancora**, -ae, *f.*, anchor: *in ancoris*, at anchor
- Andebrogius**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi
- Andēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul, north of the Loire
- Andī**, -ōrum, the same as the Andes
- angulus**, -ī, *m.*, corner
- angustē**, *adv.*, narrowly, in narrow quarters
- angustiae**, -ārum [*angustus*], *f. plur.*, narrowness, defile, defiles: *propter angustias* (narrowness of the passage)
- angustus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined: *in angusto res est*, the position is critical
- anima**, -ae, *f.*, breath, life. — *Plur.*, soul
- animadvertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versus [*animus-adverto*], *trans.*, turn the mind to, attend to: *animadvertēre in*, punish; observe
- animal**, -ālis [*anima*], *n.*, animal
- animus**, -ī, *m.*, soul, mind, feelings, intellect, spirit. — *Esp.*, constancy, courage, resolution; disposition: *bono animo esse*, be well-disposed; *animi causa*, for pleasure
- annālis**, -is [*annus*], *m.*, record of events, chronicle
- annōtinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, last year's
- annus**, -ī, *m.*, year
- annuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, yearly: *magistratus creatur* (annually)
- anser**, -eris, *m.*, goose
- ante**, *adv.*, before (*of place or time*), in front: *paucis ante diebus*, a few days before. — *Prep.* with *acc.*, before (*of place or time*). — *In dates*, *ante diem* (a. d.) *quintum*, on the fifth day before
- anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously, once
- antecēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *trans. and intrans.*, go forward, advance, surpass (*in size etc.*)
- antecellō**, -cellere, *trans. and intrans.*, excel, surpass
- antecursor**, -ōris, *m.*, courier
- anteferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr. trans.*, place in advance, prefer
- antemna**, -ae, *f.*, yard (*for sails*), spar
- antepōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, think of more importance
- antequam**, *conj.*, before
- antevertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versus, *trans.*, put before, prefer
- Antiochus**, -ī, *m.*, king of Syria, 224–187 B.C.
- antiquitus**, *adv.*, from ancient times, from early times, long ago
- antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, old, ancient

anxius — āridus

anxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, troubled, anxious

Apenninus, -i, *m.*, Apennines, a mountain range in Italy

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus, *trans.*, uncover, open. — **apertus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, open, exposed, unprotected: **latus** (the right side, *not covered by the shield*); **impetus maris** (unbroken)

apertē, *adv.*, openly

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana; god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and leader of the Muses. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity

appareō, *see* **adpareo**

apparō, *see* **adparo**

1. **appellō**, *see* **adpello**

2. **appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, call, name, address

appetō, *see* **adpeto**

appōnō, *see* **adpono**

Apr., *abbr. for* **Aprilis**

Aprilis, -e, *adj.*, of April

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suited, adapted

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, with, before; in one's house (company, possession)

Āpulia, -ae, *f.*, a country of south-eastern Italy

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water

aquātio, -ōnis [*aqua*], *f.*, getting water

aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle. — *Esp.*, the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff

Aquileia, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul

aquilifer, -erī [*aquila-fero*], *m.*, standard bearer

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.*, Gascony, the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the people of Aquitania, the Aquitani or Gascons

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar

Arar, -aris, *m.*, the Saône, a river of Gaul flowing into the Rhone

arbiter, -trī, *m.*, witness, arbitrator

arbitrium, -ī [*arbiter*, judge], *n.*, judgment, will, opinion

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [*arbiter*, judge], *dep.*, *trans.*, think, suppose

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree

arcessō, -ere, -īvi, -ītus, *trans.*, summon, invite, send for

ārdeō, **ārdēre**, **ārsī**, **ārsūrus**, *intrans.*, be hot, be on fire; be excited

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep, difficult

Arecomici, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Volcæ

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silverware

argilla, -ae, *f.*, clay

Argō, **Argūs** (*acc.* **Argo**; *no dat. or abl.*), *f.*, Argo, Jason's ship

Argonautæ, -ārum, *m. plur.*, Argonauts

Argus, -ī, *m.*, builder of the Argo

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry. — *Neut. as noun*, dry land

ariēs — auctus

ariēs, -letis, m., ram; battering-ram (a long timber, armed at the end with metal, for demolishing walls); buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge)

Ariovistus, -ī, m., a chief of the Germans

arma, -ōrum, n. plur., arms, equipment: *armis ius exsequi*, to maintain authority by force of arms

armāmenta, -ōrum [armo], n. plur., implements. — *Esp.*, tackle, rigging

armātūra, -ae [armo], f., equipment: *levis armaturae Numidae* (light-armed)

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., equip, arm; rouse, incite. — *Pass.*, arm (*one's self*). — **armātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.,** armed, in arms, equipped. — *Masc. plur. as noun,* armed men

arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., plow

Arpinēius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

ars, artis, f., skill, art. — *Plur.*, the useful arts

artē, adv., closely, tightly

artculus, -ī [artus, joint], m., joint

artificium, -ī [artifex, artist], n., a trade (*opp. to ars*, a higher art)

artus, -a, -um, adj., close: *silva* (thick)

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the Arverni (a tribe in southeastern Gaul). — *Masc. plur.*, the Arverni

arx, arcis [arceo, shut in], f., stronghold, fortress, citadel

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsus [ad-scando, climb], trans. and intrans., climb up, climb, ascend: *navem* (embark)

ascēsus, -ūs, m., ascent, going up; means of ascent

Asia, -ae, f., Asia, Asia Minor

aspiciō, see adspicio

at, conj., but, but yet, at least

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur., Athens, a city in Greece

atque (ac), conj., and, and especially: *simul atque*, as soon as

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul). — *Plur.*, the Atrebates

Ātrius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

attexō, -texere, -texui, -textus, trans., weave on, make on (*by weaving*)

Atticus, -ī, m., T. Pomponius Atticus, a great friend of Cicero's; he resided chiefly at Athens

attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctus [ad-tango], trans., touch at, touch upon, touch, border on

attribuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, trans., allot to, assign

attuli, see adfero

auctor, -ōris [augeo], m., voucher, authority: *auctore hoste*, on the authority of the enemy

auctoritās, -ātis [auctor], f., influence, prestige

auctus, -a, -um, p.p. of augeo. — Comp., auctior, richer, greater

audācia — Balventius

audācia, -ae [*audax*, bold], *f.*, daring, boldness

audācter [*audax*, bold], *adv.*, with daring, boldly, fearlessly; **audacissime**, with the greatest daring

audēō, **audēre**, **ausus**, *semi-dep.*, *trans.*, dare, venture. — **ausus**, -a, -um, *p.p. in pres. sense*, daring

audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *trans.*, hear, hear of. — **audiēns**, -entis, *pres. p. as adj.*, obedient (*with dicto*)

auditiō, -ōnis [*audio*], *f.*, hearing, hearsay, report

auferō, **auferre**, **abstulī**, **ablatus** [*abfero*], *trans.*, take away, remove

aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī [*ab-fugio*], *intrans.*, flee away, run away

augeō, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**, *trans.*, increase, magnify, add to (*a thing*). — *Pass.*, increase

Aulercus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — *Masc. plur.*, the Aulerci

Aulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

Aurelius, -ī, *m.*, C. Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul

aureus, -a, -um [*aurum*], *adj.*, golden

aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer, driver

auris, -is, *f.*, ear

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold

Aurunculēius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Auscī, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe of Aquitania

ausus, -a, -um, *p.p. of audeo*

aut, *conj.*, or. — *Repeated*, either . . . or

autem, *conj.*, but (*the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed*), on the other hand, now, moreover, furthermore

auxiliāris, -e [*auxilium*], *adj.*, auxiliary. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus [*auxilium*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, give assistance

auxilium, -ī, *n.*, assistance, aid, relief. — *Plur.*, auxiliaries; reinforcements

Avaricum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Bituriges in central Gaul

avāritia, -ae [*avarus*, greedy], *f.*, covetousness, greed, avarice

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, carry off, take away

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *trans.*, turn aside, turn away. —

āversus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, turned away; in the rear

avis, -is, *f.*, bird

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather

Axona, -ae, *f.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, now the Aisne

Bācenis, -is, *f.*, *with silva*, a forest in Germany

Baculus, -ī, *m.*, P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army

Baebius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Baleāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (belonging to the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean)

balteus, -ī, *m.*, belt

Balventius, -ī, *m.*, T. Balventius, a centurion in Caesar's army

barbarus — brevitas

- barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*not Greek or Roman*), uncivilized. — *Masc. plur.*, barbarians, savages
- Batavi**, -orum, *m. plur.*, the Batavi or Batavians, a nation living about the mouths of the Rhine
- Belgae**, -arum, *m. plur.*, the Belgæ or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul
- Belgium**, -i, *n.*, the country of the Belgæ
- bellicōsus**, -a, -um [*bellum*], *adj.*, warlike
- bellicus**, -a, -um [*bellum*], *adj.*, of war, in war
- bellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*bellum*], *intrans.*, fight, make war
- Bellovacī**, -orum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise
- bellum**, -i, *n.*, war: bellum gerere, wage war
- bens** [*bonus*], *adv.*, well
- beneficiūm**, -i [*bene-facio*], *n.*, well-doing, service, favor, *often rendered by English plur.*
- benevolentia**, -ae [*bene-volo*], *f.*, good will, kindness
- Bibracte**, -is, *n.*, the chief town of the Hædui
- Bibrax**, Bibractis, *f.*, a town of the Remi
- Bibroci**, -orum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of southeastern Britain
- biduum**, -i [*bis-dies*], *n.*, two days' time, two days
- biennium**, -i [*bis-annus*], *n.*, two years' time
- Bigerriōnēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Pyrenees
- binī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj. plur.*, two each, two sets of, two (*of things in pairs or sets*), two at a time
- bipartitō**, *adv.*, in two divisions
- bipedālis**, -e [*bis-pes*], *adj.*, two-foot (*two feet long, wide, etc.*)
- bis**, *num. adv.*, twice
- Bithŷnia**, -ae, a country in north-western Asia Minor
- Bithŷnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Bithynian. — *Masc. as noun*, Bithynian
- Biturigēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Celtic Gaul
- Blithō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Sulpicius Blitho, a writer of Roman history
- Bođuōgnātus**, -i, *m.*, a leader of the Nervii
- Bōia**, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Boii
- Bōii**, -orum, *m. plur.*, a Celtic tribe
- bonitās**, -ātis [*bonus*], *f.*, goodness: agrorum (fertility)
- bonus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, good: bono animo esse, to be well-disposed. — *Neut. as noun*, good, advantage; *plur.*, goods, property
- bōs**, bovis, *c.*, bull, cow, ox. — *Plur.*, cattle
- bracchium**, -i, *n.*, arm
- Bratuspantium**, -i, *n.*, a fortified town of the Bellovaci
- brevis**, -e, *adj.*, short (*of space or time*): brevi, in a short space
- brevitās**, -ātis [*brevis*], *f.*, shortness, short stature: brevitās temporis, want of time

Britanni — capillus

Britanni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Britons
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain

brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, a family name at Rome. — *Esp.*, D. Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins

C, for centum, hundred

C., *abbr. for* Gaius, Caius

Caburus, -ī, *m.*, C. Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Proculus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus

cadāver, -eris [*cf. cado*], *n.*, corpse

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *intrans.*, fall, be killed

cādūceus, -ī, *m.*, a herald's staff, the token of a peaceful embassy

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Cadurci. — *Masc. plur.*, the Cadurci

caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind

caedēs, -is [*caedo*], *f.*, murder, massacre, slaughter

caedō, cadere, cecidī, caesus, *trans.*, cut, slay, kill

caelestis, -e, *adj.*, heavenly. — *Masc. plur.*, the gods

Caemāni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, sacred rite

Caerōsi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul

caeruleus, -a, -um [*caelum*, sky], *adj.*, dark blue

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, a family name in the gens Iulia. — *Esp.*: 1. C. Julius Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and author of the "Commentaries." — 2. L. Julius Cæsar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul

caespes, -itis, *m.*, sod

caesus, -a, -um, *p. p. of caedo*

Calais (*nom. only*), *m.*, one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind

calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat, misfortune

calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe

Caletī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northern Gaul

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd, cunning, skillful

cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, servant, camp follower

campester, -tris, -tre [*campus*], *adj.*, of the plain: loca (level plains)

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open field

Cannēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Cannæ, a town in Apulia, where the Romans suffered their worst defeat, in 216 B.C.

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain). — *Masc. plur.*, the Cantabri or Cantabrians

Cantium, -ī, *n.*, Kent (the southeast corner of Britain)

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, sing

capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair

capiō — cautus

capiō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**, *trans.*, take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: **locum** (select); **portum** (arrive at, make); **fugam** (take to flight)

capra, -ae, *f.*, goat

captivus, -a, -um [**capio**], *adj.*, captive. — *Masc. as noun*, captive, prisoner

captus, -a, -um, *p.p. of capio*

captus, -ūs [**capio**], *m.*, capacity, nature, idea

Capua, -ae, *f.*, the chief city of Campania

caput, -itis, *n.*, head; person; mouth (*of a river*); life: **poenam capitis** (of death); **capitis periculo** (of life)

carēō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intrans.*, be without, go without

carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel

carmen, -inis, *n.*, song, incantation

Carnutēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people

carō, **carnis**, *f.*, flesh, meat

carpō, -pere, -psī, -ptus, *trans.*, pluck; find fault with

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, precious, valuable

Carvilius, -ī, *m.*, a king of part of Kent

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese

Cassī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a British tribe

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius: **bellum** (the war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius Longinus was

defeated by the Tigurini, near the Lake of Geneva, and killed)

Cassius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, L. Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C. (*see Cassianus*)

Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, a British chief
castellum, -ī [**castrum**], *n.*, fortress, fort, outwork, redoubt

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani

Castor, -oris, *m.*, twin brother of Pollux

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fortress. — *Plur.*, camp: **castra ponere**, pitch camp; **castra movere**, break camp, move

cāsus, -ūs [**cado**], *m.*, accident, chance (*good or bad*): **casu**, by accident, by chance

Catamantāloe'dēs, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain (*for prisoners*), cable: **in catenas coniecit** (into prison)

Caturīgēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people in Roman Gaul

Catuvolcus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Eburones

cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail

causa, -ae, *f.*, reason, excuse, grounds, motive (*for an act*): **satis causae**, sufficient reason. *Abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of. *Also*, case (*in law*): **causam dicere**, plead one's cause, stand trial, be tried

cautē [**cautus**], *adv.*, cautiously

cautus, *p.p. of caveo*

Cavarillus — Cicerō

Cavarillus, -i, *m.*, a prince of the Hædui

cavē, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, be on one's guard: obsidibus cavere, give hostages as security

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *intrans.*, give way, retreat, retire

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick, fast
celeritās, -ātis [*celer*], *f.*, swiftness, activity, speed

celeriter, *adv.*, quickly, speedily

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, conceal, hide. — *Pass.*, pass unnoticed

Celtae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, a race in Gaul and Britain. — *More particularly*, the Celts occupying the interior of Gaul

Celtillus, -i, *m.*, one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner

Cēnabum, -i, *n.*, the chief city of the Carnutes, north of central Gaul

cēnāculum, -i [*ceno*], *n.*, dining-room

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a British tribe

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, dine

cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *trans.*, reckon, estimate; think, advise, decree (*of the senate*), determine

cēnsus, -ūs [*censeo*], *m.*, numbering, count, census

centaurus, -i, *m.*, centaur, a fabulous creature, half man, half horse

Centenius, -i, *m.*, C. Centenius, a Roman commander defeated by Hannibal

centum (C), *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion (*an officer commanding a century, originally a hundred men*)

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *trans.*, distinguish, see

certāmen, -inis [*certo*, contend], *n.*, struggle, contest, rivalry

certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely, at least

certus, -a, -um (*for crētus*), *p.p. of cerno as adj.*, determined, fixed, certain: certiorē facere, inform, order; dies certa, appointed day

cervus, -i, *m.*, stag

(**cēterus**), -a, -um, *adj.*, the rest of. — *Usually plur.*, the rest, the remaining, the others

Cethēgus, -i, *m.*, P. Cornelius Cethegus, consul in 181 B.C.

Ceutronēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in the Alps

Cevenna, -ae, *f.*, a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley, now the Cévennes

Chērusci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Germans

cibārius, -a, -um [*cibus*], *adj.*, pertaining to food. — *Neut. plur. as noun*, provisions: molita (ground corn)

cibus, -i, *m.*, food

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — *Esp.*, Q. Tullius Cicero, brother of Marcus the orator, in Cæsar's service in Gaul as legatus

Cimberius — citō

Cimberius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Suebi

Cimbri, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered by Marius and Catulus, 101 B.C.

Cingetorix, -īgis, *m.*, a British prince in Kent

cingō, **cingere**, **cingi**, **cinctus**, *trans.*, surround, encircle; man (*occupy in a circuit, of walls*)

circinus, -ī [*cf. circum*], *m.*, a pair of compasses

circiter, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, about, near, not far from

circuitus, -ūs [*circumeo*], *m.*, circuit, circuitous route, circumference: in circuitu, all around

circum, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, about, around

circumcidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [*circum-caedo*], cut around, cut

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*circum-claudo*], *trans.*, inclose, encircle

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *irr.*, *trans.*, put around: murus circumdatus (encircling, thrown around); surround, encircle

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead around; draw around

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go around. — *As trans.*, visit, make a tour of

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *trans.*, pour around. — *Pass. or reflex.*, crowd around, surround

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*circum-icio*], *trans.*, throw around

circumitus, *p.p. of circumeo*

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send around

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, *trans.*, throw fortifications around (*said of defenders*), fortify

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stetī), *no p.p.*, *trans.*, stand around, surround, hem in, beset

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *trans.*, look about for, examine

circumvallō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, draw an intrenchment around (*said of besiegers*)

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *trans.*, surround; impose upon, defraud

cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side, this side of

Cita, -ae, *m.*, C. Fufius Cita, a Roman knight

citātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of cito*

citer, -tra, -trum, *adj.* Usually *citerior* (*comp.*), nearer, hither (*as adj.*): provincia, Gallia (*Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps*)

citharoedus, -ī, *m.*, harpist, minstrel

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, urge on, hurry. — **citātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, in haste: citatus fertur, runs very rapidly

citō, *adv.*, quickly: citissimē, very rapidly

citra — cognoscō

citrā, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, this side, within

citrō, *adv.*, to this side: **ultra citroque**, back and forth

cīvis, -is, *c.*, citizen

cīvītās, -ātis [*civis*], *f.*, citizenship, the citizens (*as a body*), a state (*body of citizens; res publica, state as a thing in itself*); in *Cæsar* tribe, conventionally translated state (*cf. tribus, part of a state*)

clam, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *abl.*, secretly; unknown to

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*clamo*, cry out], *trans.*, keep crying out

clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, outcry

clandestinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, secret

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous; loud, distinct

classiārius, -a, -um [*classis*], *adj.*, of the navy. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, marines, naval forces

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet

Clastidium, -ī, *n.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul

Claudius, -ī, *M. Claudius Marcellus*, consul in 196 B.C.

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus, *trans.*, close, shut, hem in, fasten: **claudere agmen**, close the line of march, bring up the rear

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike

clēmētia, -ae [*clemens*, kind], *f.*, kindness, gentleness, mercy

cliēns, -entis, *c.*, dependent, vassal, retainer

clientēla, -ae [*cliens*], *f.*, vassalage: **magnae clientelae**, many vassals;

Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to *etc.*)

Clōdīus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, P. Clodius Pulcher, tribune, bitter enemy of Cicero the orator. He was killed in a fray by Milo (January, 52 B.C.)

Cn., *abbr. for* Gnaeus

coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*coacervus*], *trans.*, heap together, heap on top (*of others*)

coactus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* cogo

coartō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, press together

Cocosātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptus [*comemo*], *trans.*, buy up

coēō, -īre, -iī, *no p.p., irr., intrans.*, come together, unite, meet

coepī, -isse, coeptus, *defective, trans.*, began, undertook, started. — **coepus**, -a, -um, *p.p. used (in same sense as the active) with pass. infinitives*

coērcēō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [*comarceo*, shut up], *trans.*, confine, keep in check

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*com-agito*], *trans.*, consider, think over

cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, connection by birth, family, clan

cognitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* cognosco

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [*com-(g)nosco*, learn], *trans.*, learn, find out, investigate, inquire into — *In perf. tenses*, know

cōgō — commoror

cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōlectus [*com-ago*], *trans.*, bring together, collect, assemble, get together. *Hence*, force, compel, qbligē: *coactus*, by compulsion

cohors, -hortis, f., body of troops, cohort (*the tenth part of a legion*)

cohortātiō, -ōnis [*cohortor*], *f.*, an encouraging, encouragement

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans., encourage, cheer up

Colchī, -ōrum, m. plur., inhabitants of Colchis

Colchis, -idis (acc. -ida), f., a country east of the Black Sea

collis, -is, m., hill

colō, colere, colui, cultus, trans., cultivate; inhabit; worship (*divinities*): *colendi causa*, for purposes of cultivation

color, -ōris, m., color

columba, -ae, f., pigeon, dove

com- (con-, co-), adv. in composition, with, together, up. *Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation*

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustus [*com-uro, burn*], *trans.*, burn up, consume

comes, -itis, c., companion

comitium, -i, n., a part of the Roman Forum. — *Plur.*, assembly of the Roman people, election: *proximis comitiis*, at the last election

commēātus, -ūs [*commeo*], *m.*, trip; supplies (*of an army*), provisions

commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., remind one of. *Hence*, speak of, mention, state (*in a narrative*)

commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*com-mando, commit*], *trans.*, intrust, commend, surrender

commoō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, intrans., go back and forth. — *With ad*, visit, resort to

commilitō, -ōnis [*com-miles*], *m.*, fellow soldier

comminus [*com-manus*], *adv.*, hand to hand, in close combat

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans., join: *proelium* (engage in, begin the engagement). — *Also*, trust, intrust: *se barbaris committere* (put one's self in the hands of *etc.*). — *Also*, commit, commit the fault of letting, admit, allow (*to happen*)

Commius, -i, m., a leader of the Atrebates

commodē, adv., conveniently, fitly, readily: *satis commode*, to much advantage; *non satis commode*, not very easily

commōdus, -a, -um, adj., suitable, fitting, convenient, advantageous.

— *Neut. as noun*, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: *commodo rei publicae*, without prejudice to the public interest

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*com-moneo-facio*], *trans.*, remind

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., intrans., delay

commoveō — conclāmō

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *trans.*, move, stir, agitate; disturb, alarm

communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*communis*], *trans.*, share, allow to participate in, put into a common stock, communicate: *consilium communicat cum A.*, he acquaints A. with his plan

communiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans.*, strongly fortify

communis, -e, *adj.*, common, general, in common: *res* (the common interest)

commūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, change, exchange: *studium belli agri culturā* (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture)

1. **comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together

2. **comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, compare

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive together, drive in, force, drive

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, *trans.*, find out, ascertain, discover. — **compertus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*, certain

complector, -plectī, -plexus, *dep.*, *trans.*, embrace, include, inclose

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, *trans.*, fill up, fill; cover, man (*of walls*)

complūrēs, -plūra, *adj.*, *plur.*, very many, a great many

compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put together, settle: *bellum* (bring to an end)

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring together, collect

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *trans.*, seize, catch, arrest, capture

comprobō, -probāre, -probāvi, -probātus, *trans.*, assent to, ratify, sanction

compulsus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *compello*

con-, see *com-*

cōnātum, -ī [*conor*], *n.*, attempt, undertaking

cōnātus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *conor*

cōnātus, -ūs [*conor*], *m.*, attempt, effort

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *trans. and intrans.*, yield, allow, grant, permit, give permission for, make a concession

conciō, -cidere, -cidī, *no p.p.* [*com-cado*], *intrans.*, fall down, fall

conciō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [*com-caedo*], *trans.*, cut to pieces, cut down (*kill*), cut up (*land by estuaries*)

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring together; win over, gain, obtain

concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting; assembly, council, conference

concisus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *concido*

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, arouse, stir up: *risum* (provoke)

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, cry out, shout: *ad arma* (call)

conclūdō — congressus

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*com-claudio*], *trans.*, shut up, inclose: *mare conclusum* (inclosed, inland)

Conconnetodumnus, -i, *m.*, a leader of the Carnutes

concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run together, rush up, unite: *concursum est*, there was a rushing together

concursum, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, a dashing together (*collision*); onset, conflict

condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*com-damno*], *trans.*, condemn, find guilty

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, terms, condition, terms of agreement

condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, give up, pardon

Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe on the Meuse

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, bring together, bring up (*soldiers*), hire

cōnferciō, -ferciere, -fersi, -fertus, *trans.*, crowd together. — *cōnfer-tus*, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, close, crowded, dense

cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr., trans.*, bring together, get together, collect; charge; hold (*a conversation*): *facta* (compare). — *With reflexive*, betake one's self, remove, take refuge

cōnfer-tus, -a, -um, *p.p. of confercio*

cōnfestim, *adv.*, in haste, immediately, at once

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*com-facio*], *trans.*, accomplish, complete, finish, end, perform, dispatch; dress (*of skins*); exhaust, wear out

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, *semi-dep., intrans.*, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on. — *cōnfisus*, -a, -um, *p.p. in act. sense*, trusting in

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, *trans.*, fasten together, fasten

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis [*confirmo*], *f.*, assurance, affirmation

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, strengthen, establish (*pacem*), assure, confirm, reassure, encourage

cōnfisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of confido*

cōnŕiteor, -ŕitēri, -fessus [*com-fateor*, confess], *dep., trans.*, confess, acknowledge, admit

cōnfixus, -a, -um, *p.p. of configo*

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *intrans.*, be on fire, burn

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixi, -flictus, *trans. and intrans.*, dash together, dash against, contend, fight

cōnfluēns, -entis, *m.*, meeting of two rivers, confluence

congrēdior, -grēdi, -gressus [*com-gradior*, step], *dep., intrans.*, come together. — *In peace*, unite with.

— *Esp. in war*, engage, fight

congressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of congrēdior*

congressus, -ūs [*congrēdior*], *m.*, engagement, encounter

coniciō — cōnsequor

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*com-iacio*], *trans.*, throw together, hurl, cast: *se* conicere, throw one's self, rush. — *Less exactly (esp. in a military sense)*, throw (*into prison*), put (*to flight*), place, station (*cf. military throw troops into etc.*), force. — *Fig.*, put together (*of ideas*)

coniectus, -a, -um, *p. p. of conicio*
coniūctim [*coniungo*], *adv.*, in common

coniūctus, -a, -um, *p. p. of coniungo*
coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, *trans.*, unite, connect, fasten together

coniūnx, -ingis [*coniungo*], *c.*, husband, wife

coniūratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy, confederacy

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, take an oath (*together*); conspire, plot

conlātus, -a, -um, *p. p. of confero*
conlaudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, praise (*in set terms*)

conlētus, -a, -um, *p. p. of conligo*
conlēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague

conligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, bind together, fasten together

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*com-lego*, gather], *trans.*, gather together, collect, acquire. — *With reflexive*, collect one's self, recover

conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, place, set, station. — *Esp. (with or without nuptum)*, give in marriage

conloquium, -i [*conloquor*], *n.*, conference, interview

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, confer, hold an interview

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, attempt, try, endeavor

conquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitus [*com-quaero*], *trans.*, search for, seek for, hunt up

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [*com-sanguis*], *adj.*, akin (*by blood*). — *As noun*, kinsman

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsus [*com-scando*, climb], *trans.*, climb, climb upon: *navem* (*naves*, in *naves*) (go on board)

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, [*com-scisco*, decree], *trans.*, resolve: *ipse sibi mortem* (commit suicide)

cōnscius, -a, -um [*com-scio*], *adj.*, aware: *sibi conscius*, conscious

cōnscrībō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *trans.*, enroll, levy, enlist: *epistulam* (compose, write): *patres conscripti*, senators

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus [*freq. of consequor*], *dep.*, *trans.*, overtake, follow up

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, *p. p. of consequor*

cōnsēsus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, *intrans.*, agree, conspire, make common cause

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, overtake; obtain, secure, attain, succeed in

cōnserō — cōnsuētūdō

- cōnserō**, -serere, -serui, -sertus, *trans.*, connect, join: **manum** (join battle)
- cōnservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, save, preserve, spare, guard: **odium** (cherish)
- cōnsiderō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, reflect on, consider
- Cōnsidius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman name
- cōnsidō**, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessurus, *intrans.*, sit down; take a position, halt, encamp, settle
- cōnsilium**, -i, *n.*, deliberation, a council (*of war, more commonly concilium*). — *Esp.*, wise counsel, prudence, discretion. *Hence*, a plan, design, purpose: — *Phrases*: **ipsorum esse consilium** (a matter for them to decide); **consilium capere**, resolve; **quasi consili sit res**, as if it were a matter for consultation; **commune consilium**, concerted action; **publicum consilium**, action of the state, official action
- cōnsimilis**, -e, *adj.*, very like, just like
- cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (*of troops*). — *In perf. tenses*, have a position, stand. *Hence*, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (*of ships*), remain, stay. — *With in*, occupy, rest on; depend on, consist of
- cōnsolor**, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, console, cheer. — **cōnsolātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *pres.*, consoling
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, *m.*, sight. — *in conspectu*, in one's presence
- cōnspiciātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* of **conspicor**
- cōnspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [*com-specio*, look at], *trans.*, catch sight of, see
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus [*conspicio*], *dep.*, *trans.*, catch sight of, see
- cōnspirō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *intrans.*, conspire, league together
- cōnstanter**, *adv.*, steadily, firmly, consistently
- cōnstantia**, -ae [*constans*, firm], *f.*, firmness, constancy, courage
- cōnsternō**, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātus, *trans.*, strew over
- cōnstipō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, press together, crowd
- cōnstiti**, *see* **consisto**
- cōnstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutus [*com-statio*], *trans. and intrans.*, set up, raise, put together, make up; establish, station, arrange, draw up; determine, appoint, agree upon
- cōnstō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, *intrans.*, agree; be established, appear, be evident (*esp.*, **constat**, it appears); cost
- cōnsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus, *intrans.*, become accustomed. — *In perf. tenses*, be accustomed, be wont. — **cōnsuētus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, accustomed, wont, used
- cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.*, habit, custom, manners, practice: **itineris** (usual order of march)

cōsul — contrahō

cōsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul (*the title of the chief magistrate of Rome*): **M. Messala et M. Pisone consuli-**
bus, in the consulship of *etc.* (*the usual Roman method of giving a date*)

cōsulāris, -e [*consul*], *adj.*, consular.
— *Masc. as noun*, ex-consul

cōsulātus, -ūs [*consul*], *m.*, consul-ship

cōsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultus, *trans.*
and intrans., deliberate, consult.

— *With dat.*, take counsel for, look out for. — **sortibus consultum (est)**, lots were drawn to decide

cōsultō, *adv.*, purposely, designedly

cōsultum, -ī [*consulo*], *n.*, decision, decree. — *Esp.*, **senatus consul-**
tum, an order of the senate

cōsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-
tus, *trans.*, waste, destroy, spend, exhaust

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēc-
tūrus, *intrans.*, rise, rise up. —

Esp. of a session, break up

cōntabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*,
board up, plank (*floor with planks*)

cōntāgiō, -ōnis [*com-tango*], *f.*, contact

cōntemptiō, -ōnis [*contemno*, despise],

f., contempt, scorn

cōntemptus, -ūs [*contemno*, despise],
m., contempt, scorn: **cōntemptui**
est, is a matter of ridicule

cōntendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentūrus,
intrans., strive, try, endeavor;
press on, hasten; fight, contend,
wage war

cōntentiō, -ōnis [*contendo*], *f.*, strug-
gle, efforts. — *Esp.*, contest, fight-
ing, dispute

cōntentus, -a, -um, *p.p. of contendo*
and contineo

cōntexō, -texere, -texui, -textus,
trans., interweave, weave together

cōntigisse, *see* contingo

cōntinēns, -entis, *see* contineo

cōntinenter, *adv.*, continually, in-
cessantly

cōntineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [*com-*
teneo], *trans.*, hold together; re-
strain, hold in check, hem in. —

Pass. or with reflex., keep within,
remain. — **cōntinēns, -entis**, *pres.*

p. as adj., continual, continuous.

— *As noun*, the continent. —
cōntentus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*,
satisfied

cōntingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus
[*com-tango*], *trans. and intrans.*,
touch, reach, join. — *With dat.*,
happen

cōntinuātiō, -ōnis [*continuo*, unite],
f., continuation: **cōntinuatio im-**
brium, incessant rains

cōntinuus, -a, -um [*contineo*], *adj.*,
continuous, successive: **dies (suc-**
cessive)

cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly, meeting;
address, harangue

cōntrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*,
opposite, contrary to, against: **cōn-**
tra atque, contrary to what *etc.*

cōntrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus,
trans., draw together, gather to-
gether, contract, make smaller

contrārius — cotidiē

- contrārius**, -a, -um [*contra*], *adj.*, opposite, contrary: *ex contrario*, on the contrary; *in contrariam partem*, in the opposite direction
contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute, quarrel. — *Plur.*, grounds of quarrel
- contuli**, *see cōferō*
- contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, outrage, insult, reproach, affront. — *Fig.*, violence (*of waves*)
- convallis**, -is, *f.*, valley (*inclosed on all sides*)
- conveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, *trans. and intrans.*, come together, meet, assemble; agree upon. — *With acc.*, meet, come to. — *Also, of things*, be agreed on, be fitting, be necessary: *convenit, impers.*, it is agreed
- conventus**, -ūs [*convento*], *m.*, assembly
- convertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versus, *trans.*, turn about, turn, change: *signa* (change front, wheel); *conversa signa bipartito intulerunt*, wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions; *conversa signa in hostes inferre*, face about and charge the enemy
- Convictolitavis**, -is, *m.*, a young Hæduan nobleman
- convincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victus, *trans.*, prove, make good (*a charge etc.*): *avaritia ei convicta est*, he has been found guilty of avarice
- convocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, call together, summon, call
- cōrior**, -oriri, -ortus, *dep., intrans.*, arise, spring up, break out (*of a war*)
- cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, abundance, plenty, supply. — *Plur.*, resources, supplies, forces
- cōpiōsus**, -a, -um [*copia*], *adj.*, well supplied, wealthy
- cōpula**, -ae, *f.*, grappling hook
- cor**, *cordis*, *n.*, heart: *cordi esse*, be dear
- cōram**, *adv., and prep. with abl.*, face to face, present, in person, in the presence of
- Corinthus**, -i, *f.*, Corinth, a city in Greece
- Coriosolitēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aremoric Gaul
- corium**, -i, *n.*, hide, skin
- Cornēlius**, -i, *m.*, L. Cornelius, consul in 193 B.C.
- cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, horn. — *Fig.*, wing (*of an army*)
- corōna**, -ae, *f.*, garland, wreath, crown: *sub corona*, at auction (*the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction*)
- corpus**, -oris, *n.*, the body, the person. — *Also*, a body (*dead*)
- corrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, *trans.*, destroy, ruin, corrupt, bribe
- cortex**, -icis, *m. (also f.)*, bark
- Cōrus**, -i, *m.*, northwest wind
- cōtēs**, -is, *f.*, rock, reef
- cotidiānus**, -a, -um [*cotidie*], *adj.*, daily
- cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day

Cotta — cunctātiō

Cotta, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, L. Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar, slain by the Gauls

Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Carnutes

Cotus, -ī, *m.*, a young Hæduan nobleman

crassitūdō, -inis [*crassus*, thick], *f.*, thickness

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*: 1. M. Licinius Crassus, consul with Pompey, 55 B. C.; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. P. Crassus (called *adulescens*, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. M. Crassus, another son of the triumvir, quæstor, 54 B. C., in Cæsar's army

crātēs, -is, *f.*, wickerwork, fascine (*a bundle of sticks used to strengthen earthworks in fortification*)

creātus, -a, -um, *p. p. of creō*

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, numerous, frequent

crēdō, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus*, *trans. and intrans.*, trust, intrust, believe, suppose

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, burn, consume: *igni cremari*, be burned to death

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, create. — *Esp.*, elect, choose, appoint

Creōn, -ontis, *m.*, a king of Corinth

Crēs, **Crētis**, *m.*, a Cretan. — *As adj.*, Cretan

crēscō, *crēscere*, *crēvī*, *crētus*, *intrans.*, grow, increase, swell (*of a river*), increase in influence (*of a man*), grow powerful

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete, a large island southeast of Greece

Crētēnsis, -e [*Creta*], *adj.*, Cretan. — *Masc. as noun*, Cretan

crēvisset, *see cresco*

cruciātus, -ūs [*crucio*, torture, *from crux*, cross], *m.*, torture

crūdēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel

crūdēlitās, -ātis [*crudelis*, cruel], *f.*, cruelty

crūdēlīter, *adv.*, cruelly, with cruelty

crūs, **crūris**, *n.*, leg

cubīle, -is [*cubo*, lie down], *n.*, resting place, bed, lair

culmen, -inis, *n.*, height, top, summit, roof

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault, blame, guilt

cultūra, -ae, *f.*, cultivation: *agri cultura*, agriculture

cultus, -ūs [*colo*], *m.*, cultivation; civilization, manner of life

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with

cum, *conj.*, *usually with subjv.*, when, whenever, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although: **cum . . . tum**, while . . . so also, not only . . . but also; **cum primum**, as soon as

cumulus, -ī, *m.*, pile, heap

cunctātiō, -ōnis [*cunctor*], *f.*, hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight

cunctor — decem

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., intrans.*, hesitate: non cunctari quin, have no hesitation in *etc.*

cūctus, -a, -um [*conunctus*], *adj.*, all, all together

cuneātim [*cuneus*, wedge], *adv.*, in the shape of a wedge

cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; mine

cupidē [*cupidus*], *adv.*, eagerly, zealously, earnestly

cupiditās, -ātis [*cupidus*], *f.*, desire, eagerness, greed

cupidus, -a, -um [*cupio*], *adj.*, eager, desirous, fond of, ambitious (for)

cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, *trans. and intrans.*, be eager (for), be anxious, desire (*stronger than volo*). — *With dat.*, wish well to, be zealous for

cūr, *adv.*, why (*interrog. and rel.*)

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, anxiety, attention

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, take care, provide for. — *With gerundive*, cause (*to be done*), have (*done*)

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, *intrans.*, run

cursus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot (*cf. essedum*)

cursus, -ūs [*curro*], *m.*, running, speed, a run, a course (*space or direction run*): cursum adaequare, keep up with; cursu incitato or magno, at full speed

custōdia, -ae [*custos*], *f.*, custody, guard (*state of being guarded*). — *Plur. (concretely)*, guards, keepers

custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [*custos*], *trans.*, guard

custōs, -ōdis, *c.*, guard, watchman, keeper, spy

Cŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Cyrenæan.

— *Masc. as noun*, Cyrenæan

Cyzicus, -ī, *f.*, a city in Asia Minor

D [*half of CIO*, thousand], *Roman numeral* for five hundred

D., *abbr. for Decimus*

d., *abbr. for diem*

Dācus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Dacian. — *Masc. plur.*, the Dacians, a people living north of the lower Danube

damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, find guilty, condemn

Dānuvius, -ī, *m.*, the Danube, flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea

datus, -a, -um, *p.p. of dō*

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, down from, off from. *Hence*, qua de causa, for which reason. — *Esp. in partitive sense*, out of, of: pauci de nostris. — *Also*, about, of (*about*), in regard to, concerning, for. — *In expressions of time*, just after, about: de tertia vigilia. — *In composition*, away, off, down, through

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus [*de-habeo*], *trans.*, owe, be bound, ought, must. — *Pass.*, be due, be owing

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, weaken, cripple

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intrans.*, retire, withdraw, withdraw from. — *Esp. (from life)*, die
decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten

dēceptus — dēfetiscor

dēceptus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *decipio*
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus,
trans. and intrans., decide, de-
 termine, decree, order; decide by
 battle, fight out, fight

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and*
intrans., contend (*so as to close*
the contest), decide the issue,
 carry on war, fight (*a general*
engagement)

dēcessus, -ūs, *m.*, withdrawal, de-
 parture: *aestus* (ebb, fall)

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, *no p.p.* [*de-*
cado], *intrans.*, fall (*from a*
horse)

decimus, -a, -um [*decem*], *adj.*, tenth
Decimus, -ī [*decimus*], *m.*, a Roman
praenomen

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*de-*
cipio], *trans.*, beguile, deceive

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, make
 plain, declare, show

dēclivis, -e [*de-clivus*, slope], *adj.*,
 sloping down, inclined. — *Neut.*
plur. as noun, slopes

dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, decree, decision

dēcrētus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *decerno*

decumānus, -a, -um [*decimus*], *adj.*,
 belonging to the tenth: *porta* (the
 rear gate of a camp, where the
 tenth cohort was posted)

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, commander (*of*
a decuria of cavalry, a small
squadron)

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -curri,
 -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run down, run
 away, hurry off

dēdecus, -oris, *n.*, disgrace, dishonor

dēditicius, -a, -um [*dedo*], *adj.*,
 surrendered. — *Plur. as noun*,
 prisoners (*taken by surrender*)

dēditiō, -ōnis [*dedo*], *f.*, surrender

dēditus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *dedo*

dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, *trans.*, give
 over; surrender, give up, devote.
 — *In pass. or with reflex.*, sur-
 render one's self, submit

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*,
 lead down, lead off, lead away, take
 away (*of men*); conduct: *re in*
controversiam deducta (coming to
 etc.). — *Esp.*, launch (*of ships*);
 marry (*of women*)

dēfatigātiō, -ōnis [*defatigo*], *f.*, ex-
 haustion

dēfatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*,
 wear out, exhaust

dēfectiō, -ōnis [*deficio*], *f.*, falling
 away, revolt

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus,
trans., ward off, defend one's self
 against; defend, protect

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [*defendo*], *f.*, defense

dēfēnsor, -ōris [*defendo*], *m.*, de-
 fender; means of defense, defense

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr.*,
trans., carry down, carry away,
 carry, take, bring, land (*of ships*).
 — *Pass.*, be borne down or on,
 drift (*of ships*), turn aside. —
Fig., report, lay before; offer,
 confer

dēfessus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *defetiscor*

dēfetiscor, -fetisci, -fessus, *dep., in-*
trans., crack open. — **dēfessus**, -a,
 -um, *p.p. as adj.*, exhausted

dēficiō — dēmō

- dēficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*de-facio*], *trans. and intrans.*, fail, revolt, abandon (*with ab*): *animo* (despond)
- dēfigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, *trans.*, drive down, plant, set, fasten
- dēfixus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of dēfigo*
- dēfluō**, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *intrans.*, flow apart, divide (*of a river*)
- dēfore**, *see* desum
- dēfōrmis**, -e [*de-forma*], *adj.*, uncomely, unshapely, ugly
- dēfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, fly from, avoid, run away
- dēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*de-iacio*], *trans.*, cast down, cast, drive out, dislodge, kill (*pass.*, fall), deprive: *ea spe delecti*, disappointed in this hope
- dēiectus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of deicio*
- dēiectus**, -ūs [*deicio*], *m.*, declivity, slope
- dēinceps**, *adv.*, in succession
- dēinde**, *adv.*, then, next
- dēlābor**, -lābī, -lapsus, *intrans.*, slip down, descend, fall
- dēlātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of defero*
- dēlectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, delight. — *Pass.*, take delight, delight
- dēlēctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of deligo* (-ligere)
- dēlēctus**, -ūs [*deligo*, pick out], *m.*, levy, conscription
- dēleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *trans.*, blot out, wipe out; annihilate, destroy
- dēlētus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of deleo*
- dēliberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, discuss, consult, deliberate
- dēlictum**, -ī [*delinquo*, fail], *n.*, offense
- dēligātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of deligo* (-āre)
- dēligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*de-ligo*, bind], *trans.*, tie down, moor, tie
- dēligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*de-lego*, choose], *trans.*, choose out, select. — **dēlēctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, chosen, picked
- dēlitēscō**, -litēscere, -lituī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, hide away, hide
- Delphī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a town in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo
- dēmentia**, -ae [*demens*, crazy], *f.*, madness, folly
- dēmessus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of demeto*
- dēmetō**, -metere, -messuī, -messus, *trans.*, reap, cut down
- dēmigrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, move away, emigrate
- dēminuō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, diminish, lessen, detract
- dēmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send down, let down, let fall. — *In pass. or with reflex.*, let one's self down, descend. — *Fig.*, despond (*se animo*), be discouraged: *animos* (lose courage). — **dēmīssus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, bowed, low
- dēmō**, **dēmere**, **dēmpsī**, **dēemptus** [*de-emo*, take], *trans.*, take down, take off, remove

dēmōnstrō — dēsiliō

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
point out, show, state, speak of,
make known

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*,
delay, retard

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length

dēnegō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, refuse

dēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, ten each, ten (*on each side, or in sets of ten*)

dēnique, *adv.*, at last; finally: multo
denique die, not till late

dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, thick, crowded,
dense

dēnūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
declare, warn

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus,
trans., drive off, drive away

dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *trans.*,
lose, be deprived of

dēpereō, -perire, -perī, -peritūrus,
irr., intrans., be lost

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
trans., lay down, lay aside,
place, deposit; give up, lose,
abandon

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*,
ravage, lay waste

dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
carry off, carry away, remove

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, *no p.p., trans.*, demand, call for

dēpositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of depono*

dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*, mediator: eo
deprecatore, by his mediation

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*

and intrans., beg off, pray for
pardon, ask for quarter

dēpugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*,
fight it out, fight decisively

dēpulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of depello*

dērēctō, *adv.*, straight: ad perpen-
diculum (perpendicularly)

dērēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of derigo*

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [*de-
rego*], *trans.*, straighten out. — dē-
rēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*,
straight, perpendicular

dēripīō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*de-
rapio*], *trans.*, snatch away, tear
away, pull down

dērogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, take
away, withdraw

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scen-
sūrus [*de-scando*, climb], *intrans.*,
descend, come down, have recourse
to, adopt (*with ad*)

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, *trans.*,
cut off

dēsērō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, *trans.*,
abandon, forsake. — dēsertus, -a,
-um, *p.p. as adj.*, deserted, solitary

dēsertor, -ōris, *m.*, deserter

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
feel the want of, desire, miss, find
missing, lose

dēsidia, -ae [*deses*, idle], *f.*, idleness,
sloth

dēsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
mark out, indicate, mean

dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultūrus [*de-
salio*, leap], *intrans.*, leap down,
leap off, jump out, jump over-
board

dēsistō — diciō

- dēsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, -stiturus, *intrans.*, cease, stop, desist from, abandon
- dēspectus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of despicio*
- dēspectus**, -ūs [*despicio*], *m.*, a view down, view (*from a height*): oppidum haberet dēspectūs (sheer precipices)
- dēspērō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *intrans.*, cease to hope, despair. — **dēspērātus**, -a, -um, *as pass.*, despaired of. — *Also as adj.*, desperate
- dēspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [*de-spectio*, look], *trans. and intrans.*, look down, look down on; despise
- dēspoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, strip, deprive
- dēstinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, fasten, make fast, make firm
- dēstiti**, *see desisto*
- dēstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutus [*de-statuo*], *trans.*, set down, abandon, desert
- dēstrictus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of destringo*
- dēstringō**, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictus, *trans.*, draw, unsheathe
- dēsum**, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *irr., intrans.*, be wanting, fail: equites Romanis desunt, the Romans lack horsemen, the Romans are without horsemen
- dēsuper**, *adv.*, from above
- dēterior**, -ius, *adj.*, inferior, worse: deteriora vectigalia facere (im-pair)
- dēterreō**, -terrere, -terruī, -territus, *trans.*, frighten off, deter, prevent
- dētineō**, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [*de-teneo*], *trans.*, delay, stop
- dētrāctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of detraho*
- dētrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag off, draw off, snatch (*away*), take away, take off, withdraw
- dētrectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, avoid, shun
- dētrimentum**, -i [*detero*, rub off], *n.*, loss, injury; defeat, disaster
- dēturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*de-turbo*, disturb], *trans.*, drive off (in confusion)
- deus**, -i (*nom. plur. deī or dī, dat. or abl. plur. deīs or diīs*), *m.*, a god
- dēvehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, *trans.*, carry away, bring along
- dēveniō**, -venire, -veni, -venturus, *intrans.*, come (*to a place, without having planned to come there*), get to
- dēvincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victus, *trans.*, conquer completely, overcome
- dēvōtus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of devoveo*
- dēvoveō**, -vovēre, -vovi, -vōtus, *trans.*, vow. — **dēvōtus**, -i, *m.*, *p.p. as noun*, a sworn follower
- dexter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right (*on the right hand*). — **dextra**, -ae (*sc. manus*), *f.*, the right hand
- Diablintēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in northwestern Gaul
- Diāna**, -ae, *f.*, goddess of the moon and of hunting, sister of Apollo
- diciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, sway

dicō — dirimō

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, adjudge, assign: *se in clientelam* (bind); *se in servitutem* (surrender)

dicō, **dicere**, **dixī**, **dictus**, *trans. and intrans.*, say, speak, name; appoint, fix; *ius* (administer); **sententiam** (give)

dictātor, -ōris [**dicō**], *m.*, dictator
dictiō, -ōnis [**dicō**], *f.*, a speaking, a pleading: **causae** (pleading one's cause, trial)

dictum, -ī [*n. p. p. of dicō*], *n.*, statement, command: **dicto audiens esse alicui**, be obedient, obey

diducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [**dis-ducō**], *trans.*, draw apart, separate, divide

diēs, -ēī, *m.* (*rarely f. in some uses*), day: *in diēs*, from day to day; *diem ex die ducere*, put off a thing day after day; *ad diem*, on the day

differō, **differre**, **distulī**, **dilātus** [**dis-ferō**], *irr., trans. and intrans.*, carry in different directions, scatter; postpone, defer; differ

difficilis, -e [**dis-facilis**], *adj.*, not easy, difficult: *iter* (hard to pass over)

difficultās, -ātis [**difficilis**], *f.*, difficulty, trouble

difficulter [**difficilis**], *adv.*, with difficulty

diffidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum [**dis-fido**], *semi-dep., intrans.*, distrust

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [**dis-fundo**], *trans.*, spread out

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger: **pollex** (thumb); finger's breadth

dignitās, -ātis [**dignus**], *f.*, worth, dignity, prestige, rank

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy

diūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**dis-iudico**], *trans. and intrans.*, decide, determine

dilēctus, -a, -um, *p. p. of diligo*

dilēctus, -ūs [**diligo**], *m.*, selection, levy

diligenter, *adv.*, carefully, with care, with exactness: **parum diligenter**, too carelessly

diligentia, -ae [**diligens**, careful], *f.*, care, pains, diligence

diligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [**dis-lego**, choose], *trans.*, love, be fond of

lūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, *intrans.*, grow light, dawn

dīmēsus, -a, -um, *p. p. of dimetior*

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [**dis-metior**], *dep., trans.*, measure out (*esp. of a camp*). — **dīmēnsus**, -a, -um, measured

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**dis-mico**, move to and fro], *intrans.*, fight; risk an engagement

dīmidius, -a, -um [**dis-medius**], *adj.*, half. — *Neut. as noun*, a half

dīmīttō, -mittere, -mīssī, -missus [**dis-mitto**], *trans.*, send away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon; dispatch, disband, dismiss

dirēptus, -a, -um, *p. p. of diripio*

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmtus [**dis-emo**, take], *trans.*, break up (*a conference*)

diripiō — distō

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [*dirapio*, seize], *trans.*, plunder, pil-lage, ravage

dis-, di- (dir-, dif-), adv. in com-pounds, apart, asunder, in differ-ent directions, not, un-

Dis, Ditis, m., Pluto (the god of the underworld, and so of death)

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, *intrans.*, withdraw, depart, retire, leave (*with ab*), go away: *ab officio* (fail in one's duty); *spes hostibus* (forsake, fail)

discessus, -ūs, m., departure, with-drawal

disciplina, -ae [*disco*], *f.*, instruction, a system (*of doctrine etc.*), a course of instruction

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*dis-claudio*], *trans.*, keep apart, separate, divide

discō, discere, didici, no p.p., trans. and intrans., learn

discrimen, -inis, n., crisis, risk, peril, danger

discussus, -a, -um, p.p. of discutio
discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [*dis-quatio*, shake], shake apart, drive away, clear away, remove

disiciō, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [*dis-iacio*], *trans.*, disperse, ruin, destroy, tear off (*yards*). — **disiectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.**, scattered, broken, in disorder

disiectus, -a, -um, p.p. of disicio
dispālātus, -a, -um, adj., wandering, straggling

dispār, -paris, adj., unequal, ill-matched

dispergō, -spargere, -sparsi, -persus [*dis-spargo*, scatter], *trans.*, scatter, disperse

dispersus, -a, -um, p.p. of dispergo
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, station (*variously*), array (*at several posts*)

dispositus, -a, -um, p.p. of dispono
disputātiō, -ōnis [*disputo*], *f.*, discus-sion, dispute

disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., discuss, investigate

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [*dissentio*], *f.*, dis-agreement, dissension

dissentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsurus, *intrans.*, disagree (*ab, with*)

dissideō, -sidere, -sēdi [*dis-sedeo*], *intrans.*, sit apart; disagree, have a quarrel (*with ab*)

dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*dis-simulo*, make like], *trans. and intrans.*, conceal, disguise; dis-semble

dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., scatter, disperse: *dissipati*, strag-gling troops

dissuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsus [*dis-suadeo*, advise], *trans.*, advise to the contrary

distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [*dis-teneo*], *trans.*, keep apart, cut off (*in military sense*), isolate

distō, -stāre [*dis-sto*], *intrans.*, stand apart, be distant: *quantum iunc-tura distabat*, as far as the dis-tance between *etc.*

distrahō — domicilium

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag asunder, separate
distribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, assign, distribute, divide
distringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus [*dis-stringo*], *trans.*, engage, occupy

distulī, *see* differo

dītissimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* dives
dīū, *adv.*, for some time, long: **tam diu**, so long; **quam diu**, as long as; **diutius**, any longer, rather long, too long; **diūtissimē**, for the longest time

diurnus, -a, -um [*dies*], *adj.*, of the day, daily: **nocturnis diurnisque itineribus** (by night and day)

diūtinus, -a, -um [*dīū*], *adj.*, long continued

diūtius, **diūtissimē**, *comp. and superl. of* dīū

diūturnitās, -ātis [*diuturnus*], *f.*, length of time, long continuance

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long-continued, long (*in time*)

dīversus, *p.p. of* divertō

dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [*dis-vertō*], *intrans.*, separate. — **dīversus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, separate, distant, diverse, different

dīves, -itis, *adj.*, rich

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*: 1. A pro-Roman leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix. — 2. A leader of the Suessiones

Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, a leader of the Helvetii

dīvidō, -videre, -visī, -vīsus, *trans.*, divide, separate. — **divisus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, divided: Gallia **divisa est**

dīvinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods, divine: **res divinae**, matters of religion, religion

divisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* divido

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *irr., trans.*, give, concede, assign, grant: **eo mihi minus dubitationis datur**, I have the less hesitation; **se vento** (run before the wind); **hostes in fugam** (put to flight); **negotium uti** (employ one to *etc.*, engage one to *etc.*); **verba** (deceive, outwit)

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *trans.*, teach, show, inform

doctor, -ōris [*doceo*], *m.*, teacher

documentum, -ī [*doceo*], *n.*, warning, example

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *intrans.*, feel pain, suffer; be pained, grieve

dolor, -ōris [*doleo*], *m.*, pain, distress, indignation: **magno dolore ferre**, be very indignant; **magno esse dolori**, be a great annoyance or sorrow; *almost concrete*, grievance

dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, tricks, strata-gem

domesticus, -a, -um [*domus*], *adj.*, one's own, at home, private, personal: **bellum** (internal)

domicilium, -ī [*domus*], *n.*, house, dwelling place, home

dominor — eā

dominor, -āri, -ātus [*dominus*], *dep.*,
intrans., rule, be master

dominus, -i, *m.*, master, owner

domus, -i (-ūs), *f.*, house, home:
domī, at home; domum, home,
to one's home

Donnōtaurus, -i, *m.*, a Gallic name.
— *Esp.*, C. Valerius Donnotaurus,
a chief of the Helvii, son of
C. Valerius Caburus, and brother
of C. Valerius Procillus. The
first two names of these persons
are Roman, taken from the name
of their patron

dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*donum*, gift],
trans., present, give: civitate
aliquem donare, give a person
the rights of citizenship

dōnum, -i, *n.*, gift

dormiō, -ire, -ivi, *intrans.*, sleep

dōs, dōtis [*dō*], *f.*, marriage gift,
dowry

dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, dragon, serpent

Druidēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Druids,
the priests of the ancient Gallic
religion

Dubis, -is, *m.*, the Doubs, a river of
eastern Gaul, flowing from the
Jura Mountains

dubitātiō, -ōnis [*dubito*], *f.*, doubt,
hesitation: eo mihi minus dubita-
tionis datur, I feel the less doubt
or hesitation

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [*dubius*],
trans., doubt, have doubt, feel
doubtful; hesitate

dubium, -i, *n.*, doubt: sine dubio,
undoubtedly

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful: est
dubium, there is doubt

ducenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj. plur.*,
two hundred

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, *trans.*,
lead, draw, bring, take, spin out;
beguile along, keep waiting; con-
sider. — *With or without in ma-*
trimonium, marry (*of the man*)

dum, *conj.*, while, so long as; till, until
Dumnorix, -igis, *m.*, an anti-Roman
leader of the Hædui, brother of
Diviciacus

duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj. plur.*, two
duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, twelve
duodecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*,
twelfth

duodēviginti [*duo de viginti*], *indecl.*
num. adj., eighteen

duplex, -plicis, *adj.*, twofold, double:
acies (in two divisions)

duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*duplex*],
trans., double

dūritia, -ae [*durus*], *f.*, hardness,
hardship

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, severe,
difficult: si quid erat durius (any
severe contest)

Dūrus, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name.
— *Esp.*, Q. Laberius Durus, a
military tribune in Cæsar's army,
killed in Britain

dux, ducis [*duco*], *c.*, leader, guide,
commander

ē, shortened form of *ex*, *prep. with*
abl.

eā, *adv.*, that way, in that direction

Eburōnēs — elephantus

Eburōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Belgian tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine

Ebuovicēs, -um, *m. plur.*, in full **Aulerci Ebuovices**, a Gallic tribe south of the Seine not far from the coast

ēdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, *trans.*, proclaim, announce, appoint

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, *no p.p.* [*ex-disco*], *trans.*, learn by heart, commit to memory

ēditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of edo*

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*ex-do* (put)], *trans.*, put forth, utter: **exempla cruciatusque** (make an example by inflicting severe torture). —

ēditus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, elevated, raised, high

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docui, -doctus [*ex-doceo*], *trans.*, explain, inform, instruct

ēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [*ex-duco*], *trans.*, lead out, draw (*a sword*)

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-femina*], *trans.*, enervate, weaken: **animos** (enfeeble)

effērō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [*ex-fero*], *irr.*, *trans.*, carry out, bring out, carry away; spread abroad, make known; puff up, elate

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferui [*ex-fervesco*], *intrans.*, boil up, boil over

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*ex-facio*], *trans.*, make, enable, cause, produce: **ut praeberent** (make them

afford); **ut sint laboris** (make capable of); **ut posset** (make possible); **classem** (get together, construct)

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [*ex-fodio*], *trans.*, dig out, gouge out

effossus, -a, -um, *p.p. of effodio*

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [*ex-fugio*], *trans.*, escape, fly from

egēns, -entis, *see egeo*

egeō, egēre, egui, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, need, be in want of, lack. — **egēns**, -entis, *pres. p. as adj.*, needy, destitute

egestās, -ātis [*egens*], *f.*, poverty, destitution

ego, **meī**, *pron.*, *1st person*, I, me. — *Plur.*, **nōs**, we, us

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus [*ex-gradior*, *step*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, go out, come forth, march out, move beyond: **nave, e navi** (land, disembark); **in terram egredior**, go ashore

ēgregiē [*egregius*], *adv.*, remarkably, finely, extremely well

ēgregius, -a, -um [*ex-grex*, *herd*], *adj.*, remarkable, eminent, notable, superior, excellent

ēgressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of egredior*

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ex-iacio*], *trans.*, cast out, drive out. — *With reflex.*, rush out, rush

eiusmodī, *as adj. phrase*, of this kind, of such a kind, such

ēlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of effero*

ēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of eligo*

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant

ēligō — errō

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus [*ex-lego*, choose], *trans.*, pick out, select. —

ēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, picked (*troops*)

Elusātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [*ex-migro*, depart], *intrans.*, remove (*permanently*), emigrate

ēminus [*ex-manus*], *adv.*, at a distance, at long range

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [*ex-mitto*], *trans.*, let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl. — *Pass.*, or *with reflex.*, rush out

emō, emere, ēmi, ēemptus, *trans.*, buy, purchase

ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus [*ex-nascor*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, spring out, grow out

ēnātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of enascor*

enim, *conj.*, for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for that matter even . . . not (*but neque enim . . . neque is simply for neither . . . nor*)

ēnumerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-numero*], *trans.*, count out, enumerate, relate

ēnūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-nuntio*], *trans.*, report, disclose, reveal

eō, ire, ii, itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go, pass, march, advance, proceed

eō, *n. abl.*, see is

eō [*old dat. of is*], *adv.*, thither, there, to that place

eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place, in the same place

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, saddled, caparisoned: equites (riding on saddles)

ephippium, -i, *n.*, horsecloth (*with cushions*), saddle (*less complete than ours*)

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter

Eporēdorix, -igis, *m.*: 1. A nobleman of the Hædui (vii, chap. 63). — 2. Perhaps a different Hæduan chief (vii, chap. 67)

eques, -itis [*equus*], *m.*, horseman, rider. — *Plur.*, cavalry. — *Esp.* (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, who were next in rank to the senate*). So also, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*)

equester, -tris, -tre [*equus*], *adj.*, of knights, of cavalry

equitātus, -ūs [*equus*], *m.*, cavalry

equus, -i, *m.*, horse

ērēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of erigo*

ēreptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of eripio*

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward

Ēridanus, -i, *m.*, a river

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [*ex-rego*], *trans.*, set up straight, raise up, arouse, encourage. — ērēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, high, upright

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiui, -reptus [*ex-rapio*; seize], *trans.*, snatch away, deprive, take from, rescue: se eripere ne, save one's self from doing a thing

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *intrans.*, wander, stray; be mistaken

error — excidō

error, -ōris [*erro*], error, mistake, delusion

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [*erumpo*, burst], *trans. and intrans.*, cause to burst out; burst out, make a sally

ēruptiō, -ōnis [*erumpo*], *f.*, a breaking out, sortie, rush

essedārius, -ī [*essedum*], *m.*, chariot fighter

essedum, -ī, *n.*, chariot (of Gaulish pattern; used in war especially by the Britons)

Esuvii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe in northwestern Gaul

et, *conj.*, and: et . . . et, both . . . and

etiam, *adv.*, also, even, even now, yet: quin etiam, nay more

etiamtum [*etiam-tum*], *adv.*, even then

Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, a country of western Italy

etsi, *conj.*, even if, although, though

Eumenēs, -is, *m.*, king of Pergamum (in Asia Minor), 197-159 B.C.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus [*ex-vado*, go], *intrans.*, go forth, escape

ēvello, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus [*ex-vello*, pluck], *trans.*, pull out, pluck out

ēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [*ex-venio*], *intrans.*, come out, turn out, happen

ēventus, -ūs [*evenio*], *m.*, result, issue, fate, success

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-voco*],

trans., call out, call forth, summon. — **ēvocātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj. and noun*, reenlisted veteran

ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [*ex-volo*, fly], *intrans.*, fly out, rush out

ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from; in consequence of, according to: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march (starting from it); ex vinculis, in chains (doing something from them); so, ex equis, on horseback. — In composition, out, from, off, completely, up, after, un-

exāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of exigo*

exagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-agito*, freq. of ago, drive], *trans.*, harass, persecute

exāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*examen*, tongue of a balance], *trans.*, weigh

exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-animus*], *trans.*, deprive of breath, kill. — **exanimātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, out of breath, exhausted

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsus, *intrans.*, be inflamed, be provoked, rage

exaudiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *trans.*, hear distinctly

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intrans.*, go out, withdraw, retire

excello, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus, *trans. and intrans.*, surpass, excel

excidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [*ex-caedo*], *trans.*, cut out, cut off, break down (gates)

exciō — expiō

- exciō**, -cīre, -cīvī, -cītus, *trans.*, call out, summon
- excipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*ex-capio*], *trans.*, take up, receive; follow, come after; **vada** (meet, be exposed to, *of ships*)
- excitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, rouse, stimulate; raise (*towers*), kindle (*fire*)
- excludō**, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*ex-claudio*], *trans.*, shut out, cut off
- excōgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, think out, invent
- excruciō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, torture, torment
- excubitor**, -ōris [*excubo*], *m.*, sentinel
- excubō**, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubiturus, *intrans.*, lie outside; stand guard
- excursiō**, -ōnis [*ex-curro*, run], *f.*, sally, sortie, rush
- excūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, excuse, exculpate
- exemplum**, -ī, *n.*, precedent, example
- exeō**, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go forth, go out, emigrate
- exerceō**, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus [*ex-arceo*, drive off], *trans.*, train, practice, exercise; rouse, exasperate; enforce (*a law*)
- exercitātiō**, -ōnis [*exerceo*], *f.*, practice, exercise
- exercitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*exerceo*], *trans.*, train, practice. — **exercitātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, trained
- exercitus**, -ūs [*exerceo*], *m.*, army
- exhauriō**, -haurīre, -hausi, -haustus, *trans.*, drain off; carry off (*earth*); wear out, exhaust
- exigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus [*ex-ago*], *trans.*, pass, finish: aestas exacta erat (was ended)
- exiguē** [*exiguus*], *adv.*, scantily, meagerly, barely
- exiguitās**, -ātis [*exiguus*], *f.*, scantiness, meagerness
- exiguus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, scanty, small, meager
- eximius**, -a, -um [*ex-emo*, take], *adj.*, exceptional, remarkable; very high (*opinio*)
- existimātiō**, -ōnis [*existimo*], *f.*, estimate, opinion
- existimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ex-aestimo*], *trans. and intrans.*, estimate, believe, think, suppose, judge, deem, imagine
- exitus**, -ūs [*cf. exeo*], *m.*, outlet, exit; end, last part; result, turn (*of fortune*), outcome
- expediō**, -ire, -ivī, -ītus [*ex-pes*], *trans.*, set free, free, extricate; arrange, station (*of troops*). — **expeditus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, quick, active, light-armed (*of troops*), in light marching order
- expeditiō**, -ōnis [*expedio*], *f.*, expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached)
- expellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive out; dispel
- experior**, -periri, -pertus, *dep.*, *trans.*, experience, try: fortunam (risk, try)
- expiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, expiate: incommodum (wipe out, make good, retrieve)

expleō — faber

- expleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, *trans.*, fill out, fill up, complete
- explicō**, -plicāre, -plicāvi (-plicui), -plicātus (-plicitus), *trans.*, explain, describe, state
- explōrator**, -ōris, *m.*, scout
- explōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, investigate, search, examine.—**explōrātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, assured, certain: *explorata victoria*, being assured of victory; *habere omnia explorata*, know certainly
- expōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, place out, set forth: *exercitum* (disembark, also draw up, array)
- exportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, carry out, carry away
- exposcō**, -poscere, -poposci, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, demand
- exprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressus [*ex-presso*], *trans.*, force out; raise up
- expugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, take (*by storm*), capture
- expulsus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of expello*
- exquirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus [*ex-quaero*], *trans.*, search out, ask for
- exquisitus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of exquiro*
- exsequor**, -sequi, -secutus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow out, follow up: *ius* (enforce, execute)
- exsiliō**, -siliire, -silui [*ex-silio*], *intrans.*, leap out
- existō**, -sistere, -stiti, -stiturus, *intrans.*, stand out, rise up, come out: *malacia* (ensue)
- expectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, look out for, wait to see, expect, anticipate; wait
- exstinctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of exstinguo*
- exstinguō**, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctus, *trans.*, extinguish, destroy
- extō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, *intrans.*, stand out
- extructus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of exstruo*
- exstruō**, -struere, -struxi, -structus, *trans.*, heap up, build up
- exsul**, -ulus, *m.*, exile
- exter**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, outer, outside.—**extrēmus**, -a, -um, *superl.*, farthest, extreme, last: *extremi*, as noun, the rear; *ad extremum*, till the last, at last
- extimēscō**, -timēscere, -timui, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, fear greatly, dread
- extrā**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, outside, out of
- extrāctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of extraho*
- extrahō**, -trahere, -traxi, -tractus, *trans.*, drag out, draw out
- extrēmus**, see *exter*
- extrūdō**, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsus, *trans.*, shut out (*by dikes*)
- exuō**, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, *trans.*, strip off: *armis exutis*, deprived of arms
- exūrō**, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstus, *trans.*, burn up
- faber**, -brī [*facio*] (*m. of faber*, skillful), mechanic, engineer (*in an army*)

Fabius — felicitās

Fabius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.

— *Esp.*: 1. Q. Fabius Maximus, consul and dictator in the Second Punic War. — 2. Q. Fabius Labeo, consul in 183 B.C. — 3. Q. Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C. on the Rhone. — 4. C. Fabius, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. — 5. L. Fabius, a centurion

facilis, -e [*facio*], *adj.*, easy, convenient. — **facile**, *n. as adv.*, easily, conveniently

facinus, -oris [*facio*], *n.*, deed; misdeed, crime

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, *trans. and intrans.*, make, do, act. — *Used in a great variety of senses as in English*: coniurationem (form); sementes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed). — *So in pass.*, happen, result, occur: non sine causa fit, it is not without reason; fit ut, the result is that. — **factum**, -i, *n. of p.p.*, half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, etc. — **fiō**, **fieri**, *as pass. in all senses*

factiō, -ōnis [*facio*], *f.*, party, faction

factum, -i, *see facio*

facultās, -ātis [*facilis*], *f.*, ease, facility; chance, opportunity; means, resources, supply

fāgus, -i, *f.*, beech (tree or wood)

Falernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Falernian (of the Falernus ager in Campania)

fallō, **fallere**, **fefelli**, **falsus**, *trans. and intrans.*, deceive: spes aliquem (disappoint). — **falsus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, deceived; false, unfounded

falx, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle, pruning hook. — *Also*, hook (of similar form for demolishing walls)

fāma, -ae, *f.*, speech, common talk, reputation; rumor, story

famēs, -is (*abl. famē, fifth decl.*), *f.*, hunger, starvation: famem tolerare, keep from starving, appease hunger

familia, -ae, *f.*, collection of attendants, household; kin, kin and their dependents

familiāris, -e [*familia*], *adj.*, of the household: res (estate, property). — *Esp. as noun*, friend

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed)

fastigātē, *adv.*, sloping

fastigium, -i [*fastigo*], *n.*, elevation, slope, descent

fastigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring to a point. — *Esp.*, fastigātus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, inclined, sloping

fātum, -i [*for, speak*], *n.*, fate, lot, destiny

faucēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, throat, jaws

faveō, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautūrus**, *intrans.*, favor, be favorable to

fax, **facis**, *f.*, torch, firebrand, fire

fefellisse, *see fallo*

felicitās, -ātis [*felix, lucky*], *f.*, good fortune, good luck

fēliciter — Flamininus

fēliciter [*felix*, lucky], *adv.*, luckily, successfully

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman

femur, -inis *or* -oris, *n.*, thigh

ferāx, -ācis [*fero*], *adj.*, fertile

ferē, *adv.*, almost, about; usually, for the most part. — *With negatives*, hardly

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *irr.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, bear, carry, endure, tolerate: **magno dolore ferre**, be much pained, take it very hard; **moleste (graviter) ferre**, be annoyed at, take amiss, be indignant at. — *Also*, assert, declare, say

ferrāmentum, -ī [*ferrum*], *n.*, tool (of iron), implement

ferrāria, -ae [*ferrum*], *f.*, iron mine

ferreus, -a, -um [*ferrum*], *adj.*, of iron, iron (made of iron)

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, steel, sword

fertilis, -e [*fero*], *adj.*, fertile, fruitful

fertilitās, -ātis [*fertilis*], *f.*, fertility, productiveness

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, ferocious

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*ferveo-facio*], *trans.*, heat, heat red-hot

ferveō, **fervēre**, **ferbuī**, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, glow, be hot, be red-hot

fibula, -ae [*figo*, fasten], *f.*, clasp, buckle

ficilis, -e [*fungo*], *adj.*, made of clay, earthen

fictus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *fungo*

fidēlis, -e [*fides*], *adj.*, faithful

fidēs, -ei, *f.*, promise, pledge: **fidem**

facere, give assurance. — *Also*, good faith, fidelity, pledge, promise; belief; **Caesaris fidem sequi** (come under, surrender one's self to); **in fidem se permittere (venire)**, place themselves under the protection of *etc.*

fidūcia, -ae [*fidus*, trusty], *f.*, confidence, reliance

figūra, -ae, *f.*, shape, form

filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter

filius, -ī, *m.*, son

figō, **ingere**, **finxī**, **fictus**, *trans.*, mold; invent, contrive. — **fictus**, -a, -um, *p.p.* as *adj.*; *n. plur.* as *noun*, fictions

finiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus [*finis*], *trans.*, set bounds to, limit, measure

finis, -is, *m.*, limit, end: **quem ad finem**, as far as. — *Plur.*, territories, country

finitimus, -a, -um [*finis*], *adj.*, neighboring, adjacent. — *Masc. plur.* as *noun*, neighbors

fiō, *pass.* of *facio*

firmiter [*firmus*], *adv.*, steadily, firmly

firmitūdō, -inis [*firmus*], *f.*, solidity, strength (of resistance)

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, firm, steady

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile driver

Flaccus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, demand earnestly

Flamininus, -ī, *m.*, T. Quinctius Flamininus, Roman envoy sent

Flaminius — frumentarius

- to demand the surrender of Hannibal
- Flaminius**, -i, *m.*, C. Flaminius Nepos, consul, commander in the battle of Lake Trasimenus
- flamma**, -ae, *f.*, flame, fire
- flectō**, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexus**, *trans.*, bend, turn
- fleō**, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētus**, *trans. and intrans.*, weep; weep for
- flētus**, -ūs [*flēo*], *m.*, weeping, lamentation
- flō**, **flāre**, **flāvi**, **flātus**, *intrans.*, blow
- flōrēns**, -entis [*pres. p. of floro*], bloom], *adj.*, blooming. — *Fig.*, flourishing, prosperous, influential
- fluctus**, -ūs [*fluō*], *m.*, wave
- flūmen**, -inis [*fluō*], *n.*, river
- fluō**, **fluere**, **fluxi**, **fluxus**, *intrans.*, flow
- foederātus**, -a, -um [*foedus*], *adj.*, allied, federated
- foedus**, -eris, *n.*, treaty, league, compact
- fōns**, **fontis**, *m.*, fountain, spring
- fore**, *for* **futūrum esse**; *see sum*
- forem**, *for* **essem**; *see sum*
- foris**, -is, *f.*, door
- fōrma**, -ae, *f.*, shape, form, appearance; beauty
- fors**, **fortis**, *f.*, chance. — **forte**, *abl. as adv.*, by chance, as it happened
- forte**, *see fors*
- fortis**, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave, courageous
- fortiter** [*fortis*], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, undauntedly
- fortitūdō**, -inis [*fortis*], *f.*, bravery, prowess
- fortuitō**, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally
- fortūna**, -ae, *f.*, luck, fortune, chance, fate, lot (*one's* fortune), chances (*belli*), success (*good or bad*); *plur.*, fortunes, property
- forum**, -i, *n.*, market place
- fossa**, -ae [*fodio*, dig], *f.*, ditch, trench
- fovea**, -ae, *f.*, pitfall
- frāctus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of frango*
- frangō**, **frangere**, **frēgi**, **fractus**, *trans.*, break, wreck; break down, crush
- frāter**, -tris, *m.*, brother
- frāternus**, -a, -um [*frater*], *adj.*, of a brother, fraternal
- fraus**, **fraudis**, *f.*, deceit, fraud
- Fregellae**, -ārum, *f.*, a town of Latium
- fremitus**, -ūs [*fremo*, roar], *m.*, murmur, confused noise, roar
- frequēns**, -entis, *adj.*, crowded, numerous, in great numbers
- frētus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying on
- frigidus**, -a, -um [*frigeo*, be cold], *adj.*, cold
- frigus**, -oris [*frigeo*, be cold], *n.*, cold. — *Plur.*, cold seasons
- frōns**, **frontis**, *f.*, front, brow: a **fronte**, in front
- fructuōsus**, -a, -um [*fructus*], *adj.*, fruitful
- fructus**, -ūs, *m.* [*fruor*], crops, income, profit, returns
- frumentarius**, -a, -um [*frumentum*], *adj.*, of grain: **loca** (fruitful in grain); **res** (grain supply, provisions)

frumentātiō — Gallus

frumentātiō, -ōnis [*frumentor*], *f.*,
foraging expedition

frumentor, -ārī, -ātus [*frumentum*],
dep., intrans., forage, gather grain

frumentum, -ī [*fruur*], *n.*, grain. —
Plur., crops

fruur, frui, fructus, *dep., intrans.*,
enjoy (*abl.*)

frustrā, *adv.*, to no purpose, without
effect, in vain

frustror, -ārī, -ātus [*frustrā*], *dep.*,
trans., disappoint, deceive

frux, frūgis, *f.* [*cf. fruor*], fruit. —
Plur., crops

Fufius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile
name. *See Cita*

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight: *see* fugae man-
dare, take to flight; in fugam
dare, put to flight

fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitūrus [*fuga*],
trans. and intrans., flee, fly from,
run away. — *Fig.*, shun, avoid. —

fugiens, *pres. p. as noun*, fugitive
fugitivus, -a, -um [*fugio*], *adj.*, run-
away. — *As noun*, runaway slave

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*fuga*], *trans.*,
put to flight, rout

fūmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *intrans.*,
smoke

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke

funda, -ae, *f.*, sling

fundamentum, -ī, *n.*, foundation

funditor, -ōris [*funda*], *m.*, slinger

fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsus, *trans.*,
pour; scatter; rout

fūnebris, -e [*funus*], *adj.*, of a funeral.
— *Neut. plur. as noun*, funeral
rites

fungor, fungi, fūctus, *dep., intrans.*,
perform, discharge (*abl.*)

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope

fūnus, -eris, *n.*, death, funeral

Furius, -ī, *m.*, L. Furius, consul in
196 B.C.

furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy, fury

fūrtum, -ī [*fur*, thief], *n.*, theft, a theft

fūsilis, -e [*fundo*], molten, liquid,
soft

fūsus, *p. p. of fundo*

futūrus, *see sum*

Gabali, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic
people, dependents of the Ar-
verni

Gabinius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile
name

gaesum, -ī, *n.*, javelin

Gaius, -ī, *m.*, Caius, a Roman præ-
nomen

Galba, -ae, *m.*, a Gallic and Roman
family name. — *Esp.*, P. Sulpicius
Galba, consul in 200 B.C.

galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet (*usually of*
leather)

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, including all the
country bounded by the Rubicon,
the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the
Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean,
thus occupying all northern Italy,
France, and Belgium

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Gauls,
Gallic

gallina, -ae, *f.*, hen

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic.
— *As noun*, a Gaul, the Gauls. —
Also, a Roman family name

Garumna — grātia

Garumna, -ae, *m.*, a river of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne
Garumnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees

Gatēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people of Aquitania

gaudeō, **gaudēre**, **gāvisus**, *semi-dep., intrans.*, be delighted, rejoice

gaudium, -ī [**gaudeo**], *n.*, joy

gāvisus, -a, -um, *p.p. of gaudeo*

Geminus, -ī, *m.*, C. Servilius Geminus, consul in 217 B.C.; killed in the battle of Cannæ, 216 B.C.

Genāva, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva

generātīm [**genus**], *adv.*, by tribes

gēns, **gentis**, *f.*, tribe, clan, people

genus, -eris, *n.*, race, family (stock); kind, sort, class. — *Also, abstractly*, kind, character, nature, method (**pugnae**)

Gergovia, -ae, *f.*, a city in the land of the Arverni, in southeastern Gaul

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany, bounded by the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Germans, German

Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German. — *As noun*, a German

gerō, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus**, *trans.*, carry on, manage, wage (*war*), hold (*a magistracy*), do (*any business*). — *Pass.*, be done, go on (*of operations*): **res gestae**, exploits, operations, campaign; **gesta**, events

gestus, -a, -um, *p.p. of gero*

gignō, **gignere**, **genuī**, **genitus** [**gens**], *trans.*, bring forth, produce. —

In pass., spring up, arise

gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword

glāns, **glandis**, *f.*, nut, acorn. —

Also, ball, missile

Glaucē, -ēs (*acc.*, -ēn), *f.*, daughter of Creon king of Corinth

glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod, lump

glōria, -ae, *f.*, fame, glory

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus [**gloria**], *dep., intrans.*, glory in, boast of (*abl.*)

Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix

Gorgobina, -ae, *f.*, a city in the territory of the Hædui

Gortyniī, -ōrum, *m.*, Gortynians (of Gortyna, a city in Crete)

Gracchus, -ī, *m.*, Ti. Sempronius Gracchus, consul in 215 and 213 B.C.

Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Greeks, Greek. — *As noun*, a Greek

Grāioceli, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people of the Alps

Grāius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Graian (*referring to a section of the Alps*). —

Adj. or noun, Grecian

grandis, -e, *adj.*, large, of great size

grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, good will, favor. *Hence*, influence, friendship. — *Esp.*: **gratias agere**, thank; **gratias habere**, be grateful; **gratias (gratiam) referre**, pay off an obligation; **gratiam inire**, secure

grātulātiō — herba

the gratitude of any one. — *With gen.*, for the sake of, on account of
grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, congratulation, rejoicing

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [*gratus*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, congratulate

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasing, grateful

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy. — *Fig.*, serious, severe, hard: *gravioris aetatis*, of more advanced years; *si gravior quid acciderit*, if anything serious should occur; *ne quid gravior statueret*, that he would not pass any very severe judgment

gravitās, -ātis [*gravis*], *f.*, weight. — *Fig.*, importance, power

graviter [*gravis*], *adv.*, heavily, with great weight, with force. — *Fig.*, severely, seriously: *graviter ferre*, take to heart

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*gravis*], *trans.*, make heavy. — *Pass. as dep.*, be unwilling, object

gubernātor, -ōris [*gubernare*, steer], *m.*, pilot, helmsman

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, taste, eat

habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: *castra* (occupy); *orationem* (deliver); *se habere*, be; *rationem habere*, have regard for. — *With p.p.*, have, hold, keep: *redempta habere*, buy up and hold. — *Also*, consider

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, dwell, live

hāc, *adv.*, by this route, this way, here

Hadrūmētum, -ī, *n.*, a town on the coast of Africa

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Hædui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — *Masc. as noun*, a Hæduan, the Hædui

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [*freq. of haereo*, stick], *intrans.*, get caught, stick, struggle (*caught in a marsh*)

Hamīcar, -aris, *m.*, father of Hannibal

Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, the great Carthaginian, one of the greatest of generals

Harpyīae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Harpies (loathsome creatures, half women, half birds)

Harūdēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe originally from Jutland

Hasdrubal, -alis, *m.* 1. Brother-in-law of Hannibal. — 2. Brother of Hannibal

haud, *adv.*, not at all, not

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian (*see Helvetius*)

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the Helvetii

Helvīi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province

herba, -ae, *f.*, plant

Herculēs — hūmānus

- Herculēs, -ia, m.,** mythical Greek hero, son of Jupiter
- Hercynius, -a, -um, adj.,** Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany)
- hērēditās, -ātis [heres, heir], f.,** inheritance
- Hibernia, -ae, f.,** Ireland
- hibernus, -a, -um [hiems], adj.,** of winter, winter (*as adj.*).—*Neut. plur. (sc. castra),* winter quarters
- hic, haec, hoc, dem. adj. and pron.,** this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing).—*Referring to things mentioned before (but with more emphasis than is):* hic pagus unus, this one canton.—*hōc, n. abl., used adverbially,* in this respect, on this account, by so much.—*Often hic . . . ille,* the one . . . the other, this (*near by*) . . . the other (*farther off*)
- hic, adv.,** here, in this place, there (*of a place just mentioned*)
- hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [hiems], intrans.,** pass the winter
- hiems, -emis, f.,** winter
- hinc, adv.,** from here, hence
- Hispania, -ae, f.,** Spain
- Hispanus, -a, -um, adj.,** Spanish
- hodiē [hoc die], adv.,** to-day, now
- homō, -inis, c.,** human being, man (*including woman*)
- honestus, -a, -um [honor], adj.,** respected, honorable
- honor (honōs), -ōris, m.,** honor, respect: honoris causā, out of respect.—*Also,* honorable position
- honōrificus, -a, -um [honor-facio], adj.,** honorable
- hōra, -ae, f.,** hour (*of the day*).—The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always one twelfth of the solar day
- horreō, horrēre, horruī, no p. p., trans. and intrans.,** bristle; shudder at, dread
- horribilis, -e [horreo], adj.,** terrible, dreadful
- horridus, -a, -um [horreo], adj.,** bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful
- hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.,** encourage, urge on, address
- hospes, -itis, m.,** host.—*Also,* guest, stranger. Hence, guest-friend
- hospitium, -i [hospes], n.,** the relation of host (*or of guest or of guest-friend*). Hence, friendship, hospitality
- hostia, -ae, f.,** animal for sacrifice, victim
- hostis, -is, c.,** stranger, enemy (*of the state*)
- hūc, adv.,** hither, here (*in sense of hither*), to this (place etc.; cf. eo, adv.): huc accedebant, to these were added
- huiusmodi, see hic and modus**
- hūmānitās, -ātis, f.,** civilization, cultivation, refinement
- hūmānus, -a, -um [homo], adj.,** civilized, cultivated, refined

humilis — imitor

humilis, -e [*humus*, ground], *adj.*, low, shallow.—*Fig.*, humble, poor
humilitās, -ātis [*humilis*], *f.*, lowness, shallowness.—*Fig.*, humble position, insignificance
Hylās, -ae, *m.*, one of the Argonauts

I, *Roman numeral for one*
iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intrans.*, lie, lie dead.—*iacentes*, *pres. p. as noun*, the slain
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *trans.*, throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up)
iactō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*freq. of iacio*], *trans.*, toss, bandy about (*of talk*), discuss, boast
iactūra, -ae [*iacio*], *f.*, loss, sacrifice (*of men in war*)
iactus, -a, -um, *p. p. of iacio*
iaculum, -ī [*iacio*], *n.*, javelin
iam, *adv.*, now, by this time, at last, already, at length
ianua, -ae, *f.*, door
Iāsōn, -onis, *m.*, leader of the Argonauts
ibi, *adv.*, there
Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a nobleman of the Remi
ictus, -ūs [*ico*, strike], *m.*, stroke
Id., *abbr. for Idus*
idem, eadem, *idem* [*is-dem*], *dem. adj. and pron.*, the same; the same thing (things), the same
identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again and again
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted

Idūs, -uum, *f. plur.*, the Ides (a day of the month falling originally at the full moon; in Cæsar's time, on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the other months)
igitur, *adv.*, therefore, then
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.—*Plur.*, camp fires
ignōminia, -ae [*in-*, not, (*gnomen*, name)], *f.*, disgrace
ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*ignarus*, ignorant], *trans.*, not know, be ignorant of.—*Pass.*, be unobserved
ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [*in-*, not, (*gnosco*, know)], *intrans.*, overlook, pardon
ignōtus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, (*gnotus*, known)], *adj.*, unknown, strange
ille, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that (*of something remote; cf. hic*); *as pronoun* (*opposed to some other emphatic word*), he, she, it, they: hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the other; the latter . . . the former
illic, *adv.*, there (*more remote; opposed to hic, near by*), in that place
illō, *adv.*, thither, there (*in sense of thither*), that way
Illyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace)
imber, imbris, *m.*, rain storm, rain
imitor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, imitate, copy

immānis — impulsus

- immānis**, -e, *adj.*, monstrous, huge, enormous
- immittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, let in, let down (*into*), insert, throw (*upon*), send against, let loose
- immolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*in-mola*, meal], *trans.*, sacrifice
- immortālis**, -e, *adj.*, immortal
- immunitās**, -ātis [*immunis*, free], *f.*, freedom (*from public burdens*)
- impedimentum**, -i [*impedio*], *n.*, hindrance: *esse impedimento*, to hinder. — *Esp. in plur.*, baggage, baggage train (*including the beasts of burden*)
- impediō**, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [*in-pes*], *trans.*, entangle, hamper, interfere with, hinder, embarrass, impede
- impellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive 'on. — *Fig.*, instigate, incite, impel
- impendeō**, -ēre, *intrans.*, overhang
- impēsus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive, very high (*of price*)
- imperātor**, -ōris [*impero*], *m.*, commander (*in chief*), general
- imperātum**, -i [*n. p.p. of impero*], *n.*, an order, a command
- imperitus**, -a, -um [*in-peritus*], *adj.*, unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in
- imperium**, -i [*impero*], *n.*, command, control, supremacy, power (*military*), rule (*both sing. and plur.*); order, command
- imperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, demand; order (*in military sense*), rule, command
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, accomplish (*anything by a request*), succeed in (*obtaining*), obtain (*a request*)
- impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, rush, attack, violence, fury: *impetum facere*, charge
- impius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, impious (*offending divine law*)
- implōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, implore, beseech
- impōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, place on, mount (*men on horses*), put (*on board*)
- importō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, import
- impositus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of impono*
- impraesentiārum** [*in praesentia rerum*], *adv.*, for the present
- imprimis** or *in primis*, *adv.*, among the first, especially, particularly
- improbus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, wicked
- imprōvisus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unforeseen: *improviso* (*de improviso*), on a sudden, unexpectedly
- imprūdēns**, -entis [*in-prudens*, foreseeing], *adj.*, not expecting, incautious, off one's guard
- imprūdentē** [*imprudens*], *adv.*, unwisely, imprudently
- imprūdentia**, -ae [*imprudens*], *f.*, ignorance, want of forethought
- impugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, attack, invade, charge
- impulsus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of impello*

impūne — incredibilis

impūne [*impunis*, unpunished], *adv.*, with impunity

impūnitās, -ātis [*impunis*, unpunished], *f.*, freedom from punishment, impunity

imus, *see inferus*

in-, *prefix, with the force of a negative; cf. English un-*

in, *prep.* (a) *With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on*, into, on, within, to, against, among. — *Of time*, for, to, till. — *Often where English has a different conception*, in, on: *abdere in silvas*, hide in the woods; *in eos exempla edere* (visit on). — *In adverbial expressions where no motion appears*, in, according to, with, to: *in eam sententiam*, to this purport. — *Esp.*: *in Caesarem incidit*, happened to meet Cæsar; *in fugam conicere*, put to flight

(b) *With abl., of rest*, in, on, among, within. — *Often*, in the case of, in respect to: *in eo*, in his case, in regard to him. — *Esp.*: *in ancoris*, at anchor; *in primis*, among the first, especially

(c) *In composition, as adv.*, in, on, toward, against

inānis, -e, adj., empty, vain, idle

incautē, adv., incautiously, carelessly

incendium, -i [*incendo*], *n.*, a burning, fire

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -census, trans., set fire to, burn. — *Fig.*, rouse, excite

incensus, -a, -um, p.p. of incendo

inceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of incipio

incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsurus [*incado*], *intrans.*, fall upon, fall into;

fall in with, meet, occur, happen

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [*in-caedo*], *trans.*, cut into

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*in-capio*], *trans. and intrans.*, begin, undertake

incisus, -a, -um, p.p. of incido

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., set in motion, urge on, drive, impel, excite. — **incitātus, -a, -um, p.p.**, angered, spurred on: *incitato equo*, at full gallop; *incitato cursu*, at full speed. — *Esp.*, *se aestus incitare* (rush in)

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*in-claudio*], *trans.*, shut in, imprison

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown: *res* (that I know nothing about)

incola, -ae, c., inhabitant

incolō, -colere, -colui, no p.p., trans. and intrans., inhabit, live, dwell

incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, unhurt, safe

incommodē, adv., inconveniently, unfortunately

incommodus, -a, -um, adj., inconvenient, unfortunate. — **incommodum, -i, n. as noun**, disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster, loss

incredibilis, -e [*in-, not, credo*], *adj.*, marvelous, extraordinary, incredible

incredpitō — inferus

incredpitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, upbraid, taunt, revile
incursiō, -ōnis [*incurro*, run at], *f.*, attack, invasion
incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, upbraid, rebuke, chide
inde, *adv.*, from there, thence, from the place (*which etc.*); then
indiciū, -ī, *n.*, information; indication, sign: *per indicium*, through an informer
indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, *trans.*, order, proclaim, appoint
indigeō, -ēre, -ui, *intrans.*, need, want, be dependent on
indignitās, -ātis [*indignus*], *f.*, unworthiness, disgrace, outrage
indignor, -āri, -ātus [*indignus*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, be indignant
indignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy
indiligēns, -entis, *adj.*, negligent, careless, heedless
indiligenter [*indiligens*], *adv.*, carelessly, negligently
indiligentia, -ae [*indiligens*], *f.*, carelessness
indūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, draw on. *Hence*, cover: *scutapellibus*. — *Also*, lead on. *Hence*, induce, impel
indulgentia, -ae [*indulgeo*], *f.*, indulgence, favor, clemency
indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, favor, treat with indulgence
induō, -duere, -dūf, -dūtus, *trans.*, put on
indūtiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, truce

Indūtiomārus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Treveri
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.*, enter on, go into, adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — *Esp.*: *inita aestate*, at the beginning of summer; *inire rationem*, make a calculation, adopt a scheme; *inire consilium*, form a plan; *inire numerum*, enumerate
inermis, -e [*in-*, not, *arma*], *adj.*, unarmed, defenseless
iners, -ertis [*in-*, not, *ars*], *adj.*, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly
infāmia, -ae [*infamis*, infamous], *f.*, dishonor, disgrace
infandus, -a, -um [*in-for*, speak], *adj.*, unspeakable, awful
infāne, -antis [*in-*, not, *fans*, *pres. p. of for*, speak], *c.*, child, infant
infectus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, *factus*], *adj.*, not done. — *Esp.*, *re infecta*, without success
infēlix, -īcis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, bring in, import, put on: *bellum* (make); *signa* (advance, make a charge); *terrorem* (inspire). — *Fig.*, cause, inflict, commit
inferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low: *inferior pars*, the lower end; *ab inferiore parte*, down below, *of a river*. — *infimus* (*imus*), -a, -um, *superl.*, lowest, the bottom of: *infimus collis*, the foot of the hill
inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*in-facio*], *trans.*, stain, infect

infirmus — inrumpō

infirmus, *see inferus*

infinītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unbounded, countless, endless

infirmītas, -ātis [*infirmus*], *f.*, feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness

infirmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, feeble: *naves* (unseaworthy)

inītor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, deny

infectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus, *trans.*, bend down. — *Pass. or with reflex.*, become bent

inflexus, -a, -um, *p. p. of inflecto*

inflūō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *intrans.*, flow into, empty into

infrā, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, below, farther down, less than

infundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus, *trans.*, pour in

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, huge, enormous

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus [*in-gradior*, step], *dep., trans. and intrans.*, march into, enter, march in

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*in-iacio*], *trans.*, throw into, throw upon; place in, put on, embark; inspire

infectus, -a, -um, *p. p. of inicio*

inimicitia, -ae [*inimicus*], *f.*, enmity, hostility

inimicus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, *amicus*], *adj.*, unfriendly, hostile. — *Masc. as noun*, enemy (*personal, or not in war*)

iniquitās, -ātis [*iniquus*], *f.*, inequality; unfairness, unfavorableness

iniquus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, *aequus*], *adj.*, uneven; unjust, unfavorable, unfair. — *Comp.*, *iniquior locus*, less favorable position

initium, -i [*ineo*], *n.*, a beginning, the first of: *initium capere*, begin, start; *initium facere transeundi*, start to cross, begin crossing

initus, *p. p. of ineo*

iniūria, -ae [*in-*, not, *iūs*], *f.*, injustice, outrage, wrong

iniussū, *adv.*, without orders

inlātus, *p. p. of infero*

inligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, bind on, attach, fasten to

inlūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus, *trans.*, make sport of, deceive

inlūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, famous: *inlustriore loco natus*, of distinguished ancestry

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, *dep., intrans.*, be inspired, be excited

innitor, -niti, -nixus or -nisus, *dep., intrans.*, lean upon. — *innixus*, -a, -um, *p. p.*, leaning on

innocēns, -entis [*in-*, not, *nocens*, *pres. p. of noceo*], *adj.*, harmless, guiltless, innocent

innocentia, -ae [*innocens*], *f.*, blamelessness

inopia, -ae [*inops*, needy], *f.*, scarcity, privation, want of supplies

inopināns, -antis, *adj.*, unsuspecting, not suspecting

inquam, *inquis*, *inquit*, etc., *defective, intrans.*, say

inrīdēō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *trans. and intrans.*, ridicule, laugh at

inrīdiculē, *adv.*, without humor

inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans. and intrans.*, break in, break into, storm

inruptiō — integō

inruptiō, -ōnis [*inrumpo*], *f.*, attack, raid, incursion
insciēns, -entis, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware
inscientia, -ae [*insciens*], *f.*, ignorance, lack of acquaintance with
inscius, -a, -um, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware
insecūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of inse-*
quor
insequor, -sequi, -secūtus, *dep., trans.*, follow up, pursue
inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertus, *trans.*, insert, stick in
insidiae, -arum [*insideo*, sit in], *f. plur.*, ambush, treachery, plot: *per insidias*, with deception, treacherously
insidior, -āri, -ātus [*insidiae*], *dep., intrans.*, lie in wait, make treacherous attacks, plot against
insignis, -e [*in-signum*], *adj.*, marked, memorable. — **insigne, -is**, *v. as noun*, signal, sign, decoration (*of soldiers*)
insiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultus [*in-salio*, leap], *trans.*, leap on
insimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, charge, accuse
insinuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*in-sinus*, bosom], *trans. and intrans.*, slip in. — *With reflex.*, slip in
insistō, -sistere, -stiti, *no p.p., trans. and intrans.*, stand on, stand, keep one's footing. — *Fig.*, adopt (*rationem pugnae*)
insolenter, adv., insultingly, insolently, arrogantly

inspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, look on: *inspectantibus nobis*, before our eyes
instabilis, -e, *adj.*, unsteady
instar, n., indecl., in the likeness of (*with gen.*)
instituō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [*in-statuo*], *trans.*, set up, set in order: *opus* (finish). — *Also*, provide, procure, get ready. — *Also*, set about, undertake, adopt (*a plan etc.*), begin, set on foot. — *So*, teach, train, habituate
institutum, -i [*n. p.p. of instituo*], *n.*, habit, practice, custom
instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, *intrans.*, be at hand, press on; threaten, impend, menace
instrūctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of instruo*
instrūmentum, -i [*instruo*], *n.*, furniture, equipment, tools and stores
instruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctus, *trans.*, build, fit up, fit out, set in order, arrange, draw up (*of troops*)
insuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.*, trained
insuētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccustomed, unused
insula, -ae, *f.*, island
insuper, adv., on the top, from above
integer, -gra, -grum [*in-*, not, *tango*, touch], *adj.*, untouched, unwearied, fresh; *as noun*, fresh troops. — *Esp.*, not entered upon (*of business*); *re integra*, before anything was done
integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, *trans.*, cover over (*turres coriis*)

intellegō — interpōnō

intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [*inter-lego*, gather], *trans.*, learn, know, find out, discover, understand

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, *trans.*, stretch, strain. — *Esp. of the mind or eyes*, be intent, be absorbed: animis intentis in ea re, with their minds absorbed in this business

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among: inter aciem, in the line. — *Of time*, within, for. — *Often in a reciprocal sense*: inter se, with (to, from, etc.) each other or one another; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other or one another; similarly, obsides inter eos dandos curavit, arranged for their exchanging hostages

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus, *intrans.*, come between, go between, lie between, pass (*of time*): ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Hædui

interceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of inter-cipio*

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*inter-capio*], *trans.*, intercept, cut off

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*inter-claudio*], *trans.*, cut off, shut off, block (*roads*): fugam (stop, cut off)

interdicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, *trans.*, forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanis interdicere, exclude the Romans from Gaul

interdiū, *adv.*, in the daytime

interdum, *adv.*, for a time, sometimes

interea, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *irr., intrans.*, perish, die, be killed

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*inter-facio*], *trans.*, kill, put to death

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*inter-icio*], *trans.*, throw in (*between*).

— *Pass.*, lie between, intervene: spatio interiecto (intervening; *i.e.* at a . . . distance, after an . . . interval)

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile

interior, -ius, *adj.*, inner, interior, more intimate. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, interiores, men in the interior, men in the town

interitus, -ūs [*intereo*], *m.*, destruction, death

intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans. and intrans.*, leave off, discontinue, stop: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day or night); spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; nocte intermissa, a night intervening

interneciō, -ōnis [*cf. neco*], *f.*, extermination, annihilation

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, interrupt, interfere with

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, put in between, interpose, allege: nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder

interpres — ipse

- interpres**, -pretis, *c.*, mediator, interpreter
- interpretor**, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, interpret, explain
- interrogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, question, ask
- interrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, break down (*of bridges*), destroy
- interscindō**, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *trans.*, tear down
- intersum**, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *irr., intrans.*, be between, be in, be engaged in: *non amplius interest*, there is an interval of not more than *etc.* — *Esp., impers.*, it is of importance, it concerns
- intervallum**, -ī, *n.*, distance apart, interval
- intervenīō**, -venīre, -venī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come up, arrive
- interventus**, -ūs [*intervenio*], *m.*, intervention, help
- intexō**, -texere, -texui, -textus, *trans.*, weave in, weave together
- intrā**, *prep. with acc.*, into, within, inside
- intritus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwearied
- intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, enter, go in
- intrōducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead in, bring in, march in (*troops*)
- introeō**, -ire, -iī, -itus [*intro*, within, *eo*, go], *trans. and intrans.*, come in, enter
- introitus**, -ūs [*introeo*], *m.*, entrance, approach
- intrōmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send in
- intrōsus** [*intro*, within, *versus*, *p.p. of verto*], *adv.*, inside, within
- intueor**, -tuērī, -tuitus, *dep., trans.*, look at
- intuli**, *see infero*
- inūsitātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccustomed
- inūtilis**, -e, *adj.*, of no use, un-serviceable
- inveniō**, -venīre, -venī, -ventus, *trans.*, find, learn
- inventor**, -ōris, *m.*, discoverer
- inveterāscō**, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, become established, become fixed. — *Perf.*, be an old campaigner (*in*)
- invictus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquerable, invincible
- invideō**, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, *intrans.*, envy
- invidia**, -ae, *f.*, hatred, envy, unpopularity
- inviolātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, inviolate; sacred
- invisus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of invideo*
- invitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, invite, request, attract
- invitus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwilling. — *Often rendered as adv.*, against one's will
- ipse**, -a, -um, *intens. pron.*, himself *etc.* (*as opp. to some one else; cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject*), he *etc.* (*emph.*), he himself *etc.*: *ipsi inter se* (*reciprocal*), each other

ira — iustus

ira, -ae, *f.*, anger

iracundus, -a, -um [*ira*], *adj.*, of a violent temper

is, ea, id, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this (*less emph. than hic*), that (*unemphatic*), he, she, it: *quae pars ea etc.*, the part which *etc.* — **eo**, *n. abl.*, so much; **eo magis**, all the more; **eo gravius**, so much the more severely

iste, ista, istud, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that of yours, that

ita, *adv.*, so, in this way, thus, as follows: *ut . . . ita*, as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; *ita . . . ut*, in proportion as, as; *non ita*, not so very, not very

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy (in Cæsar's time not including the great plain at the north of the peninsula)

itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly, therefore

item, *adv.*, in like manner, so also, in the same way

iter, *itineris* [*eo*, go], *n.*, road, march, journey: *in itinere*, on the road;

iter facere, march, travel; **magnis itineribus**, by forced marches

iterum, *adv.*, a second time, again: *semel atque iterum*, again and again

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane

iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus, *trans.*, order, command, bid

iudicium, -ī [*iudex*, judge], *n.*, judgment (*judicial*), trial, opinion; **iudicio**, by design; *often translated by court*

iudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*iudex*, judge], *trans.*, decide, judge, think, consider; declare, proclaim: **nihil gravius de civitate** (think nothing harsh about *etc.*)

iugum, -ī [*iungo*], *n.*, yoke: *sub iugum mittere was an insult inflicted on a conquered army.* — *Also*, ridge

iumentum, -ī [*iugum*], *n.*, beast of burden

iunctūra, -ae [*iungo*], *f.*, a joining, joint: *quantum iunctura distabat*, as far as the distance apart (*of two things joined*)

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iunctus, *trans.*, join, unite, attach together

iūnior, *comp. of iuvenis*

Iūnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, the god of light and the heavens, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans

Iūra, -ae, *m.*, a chain of mountains in Gaul, running northeast from the Rhone to the Rhine

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, swear, take an oath

iūs, iūris, *n.*, justice, right, law: **iūs iurandum**, oath

iussū, *abl. used as adv.*, by order, by command

iūstitia, -ae [*iustus*], *f.*, justice

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just, lawful. — *Also*, complete, perfect, regular: **populi Romani iustissimum est imperium**, the Romans are best entitled to dominion

iuvencus — lātītūdō

- iuvencus, -i** [*iuvenis*], *m.*, young bull
- iuvenis, -e**, *adj.*, young. — *As noun*, a young man (*not over forty-five*), a youth: **iuniores**, the younger soldiers
- iuventūs, -ūtis** [*iuvenis*], *f.*, the youth, the young men
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus**, *trans.*, help, aid, assist
- iūxtā**, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, next, near, close by
- Kal.**, *abbr.* for **Kalendae** and its cases
- Kalendae, -ārum**, *f. plur.*, the Calends (the first day of the Roman month)
- Karthāginiēnsis, -e** [*Karthago*], *adj.*, Carthaginian. — *Masc. as noun*, Carthaginian
- Karthāgō, -inis**, *f.*, Carthage, a city of Phoenician colonists on the northern coast of Africa
- L**, *Roman numeral for fifty*
- L.**, *abbr.* for **Lucius**
- Labeō, -ōnis**, *see* **Fabius**
- Laberius, -i**, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
- Labiēnus, -ī**, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, T. Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Pompey
- labor, -ōris**, *m.*, toil, exertion; trouble, hardship
- labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [*labor*], *intrans.*, toil, exert one's self; be hard pressed, labor
- labrum, -i**, *n.*, lip; edge, rim
- lac, lactis, n.**, milk
- Lacedaemonius, -a, -um**, *adj.*, Lacedæmonian. — *Masc. as noun*, Lacedæmonian
- laccessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitus**, *trans.*, attack, harass, assail, skirmish with
- lacrima, -ae**, *f.*, tear
- lacus, -ūs**, *m.*, reservoir, lake
- laedō, laedere, laesi, laesus**, *trans.*, wound. — *Fig.*, break (*fidem*)
- laetitia, -ae** [*laetus*], *f.*, joy, gladness
- laetus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, glad
- languidō, adv.**, feebly
- languidus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, spiritless: languidior, with less spirit
- languor, -ōris**, *m.*, weariness
- lapis, -idis**, *m.*, stone
- laqueus, -ī**, *m.*, slip noose
- largior, -īri, -itus** [*largus*, abundant], *dep., trans. and intrans.*, give lavishly; give bribes, give presents
- largiter, adv.**, lavishly: largiter posse, possess powerful influence
- largitiō, -ōnis** [*largior*], *f.*, lavish giving, bribery
- lassitūdō, -inis** [*lassus*, weary], *f.*, weariness, exhaustion
- lātē, adv.**, widely: latius, too far; longe lateque, far and wide
- lateō, latēre, latuī, no p.p., intrans.**, be concealed, pass unnoticed
- lātītūdō, -inis** [*latus*, broad], *f.*, breadth, width

Latobrigi — licet

Latobrigi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber

latrōcinium, -ī [*latro*], *n.*, robbery, brigandage

latus, *lateris*, *n.*, side (*of the body*).

— *Also, generally*, side, flank, end (*of a hill*)

lātus, -a, -um, *p. p. of fero*

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide, extensive

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*laus*], *trans.*, praise, commend

laus, *laudis*, *f.*, praise, credit, glory

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (*lāvī*), -ātus (*lautus*, *lōtus*), *trans.*, wash. —

In pass. used reflexively, bathe

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, loosen, open out, extend

lectica, -ae, *f.*, portable chair, sedan, litter

lēgātiō, -ōnis [*lēgo*, dispatch], *f.*, embassy

lēgātus, -ī [*lēgo*, dispatch], *m.*, ambassador, envoy. — *Also*, lieutenant, legatus

legiō, -ōnis [*lego*, gather], *f.*, legion

legiōnārius, -a, -um [*legio*], *adj.*, of a legion, legionary

Lemannus, -ī, *m.* (*with lacus either expressed or implied*), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman

Lemovicēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in central Gaul west of the Arverni

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, smooth

lēnitās, -ātis [*lenis*], *f.*, gentleness

lēniter, *adv.*, gently

Lepontii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Alps

Leuci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of eastern Gaul

levis, -e, *adj.*, light, unimportant; inconstant, fickle

levitās, -ātis [*levis*], *f.*, lightness, fickleness

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, lighten; relieve

lēx, *lēgis*, *f.*, statute, law

Lexovii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northwestern Gaul

libenter, *adv.*, willingly, gladly, with pleasure

liber, -bri, *m.*, book

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free, unrestricted

liberālītās, -ātis [*liberalis*, generous], *f.*, generosity, liberality

liberālīter, *adv.*, generously, kindly (*respondit*): oratione prosecutus (*addressing in generous language*)

liberō, *adv.*, freely, boldly, without restraint

liberī, -ōrum [*liber*, free], *m. plur.*, children

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*liber*], free, set free, relieve (*from some bond*): liberare se, secure one's freedom

libertās, -ātis [*liber*], *f.*, liberty, freedom, independence

liceor, *licēri*, *licitus*, *dep.*, *intrans.*, bid (*at an auction*)

licet, *licēre*, *licuit* (*licitum est*), *intrans.*, *impers.*, be allowed: *id sibi etc.* (that they be allowed); *per te licet*, you allow, you do

Liger — magicus

- not hinder; *petere ut liceat*, to ask permission
- Liger**, -eris, *m.*, a river of western Gaul, now the Loire
- Ligurēs**, -um, *m.*, Ligurians, a people of northwestern Italy
- linea**, -ae, *f.*, line
- Lingonēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of eastern Gaul
- lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue. *Hence*, language
- lingula**, -ae [*lingua*], *f.*, tongue of land
- linter**, -tris, *f.*, skiff, boat
- linum**, -i, *n.*, flax
- Liscus**, -i, *m.*, chief magistrate of the Hædui in the year 58 B.C.
- Litaviccus**, -i, *m.*, a Hæduan chief
- littera**, -ae, *f.*, letter (*of the alphabet*). — *Plur.*, writing, alphabet, letter (*written message*), records, literature
- lītus**, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach
- locus**, -i, *m. (sing.)*, *n. (generally plur.)*, place, spot, region (*esp. in plur.*), point, ground (*in military language*); rank; position, character; opportunity; situation, condition: *obsidum loco*, as hostages
- locūtus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of loquor*
- longē**, *adv.*, far, absent, distant: *non longius mille (triduo)* (not more than); *longe nobilissimus* (far, altogether)
- longinquus**, -a, -um [*longus*], *adj.*, long (*of time and space*), distant, long-continued
- longitūdō**, -inis [*longus*], *f.*, length
- longurius**, -i, *m.*, long pole
- longus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, long (*of space and time*), tedious: *in longiorem diem*, to a more distant day
- Longus**, -i, *m.*, Ti. Sempronius Longus, consul defeated by Hannibal at the Trebia
- loquor**, loquī, locūtus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, speak, talk, converse
- lōrica**, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail. — *Also*, breastwork, rampart
- Lucāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, Lucanians, a people of southern Italy
- Lūcānius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
- Lūcius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman prænomen
- Lucterius**, -i, *m.*, a Gallic name
- Lugotorix**, -igis, *m.*, a British prince
- lūmen**, -inis, *n.*, light
- lūna**, -ae, *f.*, moon. *Also personified*, Luna, the Moon
- lūx**, lūcis [*cf. luceo*, shine], *f.*, light, daylight: *prima luce*, *orta luce*, or *luce*, at daybreak
- lūxuria**, -ae, *f.*, luxury, riotous living
- M**, *Roman numeral for thousand*
- M.**, *abbr. for Mārcus*
- māceria**, -ae, *f.*, wall of soft clay, wall
- māchinātiō**, -ōnis [*machina*, machine], *f.*, contrivance, engine, derrick
- Magetobriga**, -ae, *f.*, a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls
- magicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, magic

magis — manus

magis, *adv.*, more, rather: **eo magis**, so much the more, all the more.

— **maxime**, *superl.*

magister, -trī, *m.*, master, commander

magistrātus, -ūs [*magister*], *m.*, magistracy (*office of a magistrate*). — *Concretely*, magistrate

magnificus, -a, -um [*magnus-facio*], *adj.*, splendid, grand, magnificent

magnitūdō, -inis [*magnus*], *f.*, greatness, size, stature, force (**venti**), severity (**supplici**)

magnopere, *see opus*

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree*), large, extensive, important, serious (**motus**), heavy (**portoria**), high (**aestus**), loud (**vox**): **magni habere**, to value highly, make much account of; **magni interest**, it is of great importance. — **maior**, *comp.* *in usual sense*. — *Also*, **maior** (*with or without natu*), elder, older. — *In plur. as noun*, elders, ancestors. — **maximus**, *superl.*, largest, very large, greatest, very great, *etc.*: **maximis itineribus**, by forced marches

Māgō, -ōnis, *m.*, brother of Hannibal

maiestās, -ātis [*maior*], *f.*, majesty, dignity

maior, *see magnus*

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm

male, *adv.*, badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — **peius**, *comp.* — **pessime**, *superl.*

maleficium, -ī [*male-facio*], *n.*, harm, mischief

mālō, māllo, mālui, *no p.p.* [*mage (for magis), volo*], *irr., trans. and intrans.*, wish more, wish rather, prefer

malum, -ī [*malus*], *n.*, evil, mischief, misfortune

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad. — **peior**, *comp.* — **pessimus**, *superl.*

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast, beam (*upright*)

mandātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of mando*], *n.*, command, instructions; message

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, intrust, instruct, commit: **se fugae** (take to)

Mandubii, *m. plur.*, a tribe north of the Hædui

Mandubracius, -ī, *m.*, a Briton

māne, *adv.*, in the morning

manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intrans.*, stay, remain, stay at home. — *Fig.*, continue, stand by (*in eo quod*)

manipulus, -ī [*man's*], *m.*, handful; manipule (*two centuries, a third of a cohort*)

Mānlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, C. Manlius Volso, consul in 189 B.C.

mānsī, *see maneo*

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *trans.*, tame. — *Pass.*, mānsuēfiō, be tamed

mānsuētūdō, -inis [*mansuetus, tame*], *f.*, gentle disposition, kindness

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand: **in manibus nostris**, within hand's reach.

Märcellus — medius

- fighting us hand to hand; **manum conserere**, engage battle.—*Also*, company, band, troop
- Märcellus**, -i, *m.*, M. Claudius Marcellus, (1) a famous Roman general; (2) a consul in 183 B.C.
- Marcomannī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe in the army of Ariovistus
- Märcus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen
- mare**, -is, *n.*, the sea: **nostrum** (*i.e.* the Mediterranean); **mare Oceanum**, the ocean
- maritimus**, -a, -um [**mare**], *adj.*, of the sea, maritime, naval, on the sea: **aestus** (in the sea); **ora** (the seashore)
- Marius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.—*Esp.*, C. Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (101 B.C.) and freed Rome from the fear of a northern invasion
- Märs**, **Märtis**, *m.*, Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards worshiped as the god of war.—*See aequus*
- mäs**, **maris**, *adj.*, male.—*Noun*, a male
- mātara**, -ae, *f.*, javelin (*used by the Gauls*)
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother, matron: **mater familias** (*old gen. of familia*), matron
- māteria**, -ae, *f.*, wood, timber
- mātrīmōnium**, -i [**mater**], *n.*, marriage, matrimony: **in matrimōnium ducere**, marry
- Matrona**, -ae, *m.*, a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, now the Marne
- mātūrē**, *adv.*, early, speedily
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**maturus**], *trans. and intrans.*, hasten, make haste
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, early.—*Also*, ripe, mature
- maximē**, *adv.*, most, very, in the highest degree, especially: **ea maxime ratione**, in that way more than any other; **maxime confidebat**, had the greatest confidence
- maximus**, *see magnus*
- Maximus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name
- Mēdēa**, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Æetes king of Colchis
- medicina**, -ae, *f.*, art of healing, medicine
- mediocris**, -cre [**medius**], *adj.*, middling, moderate: **spatium** (a little, no great); **non medjocris**, no little, no small degree of
- mediocriter**, *adv.*, moderately: **non mediocriter**, in no small degree
- Mediomatrici**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northeastern Gaul
- mediterrāneus**, -a, -um [**medius-terra**], *adj.*, inland
- medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, the middle of (*as noun in English*), mid-: **in collo medio** (half way up); **locus medius**

Meldi — mille

- utriusque (half way between); de media nocte, about midnight
- Meldi**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul between the Seine and the Marne
- melior**, *comp. of bonus*
- membrum**, -ī, *n.*, limb, part of the body
- meminī**, -isse, *defective, trans. and intrans.*, remember
- memor**, -oris, *adj.*, mindful
- memoria**, -ae [*memor*], *f.*, memory, recollection: *memoria tenere*, remember; *nostrā memoriā*, within our memory, in our own time
- Menapii**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgian tribe near the mouth of the Rhine
- mēns**, *mentis*, *f.*, intellect, mind, state of mind, feeling: *mentes animosque*, minds and hearts
- mēnsia**, -is, *m.*, month
- mēnsūra**, -ae [*metior*], *f.*, measure: *ex aqua mensurae*, measures by the water clock
- mentiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, mention
- mercātor**, -ōris [*mercor*, trade], *m.*, trader
- mercātūra**, -ae [*mercor*, trade], *f.*, traffic, trade
- mercēs**, -ēdis [*merx*, merchandise], *f.*, hire, pay, wages
- Mercurius**, -ī, *m.*, Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc.
- mereor**, -ēri, -itus (*also mereo, active*), *dep., trans. and intrans.*, win, deserve, gain.—*Also (from earning pay)*, serve: *mereri de*, serve the interests of, render service to
- meridiānus**, -a, -um [*meridies*], *adj.*, of midday
- meridiēs**, -ēi [*medius-dies*], *m.*, midday, noon.—*Also*, the south
- meritum**, -ī [*n. p.p. of mereor*], *n.*, merit, service, kindness: *quo minus merito*, the less by the fault
- meritus**, -a, -um [*p.p. of mereor*], *adj.*, deserved, fit, proper
- Messāla**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name
- mētior**, *mētiri*, *mēnsus*, *dep., trans.*, measure out, deal out, distribute
- Mētius**, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul, in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus
- metō**, *metere*, *messui*, *messus*, *trans.*, cut, reap, gather
- metus**, -ūs, *m.*, fear
- meus**, -a, -um, *possessive pronominal adj.*, my, mine
- mihi**, *see ego*
- miles**, -itis, *m.*, soldier, legionary soldier (heavy infantry, *as opposed to other arms of the service*)
- militāris**, -e [*miles*], *adj.*, of the soldiers, military: *res militaris*, warfare
- militia**, -ae [*miles*], *f.*, military service
- mille**, *indecl. adj. (rarely noun in sing.)*, with *plur. milia*, -ium, *neuter noun*, thousand: *mille passus or mille passuum* (*cf. G. § 20. note*), thousand paces, etc.

Minerva — morbus

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts

minimē, *adv.*, least, very little, not at all

minimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *superl.* of **parvus**, smallest, least.—*Neut. as noun and adv.*, the least, least, very little

minor, -us, *adj.*, *comp.* of **parvus**, smaller, less: **dimidio minor**, half as large.—*Neut. as noun and adv.*, less, not much, not so: **quo minus**, that . . . not

Minucius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.—*Esp.*: 1. M. Minucius Rufus, master of horse under Fabius, routed by Hannibal.—

2. Q. Minucius, consul 193 B.C.
minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*minus*], *trans. and intrans.*, lessen, weaken, diminish: **aestus** (ebb)

mirāculum, -ī, *n.*, wonder, miracle
mīror, -ārī, -ātus [*mirus*], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, wonder, wonder at.—**mīrātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. in pres. sense*, surprised

mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, surprising, marvelous, wonderful

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor

miserīcordia, -ae [*miserīcors*, *merciful*], *f.*, mercy, pity, clemency

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [*miser*], *dep.*, *trans.*, bewail, complain of

missus, -a, -um, *p.p. of mitto*

missus, -ūs, *m.*, a sending: **missu Caesaris**, under Caesar's orders

mittō, *mittere*, **mīsi**, **missus**, *trans.*, send, dispatch, discharge, shoot: **sub iugum**, *mittere*, send under the yoke; **tragulam** (throw)

mōbilis, -e [*moveo*], *adj.*, easily moved, movable, fickle, hasty
mōbilitās, -ātis [*mobilis*], *f.*, mobility, inconstancy, fickleness

mōbiliter, *adv.*, easily, readily

moderor, -ārī, -ātus [*modus*], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, control, regulate, restrain

modo, *adv.*, only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: **non modo**, not only

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style, method: **quem ad modum**, how, just as, as

moenia, -ium [*munio*], *n. plur.*, fortifications, walls of a city

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike, dam

molestē, *adv.*, heavily, severely: **moleste ferre**, take it ill, be vexed at

molestia, -ae, *f.*, annoyance, vexation
mōlimentum, -ī [*molior*, strive], *n.*, trouble, difficulty, exertion

molitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of molo*

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; weak, feeble

molō, -ere, -uī, -ītus, *trans.*, grieve

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *trans.*, remind, warn, advise, urge, instruct

mōns, **montis**, *m.*, mountain, height

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, point out, make known, show

mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, wonder, monster

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay, grounds of delay

morātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of moror*

morbus, -ī, *m.*, sickness, disease

mōribus — namque

mōribus, *see* mōs

Morini, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ

morior, mori, mortuus [*mors*], *dep., intrans.*, die

moror, -āri, -ātus [*mora*], *dep., trans. and intrans.*, retard, check, delay

mors, mōrtis, *f.*, death: ipse sibi mortem conscivit, he committed suicide

mortuus, -a, -um, dead, *p.p. of* morior

mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, usage. — *Plur.*, customs, habits, character

Mosa, -ae, *m.*, a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse

mōtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* moveo

mōtus, -ūs [*moveo*], *m.*, movement, disturbance, uprising: celer atque instabilis (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare)

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *trans.*, set in motion, move, remove: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp)

mox, *adv.*, soon

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman

multitūdō, -inis [*multus*], *f.*, great number; the multitude, the common people

multō, *see* multus

multum, *see* multus

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, many: multo diē, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night. — *multum, neut. as noun and adv.*, much. — *Also, plur., multa*, many

things, much, a great deal. — *Abbl.*, multō, much, far: multo facilius.

— *Comp.*, plūs, plūris, *n. noun and adv.*: plur., all genders, as *adj.*, more, much, very; as *noun*, several, many. — *Superl.*, plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plurimi, as many as possible; plurimum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurimum valere, be strongest, have very great weight

mundus, -ī, *m.*, universe, world
mūnimentum, -ī [*munio*], *n.*, a fortification. — *Plur.*, a defense

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans. and intrans.*, fortify; defend

mūnitiō, -ōnis [*munio*], *f.*, a fortification, works, defenses

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty: munus militiæ, military service. — *Also*, gift, present

mūrālis, -e [*murus*], *adj.*, of a wall, wall: pila (heavy javelins for service in siege operations)

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, change

Mýsia, -ae, *f.*, a country of Asia
Minor

nactus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* nanciscor
nam, *conj.*, for

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, a Helvetian ambassador to Cæsar

Namnetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of western Gaul

namque, *conj.*, for (a little more emphatic than nam)

nanciscor — negōtior

nanciscor, -cisci, nactus, dep., trans.,
find, get, obtain

Nantuātes, -um, m. plur., a tribe of
Gaul, near the Lake of Geneva

Narbō, -ōnis, m., a city of the Roman
province of Gaul, now Narbonne

nāscor, nāsci, nātus, dep., intrans.,
be born, arise, spring up, be raised
(*of beasts*). — **nātus, -a, -um, p. p.,**
sprung, born

Nasua, -ae, m., a leader of the Suebi
nātālis, -e [natus], adj., of birth:
dies natalis, birthday

nātiō, -ōnis [cf. nascor], f., race,
tribe, clan

nātivus, -a, -um [cf. nascor], adj.,
native, natural

nātō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrans., swim,
float

nātūra, -ae [cf. nascor], f., nature,
character

nātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nascor

nātus, -ūs [cf. nascor], m., birth:
maiores natu, elders

naufragium, -ī, n., shipwreck

nauta, -ae, m., sailor, boatman

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], adj., of a
sailor (*or* sailors), naval

nāvālis, -e [navis], adj., of ships,
naval

nāvicula, -ae [navis], f., small vessel,
skiff

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [navigo], f., voyage,
traveling by sea

nāvigium, -ī [navis], n., vessel (*a*
general term), boat

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [navis], in-
trans., sail

nāvis, -is, f., ship, vessel, boat:
oneraria (transport); **longa** (war
galley)

nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., do
zealously: **operam** (do one's best)
-ne (enclitic), adv. and conj., not?
(*as a question, cf. nonne*), whether,
did (*as a question in English*), do,
etc. — *See also* **necne**

nē, conj., lest, that . . . not, not to
(*do anything*), from (*doing any-*
thing), in order that . . . not, for
fear that. — *After verbs of fear-*
ing, that. — *Also adv., ne . . .*
quidem, not even

nec, see neque

necessārius, -a, -um [necesse], adj.,
necessary: **tempus** (critical). —
Also, as noun, kinsman, close
friend. — *Abl. as adv.,* **necessāriō,**
necessarily, unavoidably

necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, in-
evitable. — *With est,* one must

necessitās, -ātis [necesse], f., neces-
sity, constraint, compulsion

necessitūdō, -inis [necesse], f., inti-
macy, close relations

necne [nec-ne], conj., or not (*in*
double questions)

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., put to
death, kill, murder

neglēgō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [nec-
lego, gather], trans., disregard,
neglect

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and
intrans., say no, say . . . not, refuse

negōtior, -āri, -ātus [negotium], dep.,
intrans., do business

negōtium — nōminātīm

negōtium, -ī [*nec-otum*, ease], *n.*, business, occupation, undertaking: **quid negoti**, what business? **dare negotium alicui**, employ one, give in charge to. — *Less definitely*, matter, thing. — *Also*, difficulty, trouble

Nemetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō [*ne-homo*], *c.*, no one, nobody: **non nemo**, many a one

nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means

neque (*nec*), *conj.*, and not, and yet . . . not, nor: **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor; **neque enim**, for . . . not

nēquiquam, *adv.*, to no purpose, in vain

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Nervii, Nervian

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Nervian. — *Masc. plur.*, the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew, muscle. — *Fig.*, in *plur.*, strength, vigor

nesciō, -scire, -scīvi, not know: **nescio quis**, I know not who

neu, *see neve*

neuter, -tra, -trum [*ne-uter*], *adj. and pron.*, neither. — *Plur.*, neither party, neither side

nēve (*neu*), *conj.*, and not, nor

nex, *necis*, *f.*, violent death, execution

nihil, *see nihilum*

nihilum, -ī [*ne-hilum*, trifle] (*also indecl.*, **nihil**), *n.*, nothing: **nihil**

reliqui, nothing left; **nihil respondere**, make no answer. — **nihilō**, *abl. as adv.*, none, no; **nihilō minus**, none the less; **nihilō setius**, nevertheless. — **nihil**, *acc. as adv.*, not at all: **non nihil**, somewhat

nisi, *conj.*, unless, except

Nitiobrogēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

nitor, **nīti**, **nixus** or **nīsus**, *dep.*, *intrans.*, struggle, strive: **niti insidiis** (rely upon)

nix, **nivis**, *f.*, snow

nōbilis, -e [*cf. nosco*], *adj.*, famous, noble, well-born. — *Plur. as noun*, the nobles

nōbilitās, -ātis [*nobilis*], *f.*, the nobility, the nobles

nocēns, *see noceo*

noceō, **nocēre**, **nocui**, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, injure, harm, harass. — **nocēns**, -entis, *pres. p. as adj.*, guilty

noctū, *adv.*, by night

nocturnus, -a, -um [*nax*], *adj.*, nightly, nocturnal, by night

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, *no p.p.* [*ne-volo*], *irr.*, *intrans.*, be unwilling, wish not to: **noli**, **nolite**, do not (*with infin.*)

nōmen, -inis [*cf. nosco*], *n.*, name; account: **nomine dotis** (on account of, as); **suo nomine**, on his own account; **nomine obsidum**, under pretense of hostages

nōminātīm [*nomen*], *adv.*, by name (*individually*)

nōminō — *nympha*

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
name, mention, call by name

nōn, *adv.*, not: *non est dubium*,
there is no doubt; *nōn nihil*,
something, somewhat; *nōn nullus*,
some; *nōn numquam*, sometimes

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet

nōnne [*non-ne*], *interrog. adv.*, sug-
gesting an affirmative answer,
not?

nōnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, ninth

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Norici

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Norici,
Norican

nōs, *see ego*

nōscō, *nōscere*, *nōvī*, *nōtus*, *trans.*,
learn, become acquainted with. —
In perf. tenses, know

noster, -tra, -trum, *possessive pro-*
nominal adj., our, ours. — *In*
plur., our men (*the Romans*), our
forces

nōtitia, -ae [*notus*], *f.*, acquaintance
with, knowledge

nōtus, *p. p. of nosco*

novem, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine

Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*: 1. A town of
the Bituriges, on the Loire. —

2. A town of the Suessiones

novitās, -ātis [*novus*], *f.*, novelty,
strangeness

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, fresh;
strange: *res novae*, a change of
government, revolution. — *novis-*
simus, -a, -um, *superl.*, latest,
last: *agmen* (the rear)

nox, *noctis*, *f.*, night: *prima nocte*,

in the early part of the night;

multa nocte, late at night

noxia, -ae [*cf. noceo*], *f.*, crime, guilt
nūbō, *nūbere*, *nūpsi*, *nūptus*, *intrans.*,
marry (*of the woman*)

nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*nudus*], *trans.*,
lay bare, expose, strip

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, bare,
unprotected, exposed

nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, not any, no. —
As noun, no one. — *nōn nūllus*,
some; *plur. as noun*, some, some
persons

num, *interrog. adv.*, suggesting a
neg. answer; no corresponding
word in English

nūmen, -inis, *n.*, will, power; divinity
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number: *in hostium*
numero habuit (in the place of, as,
etc., euphemism for slaughtered)

Numida, -ae, *m.*, Numidian, of
northern Africa. The Numidians
were famous cavalrymen under
Hannibal; they were used in the
Roman army also

numquam, *adv.*, never

nunc, *adv.*, now

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*nuntius*],
trans., bring word, report

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger. Hence,
news: *nuntius mittere*, send
word; *per eorum nuntios* (agents)

nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently, not
long ago

nūptum, *see nūbō*

nūtus, -ūs [*nūo*, *nod*], *m.*, a nod:

ad nutum, at one's command

nympha, -ae, *f.*, nymph

ob — occultus

ob, *prep. with acc.*, against; on account of, for: *ob eam rem*, for this reason, on this account.—*In composition*, towards, to, against, over

obaerātus, -a, -um [*ob-aes*], *adj.*, bound in debt.—*As noun*, debtor, servant for debt

obducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, draw over, overcast; lead towards, lead against: *fossam* (throw out, *in a military sense*, carry along)

obicīō, -icere, -lēcī, -iectus [*ob-iacio*], *trans.*, throw against, throw in the way, present, set up, expose.—*obiectus*, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, lying opposite, lying in the way

obiectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of obicio*

obitus, -ūs [*obeo*], *m.*, destruction, annihilation, death

oblātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of offero*

oblinō, -linere, -lēvī, -litus, *trans.*, smear, daub

obliquē, *adv.*, obliquely, slanting

oblivīscor, -livīscī, -lītus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, forget

obscurō, -scūrāre, -scūrāvī, -scūrātus, *trans.*, darken, cover, hide

obscurus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ob-sacrum*, sacred thing], *trans.*, entreat, beg

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, pay attention to: *iudicium* (follow, comply with); *diem natalem* (keep, celebrate)

obses, -idis [*cf. obsideo*], *c.*, hostage

obsessus, -a, -um, *p.p. of obsideo*

obsideo, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [*ob-sedeo*, sit], *trans.*, blockade, beset, guard

obsidiō, -ōnis [*cf. obsideo*], *f.*, siege, blockade: *obsidione liberare* (from besetting enemies)

obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, seal up, seal

obstrictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of obstringo*
obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, *trans.*, bind: *habere obstrictas* (under obligation)

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, *intrans.*, comply with, submit to

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, implore

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*obteneo*], *trans.*, retain, maintain, occupy, possess; gain, acquire, obtain
obtrectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, detraction, disparagement

obtuli, *perf. of offero*

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, meet

obviam, *adv.*, in the way of, to meet
occāsiō, -ōnis [*ob-cado*], *f.*, opportunity

occāsus, -ūs [*ob-cado*], *m.*, a falling, a setting (*of the sun*): *solis* (the sunset, the west)

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [*ob-caedo*], *trans.*, kill, massacre: *occisi*, the slain

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*occultus*], *trans.*, conceal, hide

occultus, -a, -um [*p.p. of occulo*, hide], *adj.*, concealed: *in occulto*, in secret

occupātiō — oportet

- occupātiō**, -ōnis [*occupo*], *f.*, occupation, business affairs: **occupationes tantularum rerum**, engagement in such trifling matters
- occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, seize, take possession of: **regna** (usurp).—**occupātus**, -a, -um, *p. p.* as *adj.*, engaged, employed, busy
- occurrō**, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus [*ob-curro*, run], *intrans.*, meet, come on, find: **eo** (run, to meet an enemy)
- Oceanus**, -ī, *m.*, ocean
- Ocelum**, -ī, *n.*, a town in Cisalpine Gaul
- octāvus**, -a, -um [*octo*], *num. adj.*, eighth
- octingenti**, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, eight hundred
- octō**, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight
- Octodūrus**, -ī, *m.*, a town of the Veragri
- octōgintā**, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty
- oculus**, -ī, *m.*, the eye
- ōdī**, **ōdisse**, *defective, trans.*, hate, detest
- odium**, -ī [*cf. odi*], *n.*, hatred
- offendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [*ob-fendo*, strike], *trans. and intrans.*, dash against, hurt: **animus** (hurt the feelings)
- offēnsiō**, -ōnis [*offendo*], *f.*, offense: **sine offensione animi**, without wounding one's feelings
- offerō**, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [*ob-fero*], *irr., trans.*, throw in one's way, offer: **se morti** (expose one's self to); **quos sibi oblato**s (placed in his power)
- officium**, -ī, *n.*, service, performance of a duty; duty, allegiance, obligation: **discedere ab officio**, fail in one's duty
- ōlim**, *adv.*, once on a time, once
- omittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus [*ob-mitto*], *trans.*, let go by, disregard: **consilium** (leave untried, neglect)
- omniñō** [*omnis*], *adv.*, altogether, entirely, in general, on the whole, only, utterly, in all, at all, whatever (*with negatives*)
- omnis**, -e, *adj.*, all, the whole of.—*In sing.*, every: **omni tempore**, on all occasions, always.—*In plur.*, a short expression for all others
- onerārius**, -a, -um [*onus*], *adj.*, for burdens: **naves** (transports)
- onus**, -eris, *n.*, burden, weight.—*Esp.*, **tanta onera navium**, ships of such weight
- opera**, -ae [*opus*], *f.*, work, pains, attention: **operam navare**, do one's best; **operam dare**, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains
- operiō**, -perire, -perui, -pertus, *trans.*, cover
- opiniō**, -ōnis [*optinor*, think], *f.*, notion, expectation, idea, reputation: **celerius omni opinione**, quicker than any one would suppose; **opinione praecipere**, anticipate
- oportet**, -ēre, -uit, *intrans., impers.*, it ought, it is best: **poenam sequi** (the punishment was to follow); **frumentum metiri** (he ought etc.)

oppidānus — Orpheus

oppidānus, -a, -um [*oppidum*], *adj.*, of a town. — *Plur. as noun*, townspeople

oppidum, -i, *n.*, stronghold, town

oppleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [*ob-pleo*], *trans.*, fill up, fill

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [*ob-pono*], *trans.*, oppose

opportūnē, *adv.*, opportunely

opportunitās, -ātis [*opportunus*], *f.*, timeliness, fitness, good luck, favorable chance

opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opportune, advantageous, lucky

oppositus, -a, -um [*p. p. of oppono*], *adj.*, opposed, opposite

oppressus, -a, -um, *p. p. of opprimo*

opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressus [*ob-premo*], *trans.*, overwhelm, crush, overpower, surprise

oppugnātiō, -ōnis [*oppugno*], *f.*, siege, attack

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ob-pugno*], *trans.*, attack, lay siege to

† **ops**, **opis** (*sing. in gen., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire*), *f.*, help, aid. — *Plur.*, resources, means, strength, wealth

optātus, -a, -um [*p. p. of opto*, wish], *adj.*, desired

optimē, *superl. of bene*

optimus, -a, -um, *superl. of bonus*

opus, *n.*, *indecl.*, need, necessity: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, if he needed anything of Cæsar; si quid opus facto, if anything needs to be done

opus, **operis**, *n.*, work, labor. — *In*

a military sense, a work, works, fortifications. — *In abl.*, **magno opere**, very much, very, greatly; **quanto opere**, how much; **tanto opere**, so much, so, so earnestly; *often as one word*, **magnopere**, **tantopere**

ōra, -ae, *f.*, shore, coast

ōrāculum, -ī [*oro*], *n.*, oracle

ōrātiō, -ōnis [*oro*], *f.*, speech, address, discourse, argument

ōrātor, -ōris [*oro*], *m.*, speaker, ambassador, envoy

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle: **orbis terrarum**, the circle of lands, the whole world

ōrdō, -īnis, *m.*, series, row, tier, rank (*of soldiers*), grade (*of centurions*, as commanding special *ordines of soldiers*, also the centurions themselves), arrangement, order

Orgetorix, -īgis, *m.*, a nobleman of the Helvetii

orior, **oriri**, **ortus**, *dep., intrans.*, arise, spring up. — *Fig.*, begin, start, arise, have its source. — **oriēns**, -entis, *pres. p. as adj.*, rising: **sol** (sunrise, the east)

ōrnāmentum, -ī [*orno*], *n.*, an adornment; an honor

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, adorn, equip, furnish. — *Fig.*, honor. —

ōrnātus, -a, -um, *p. p. as adj.*, furnished, well-equipped, honored

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, speak; pray, entreat

Orpheus, -ī, *m.*, a Thracian bard, whose lyre could charm beasts and move rocks and trees

ortus — partus

ortus, -a, -um, *p.p. of orior*
ōs, ōris, *n.*, the mouth, the face
Osismi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a coast
 tribe of northwestern Gaul
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus
 [*obs* (= *ob*-) *tendo*], *trans.*, present,
 show, point out, make known,
 state, declare
ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, dis-
 play, exhibit
ōtium, -ī, *n.*, repose, inactivity, quiet
ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg

P., *abbr. for Publius*

pābulātiō, -ōnis [*pabulor*], *f.*, a forag-
 ing, getting fodder

pābulum, -ī [*cf. pascō*, feed], *n.*,
 fodder

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*pax*], *trans.*,
 pacify, subdue. — **pācātus**, -a, -um,
p.p. as adj., peaceable, quiet

Padus, -ī, *m.*, the Po, the principal
 river of Italy

paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *trans., impers.*,
 it repents (*one*), one repents, one
 regrets

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly: **palam**
 facere, make known

palma, -ae, *f.*, the palm (*of the*
hand); palm tree

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh

Pamphylus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pamphy-
 lian, name of the Mediterranean
 sea near Pamphylia, a region of
 southwestern Asia Minor

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus or

pānsus, *trans.*, spread out: **passis**
 manibus, with outstretched hands;
 passis capillis, with disheveled
 hair

pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, alike, like

parātus, *see paro*

parcē [*parco*], *adv.*, sparingly, fru-
 gally

parcō, parcere, peperci, parsūrus, *in-*
trans., spare. — *Esp.*, save alive:

parcendo, by economy, by frugality

parēns, -entis [*pario*, bear], *c.*, parent

pārēō, pārere, pārui, *no p.p., in-*
trans., appear; obey, submit to

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, *trans.*,
 bring forth; produce, obtain

Parisii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic
 tribe in the district where Paris
 is now

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, pro-
 cure, provide, prepare, arrange.

— **parātus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*,
 ready, prepared

pars, partis, *f.*, portion, part, share.

— *Often of position or direction*
merely, side, direction, region:

una ex parte, on one side; **ex**
utroque parte, on both sides. —

Fig., **qua ex parte**, in which re-
 spect; **omnibus partibus**, in all

respects. — *Esp.*, **tres partes**, three
 quarters (*three parts out of four*);

ex parte, in part. — **partim**, *old*
acc. as adv., in part, partly, some

. . . others

partim, *see pars*

partior, -iri, -itus, *dep., trans.*, divide

partus, -a, -um, *p.p. of pario*

parum — Pedius

parum, *adv.*, not much, not sufficiently: **parum diligenter**, too carelessly

parvulus, -a, -um [*parvus*], *adj.*, small, slight, insignificant

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, slight, little

passim, *adv.*, in all directions, all about

passus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of **pando**; also *p.p.* of **patior**

passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace (*the distance from the point where the heel leaves the ground to the point where the same heel again touches the ground; really a double step, about five Roman feet*): **mille passūs** or **mille passuum**, a Roman mile, five thousand feet

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*pateo-facio*], *trans.*, lay open, open, open up

patefiō, -fieri, *pass.* of **patefacio**

pateō, -ēre, -uī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, be extended, lie open, spread, extend. — **patēns**, -entis, *pres. p.* as *adj.*, open, exposed

pater, -tris, *m.*, father. — *Plur.*, ancestors

paternus, -a, -um [*pater*], *adj.*, paternal, of a father

patior, **pati**, **passus**, *dep.*, *trans.*, suffer, endure, allow, permit

patria, -ae [*pater*], *f.*, native land, country

patrius, -a, -um [*pater*], *adj.*, ancestral, of one's fathers

patruus, -ī [*pater*], *m.*, uncle (*on the father's side*)

paucitās, -ātis [*paucus*], *f.*, small number

paucus, -a, -um, *adj.*, almost always in *plur.*, few, some few: **paucis (pauca) respondit** (in a few words, briefly)

paulātim, *adv.*, little by little, a little at a time, gradually

paulisper, *adv.*, a little while

paulō [*abl. of paulus*, little], *adv.*, a little, slightly

paululum [*paulum*], *adv.*, a very little

paulum, -ī [*neut. of paulus*, little], a little. — *As adv.*, a little, a short distance, somewhat

Paulus, -ī, *m.*, see **Aemilius**

pāx, **pācis**, *f.*, peace, favor

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, go wrong, commit a fault

pecūnia, -ae [*pecus*], *f.*, money, wealth

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle (*esp. sheep and goats*): **pecore vivere** (flesh of cattle). — *Plur.*, cattle, flocks and herds

pedālis, -e [*pēs*], *adj.*, a foot thick

pedes, -itis [*pēs*], *m.*, footman, foot soldier. — *Collectively*, the infantry

pedester, -tris, -tre [*pedes*], *adj.*, of infantry, of persons on foot: **copiae** (the foot, the infantry)

peditātus, -ūs [*pedes*], *m.*, foot, infantry

Pedius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name — *Esp.*, Q. Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul

peior — Pergamēnus

peior, *see* malus

peius, *see* male

Peliās, -ae, *m.*, a mythical king of Thessaly, uncle of Jason

pellis, -is, *f.*, hide, skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*): sub pellibus, in tents, *i.e.* in the field

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *trans.*, beat, drive, defeat, repulse

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, *trans.*, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out. — *Also*, pay (*a penalty*), suffer (*punishment*)

penitus, *adv.*, far within: penitus ad extremos fines (clear to, all the way to)

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, along, over, among, by means of. — *In composition*, as *adv.*, very, exceedingly, completely

perāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* perago

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*percapio*], *trans.*, acquire, learn, feel, hear

percontātiō, -ōnis [*percontor*, inquire], *f.*, inquiry

percuriō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursus, *trans. and intrans.*, run along

percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [*perquatio*, shake], *trans.*, hit, strike, run through

perdiscō, -discere, -didici, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, learn thoroughly, get by heart

perditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* perdo

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, *trans.*, destroy, ruin. — perditus,

-a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, ruined, despoiled, abandoned

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead through, lead along, conduct, bring over, make (*fossam*). — *Fig.*, prolong, win over, bring

pereō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, *irr., intrans.*, perish, be killed

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, ride through (*or around*)

perexiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small

perfacilis, -e, *adj.*, very easy

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr., trans.*, carry through (*or over*): opiñionem (spread); consilium (carry over); famam (bring). — *Also*, bear through (*to the end*), endure, suffer, submit to

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*perfacio*], *trans.*, accomplish, complete, finish; bring about

perfidia, -ae [*perfidus*, treacherous], *f.*, treachery, faithlessness

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus [*per-frango*], *trans.*, break through

perfuga, -ae [*cf. perfugio*], *m.*, fugitive, deserter

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, run away, escape to, desert

perfugium, -i [*perfugio*], *n.*, place of refuge, refuge

perfungor, -fungī, -fūnctus, *dep., intrans.*, fulfill, perform (*abl.*)

Pergamēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pergamum (a city of northwestern Asia Minor). — *Masc. as noun*, Pergamene

pergō — perturbātiō

pergō, **pergere**, **perrēxi**, **perrēctus** [*per-rego*], *intrans.*, keep on, advance
periclitor, **-ārī**, **-ātus** [*periculum*], *dep.*,
trans. and intrans., try, make
 tests to ascertain, be put in
 peril

periculōsus, **-a**, **-um** [*periculum*], *adj.*,
 dangerous

periculum, **-ī**, *n.*, test, trial. *Hence*,
 peril, danger, risk

peritus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, experienced,
 skilled, skillful

perlātus, **-a**, **-um**, *p. p. of perfero*

perlegō, **-legere**, **-lēgi**, **-lēctus** [*per-lego*, read], read through, peruse
permaneō, **-manēre**, **-mānsī**, **-mānsū-**
rus, *intrans.*, remain (to the end),
 continue, hold out, persist

permittō, **-mittere**, **-misi**, **-missus**,
trans., grant, allow, give up, in-
 trust

permoveō, **-movēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**,
trans., influence, affect. — **permō-**
tus, **-a**, **-um**, *p. p.*, much affected,
 much influenced, overcome

permulceō, **-mulcere**, **-mulsī**, **-mulsus**,
trans., soothe, pacify

perniciēs, **-iēs**, *f.*, destruction, ruin

perpaucus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, always in
 the plur., very few, a very few

perpendiculum, **-ī**, *n.*, plumb line:
 ad **perpendiculum**, perpendicularly
perpetior, **-petī**, **-pessus** [*per-patior*],
dep., *trans.*, bear steadfastly, suf-
 fer, endure

perpetuus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, continuous,
 without interruption, lasting, per-
 manent: in **perpetuum**, forever,

permanently. — **perpetuō**, *abl. as*
adv., forever, constantly, con-
 tinually

perquirō, **-quīrere**, **-quīsivī**, **-quīsitus**
 [*per-quaero*], *trans.*, search for,
 inquire about

perrumpō, **-rumpere**, **-rūpī**, **-ruptus**,
trans. and intrans., break through,
 force one's way through

perruptus, **-a**, **-um**, *p. p. of perrumpo*
perscribō, **-scribere**, **-scripsi**, **-scriptus**,
trans., write in full, set down,
 state, describe, recount

persequor, **-sequi**, **-secutus**, *dep.*,
trans., follow up, pursue, attack
perseverō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-āturus**, *in-*
trans., persist

persolvō, **-solvere**, **-solvi**, **-solutus**,
trans., pay, suffer (*punishment*)
perspicio, **-spicere**, **-spexī**, **-spectus**,
trans., see through; understand,
 learn, observe, discover

persuadeō, **-suādēre**, **-suāsī**, **-suāsus**,
trans. and intrans., induce, per-
 suade. — *Pass. (impers.)*, be per-
 suaded (*dat. of person*), be satisfied,
 believe

perterreō, **-terrēre**, **-terrui**, **-territus**,
trans., terrify, alarm

pertinācia, **-ae** [*pertinax*, obstinate],
f., obstinacy, stubbornness

pertineō, **-tinēre**, **-tinui**, *no p. p.*
 [*per-teneo*], *intrans.*, tend, extend;
 have to do with: **eodem illo ut**
etc. (have the same purpose)

pertuli, *see perfero*

perturbātiō, **-ōnis** [*perturbo*], *f.*, dis-
 turbance, alarm, panic

perturbō — plūs

- perturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, disturb, throw into confusion, alarm, terrify
- pervagor**, -ari, -ātus, *dep., intrans.*, roam about, scatter
- pervenio**, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, arrive at, reach, come, arrive: *ad hunc locum* (come to this point); *pars* (of property, come, fall)
- pēs**, *pedis*, *m.*, foot. — *Esp.*, *pedem* referre, draw back, give way
- petō**, *petere*, *petivi*, *petitus*, *trans.*, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to. Hence, ask, request: *petentibus Haeduis* (at the request of etc.); *fugam* (take to)
- Petrosidius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, L. Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Cæsar's army
- phalanx**, -angis, *f.*, phalanx
- Phāsis**, -idis (*acc. -im*), *m.*, a river flowing into the Black Sea
- Phineus**, -i, *m.*, a blind king of Thrace
- Philippus**, -i, *m.*, Philip (V), king of Macedonia, 220–179 B.C.
- Phrixus**, -i, *m.*, son of Athamas (a mythical king)
- Pictonēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe south of the Loire
- pilum**, -i, *n.*, javelin
- pilus**, -i, *m.*, century (of third line of legionary soldiers): *primi pili centurio*, primipilar centurion, the ranking centurion of the legion
- pinna**, -ae, *f.*, parapet, battlement
- piscis**, -is, *m.*, fish
- Pisō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*: 1. L. Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B.C., and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar's wife; consul with A. Gabinius in 58 B.C. — 3. M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in 61 B.C. — 4. Piso, an Aquitanian
- pix**, *picis*, *f.*, pitch
- placeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, *intrans.*, please. — *Esp. in third person*, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines
- plācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, pacify, appease
- plānē**, *adv.*, flatly, clearly, entirely
- plānitēs**, -ēi [*planus*], *f.*, plain
- plānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, flat, level, even: *carinae planiores* (less deep, less rounding)
- plausus**, -ūs, *m.*, clapping (of hands), applause, approval
- plēbs**, -is (or *plēbēs*, -ēi), *f.*, the common people
- plēnē**, *adv.*, fully, entirely, completely
- plēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, full
- plērusque**, -aque, -umque, *adj.*, only in *plur.*, most of, very many. — *plērumque*, *acc. sing. as adv.*, generally, usually, for the most part, very often
- plumbum**, -i, *n.*, lead
- plūrimus**, *see multus*
- plūs**, *see multus*

poena — post

poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty; punishment

Poenus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Carthaginian.

— *Masc. as noun*, Carthaginian

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb

polliceor, -licēri, -licitus, *dep., trans.*, offer, promise: *liberaliter* (make liberal offers)

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [*polliceor*], *f.*, offer, promise

pollicitus, -a, -um, *p. p. of polliceor*

Polybius, -ī, *m.*, a celebrated Greek historian, intimate friend of the younger Scipio, whom he accompanied on his military expeditions

Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*, one of the Argonauts

Pompēius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or family name.—*Esp.*: 1. Cn. Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with M. Crassus in 55 B. C.—2. Cn. Pompeius, an interpreter of Q. Titurius Sabinus

pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *trans.*, lay down, place, put: *castra* (pitch); *praesidium* (station, *but see below*).—*Fig.*, place, lay, make depend on: *in fuga praesidium and spem salutis in virtute* (find, found, seek).—*positus*, -a, -um, *p. p.*, situated, lying, depending on

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge

Pontus, -ī, *m.*, a country of north-eastern Asia Minor

populātiō, -ōnis [*populor*], *f.*, a plundering, raid

populor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, ravage, devastate

populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation, tribe:

populus Romanus (*the official designation of the Roman state*)

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, *trans.*, stretch forth: *porrecta loca pertinent* (stretch out in extent)

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, carry, bring, convey

portōrium, -ī, *n.*, duty, toll

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, haven, port

poscō, poscere, poposci, *no p. p.*, *trans.*, demand, require, claim

positus, -a, -um, *p. p. of pono*

possessiō, -ōnis [*possideo*], *f.*, possession, occupation; possessions, lands

possideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus [*pro* (= *pro-sedeo*, sit)], *trans.*, occupy (*in a military sense*), possess, hold

possum, posse, potuī, *no p. p.*, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be able, can, *etc.*: *plurimum posse*, be most powerful, have very great influence; *largiter posse*, have great influence; *tantum multitudine posse*, be so strong in numbers; *equitatu nihil posse*, have no strength in cavalry; *quicquid possunt*, whatever power they have; *quid virtute possint*, the prowess of, how formidable they are by their valor; *fieri posse*, be possible; *ut spatium intercedere posset* (might intervene); *quam maximum potest*, the greatest he can

post, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, behind, after: *post se*, in their rear

postea — praeclārus

postea, *adv.*, afterwards
posteaquam, *conj.*, after
posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the next, later: **postero die**, the next day; in **posterum**, the next day. *Plur. as noun*, posterity. — **postrēmus**, -a, -um, *superl.*, last. — **postrēmō**, *abl. as adv.*, lastly, finally
postquam, *conj.*, after
postrēmō, *see posterus*
postrēmus, *see posterus*
postridī [*posterus-dies*], *adv.*, the next day: **postridie eius diei**, the next day after that
postulātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of postulo*], *n.*, demand, request, claim
postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, claim, ask, request, require: **tempus anni** (make necessary)
potēns, -entis [*pres. p. of possum*], *adj.*, powerful, influential
potentātus, -ūs [*potens*], *m.*, the chief power, supremacy
potentia, -ae [*potens*], *f.*, power, authority (*not official or legal*)
potestās, -ātis [*potis*, able], *f.*, power (*official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium*), control, ability, opportunity, chance: **sui potestatem facere**, give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them
potior, **potiri**, **potitus**, *dep., intrans.*, become master of, get the control of (*abl. or gen.*)
potior, -us, -ōris, *adj.*, preferable. — **potius**, *acc. as adv.*, preferably, rather

potissimum [*potissimus*], *adv.*, in preference to all else, most of all, chiefly
potitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of potior*
prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in comparison with. — *Esp. with words implying hindrance*, for, on account of (*some obstacle*). — *In composition*, before others, very, before, at the head of
praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharpened to a point, pointed
praebeō, **praebere**, **praeui**, **praebitus** [*prae-habeo*], *trans.*, offer, present, furnish
praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus, *intrans.*, take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *trans.*, go before; excel, surpass
praeceps, -cipitis [*prae-caput*], *adj.*, headlong, in haste: **locus praecipuus**, a steep incline, a precipitous place
praeceptum, -ī [*p.p. of praecipio*], *n.*, an instruction, an order
praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*prae-capio*], *trans.*, take beforehand, anticipate; order, give instructions
praecipitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*praeceps*], *trans.*, throw headlong: **se** (plunge headlong)
praecipuē [*praecipuus*, special], *adv.*, especially
praeclārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, brilliant; splendid, famous

Praecōninus — praetereā

Praecōninus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-curri), -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run before, outstrip, anticipate

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, prey, plunder
praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, proclaim, assert, describe, boast
praedicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, *trans.*, foretell, predict

praedor, -ārī, -ātus [*praeda*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, plunder, take booty
praedūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead before, construct in front

praefectus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *praeficio*. — *As noun*, see *praeficio*

praefērō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, place before, esteem above, prefer, prefer to (*with quam*): *se alicui* (show one's self better than)

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*praefacio*], *trans.*, put before, place in command of, set over. — **praefectus**, -ī, *m.* of *p. p.* as noun, captain (*esp.* of cavalry), commander, officer

praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*, send forward, send on, send ahead

praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, prize, distinction

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, choose rather, prefer

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, prepare beforehand

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, *trans.*, put in command, set over

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, break off

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *trans.*, order, direct, give directions

praescriptum, -ī [*n. p. p.* of *praescribo*], *n.*, an order, orders

praesēns, -entis, see *praesum*

praesentia, -ae [*praesens*], *f.*, presence, the present moment: in **praesentia**, for the moment, at the moment

praesertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly

praesidium, -ī [*praesideo*, sit before], *n.*, a guard, garrison, a force; fortification, intrenchment; protection, safety: in *fuga praesidium ponere*, seek safety in flight; *intra praesidia*, within the lines

praestāns, -stantis [*praesto*], *adj.*, remarkable, conspicuous

praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, stand before, excel, be superior: **praestat**, it is better. — *Also, causatively*, furnish, display: **officium** (discharge, perform)

praesum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be in front, be at the head of, be in command: **magistratui** (hold). — **praesēns**, -entis, *pres. p.*, present, immediate: **pluribus praesentibus**, in the presence of many

praeter, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, along by, past, beyond. — *Fig.*, except, beside, contrary to
praetereā, *adv.*, furthermore, besides

praetereō — probō

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.*
and *intrans.*, go by, pass by, pass
over. — **praeteritus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*
as *adj.*, past. — *Esp.*, **praeterita**,
n. plur., the past

praeternitō, -mittere, -misi, -missus,
trans., let slip, omit, neglect

praetor, -ōris [*praeco*, go before], *m.*,
commander. — *Esp.*, **praetor**, *one*
of a class of magistrates at Rome:
legatus pro praetore (lieutenant in
command, acting as a praetor)

praetorius, -a, -um [*praetor*], *adj.*,
of a praetor (*in all its senses*):
praetoria cohors, the bodyguard
of a commander

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstus, *trans.*,
burn at the end

premō, **premere**, **pressi**, **pressus**,
trans., press hard, attack fiercely,
harass, oppress

prēndō, **prēndere**, **prēndi**, **prēnsus**,
trans., seize, take, grasp

pretium, -i, *n.*, price, cost, value

† **prex**, **precis** (*sing. in dat., acc.*,
and *abl. only*; *plur. entire*), *f.*,
prayer, entreaty

pridiē, *adv.*, the day before

prīmpilus [*primus-pilus*], *m.*, the
first centurion

primō [*abl. of primus*], *adv.*, at first

primum [*acc. of primus*], *adv.*, first,
in the first place: **cum primum**,
as soon as; **quam primum**, as
soon as possible

primus, *see prior*

prīnceps, -ipis [*primus-capio*], *adj.*,
first, chief, foremost: **locus** (chief,

highest); **ea princeps persolvit**
(was the first to). — *Often as*
noun, leader, chief: **legationis**
(head)

prīncipātus, -ūs [*princeps*], *m.*, fore-
most position, first place, leader-
ship

prior, -us, -ōris, *adj.*, former, before:
priores, those in front. — **prius**,
n. as adv., before (*see also*
priusquam). — **primus**, -a, -um,
superl., first: **agmen** (front); in
primis, especially. — *See primo*
and **primum**

prīstinus, -a, -um [*prius*], *adj.*, old,
former: **prīstinus dies**, the day
before

prius, *see prior*

priusquam, *conj.*, earlier than, be-
fore. *Often separated*, **prius . . .**
quam

privātim [*privatus*], *adv.*, privately,
as private persons

privātus, -a, -um [*p.p. of privo*, de-
prive], *adj.*, private, personal

prō (**prōd** in some compounds), *prep.*
with *abl.*, in front of, before.
Hence, in place of, instead of, for,
as, on behalf of: **pro explorato**,
ascertained, as certain. — *Also*, in
view of, in accordance with, in
proportion to, considering, in re-
turn for, for. — *In composition*,
before, forth, away, for, down (*as*
falling forward)

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, ap-
prove, test, prove, show, be sat-
isfied with

prōcēdō — proinde

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, *intrans.*, go forward, advance: longius (go to a distance)

Procillus, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name
prōcōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, proconsul, ex-consul (*during his term of service abroad*)

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, afar, from afar

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, *no p.p.* [*pro-cumbo*, lie], *intrans.*, fall, sink down, lie down; incline, slope

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, care for, have charge of, attend to

prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursurus, *intrans.*, run forward, charge, rush out

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [*prod* (*see pro*), *eo*], *irr.*, *intrans.*, go forth, come forth, come out, go forward

prōditiō, -ōnis [*prodo*], *f.*, treason, treachery

prōditor, -ōris [*prodo*], *m.*, traitor, betrayer

prōditus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *prodo*

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*pro-do*, put], *trans.*, give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down

prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, *trans.*, lead out, bring out, draw up (*troops*); protract, prolong

proelior, -ārī, -ātus [*proelium*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, fight (*in war*)

proelium, -i, *n.*, battle, contest, skirmish: *committere* (engage, join battle, risk a battle)

profectiō, -ōnis [*proficiscor*], *f.*, a setting out, departure

prōfectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *proficiscor*

prōfectus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *proficio*

professus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *profiteor*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [*pro-facio*], *trans.* and *intrans.*, accomplish: *satis ad laudem profectum est*, enough has been done for glory

proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, start, leave, depart, set out: *ad proficiscendum pertinere* (to a journey)

profiteor, -fiteri, -fessus [*pro-fateor*, confess], *dep.*, *trans.* and *intrans.*, declare publicly, state

prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, dash to the ground; put to rout, rout

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxi, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, flow forth, rise

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, *intrans.*, flee, escape

prōgnātus, -a, -um [*pro-(g)natus*, *p.p.* of *(g)nascor*], *adj.*, sprung from: *prognati ex*, descendants of

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus [*pro-gradior*, step, go], *dep.*, *intrans.*, go forward, march forward; proceed, go

prōgressus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of *progredior*

prohibeō, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitus [*pro-habeo*], *trans.*, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, forbid; protect

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*pro-iacio*], *trans.*, throw forward, throw away, abandon: *se ex navi* (leap)

proinde, *adv.*, therefore, hence

prōmittō — prōvectus

- prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, trans.,** send forth.—*Fig.*, promise
- prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, trans.,** move forward, advance, push forward
- prōmptus, -a, -um, adj.,** ready, quick, active
- prōmunturium, -ī, n.,** headland
- prōnē, adv.,** with a slope
- prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,** make known, communicate, give orders, declare, make proclamation
- prōpatulum, -ī, n.,** open place; court
- prope, prep. with acc.,** near.—*Fig.*, almost, nearly.—**propius, comp., adv.,** nearer: **propius tumultum** (*as prep.*).—**proximē, superl., adv.,** lately, last
- prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans.,** drive away, repulse, rout, dislodge, force back
- properē, adv.,** quickly
- properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrans.,** hasten, hurry
- propinquitās, -ātis [propinquus], f.,** vicinity.—*Esp.*, nearness in blood, relationship
- propinquus, -a, -um, adj.,** near at hand, near.—*Esp. by blood*, related.—*As noun in plur.*, relatives
- propior, -us, -ōris [prope], adj.,** nearer.—**proximus, superl.,** nearest, next, neighboring: **bellum** (last).—*With force of prep.*, **proximi Rhenum**, nearest the Rhine
- prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans.,** place before; offer, put in the way, make known, state, represent
- proprius, -a, -um [prope], adj.,** of one's own: **finēs** (particular); **hoc proprium virtutis** (a peculiar property, a mark)
- propter [prope], adv., and prep. with acc.,** close by.—*Also*, on account of
- propterea, adv.,** on this account.—*With quod*, because
- prōpugnō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, intrans.,** fight in defense
- prōpulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,** repel, keep off, drive off
- prōra, -ae, f.,** prow (*of a ship*)
- prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutus, trans.,** dash down, overthrow, demolish
- prōrutus, -a, -um, p.p. of proruo**
- prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., trans.,** pursue, escort; address
- prōspectus, -ūs [prospicio], m.,** outlook, view
- prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans.,** look forward, look out, watch; provide for, take care
- prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, irr., intrans.,** be useful, benefit, assist
- prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [protego], trans.,** protect, cover
- prōtinus, adv.,** straightway, forthwith, at once
- prōturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,** drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge
- prōvectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proveho**

prōvehō — quadrāgintā

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *trans.*, carry forward. — *In pass.*, be carried forth, sail

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsus, *trans.*, foresee, take care, provide, arrange beforehand: *satis est provisum*, sufficient provision has been made

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, office (*of a commander or governor*), province (*in general*); also, a province (*governed by a Roman magistrate*). — *Esp.*, the Province (*of Gaul*)

prōvinciālis, -e [*prōvincia*], *adj.*, of a province. — *Esp.*, of the Province (*of Gaul*)

prōvisus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *provideo*
prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, *intrans.*, rush out, fly out (*of cavalry etc.*)

proximē, *see prope*

proximus, *see propior*

prūdētia, -ae [*prudens*], foreseeing, *f.*, foresight, discretion

Prūsias, -ae, *m.*, a king of Bithynia (*in northern Asia Minor*) to whom Hannibal fled

Ptiānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

publicō, *adv.*, in the name of the state, publicly

publicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*publicus*], *trans.*, make state property, confiscate

publicus, -a, -um [*populus*], *adj.*, of the people, of the state, public: *res publica*, commonwealth, state

Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

pudor, -ōris, *m.*, sense of shame, sense of honor

puer, -ī, *m.*, boy, servant, slave. — *Plur.*, children (*of either sex*): a *pueris*, from childhood

puerilis, -e [*puer*], *adj.*, of a child: *aetas* (*of childhood*)

puerulus, -ī [*puer*], little boy

pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight: *ad pugnam*, for fighting

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, fight, engage. — *Often impers. in pass.*, *pugnatum est etc.*, they fought, the fighting continued

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, T. Pullo, a centurion in Caesar's army

pulsus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *pello*

pulsus, -ūs [*pello*], *m.*, stroke, beat: *pulsu remorum praestare* (*the working etc.*)

pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, clean, clear; excuse, free from suspicion

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, think, suppose, consider

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, only with *montes*, the Pyrenees, mountains between France and Spain

Q., *abbr. for Quintus*

quā, *rel. adv.*, by which (*way*), where

quācumque, *rel. adv.*, by whichever (*way*), wherever

quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, forty each, forty (*each being often omitted in English*)

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty

quadringenti — quies

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*,
plur., four hundred

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, *trans.*, search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask: *eadem* (make the same inquiries)

quaesivī, *see quaerō*

quaestiō, -ōnis [*quaero*], *f.*, investigation

quaestor, -ōris [*quaero*], *m.*, quaestor (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army)

quaestus, -ūs [*quaero*], *m.*, acquisition, gain

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort? **qualis ascensus** (what is the nature of?)

quam, *adv. and conj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how? — 2. *Rel.*, as, than. — *Often with superlatives*, as . . . as possible: **quam maximus**, the greatest possible; **quam maxime**, (to) the utmost; **quam maxime potest**, as much as he can

quamdiū (*often written separately, see diu*), *rel. adv.* (*with antecedent omitted*), as long as

quamquam, *conj.*, although

quamvis, *adv.*, as you please, however, no matter how

quandō, *adv.*, at any time: **si quando**, if ever, whenever

quāto [*quantus*], *adv.*, by how much, (by as much) as

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how great? how much? **quantum boni**, how much good? **quantae civitates** (how important?). —

2. *Rel.*, as great as, as much as: **tantum . . . quantum**, so (as) much . . . as

quārtus, -a, -um [*quattuor*], *num. adj.*, fourth

quasi, *conj.*, as if

quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four

quattuordecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fourteen

-que, *conj.*, and. — *Sometimes connecting the general with the particular*, and in general, and other **queror**, **querī**, **questus**, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, complain, bewail, lament

questus, -a, -um, *p. p. of queror*

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *interrog. adj.*, which? what?

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that. — *Often where a dem. pron. is used in English*, this, that. — *Often implying an antecedent*, he who, etc.: **ea quae**, things which, whatever. — **quō**, *abl. of measure of difference as adv.*, the (more, less, etc.)

quī, **qua** (**quae**), **quid**, *used after si, ne, ubi, etc.*, *indef. adj.*, any

quicquam, *see quisquam*

quicumque, **quae**, **quod**, *indef. rel. adj. and pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever

quidam, **quae**, **quod** (**quid**), *indef. adj. and pron.*, a certain, certain, a kind of: **quidam ex militibus** (one)

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at least, certainly: **ne . . . quidem**, not even, not . . . either

quies, -ētis, *f.*, rest, sleep, repose

quīētus — quot

quīētus, -a, -um [*p.p. of quiesco*, keep quiet], *adj.*, at rest, quiet, peaceable

quīn [*qui (old abl.)*, -ne]: 1. *Corroborative adv.*: quīn etiam, nay even, in fact.—2. *Conj. after expression of negative thought (doubt, hindrance, abstention, etc.) modified by negative word*, but that, that, from (*doing a thing*), to (*do a thing*): non dubito quīn, I do not doubt that

quīnam, quae-, quod-, cuius-, *interrog. pron.*, who? *etc. (emph.)*: quibusnam manibus (with what possible?)

quīndecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen
quīngenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, five hundred

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, five at a time, five each
quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty

quīnque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five
quīnquerēmis, -is, *f.*, quīnquereme (*a vessel with five banks of oars*)

quīnquies [*quinque*], *adv.*, five times
quīntus, -a, -um [*quinque*], *num. adj.*, fifth

Quīntus, -ī [*quintus*], *m.*, a Roman praenomen

quis, quae, quid, cuius: 1. *Interrog. adj. and pron.*, who? which? what?—2. *Indef. pron.*, one, any one, anything

quisnam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *interrog. pron.*, who? *etc. (emph.)*

quispiam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef.*

adj. and pron., any, any one, any thing

quisquam, *no fem.*, quid- (*quic*), cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any, any one, anything

quisque, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, each, each one, every

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid, cuius-cuius, *indef. rel. adj. and pron.*, whoever, whatever

quīvis, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any you please, any one, any whatever (*affirmative*), any (*whenever*)

1. quō, *see quī*

2. quō, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, whither?—2. *Rel.*, whither, into which, as far as.—3. *Indef.*, anywhere

3. quō, *conj.*, in order that (*with comparatives*), that: magis eo quam quo (than that, than because).—*Esp.*, quō minus, that not, so that not, from (*doing a thing*)

quoad, *conj.*, as far as, until, as long as
quod, *conj.*, because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that:
quod si, but if

quō minus, *see* 3 quo

quoniam [*quom (= cum)*, iam], *conj.*, inasmuch as, since, as

quoque, *adv.*, following the word it affects, also, as well

quōqueversus or **quōquōversus**, *adv.*, in every direction, all about

quot, *indecl. adj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how many?—2. *Rel.*, as many, as many as, the number which

quotannis — redimō

quotannis [*quot-annus*], *adv.*, every year, yearly

quotiens, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how often? how many times?—2. *Rel.*, as often as

quotienscumque [*quotiens*], *adv.*, how-ever often, whenever

rādix, -icis, *f.*, root. — *Plur.*, roots (*of a tree*); foot (*of a mountain*)

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough

rapiditās, -ātis [*rapidus*, swift], *f.*, swiftness, rapidity

rapīna, -ae [*rapio*, seize], *f.*, plunder. — *Plur.*, plundering

rapīō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *trans.*, snatch, seize

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, few; rare, unusual

ratīō, -ōnis [*reor*], *f.*, a reckoning, an account. — *Also*, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, plan, science, manner, method, consideration: **rationem habere**, take an account, have regard to; **rationem habere ut**, take care that *etc.*

ratīs, -is, *f.*, raft

ratus, -a, -um, *p.p. of reor*

Rauraci, -ūrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the upper Rhine

re-, **red-**, *prefix*, back, again, away

rebelliō, -ōnis [*re-bellum*], *f.*, renewal of war, uprising

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, new, fresh, late

receptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of recipio*

receptus, -ūs [*recipio*], *m.*, retreat, way of retreat, refuge

recessus, -ūs [*recedo*], *m.*, retreat

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [*re-cado*], *intrans.*, fall again, fall back, fall upon, be visited, recoil, return

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*re-capio*], *trans.*, take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit. — *With reflexive*, retreat, withdraw
recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, read aloud

rēctē, *adv.*, rightly

rēctus, -a, -um [*p.p. of rego*], *adj.*, straight

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, get back, recover, regain

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*re-causa*], *trans. and intrans.*, refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; make objections; *followed by quin or quo minus* (refuse to); **periculum** (refuse to incur)

red-, *see re-*

redāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of redigo*

redditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of reddo*

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*red-do* (put)], *trans.*, give back, restore, pay, render

redēptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of redimo*

redeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, *irr., intrans.*, go back, return, come down again: **summa** (be referred)

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*red-ago*], *trans.*, bring back, reduce, render, bring under, make

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus [*red-emo*], *trans.*, buy back, redeem, purchase, buy

redintegrō — rēmigō

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*red-integro*, make whole], *trans.*, renew, restore, revive

reditiō, -ōnis [*redeo*], *f.*, return

reditus, -ūs [*redeo*], *m.*, return

Redonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of western Gaul, between the lower Loire and the Channel

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, bring back, return, report. — *Esp.*: gratias (gratiam) (make return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back). — *With reflexive*, retreat, retire

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*re-facio*], *trans.*, repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest); exercitum (allow to recover)

refractus, -a, -um, *p.p. of refringo*

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus [*re-frango*], *trans.*, break away, break in (portas): vim fluminis (break)

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intrans.*, run away, escape

refulgeō, -fulgēre, -fulsī, *intrans.*, flash back, gleam, shine

rēgia, -ae [*rex*], *f.*, palace

regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, country, district

regnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*regnum*], rule, reign, govern

regnum, -ī [*cf. rego*], *n.*, kingdom, royal power, throne. — *Plur.*, royal power

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *trans.*, direct, manage, rule, have control of

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*re-iacio*], *trans.*, throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -langui, *no p.p., intrans.*, be weakened, be deadened

relātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of refero*

relictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of relinquo*

religiō, -ōnis [*re-ligo*, bind], *f.*, religious scruple, religion, religious observance, religious matter, service of the gods, superstition

relinquō, -linquere, -liqui, -lictus, *trans.*, leave behind, abandon, leave. — *Pass.*, be left, remain

reliquiae, -arum [*reliquus*], *f.*, remnants

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, left, remaining, the rest, the others, future: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the rest

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsurus, *intrans.*, remain behind, remain, stay

remedium, -ī, *n.*, remedy, cure

rēmex, -igis [*remus*], *m.*, oarsman, rower

Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ about the present site of Rheims

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, row

remigrō — rēs

- remigrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*,
move back, return
- reminiscor**, -minisci, *no p.p., dep., trans. and intrans.*, remember
- remittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus,
trans., let go back, send back,
throw back; relax, cease to use,
give up
- remollēscō**, -mollēscere, *no perf., no p.p., intrans.*, soften, become feeble
- removeō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus,
trans., move back, move away,
send away, remove, put out of
the way. — **remōtus**, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, far away, remote
- remuneror**, -āri, -ātus [*re-munus*],
dep., trans., repay, requite
- rēmus**, -i, *m.*, oar
- Rēmus**, -i, *m.*, one of the Remi
- renovō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*cf. novus*],
trans., renew
- renūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
bring back word, report, pro-
claim
- reor**, rēri, ratus, *dep., trans.*, think
- repellō**, repellere, reppuli, repulsus,
trans., drive back, repulse: ab
hac spe repulsi, disappointed in
this hope
- repente**, *adv.*, suddenly
- repentinus**, -a, -um [*repens*, sudden],
adj., sudden, hasty, unexpected. —
repentinō, *abl. as adv.*, suddenly
- reperiō**, reperire, repperi, repertus
[*re-pario*, get], *trans.*, find out, dis-
cover: reperti sunt multi, there
were many
- repetō**, -petere, -petivi, -petitus,
trans., seek again, demand back,
ask for: poenas (inflict, exact)
- rēpō**, rēpere, rēpsi, rēptus [*cf. serpens*],
intrans., creep, crawl
- repōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus,
trans., put back, store away
- reportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
carry back
- repperi**, *see reperiō*
- repraesentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
make present, do at once
- reprehendō**, -hendere, -hendi, -hēsus,
trans., blame, censure
- repressus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of reprimo*
- reprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressus
[*re-premo*], *trans.*, check
- repudiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
spurn, refuse, reject
- repugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intrans.*,
resist; be in opposition
- repulsus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of repello*
- requiro**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus
[*re-quaero*], *trans.*, seek again,
request, need, miss: in se indul-
gentiam (lament the loss of)
- rēs**, rei, *f.*, property, business, affair,
matter, thing (*in the most general
sense*), fact, occurrence, event,
case, action, act. — *Often to be
translated from the context.* —
Esp.: imperitus rerum, ignorant
of the world; commutatio rerum,
change of fortune; re vera, in
truth, really; rem gerere, conduct
operations, fight; res secundae,
prosperity; res publica, common-
wealth; res familiaris, property;

rescindō — rōstrum

- res militaris**, warfare; **res frumentaria**, grain supply; **novae res**, revolution; **quā rē**, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (*circumstance etc.*), why; **quam ob rem**, *interrog.*, why? — *rel.*, on which account, for which reason
- rescindō**, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *trans.*, cut away, break down, destroy
- resciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītus, *trans.*, find out, learn, discover
- rescribō**, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *trans.*, transfer (*by writing*)
- resēdisse**, *see* residō
- reservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, keep back, reserve, hold in reserve
- residō**, -sīdere, -sēdī, *intrans.*, sit down; settle down, become calm, subside
- resistō**, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand back, stop, withstand, resist, remain
- respicō**, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*re-specio*, look], *trans. and intrans.*, look back, look back at, consider, regard
- respondeō**, -spondere, -spondī, -spōnsus, *trans. and intrans.*, reply, answer
- respōnsum**, -ī [*n. p.p. of respondeo*], *n.*, reply. — *Plur.*, reply (*of several parts*)
- rēs pūblica**, *see* res
- respuō**, -spuere, -spuī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, spit out; spurn, reject
- restituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtus [*re-statuo*], *trans.*, replace, restore, make anew
- retentus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of retineo*
- retineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [*re-teneo*], *trans.*, hold back, retain, maintain, restrain (*quin, from doing something*), arrest: **memoriam** (*preserve*)
- retrahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag back, bring back
- revellō**, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, *trans.*, tear away, pull away
- revertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versus, *intrans.*, return (*in perf. tenses*). — *Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses*, return, go back, come back
- revinciō**, -vincire, -vīnxī, -vīctus, *trans.*, make fast, fasten, bind
- revocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call away, call off, recall
- rēx**, **rēgis**, *m.*, king
- Rhēnus**, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine
- Rhodanus**, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone
- Rhodiū**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Rhodes (*an island S.W. of Asia Minor*), Rhodian. — *Masc. as noun*, Rhodian
- ripa**, -ae, *f.*, bank
- risus**, -ūs, *m.*, laugh, laughter
- rivus**, -ī, *m.*, brook, stream
- rōbur**, -oris, *n.*, oak [*powerful*]
- robustus**, -a, -um [*rōbur*], strong,
- rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, ask, request, ask for
- Rōma**, -ae, *f.*, Rome
- Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *m.*, Roman. — *Masc. as noun*, a Roman
- rōstrum**, -ī [*rodo*, gnaw], *n.*, beak. — *Esp. of a ship*, beak, *rar*

rota — scilicet

- rota**, -ae, *f.*, wheel
ruber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, red
rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble
Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen
rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, rumor, report
rūpēs, -is, *f.*, cliff, rock
rūsus, *adv.*, back, again, in turn
Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the borders of Provence

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; *see* Titurius
Sabis, -is, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, flowing into the Meuse, now the Sambre
sacrificium, -ī [*sacrum*, sacred thing, *faciō*], *n.*, sacrifice
sacrificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*sacrificium*], *trans. and intrans.*, sacrifice
saepe, *adv.*, often: *minime saepe*, most rarely. — *saepius*, *comp.*, many times, repeatedly
saepenumērō, *adv.*, oftentimes, many times
saepēs, -is [*cf. saepio*, hedge in], *f.*, hedge
saeviō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [*saevus*, fierce], *intrans.*, be angry, rage, be violent
sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow
sagittārius, -ī [*sagitta*], *m.*, archer, bowman
sagulum, -ī, *n.*, cloak (*military*)
Saguntum, -ī, *n.*, a town of eastern Spain
Salmydēssus, -ī, *m.*, a town in Thrace
saltus, -ūs, *m.*, wooded height, mountain pass

salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, health, well-being, welfare, safety .
sanciō, sancire, sanci, sāctus [*cf. sacer*, sacred], *trans.*, make sacred, solemnly establish (*by law*). — sāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, holy, sacred, inviolable
sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood
sānitās, -ātis [*sanus*], *f.*, sound mind, good sense
Santonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the western coast of Gaul
Santonī, *see* Santones
sarcina, -ae [*sarcio*, sew up], *f.*, pack. — *Plur.*, baggage (*soldiers' packs*)
sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, only in *plur.*, fagots, brushwood
satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently. — *Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj.*, enough, sufficient: *satis habere*, consider sufficient, be satisfied
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, *intrans.*, satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologize
satisfactiō, -ōnis [*satisfacio*], *f.*, apology
saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded
saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock
scālae, -ārum [*scando*, climb], *f. plur.*, ladder, scaling ladder
scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat
scelerātus, -a, -um [*scehus*], *adj.*, villainous, accursed
scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness
scientia, -ae [*sciens*, *pres. p. of scio*], *f.*, knowledge, skill
scilicet [*scire licet*], *adv.*, evidently

scindō — sententia

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, trans.,
cut, tear, tear up

sciō, scire, scīvī, scītus, trans., know
Scipiō, -ōnis, m., a Roman family name.

— *Esp.*: 1. P. Cornelius Scipio, consul in 218 B.C., repeatedly defeated by Hannibal. — 2. P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, who defeated Hannibal at Zama

scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus, trans. and intrans., write

scūtum, -ī, n., shield

sē, see sui

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, intrans., go apart, go away, withdraw

sēcretō [secretus, separate], adv., in private, privately

sectiō, -ōnis [seco, cut], f., booty

sectūra, -ae [seco, cut], f., mine, shaft

sēcum, for. cum se

secundum, see secundus

secundus, -a, -um [sequor], adj., following, second; favorable, successful: secundoiores res, greater prosperity. — secundum, neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with: secundum flumen, down stream

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of sequor

sed, conj., but, but yet

sēdecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus, intrans., sit, be seated

sēdēs, -is [sedeo, sit], f., seat. Hence, abode, settlement

sēditiōsus, -a, -um [seditio, sedition], adj., seditious, factious

Sedūni, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Alps

Sedusii, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Germans

Segonax, -actis, m., a British king

Segontiāci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Britain

sēgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [se-, apart, grex, flock], trans., separate, keep out, exclude

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. plur., a people of Gaul west of the Rhone

sēiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus [se-, apart, iungō], trans., disunite, separate

semel, num. adv., once: semel atque iterum, more than once, again and again

sēmentis, -is [semen, seed], f., a sowing: sementes facere, sow grain

sēmita, -ae, f., path

semper, adv., all the time, always

Sempronius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

senātor, -ōris [senex], m., senator

senātus, -ūs [senex], m., senate. — Esp., the senate (of Rome)

senex, gen. senis, adj., old. — As noun, old man

sēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., six each, six

Senonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Seine

sententia, -ae [sentio], f., opinion, sentiment, feeling, purpose; a judgment, a sentence

sentio — sibi

sentio, *sentire*, *sēsi*, *sēnsus*, *trans.*,
perceive, know, see, think, learn
about, learn

sentis, -is, *m.*, brier

sēparātim, *adv.*, separately, privately

sēparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
separate. — *Esp.*, **sēparātus**, -a,
-um, *p.p. as adj.*, separate

septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven

septentriōnēs, -um [*septem-triones*,
plow oxen], *m. plur.*, the seven
plow oxen (*the stars of the Great
Bear*). — *Hence*, the north

septimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, the
seventh

septuāgēsīmus, -a, -um [*septuaginta*],
num. adj., the seventieth

septuāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*,
seventy

sepultūra, -ae [*sepelio*, bury], *f.*,
burial, burying

Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the Seine

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the
Sequani (*a tribe of Gaul on the
Rhône*). — *Masc. plur. as noun*,
the Sequani

sequor, *sequi*, *secūtus*, *dep., trans.*,
follow, accompany: **poena** (be in-
flicted on); **fidem** (come under,
surrender to)

Ser., *abbr. for Servius*

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk

serō, *serere*, *sēvi*, *satus*, *trans.*, plant,
sow

serpēs, -entis [*part. of serpo*, creep],
f., serpent

Sertōrius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile
name

servilis, -e [*servus*], *adj.*, of a slave,
servile: **tumultus** (the servile
revolt, *the war of the gladiators
under Spartacus in 73-71 B.C.*)

Servilius, -i, *m.*, a gentile name

serviō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [*servus*], *in-*
trans., be a slave to: **rumoribus**
(be blindly guided by, follow)

servitūs, -ūtis [*servus*], *f.*, slavery,
servitude

Servius, -i, *m.*, a Roman prænomen
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, keep,
preserve: **praesidia** (hold, main-
tain)

servulus, -i [*servus*], *m.*, young slave,
boy

servus, -i, *m.*, slave

sescenti, *see sexcenti*

sēsē, *see sui*

sēsquipedālis, -e [*†sesquiped-* (a foot
and a half) + *alis*], *adj.*, a foot
and a half (thick)

sētius, *adv.*, less: **nihilō sētius**, none
the less

seu, *see sive*

sevērītās, -ātis [*severus*, strict], *f.*,
strictness, harshness

sēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, call
aside, call out

sex, *indecl. num. adj.*, six

sexāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty

sexcenti (ses-), -ae, -a, *num. adj.*,
plur., six hundred

Sextius, -i, *m.*, a gentile name

si, *conj.*, if. — *Esp.*, to see if,
whether: **id si fieret**, should this
happen

sibi, *see sui*

Sibusātēs — soleō

Sibusātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

sic, *adv.* (*with v.*; *cf. tam with adj. or adv.*, *ita with either*), so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus. —

sic uti, *as conj.*, just as, just as if

siccitās, -ātis [*siccus*, dry], *f.*, dryness, drought, dry weather

sicut, **sicuti** = **sic uti**

sīdus, -eris, *n.*, star

signifer, -ferī [*signum-fero*], *m.*, standard bearer

significātiō, -ōnis [*significo*], *f.*, signal, warning

significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*signum-facio*], *trans.*, make signs, indicate, make known, show

signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal. — *Esp.*, standard (*for military purposes*). —

Phrases: **signa inferre**, advance to attack, charge; **conversa signa inferre**, change front and charge; **ad signa consistere**, rally round the standard

silentium, -ī [*silens*, silent], *n.*, stillness, silence. — **silentiō**, *abl.*, in silence, silently

Silēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Greek historian

Silius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods

silvestris, -tre [*silva*], *adj.*, woody, wooded

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar

simul, *adv.*, at the same time: **simul atque** or **ac** (*or without atque* or *ac*), as soon as

simulācrum, -ī [*simulo*], *n.*, image, likeness

simulātiō, -ōnis [*simulo*], *f.*, pretense, deceit

simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, pretend

simultās, -tātis [*similis*], *f.*, rivalry

sīn, *conj.*, but if

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without

singillatim [*singuli*], *adv.*, singly, one by one

singulāris, -e [*singuli*], *adj.*, solitary, single; unique, extraordinary

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj. plur.*, one at a time, single, each, one by one. — *Often to denote distribution*, one to each: **ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere** (each from his); **inter singulas legiones** (between each two)

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left: **sub sinistra (manu)**, on the left

sinō, **sinere**, **sīvi**, **situs**, *trans. and intrans.*, permit, allow

situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, position

sive (**seu**), *conj.*, if either, or if: **sive . . . sive**, either . . . or, whether . . . or

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law

societās, -ātis [*socius*], *f.*, fellowship, alliance, league

socius, -ī [*cf. sequor*], *m.*, companion, ally, comrade

sōl, **sōlis**, *m.*, sun. — *Also personified*, Sol, the Sun

soldurius, -ī, *m.*, soldurius, follower

soleō, **solēre**, **solitus**, *semi-dep., intrans.*, be wont, be accustomed

sōlitūdō — stipendium

- sōlitūdō**, -inis [*solus*], *f.*, loneliness.
Hence, wilderness
- sollicitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*,
 stir up, instigate, offer bribes to,
 tempt
- solum**, -ī, *n.*, soil, foundation, bot-
 tom, earth: *solum agri*, bare
 ground
- sōlus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only.—
sōlum, *n. acc. as adv.*, alone,
 only
- solūtus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of solvo*
- solvō**, *solvere*, solvi, solūtus, *trans.*,
 unbind, loose.—*Esp.*, with or
 without *navem* (naves), set sail
- somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep
- soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister: *soror ex matre*,
 half sister
- sors**, *sortis*, *f.*, lot (*for divination*),
 chance
- Sōsilus**, -ī, *m.*, a Spartan (of Sparta,
 a city in Greece), teacher and
 historian
- Sōtiātēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of
 Aquitania
- spargō**, *spargere*, sparsi, sparsus,
trans., scatter, sprinkle
- spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, extent, dis-
 tance; time, space of time: *quan-
 tum fuit diei spatium*, as much
 as there was time for
- speciēs**, -ei [*specio*, see], *f.*, sight,
 show, appearance
- spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*specio*,
 see], *trans. and intrans.*, look
 at, regard; face
- speculātor**, -ōris [*speculor*], *m.*, spy,
 scout
- speculātorius**, -a, -um [*speculator*],
adj., scouting, reconnoitering
 (navigia)
- speculor**, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans. and
 intrans.*, spy, reconnoiter: *specu-
 landi causa*, as a spy
- spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*spes*], *trans.*,
 hope, hope for, expect
- spēs**, -ei, *f.*, hope, expectation:
summam in spem venire, have
 the greatest hope
- spīritus**, -ūs [*spiro*, breathe], *m.*,
 breath.—*Also*, spirit. *Hence, in
 plur.*, pride, arrogance, temper
- spoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, rob,
 deprive
- sponte** (*abl.*), *f.*, of one's own accord,
 voluntarily
- stabilitās**, -ātis [*stabilis*, steady], *f.*,
 steadiness, firmness
- stabulum**, -ī [*sto*], *n.*, stable, stall
- statim** [*sto*], *adv.*, at once, immedi-
 ately
- statiō**, -ōnis [*sto*], *f.*, position,
 post, picket: *in statione*, on
 guard
- statua**, -ae [*sto*], *f.*, statue
- statuō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*status*],
trans., set up; establish, resolve
 upon, determine, decide
- statūra**, -ae [*sto*], *f.*, stature, size
- status**, -ūs [*sto*], *m.*, position, con-
 dition, situation
- steti**, see *stō*
- stipendiārius**, -a, -um [*stipendium*],
adj., tributary, under tribute
- stipendium**, -ī [*stips*, gift, *pendo*], *n.*,
 tribute

stō — subeum

stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus, intrans., stand, abide by

strāmentum, -ī, n., straw, thatch

strepitus, -ūs [strepo, roar], m., noise, confused din

stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictus, trans., draw, unsheathe

studeō, studere, studui, no p.p. [studium], intrans., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (*with dat.*)

studium, -ī, n., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (*for a thing*), enthusiasm; a pursuit (*to which one is devoted*), an occupation

stultē, adv., foolishly

stupeō, -ere, -ui, intrans., be stunned, be amazed

sub, prep. (a) With abl. (of rest in a place), under: *sub oculis*, before the eyes

(b) *With acc. (of motion towards a place)*, under, close to. — *Of time*, toward, just before:

sub vesperum

(c) *In composition, as adv.*, under; up to; secretly; in succession; slightly

subdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, trans., draw up, lead up: *navem* (beach, draw up)

subeō, -ire, -iī, -itus, irr., trans., go under, undergo, come up, approach

subfodiō, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus, trans., dig under, stab (*underneath*)

subfossus, -a, -um, p.p. of subfodio

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [subiacio], trans., throw under, place

below, subject, expose to. — *Also*, throw up. — **subiectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.**, lying near

subigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [sub-ago], trans., bring under, subdue

subitō, see subitus

subitus, -a, -um [p.p. of subeo], adj., sudden, quick, hasty. — **subitō, abi. as adv.**, suddenly

sublātus, -a, -um, p.p. of tollo

sublevō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., lighten, raise, raise up, assist. — *With reflexive*, rise up. — **sublevātus, p.p.**, supporting one's self

sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake

subluō, -luere, -lūtus, trans., wash beneath, wash

subministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., supply, furnish, provide

submitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans., send up, send to one's assistance, reinforce

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, trans., drive off, dislodge

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, trans., dig under, undermine

subsequor, -sequi, -secutus, dep., trans., follow on, follow, succeed to

subsidiū, -ī [sub-sedeo, sit], n., reinforcement, help, relief, support, assistance

subsistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p.p., intrans., stop behind, halt, make a stand: *ancora* (hold)

subsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be under, be near, be close by, approach

subtrahō — superō

- subtrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, *trans.*, take away, carry away
- subvectiō**, -ōnis [*subveho*], *f.*, bringing up, transportation, conveyance
- subvehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, *trans.*, bring up
- subveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come under, come to the support of, assist
- succedō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [*sub-cedo*], *trans. and intrans.*, come up to, advance, succeed to, take the place of, come next; be successful, prosper
- succendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsus, *trans.*, set on fire
- successus**, -ūs [*succedo*], *m.*, close approach
- succidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [*sub-caedo*], *trans.*, cut under, cut down
- succurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursūrus [*sub-curro*], *intrans.*, run to support, run to help, succor
- sūcus**, -ī, *m.*, juice
- audis**, -is, *f.*, stake
- Suēbī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians
- Suēbus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Swabian. — *As noun*, a Swabian (*man or woman*)
- Suessiōnēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ
- sufficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [*sub-facio*], *trans.*, appoint, choose; *intrans.*, be sufficient, be adequate
- suffrāgium**, -ī, *n.*, ballot, vote
- Sugambri**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe
- sui**, sibi, sē, *reflex. pron.*, himself, etc. — *Often to be translated by the personal pron.*, he, etc.; also, each other. — *Esp.*, inter se, from (with, by, etc.) each other
- Sulla**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, L. Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called Sulla the Dictator
- Sulpicius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
- sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, *irr., intrans.*, be (*exist*). — *Also, with weakened force*, be (*as a mere copula*). — *Phrases*: sibi esse in animo, that they had in mind, intended; multum sunt in venationibus (*much engaged*)
- summa**, -ae, *f.*, top; sum, total, main part: belli (the general management, the chief control); imperi (chief command)
- summus**, *see superus*
- sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus [*sub-emo*], take, *trans.*, take, get, assume: sumere supplicium de, inflict punishment on; laborem (spend); vitam (take)
- sūmptuosus**, -a, -um [*sumptus*], *adj.*, expensive, costly
- sūmptus**, -ūs [*sumo*], *m.*, expense
- superbē**, *adv.*, haughtily, arrogantly
- superior**, *see superus*
- superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, be superior to, prevail,

supersedeō — Syria

- overcome, conquer, defeat; survive (*vitā*)
- supersedeō**, -sedēre, -sēdi, -sessurus, *intrans.*, sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from
- supersum**, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be over, be left, remain, survive
- superus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, higher, being above (*of space only*). — *Comp.*, superior, higher, upper, preceding (*of time*), superior, victorious. — *Superl.*, **suprēmus**, highest. — *Also*, **summus**, highest, the highest part of, the top of. — *Fig.*, greatest, most important, perfect, supreme, most violent
- suppetō**, -petere, -petīvī, -petitūrus [*sub-peto*, aim at], *intrans.*, be on hand, be supplied, hold out
- supplēmentum**, -ī, *n.*, supply, reinforcement
- supplex**, -icis, *c.*, suppliant
- supplicātiō**, -ōnis [*supplico*, supplicate], *f.*, supplication; a thanksgiving (*to the gods, decreed by the senate*)
- suppliciter**, *adv.*, as suppliants
- supplicium**, -ī, *n.*, punishment (*usually of death*)
- supponō**, -ponere, -posui, -positus [*sub-pono*], *trans.*, place under
- supportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sub-porto*], *trans.*, bring up, convey, supply, furnish
- suprā**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, above, beyond
- suprēmus**, *see superus*
- suscipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*subs (= sub), capio*], *trans.*, take upon one's self (*sibi*), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo
- suspendō**, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsus [*subs (= sub), pendo*], *trans.*, hang up, hang
- suspiciātus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of suspicor*
- suspiciō**, -ōnis [*sub-specto*, look], *f.*, suspicion, an indication: neque abest suspicio, and suspicion is not wanting
- suspikor**, -ārī, -ātus [*cf. suspicio*], *dep.*, *trans.*, suspect: *p. p. as adj.*, under suspicion
- sustentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sustineo*], *trans. and intrans.*, sustain, hold out
- sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*subs (= sub), teneo*], *trans. and intrans.*, hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop; *sustinere se*, stand up
- sustulī**, *see tollo*
- sua**, -a, -um, *possessive pronominal adj. (reflex., referring back to the subject)*, his, her, its, their, etc. — *Often without a noun*, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; *sua*, their (his) possessions; *se suaque omnia*, themselves and all they had
- Symplēgādēs**, -um, *f. plur.*, fabulous rocks, dashing against each other, in the Black Sea
- Syria**, -ae, *f.*, a country bordering on the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea

T. — temperō

T., *abbr. for Titus*

tabellārius, -ī [*tabula*], *m.*, letter carrier, messenger

tabernāculum, -ī [*taberna*, hut], *n.*, tent

tabula, -ae, *f.*, record (*written on a board covered with wax*), document, list

taceō, *tacēre*, *tacui*, *tacitus*, *trans. and intrans.*, be silent; keep secret, conceal. — *tacitus*, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, silent, in silence

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, so great, this (*of something preceding*), the following

tam, *adv.* (*with adj., p., or adv.*; *cf. sic*) so, so much

tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, still, however

Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames, a river of Britain

tametsi, *conj.*, although, though

Tamphilus, -ī, *m.*, *see* Baebius

tamquam, *conj.*, as if

tandem, *adv.*, at last. — *In questions, to add emphasis*, pray, tell me, *or translated only by emphasis*

tantō [*tantus*], *adv.*, by so much

tantopere, *see opus*

tantulus, -a, -um [*tantus*], *adj.*, so small, so little, so trifling

tantummodo, *adv.*, only, merely

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great, such (*of magnitude*): **tanti est**, is of so much weight; **tanta exiguitas temporis**, so little time. — **tantum**, *n. as adv.*, only, merely

Tarbelli, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

tardē, *adv.*, slowly, tardily, with delay

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*tardus*], *trans.*, retard, check, hinder

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

Tasgetius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Carnutes

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, a prince of Britain

Tectosagēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Volcae

tēctum, -ī [*n. p.p. of tego*], *n.*, roof, house

tēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of tego*

tegimentum, -ī [*tego*], *n.*, covering

tegō, *tegere*, *tēxi*, *tēctus*, *trans.*, cover, thatch, hide, conceal

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon (*of offense*), javelin, spear

temerārius, -a, -um [*temere*], *adj.*, reckless, rash, hasty

temerē, *adv.*, blindly, without reason; recklessly, hastily

temeritās, -tātis [*temere*], *f.*, indiscretion, rashness, haste, foolhardiness

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon etc.*)

temperantia, -ae [*temperans*, *pres. p. of tempero*], *f.*, self-control, prudence

temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*tempus*], *trans. and intrans.*, control; refrain, restrain one's self from (*quin*)

tempestās — Ti.

tempestās, -ātis [*tempus*], *f.*, season, weather. — *Esp.*, bad weather, storm

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, try, attempt, make an attempt on: **per vim tempto**, try to force

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division of time, a time, time (*in general*), occasion, opportunity, a crisis: **tam necessario tempore**, at so critical a moment; **omni tempore**, at all times, always

Tencteri, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Usipetes

tendō, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tentus**, *trans.*, stretch, stretch out, pitch (*tent*)

teneō, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: **se tenere**, remain; **memoriā tenere**, remember

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, delicate, tender, young

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, thin, delicate, feeble, poor

tenuiter [*tenuis*, weak], *adv.*, thinly, slightly

ter, *num. adv.*, three times, thrice

Terentius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, C. Terentius Varro, consul, defeated by Hannibal at Cannæ

tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back: **terga vertere**, turn and fly; a **tergo**, in the rear

ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj. plur.*, three each, three at once

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth; land, region; ground. — *Plur.*, world

Terrasidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

terrēnus, -a, -um [*terra*], *adj.*, of earth
terreō, **terrēre**, **terrui**, **territus**, *trans.*, frighten, alarm, deter

terribilis, -e, *adj.*, dreadful, frightful
territō, -āre, *no perf.*, *no p.p.*

[*terreo*], *trans.*, frighten

terror, -ōris [*terreo*], *m.*, fright, alarm, panic

tertiō [*tertius*], *adv.*, for the third time

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, third (*in order*); **pars** (one third)

testāmentum, -ī [*testor*, testify], *n.*, a will

testimōnium, -ī [*testis*], *n.*, proof, evidence

testis, -is, *c.*, witness

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise. — *Esp.*, a covered column (*made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another*)

Teutonēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), *m. plur.*, a great German people in Jutland, who, with the Cimbri, overran Gaul in 113 B.C.; defeated by Marius in 102 B.C. at Aquæ Sextiæ

texō, -ere, -ui, -tus, *trans.*, weave

Thermopylae, -ārum, *f.*, a pass on the east coast of Greece, site of three famous battles

Thēseus, -ī, *m.*, a mythical king of Athens

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, a country in northern Greece

Thrācia, -ae, *f.*, Thrace, a country north of Greece

Ti., *abbr. for* Tiberius

Tiberis — trāiectus

- Tiberis**, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, the river on which Rome is situated
- Tiberius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman prænomen (first name)
- tignum**, -i, *n.*, a log, a timber, a pile
- Tigurinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Tigurini. — *Masc. plur.*, the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii
- timeō**, -ēre, -ui, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, be afraid, fear. — *With dat.*, be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear). — **timentēs**, *pres. p. as noun*, the timid, the fearful
- timidē**, *adv.*, with timidity: **non timide**, fearlessly
- timidus**, -a, -um [*timeo*], *adj.*, cowardly, frightened, timid
- timor**, -ōris [*timeo*], *m.*, alarm, fear, dread
- tingō**, -ere, **tinxi**, **tinctus**, *trans.*, wet, dye
- Titūrius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, Q. Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Cæsar, killed in an ambushade prepared by Ambiorix
- Titus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman prænomen
- tolerō**, -āre, -avi, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, bear, endure, hold out, support: **famem** (keep from starvation)
- tollō**, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, *trans.*, raise, carry, carry off: **ancoras** (weigh). Hence, remove, take away, destroy: **conloquium** (break off). — *Esp.*, **sublātus**, -a, -um, *p.p.*, elated
- Tolōsa**, -ae, *f.*, an important city in the western part of the Province, now Toulouse
- Tolōsātēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, the people of Toulouse
- tormentum**, -ī [*torqueo*, twist], *n.*, torture. — *Also*, an engine (for throwing missiles)
- torreō**, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostus**, *trans.*, scorch, burn
- tot**, *indecl. adj.*, so many
- totidem**, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number
- tōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — *Often translated by an adverb*, entirely, throughout
- trabs**, **trabis**, *f.*, a beam, a timber
- trāctus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of traho*
- trādō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*trans-do* (put)], *trans.*, hand over, give up, deliver up, surrender, recommend. — *Also*, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate, relate
- trādūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*trans-duco*], *trans.*, lead over, lead across, bring over, transport, win over, transfer
- trāgula**, -ae, *f.*, javelin
- trahō**, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **trāctus**, *trans.*, drag, drag along, drag in, draw in
- trāiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*trans-iacio*], *trans.*, throw across, throw over; cross; transfix, pierce
- trāiectus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of traicio*
- trāiectus**, -ūs [*traicio*], *m.*, passage, route

trānō — trīnī

trānō, -nāre, -nāvi, -nātus [*trans-no*, swim], *trans. and intrans.*, swim across

tranquillitās, -ātis [*tranquillus*, still], *f.*, stillness, calm

trāns, prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of. — In composition, as *adv.*, over, across, through

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, adj., Trans-alpine

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [*trans-scando*, climb], *intrans.*, climb across, board (*ships*)

trānsō, -ire, -īl, -itus, irr., trans. and intrans., cross, pass over, pass through, pass by

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, irr., trans., carry over, transfer, change the place of: *bellum ad aliquem* (direct against)

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, trans., pierce through

trānsgradior, -gredi, -gressus [*trans-gradior*, step], *dep., trans. and intrans.*, step across, step over, cross

trānsitus, -ūs [*transeo*], *m.*, going over, crossing

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero
trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring over, carry over

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj., living across the Rhine. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the people across the Rhine

trānstrum, -ī, n., thwart, rib (*of a ship*)

trānsversus, -a, -um [*p. p. of trans-vertō*, turn across], *adj.*, transverse: *fossa* (a cross ditch)

Trasimēnus, -ī, m., a lake in Etruria, famous for Hannibal's victory over the Romans in 217 B.C.

Trebia, -ae, m., a river in northern Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in 218 B.C.

Trebius, -ī, m., a gentile name

Trebōnius, -ī, m., a gentile name

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., three hundred

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., tremble at; shake, tremble

trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three

Trēveri, -ōrum, m. plur. (sing. Trēvir), a people in northeastern Gaul

Tribocē, -um (-ī, -ōrum), m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine

tribūnus, -ī, m. (with or without militum or militaris), tribune of the soldiers, military tribune

tribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*tribus*, tribe], *trans.*, distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: *magnopere virtuti* (attribute it so very much to valor)

tribūtum, -ī [*n. p. p. of tribuo*], *n.*, tribute

triduum, -ī [*tres-dies*], *n.*, three days' time, three days

triennium, -ī [*tres-annus*], *n.*, three years

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty

trīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., three each, three sets of

Trinovantēs — umquam

- Trinovantēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of southern Britain
- tripartitus**, -a, -um [*tres-partitus*], *adj.*, divided in three.—*Esp.*, **tripartitō**, *abl. as adv.*, in three divisions
- triplex**, -icis [*tres*; *cf. plico*, fold], *adj.*, threefold: **acies** (triple, in three divisions or lines)
- trirēmis**, -is, *f.*, trireme (*a vessel with three banks of oars*)
- tristis**, -e, *adj.*, sad, gloomy, dejected
- tristitia**, -ae [*tristis*], *f.*, sadness
- truncus**, -i, *m.*, trunk
- tū**, *tui*, *plur. vōs*, *pers. pron.*, 2d person, you
- tuba**, -ae, *f.*, trumpet
- tueor**, **tuēri**, **tūtus**, *dep.*, *trans.*, watch, guard, protect
- tuli**, *perf. of fero*
- Tulingi**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii
- Tullius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
- Tullus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name
- tum**, *adv.*, then (*at a time indicated by the context*), at this time: **cum** . . . **tum**, not only . . . but also
- tumultus**, -ūs [*cf. tumeo*, swell], *m.*, uproar, confusion, commotion.—*Esp.*, uprising, revolt
- tumulus**, -i [*tumeo*, swell], *m.*, hill, mound
- tunc** [*tum*], *adv.*, then, at that time, just then
- turma**, -ae, *f.*, squadron, troop (*of horse, consisting of thirty men*)
- Turonī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Also called **Turones**
- turpis**, -e, *adj.*, ugly; unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable
- turpitūdō**, -inis [*turpis*], *f.*, baseness; disgrace
- turris**, -is, *f.*, tower
- tūtus**, -a, -um [*p.p. of tueor*], *adj.*, protected, safe, secure.—**tūtō**, *abl. as adv.*, in safety, safely
- ubi**, *adv. and conj.*, where, in which: **ibi ubi**, in the place where.—*Also, of time*, when: **ubi primum**, as soon as
- Ubii**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine
- ubique**, *adv.*, everywhere, anywhere
- ulciscor**, **ulcisci**, **ultus**, *dep.*, *trans.*, punish, take vengeance on, avenge
- ūllus**, -a, -um, *gen. -ius*, *adj.*, a single, any.—*Masc. as pronoun*, anybody, any one
- ulterior**, -us, -ōris [*ultra*], *adj.*, farther, more remote.—*Superl.*, **ultimus**, -a, -um, farthest, last: **ultimi**, those in the rear
- ultrā**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, beyond
- ultrō**, *adv.*, to the farther side, beyond: **ultrō citroque**, this way and that, back and forth.—*Esp.*: voluntarily, freely, besides
- ultus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of ulciscor*
- umbra**, -ae, *f.*, shadow, shade
- umquam**, *adv. (with neg.)*, ever: **neque** . . . **umquam**, and never

ūnā — vacātiō

ūnā, *adv.*, together, along with them *etc.*, at the same time, in the same place, also

unde, *adv.*, whence, from which

undecimus, -a, -um [*unus-decimus*], *num. adj.*, eleventh

undique, *adv.*, from every side, from all quarters

unguentum, -i, *n.*, ointment

ūniversus, -a, -um [*unus-versus*, *p.p. of verto*], *adj.*, all together, all (*in a mass*), entire

ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* -ius, *adj.*, one, a single, the same, alone, only. — *Neut. as noun*, one thing

urbānus, -a, -um [*urbs*], *adj.*, of a city. — *Esp.*, of the city (Rome), in the city

urbs, *urbis*, *f.*, city. — *Esp.*, the city (Rome)

urgēō, *urgēre*, *ursi*, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, press, press hard

ūrō, *ūrere*, *ūssi*, *ūstus*, *trans.*, burn

Usipetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the lower Rhine

ūsque, *adv.*, all the way, even to, all the time, till, even till

ūsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of ūtor*

ūsus; -ūs [*utor*], *m.*, use, practice, experience; advantage, service. — *Esp.*: *usus est*, is necessary, it is necessary, there is need; *ex usu*, *usui*, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; *usu venire*, happen, turn out, come to pass

ut (utī), *adv. and conj.*: (a) *Interrog.*, how? — (b) *Rel.*, as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering

that it was: *ut semel*, when once, as soon as. — *Esp. with subjv.*, that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that; *after verbs of fearing*, that not

uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* -trius, *adj. and pron.*: (a) *Interrog.*, which (*of two*)? — (b) *Rel.*, whichever (*of two*), the one who or which (*of two*). — *Neut.*, *utrum*, *adv.*, whether

uterque, *utra*-, *utrum*-, *gen.* *utrius*-, *adj. and pron.*, both: *medium utriusque*, between the two. — *Plur.*, *of sets*: *utraque castra*, both camps; *utrique*, both parties

utī, *see ut*

ūtilis, -e, *adj.*, useful, of use, helpful

ūtilitās, -ātis [*utilis*], *f.*, advantage, benefit, service

ūtor, *utī*, *ūsus*, *dep.*, *intrans.*, *with abl.*, use, exercise, practice, employ, have (*in sense of enjoy or employ*), possess

utpote, *adv.*, inasmuch as, seeing that (*see the note on lviii, 5*)

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides

utrobique, *adv.*, on both sides, in both ways

utrum, *see uter*

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife

V, *Roman numeral for five*

Vacalus, -i, *m.*, the west branch of the Rhine at its mouth

vacātiō, -ōnis [*vaco*], *f.*, freedom (*from something*), exemption, immunity

vacō — vēnēnātus

- vacō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, be vacant, be unoccupied, lie waste
- vacuus**, -a, -um [*cf. vāco*], *adj.*, free, vacant, destitute of (*ab* or *abl.*)
- vadum**, -ī [*cf. vado*, go], *n.*, ford. — *Plur.*, ford, shoals, shallows. — **vado**, by fording
- vagina**, -ae, *f.*, sheath
- vagor**, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., intrans.*, roam about, roam, wander
- valēns**, -entis, *pres. p. of valeo*
- valeō**, **valēre**, **valui**, **valitūrus**, *intrans.*, be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful. — *Often with n. pron. or adj. as acc. of kindred meaning: plus valere*, be more powerful; *plurimum valere*, be very strong, have great influence; *quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent*, whatever strength they have is in infantry. — **valēns**, *pres. p. as adj.*, strong
- Valerius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
- valētūdō**, -inis [*valeo*], *f.*, health. — *Also*, ill health, illness
- vallēs**, -is, *f.*, valley
- vāllum**, -ī, *n.*, palisade, rampart
- Vangionēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine
- varius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, diverse
- vās**, **vāsis** (*plur. vāsa*, -ōrum), *n.*, vessel, jar
- vāstō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*vastus*], *trans.*, lay waste, devastate, ravage
- vāstus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; immense, vast
- vāticinātiō**, -ōnis [*vaticinor*, foretell], *f.*, divination
- ve**, *conj., enclitic*, or
- vectigal**, -ālis [*cf. veho*, carry], *n.*, tribute. — *Plur.*, revenues
- vectigālis**, -e [*cf. veho*, carry], *adj.*, tributary: **vectigales habent**, make tributary
- vehementer** [*vehemens*, violent], *adv.*, violently, severely, strongly, exceedingly
- vehō**, **vehere**, **vexī**, **vectus**, *trans.*, carry, bear. — *Pass.*, be borne, go, ride, sail
- vel**, *conj.*, or: **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or. — *As adv.*, even
- Velānius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name
- Veliocassēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of western Gaul along the lower Seine
- Vellaunodūnum**, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Senones
- vellus**, -eris, *n.*, fleece
- vēlōx**, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, quick
- vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, curtain, veil; sail
- velut**, *adv.*, even as, just as: **velut si**, just as if
- vēnātiō**, -ōnis [*venor*, hunt], *f.*, hunting, the chase. — *Plur.*, hunting, hunting excursions
- vēndō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*venum*, sale, do (put)], *trans.*, put to sale, sell
- Venellī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul
- vēnēnātus**, -a, -um [*venenum*], *adj.*, poisonous, venomous

venēnum — vetō

venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison

Venetī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a coast tribe of western Gaul

Venetia, -ae, *f.*, the territory of the Veneti

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti

venia, -ae, *f.*, favor, pardon

veniō, **venire**, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, *intrans.*, come, go.—*See also usus*

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*freq. of venio*], *intrans.*, come often, visit

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind: **vento se dare**, run before the wind

Venusia, -ae, *f.*, a town in southern Italy

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people on the upper Rhone

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*, a canton of the Helvetii

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word: **pluribus verbis**, at great length; **verba dare**, deceive, outwit; **facere verba**, speak

Vercingetorix, -īgis, *m.*, a young noble of the Arverni, head of the Gauls in their great war for independence

vereor, -ēri, -itus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, fear, be afraid, dread.—**veritus**, *p.p. in pres. sense*, fearing

vergō, -ere, *no perf., no p.p., intrans.*, incline, slope

vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Hædui

vērisimilis, -e [*verus-similis*], *adj.*, probable, likely

veritus, -a, -um, *p.p. of vereor*

vērō, *adv.*, in truth, in fact, certainly.

—*With weakened force*, but, on the other hand, however

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*verto*], *trans.*, turn, deal with.—*Esp., in the pass. as dep.*, engage in, be, fight (*as indicated by the context*)

versus, -a, -um, *p.p. of verto*

versus [*p.p. of verto*], *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, towards, in the direction of: **ad (in) . . . versus**, towards

versus, -ūs [*verto*], *m.*, a turning; a verse (*of poetry*)

Verticō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Nervii

vertō, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versus**, *trans.*, turn: **terga** (turn and flee)

Verucloetius, -ī, *m.*, a noble of the Helvetii

vērūs, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; right: **re vera**, in truth, really.—*Neut. as noun*, the truth

verūtum, -ī, *n.*, light spear, dart

Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.*, the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon

vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening

vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.*, your, yours

vēstigium, -ī, *n.*, footstep, footprint, track.—*Esp., eodem vestigio*, in the same spot

vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, robe, dress

vestitus, -ūs [*vestio*, clothe], *m.*, clothing, garments

veterānus, -a, -um [*vetus*], *adj.*, veteran

vetō, **vetāre**, **vetui**, **vetitus**, *trans.*, forbid

vetus — visus

- vetus**, -eris, *adj.*, old, former, of long standing
- vēxillum**, -ī, *n.*, flag
- vexō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, harass, annoy, overrun, ravage
- via**, -ae, *f.*, road, way, route, march
- viātor**, -ōris [*via*], *m.*, traveler
- vicēni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, twenty (*apiece*)
- vicēsīmus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, twentieth: secundo et vicesimo, twenty-second
- vicis** (*gen.*), *f.*, change, turn: in vicem, in turn
- victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim, sacrifice
- victor**, -ōris [*vinco*], *m.*, victor. — *Often as adj.*, triumphant, victorious
- victōria**, -ae [*victor*], *f.*, victory
- victus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of vinco*
- victus**, -ūs [*vivo*], *m.*, life; means of living, food
- vicus**, -ī, *m.*, village
- videō**, vidēre, vidī, **visus**, *trans.*, see, observe, examine, take care. — *In pass.*, be seen; seem, seem best
- Vienna**, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne
- vigilia**, -ae [*vigil*, awake], *f.*, watch. *The Romans divided the night into four watches*
- viginti**, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty
- vimen**, -inis, *n.*, twig (*flexible, for weaving*)
- vinciō**, vincire, vīnxī, vīnctus, *trans.*, bind, fetter
- vincō**, vincere, vici, victus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, conquer, defeat, prevail
- vinctus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of vincio*
- vinculum**, -ī [*vincio*], *n.*, chain: ex vinculis, in chains
- vindicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, claim, demand; avenge: in aliquem (inflict punishment); Galliam in libertatem (establish the liberty of Gaul)
- vīnea**, -ae, *f.*, vine arbor; shed (defense, *for a besieging party*)
- vinum**, -ī, *n.*, wine
- violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, abuse: hospites (injure)
- vir**, virī, *m.*, man, husband
- virēs**, *see vis*
- virgō**, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin
- virgultum**, -ī, *n.*, only in *plur.*, shrubbery, thicket, bushes
- Viridomārus**, -ī, *m.*, a nobleman of the Hædūi
- Viridovīx**, -icis, *m.*, a prince of the Venelli
- viritim** [*vir*], *adv.*, man by man, to each separately
- Viromandui**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe near the Remi
- virtūs**, -ūtis [*vir*], *f.*, manliness, valor, courage. — *Also*, merit (*generally*), noble conduct, virtue; *plur.*, merits, brave acts
- vis**, vis, *f.*, force, might, violence. — *Esp.*: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence. — *Plur.*, virēs, strength, force, powers, bodily vigor
- visus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of video*
- visus**, -ūs, *m.*, sight, vision

vīta — Zētēs

vīta, -ae [*cf. vivo*], *f.*, life, the course of life

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, escape, avoid, dodge

vīvō, *vivere*, *vixi*, *victus*, *intrans.*, live: *lacte* (live on)

vīvus, -a, -um [*vivo*], *adj.*, alive, living

vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely

vōbīs, *see tu*

Vocātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of Noricum
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call by name, call, summon, invite

Vocontii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe in southeastern Gaul

Volcae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province

Volcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan (*the god of fire and metals*)

volgus, -ī, *n.*, the crowd, the common people. — **volgō**, *abl. as adv.*, commonly, generally, everywhere

volnerātus, -a, -um, *p. p. of volnero*
volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*volnus*], *trans.*, wound, hurt

volnus, -eris, *n.*, wound

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fly

volō, *velle*, *volui*, *no p. p., irr., trans. and intrans.*, wish, be willing, want: *quid sibi vellent*, what they wanted

Volcō, -ōnis, *m.*, *see Manlius*

voltus, -ūs, *m.*, look, expression, countenance, face: *voltum fingere*, conceal one's feelings

volucer, -cris, -cre [*cf. volo*, fly], *adj.*, winged; *fem. as noun*, bird

voluntās, -ātis [*volo*, wish], *f.*, willingness, consent, desire, will, approval

voluptās, -ātis [*cf. volo*, wish], *f.*, pleasure, delight

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Esp.*, C. Volusenus, one of Caesar's officers

Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*, L. Vorenus, a centurion in Caesar's army

vōs, *see tu*

Vosegus, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges (mountains in eastern Gaul)

voveō, *vovēre*, *vōvī*, *vōtus*, *trans. and intrans.*, vow, make a vow

vōx, *vōcis* [*cf. voco*], *f.*, voice, word, expression, shout. — *Collectively*, cries, words, talk. — *Plur.*, talk, reports

X, *Roman numeral for ten*

Zama, -ae, *f.*, a town in northern Africa, near which Hannibal was defeated by Scipio in 202 B.C.

Zētēs, -ae, *m.*, one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

The numerals refer to *sections* of the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.) and of the Latin Composition (pp. 405 ff.). References preceded by L.C. refer to sections of the Latin Composition.

ablative

- absolute, 117. *a-f*; L.C. 46
- of accompaniment, 113
- of accordance, 111
- of agent, 104
- of attendant circumstance, 112
- of cause, 109
- of comparison, 105
- of description, 116
- of duration of time, 119. note
- of manner, 110
- of material, 103
- of means, 106
- of measure (degree) of difference, 114
- of origin, 102
- of place from which, 101. *a* and note
- of place in which, 120 and *a*
- of respect (specification), 115
- of separation, 101
- of time at which or within which, 119
- of value or price, 108
- of way by which, 120. note 1, 106. *a*
- with special words, 107. *a-c*

accusative

- adverbial, 99
- as direct object, 91
- as subject of infinitive, 92
- of duration and extent, 96
- of kindred meaning, 98
- of place whither, 97

- two accusatives — direct object and secondary object, 93; direct object and adjunct accusative, 94
- with compounds, 95

adjectives

- agreement of, 59, 62, 63
- attributive, 61
- comparatives, special meaning, 122
- comparison, meaning, 121; regular, 14; irregular, 16
- declension, first and second, 10; irregular, 11; third, 12; of comparatives, 15
- denoting a part (*medius*, *imus*, *summus*), 125
- numeral, 19
- predicate, 60
- substantive use, 127
- superlatives, special meaning, 123; with *quam*, 124
- with adverbial meaning, 126

adjunct accusative, 94

adverbs

- comparison, 17, 18
- negative, 146, 147
- special meanings, 145

agreement, 58-69

- aliquis*, declension, 31; use, 31. *a*, 144. *b*
- alius*, declension, 11; used in pairs, 144. *d*; used twice in different cases, 144. *i*

- alter*, declension, 11. *a*; used in pairs, 144. *d*

antecedent

in the relative clause, 140

omission of, 142

repetition of, 141

antequam, with indicative, 197. *a*;with subjunctive, 197. *b***appositives**, agreement of, 58; defini-

tion of, 54

attraction, subjunctive by, 214**base**, definition of, I. *a***calendar**, Roman, 227**Calends**, 227. *d***cardinal numerals**, 19**causal clauses**with *cum*, 189; denoting time and cause, 195with *quod*, *quia*, etc., with indicative, 188. *a*; with subjunctive, 188. *b*

relative clauses of cause, 190

characteristic clauses, 177 and *a* clauses

definition, 56

coördinate, 56. *b*; subordinate, 56. *a*;
moods in subordinate, 174-198**coepl**, conjugation, 46. I**commands**, with imperative, 173;with subjunctive, 172. *b*, *c***comparatives**, declension, 15; special meanings of, 122, 145**comparison**, of adjectives, 14, 16;
clauses of, 200**complementary infinitive**, 217. *c***concessive clauses**, with indicative, 191; with subjunctive, 192**conditional sentences** (L. C. 33)future more probable, 199. II. *a*future less probable, 199. II. *b*past non-committal, 199. III. *a*past contrary to fact, 199. III. *b*present non-committal, 199. I. *a*present contrary to fact, 199. I. *b*

in indirect discourse, 210-213

cōfidō, with ablative, 107, *b***conjugation of verbs**defective (*coepl*, *meminī*, *ōdī*), 46. Ideponent (*hortor*, *vereor*, *sequor*,
partior), 37impersonal (*licet*), 46. IIirregular (*sum*, *possum*, *prōsum*, *volō*,
nōlō, *mālō*, *ferō*, *eō*, *fīdī*), 39-45periphrastic (*amātūrus sum*, *aman-*
dus sum), 38. I, IIregular (*amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*,
capīō), 32-36**conjunctions**, coördinating, 151. *a*;subordinating, 151. *b***copula**, definition of, 48. II. *b*; posi-
tion of, L. C. 4. *e***cum**, as enclitic, 150. *a***cum clauses**

causal, 189

concessive, 192

temporal, 194. *a*, *b*

denoting time and cause, 195

with the meaning 'whenever,' 196

dative

of apparent (implied) agent, 87

of indirect object, 82

of possession (possessor), 88

of purpose ("double dative"), 89

of reference, 85

of separation, 86

with adjectives, 90

with compounds, 84; explanation
of, L. C. 63. note 2with passive of special verbs, 83. *a*with special verbs, 83; explanation
of, L. C. 63. note 1**declensions**

of adjectives, 10-15

- of nouns, 2-9
 of pronouns, 21-31
defective verbs (*coepi, meminī, odi*), 46. I
deliberation, subjunctive of, 172. *d*;
 in indirect discourse, 207. II. *b*
demonstrative pronouns, declension, 25; uses, 134, 135
deponent verbs (*hortor, vercor, sequor, partior*), 37
descriptive clauses, 177 and *a*
direct discourse or direct quotation, definition, 202
domi, 'at home,' 120. *a*
dōnec, 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. *a, b*
dubitō, nōn dubitō, with subjunctive, 186
dum, 'while,' 198. I; 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. *a, b*
duo, declension, 20
ego, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
eō, conjugation, 44
etsi, in concessive clauses, 191
fearing, verbs of, 184
ferō, conjugation, 43
fidō, with ablative, 107. *b*
fiō, conjugation, 45
frētus, with ablative, 107. *b*
fruo, with ablative, 107. *a*
fungor, with ablative, 107. *a*
future conditions, more probable, 199. II. *a*; less probable, 199. II. *b*
future perfect tense, 158
future tense
 indicative, 155
 infinitive, 166. *b* and 3
 participle, 167
genitive, 72
 objective, 75. *b*
 of the whole (partitive), 76
 possessive, 73
 subjective, 75. *a*
 of description, 77
 of material, 79
 of measure, 77. *b*
 of value, 78
 with adjectives, 80
 with verbs, 81. *a-d*
gerund, 223. *a-d*; expressing purpose, 225. *a, b*
gerundive, 224. *a-d*; expressing purpose, 225. *a, b*; in *-ī* with *mei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri*, 224. *c*
hic, declension, 25; uses, 134 and *a*, L. C. 57. *a*
hindering and opposing, verbs of, 185
historical infinitive, 218
historical present, 153. *a*
idem, declension, 25
Ides, 227. *d*
ille, declension, 25; uses, 134 and *a*, L. C. 57. *a*
imperative, in commands, 173 and note; in indirect discourse, 205, 206
impersonal verbs, conjugation (*licet*), 46. II; definition, 66
implied indirect discourse, 208. *b*
indefinite pronouns, declension (*quis, quī, quisque, quīdam, quisquam, aliquis*), 28-31; uses, 31. *a*, 144. *a-d*
indicative mood, 168
 in causal clauses, 188. *a*
 in concessive clauses, 191

- in conditional clauses, 199. I. *a*, II. *a*, III. *a*
 in questions, 170
 in relative clauses, 178
 in statement of facts, 169
 in temporal clauses, 194. *a*, 196, 197. *a*, 198. I, II, III. *a*
- indirect discourse**
 definition, 203
 conditional sentences in, 210-213
 declarative sentences in, 204 and *a*
 imperative sentences in, 205
 prohibitions in, 206
 questions in, real, 207. I; rhetorical, 207. II. *a*, *b*
 subordinate clauses in, mood of, 208; tense of, 209 and note
- indirect questions**, 201
- infinitive mood**
 definition, 215
 as object, 217. *a-c*
 as subject, 216. *a*, *b*
 complementary, 217. *c*
 historical, 218
 in indirect discourse, 217. *b*, 204
 tenses of, not in indirect discourse, 166. *a*; in indirect discourse, 166. *b*. 1-3
- intensive pronoun**, *ipse*, declension, 25; uses, 136. *a*, *b*
- interest**, with genitive, 81. *c*
- interrogative particles**, 170. *a*. 1-3, *b*. 1, 2
- interrogative pronoun**, *quis*, declension, 27
- intransitive verbs**, definition, 50; dative with, 83
- ipse**, declension, 25; uses, 136. *a*, *b*
- irregular verbs**, conjugation, 39-45
- is**, declension, 25; uses, 135
- iste**, declension, 25; use, L. C. 57. *a*
- licet**, conjugation, 46. II
- locative case**, 120. *a*
- mālō**, conjugation, 42
- meminī**, conjugation, 46. I
- memory**, verbs of, 81. *a*
- mille**, declension, 20; use, 20. note
- moods**, in independent sentences, 168-173; in subordinate clauses, 174-201
- ne**, in questions, 170. *a*. 1, *b*. 1
- nē**, conjunction
 general use, 147
 with clauses of purpose, 174
 with hortative subjunctive, 172. *a*
 with optative subjunctive, 172. *c*
 with subjunctive in prohibitions, 172. *c*
 with substantive clauses, after verbs of fearing, 184; after verbs of hindering etc., 185
- negatives**, 146 and *a*, 147
- neuter**, declension, 11. *a*
- nītor**, with ablative, 107. *b*
- nōli**, conjugation, 42; use, 172. *c*. note 1, 173. note
- nominative**, as subject or predicate of a finite verb, 70; as subject of the historical infinitive, 71
- nōn**, 146 and *a*; with clauses of result, 179
- Nones**, 227. *d*
- nōnne**, 170. *a*. 2
- nōs**, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
- nouns**
 first declension, 2
 second declension, 3
 third declension, 4-6
 fourth declension, 7

- fifth declension**, 8
special declensions (*deus, domus, vīs, iter*), 9
 as predicates or appositives, 58
nūllus, declension, 11. *a*
num, in direct questions, 170. *a. 3*;
 in indirect questions, 201. note
numerals, 19

object, direct, 91; indirect, 82
objective genitive, 75. *b*
ōdī, conjugation, 46. I
optative subjunctive, 172. *e. 1-3*
opus est, with ablative, 107. *c*
order of words, L. C. 1-4, *a-e*
ordinal numerals, 19

paenitet, with genitive, 81. *b*
participles
 definition, 219
 as nouns, 221
 declension of present active, 13
 equivalent to clauses, 220. *a-e*
 in the periphrastic conjugations, 222
 tenses of, 167; wanting, L. C. 45
passive voice, intransitive verbs in,
 83. *a*; dative retained with, 83. *a*
past absolute, 156. *b*
past participle, with *habēō*, 156. *b*.
 note
past perfect tense, indicative, 157;
 subjunctive, 159. *c*
past tense, indicative, 154; subjunc-
 tive, 159. *b*
perfect tense
 indicative, 156. *a, b*
 infinitive, not in indirect discourse,
 166. *a*; in indirect discourse,
 166. *b. 2*
 participle, 167
 subjunctive, 159. *a*

periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II
 active use, 222. I
 passive use, 222. II
 impersonal use, 222. II. note, L. C. 53
personal pronouns
 declension, 21
 in the nominative, 129
 of the third person, 130
 with *-cum* as enclitic, 150. *a*
 with gerundive, 224. *c*
phrase, definition, 51
place
 from which, 101. *a* and note
 in which, 120 and *a*
 to which, 97 and note
plūs, declension, 15
possessive pronominal adjectives,
 declension, 23, 24; use, 131,
 132
possum, conjugation, 40
postquam, with indicative, 193
potential subjunctive, 172. *f*
potior, with ablative, 107. *a*; with
 genitive, 81. *d*
predicate, definition, 48. II and *a*
predicate adjective, 60
predicate noun, agreement, 58
prepositions
 use, 148
 with ablative, 150
 with accusative, 149
present tense
 historical, 153. *a*
 indicative, 153
 infinitive, not in indirect discourse,
 166. *a*; in indirect discourse,
 166. *b. 1*
 participle, 167
 subjunctive, 159. *a*
 with *dum*, 198. I
primary tenses, 161

- priusquam**, with indicative, 197. *a*;
with subjunctive, 197. *b*
- prohibitions**, 172. *c* and note 1; in
indirect discourse, 206
- pronouns**, declensions, 21-31; uses,
128-144
- prōsum**, conjugation, 41
- purpose clauses**
adverbial, 174
relative, 175; containing a com-
parative, 176
substantive, 183
- quam**, with comparatives, 105. note 1;
with superlatives, 124
- quamquam**, with indicative, 191
- quamvis**, with subjunctive, 192
- quandō**, in causal clauses, with in-
dicative, 188. *a*; with subjunctive,
188. *b*
- questions**
deliberative, 172. *d*
double, 170. *b*
indirect, 201
rhetorical, 171
in indirect discourse, 207. I, II. *a, b*
introductory words, 170 (entire)
- qui**, indefinite, declension, 28; use,
31. *a*
- quī**, relative, declension, 26; uses,
137-143. *See* relative pronoun
- quia**, in causal clauses, with indica-
tive, 188. *a*; with subjunctive, 188. *b*
- quīdam**, declension, 29; use, 144. *a*
- quīn**, after verbs of hindering and op-
posing, 185; after *nōn dubitō*, 186;
in characteristic clause, L. C. 17
- quis**, indefinite, declension, 28; use,
31. *a*, 144. *a*
- quis**, interrogative, declension, 27;
use, 170
- quisquam**, declension, 30; use, 31. *a*,
144. *c*
- quisque**, declension, 28
- quō**, with purpose clauses, 176
- quoad**, with indicative, 198. II, III. *a*;
with subjunctive, 198. III. *b*
- quod**, in causal clauses, with indica-
tive, 188. *a*; with subjunctive,
188. *b*; in substantive clauses of
fact, 182 and *a*
- quō minus**, after verbs of hindering
and opposing, 185
- quoniam**, in causal clauses, with in-
dicative, 188. *a*; with subjunctive,
188. *b*
- quotations**, direct, 202; indirect, 203
- reflexive pronouns**
declension, 22
direct, 132
indirect, 133
with gerundive, 224. *c*
- relative clause**
antecedent in, 140
antecedent repeated in, 141
causal, 190
descriptive (characteristic), 177 and *a*
of fact, 178
of purpose, 175
of result, 180
preceding antecedent clause, 139
- relative pronoun**
agreement of, 137
agreement with predicate noun or
appositive, 138
beginning a new sentence, 143
declension, 26
- reminiscor**, with genitive, 81. *a*
- result clauses**
adverbial, 179
relative, 180

- substantive**, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II
- rhetorical questions**, definition, 171; in indirect discourse, 207. II. *a*, *b*
- Roman calendar**, 227
- Roman year**, 228
- secondary tenses**, 161
- sences**, kinds of, 47. *a-c*; forms of, 55. *a-c*
- separation**, ablative of, 101; dative of, 86
- sequence of tenses**, explanation of, 161; rule for, 162
- sī**, with conditional clauses, 199
- sōlus**, declension, 11. *a*
- stem**, definition of, 1. *a*
- subjunctive mood**
 after *nōn dubitō*, 186
 after verbs of fearing, 184
 after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
 by attraction, 214
 in causal clauses, 188. *b*, 189, 190
 in clauses of comparison, 200
 in clauses of description, 177
 in clauses of purpose, 174-176, 183
 in clauses of result, 179, 180, 187
 in commands, 172. *b*
 in concessive clauses, 192
 in conditional clauses, 199. I. *b*, II. *b*, III. *b*
 in *cum* clauses denoting time and cause, 195
 in exhortations, 172. *a*
 in indirect discourse, in subordinate clauses, 208
 in indirect questions, 201
 in prohibitions, 172. *c*
 in questions of deliberation, 172. *d*
 in temporal clauses, 194. *b*, 197. *b*, 198. III. *b*
 optative, 172. *e*. 1, 2, 3
 potential, 172. *f*
- substantive clauses**
 after *nōn dubitō*, 186
 after verbs of fearing, 184
 after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
 of fact, 182 and *a*
 of purpose, 183
 of result, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II
- sum**, conjugation, 39; use as copula, 48. II. *b*
- supine**, in *-um*, 226. *a*; in *-ū*, 226. *b*
- suus**, *suī*
 declension, 22, 23
 as direct reflexive, 132
 as indirect reflexive, 133
 special use with gerundive, 224. *c*
- temporal clauses**
 indicative uses
 with *antequam* or *priusquam*, denoting a fact, 197. *a*
 with *cum* in definitive clauses, 194. *a*
 with *cum* meaning 'whenever,' 196
 with *dum* meaning 'while,' 198. I
 with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad* meaning 'as long as,' 198. II
 with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad* meaning 'until,' denoting a fact, 198. III. *a*
 with *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, etc., 193

subjunctive uses

with *antequam* or *priusquam*, denoting anticipation, 197. *b*

with *cum* in descriptive (circumstantial) clauses, 194. *b*

with *cum* denoting time and cause, 195

with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, denoting anticipation, 198. III. *b*

tenses

of the indicative, 153-158

of the infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. *a*; in indirect discourse, 166. *b*. 1-3

of the participle, 167

of the subjunctive, in dependent clauses, 160; in independent clauses, 159. *a-c*

sequence of, 161, 162

tōtus, declension, 11. *a*

transitive verbs, 49; object of, 91

trēs, declension, 20

tū, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

ubi, with indicative, 193

ūllus, declension, 11. *a*; use, 31. *a*, 144. *c*

ūnus, declension, 11

ūsus est, with ablative, 107. *c*

ut

with clauses of purpose, 174

with clauses of result, 179

with concessive clauses, 192

with temporal clauses, 193

uter, declension, 11. *a*

utinam, with the optative subjunctive, 172. *c*. 1-3

ūtor, with ablative, 107. *a*

utrum . . . *an*, 170. *b*. 1

velut, *velut sī*, with subjunctive, 200

verbs

agreement of, 65-69

defective, conjugation, 46. I

deponent, conjugation, 37

impersonal, conjugation, 46. II

intransitive, 50

irregular, conjugation, 39-45

moods, in independent sentences, 168-173; in subordinate clauses, 174-201

periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II; uses, 222. I, II

regular, conjugation, 32-36

tenses, *see* tenses

transitive, 49

vocative, 100

volitive subjunctive, 172. *c*. note 2

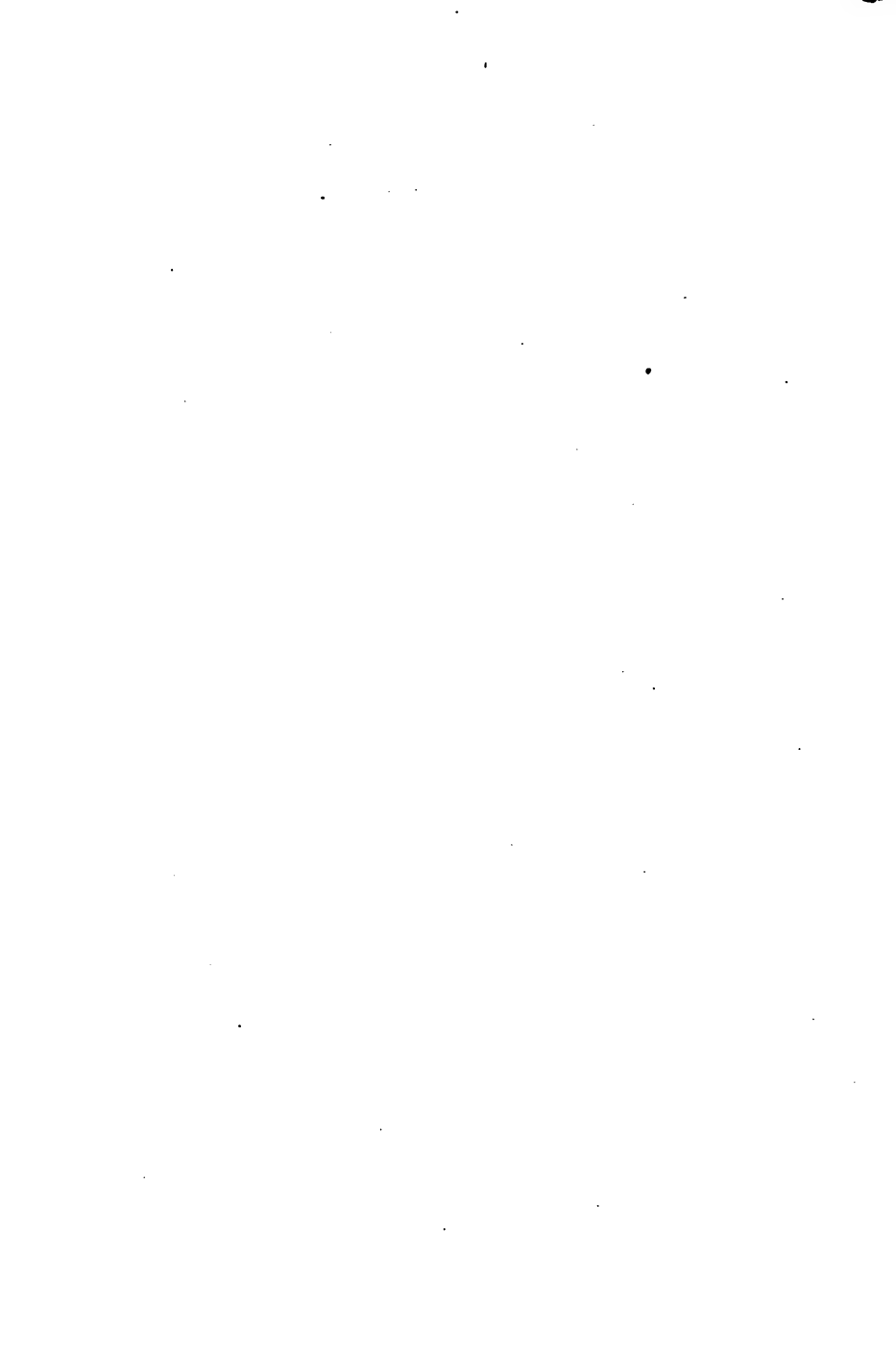
volō, conjugation, 42

vōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

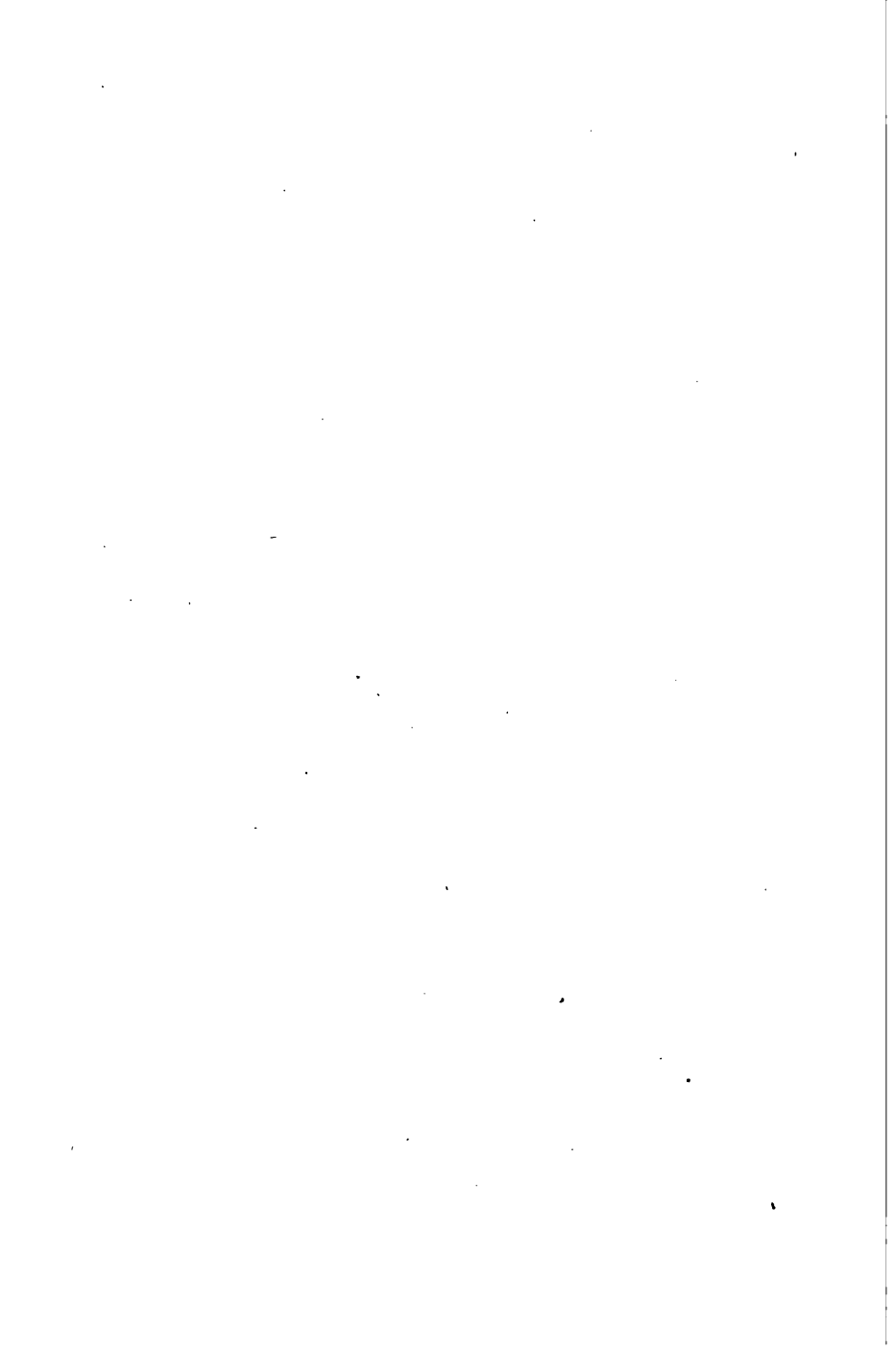
wishes, *see* optative subjunctive

words, order of, L. C. 1-4, *a-c*

year, the Roman, 228







This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.



